

 EL-MOASSER

GUIDE

NEW  
H



& King Lear

By A Group Of Supervisors

**2<sup>nd</sup>** Sec.  
2025  
SECOND TERM  
عام - أزهر

الصف الثاني الثانوي  
الفصل الدراسي الثاني



تطبيق  
التعلم التفاعلي

Specifications for Second Year Secondary (2<sup>nd</sup> Term) English Examination 2024 - 2025

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية لمادة اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثاني الثانوي  
الفصل الدراسي الثاني للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٤ / ٢٠٢٥

Marks : 30

2024 / 2025

Time : 3 Hours

**A Vocabulary and Structure (13 Marks)**

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (13 Marks)**

**THIRTEEN (13)** multiple choice questions, with **FOUR (4)** options each (**7** vocabulary and **6** structures) are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer out of the **FOUR (4)** options given. *(One mark each)*

**B Reading (8 Marks)**

**2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (8 Marks)**

An unseen text of about **220** to **250** words is provided. This may be a story, a factual text, an e-mail or a dialogue. Students are asked to answer **EIGHT (8)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each.

The questions **MUST** test **each** of the following reading comprehension skills :

- \* giving the main idea
- \* skimming and scanning
- \* identifying specific details
- \* summarizing
- \* explaining events, procedures, concepts, ... etc.
- \* making inference and prediction
- \* comparing and contrast ideas, opinions, ... etc.
- \* evaluating characters, opinions, ... etc.

*(One mark each)*

**C Translation (4 Marks)**

**3 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a , b, c or d : (2 Marks)**

A short English text of **TWO (2)** meaningful sentences of about **12 - 15** words each, is provided. **FOUR (4)** Arabic translation options are also given. Students are asked to choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d : (2 Marks)**

A short Arabic text of **TWO (2)** meaningful sentences of about **12 - 15** words each, is provided. **FOUR (4)** English translation options are also given. Students are asked to choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d.



#### **D Literature (1.5 Marks)**

##### **4 Answer the following questions :**

Students are asked to answer **THREE (3)** open-ended critical thinking questions. Their responses should be provided with reasonable justifications.  
(Half a mark each)

#### **E Writing (3.5 Marks)**

##### **5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :**

Students are asked to write an essay of about **ONE HUNDRED** and **EIGHTY (180)** words on a given topic appealing to their age, interests, likes, aspirations, etc. The title of the essay should be self-explanatory (i.e. easy to understand). No guidance is given.

**(One mark for relevance of ideas – Half a mark for choice of vocabulary – Half a mark for grammar – Half a mark for punctuation – Half a mark for spelling – Half a mark for organization).**

**OR**

**Write an e-mail to of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following :**

Students are asked to write an e-mail of about **ONE HUNDRED** and **EIGHTY (180)** words on a given topic. The topic of the e-mail should be self-explanatory (i.e. easy to understand). The name of the sender, addressee and the subject should be provided.

**(One mark for relevance of ideas – Half a mark for choice of vocabulary – Half a mark for grammar – Half a mark for punctuation – Half a mark for spelling – Half a mark for organization).**

**لوعايز**

تتعلم نطق الكلمات صح يبقى  
قاموس المعاصر الناطق.



من خلال Qr code



# CONTENTS

## Module **3** Travel

	page
UNIT <b>7</b> Living abroad	9
UNIT <b>8</b> High-tech transport	58
UNIT <b>9</b> Conservation	101
Revision <b>3</b>	150

## Module **4** The media

UNIT <b>10</b> The news	156
UNIT <b>11</b> What a performance !	200
UNIT <b>12</b> Achievements and goals	259
Revision <b>4</b>	299
Monthly assessments	302

<b>PLAY</b>	King Lear	308
-------------	-----------	-----



# UNIT 7

SB pages 6 : 15  
WB pages 2 : 7

## Living abroad



### Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- 📖 **Reading** : An extract from the novel *The Secret Garden* by Frances Hodgson Burnett
- ✍️ **Writing** : A diary entry by a student who is living abroad
- 👂 **Listening** : Voice messages from students who are studying abroad

- 🗣️ **Speaking** : Discussing the pros and cons of working abroad
- 🗣️ **Language** : Present continuous Stative verbs
- 🧠 **Life skills** : Critical thinking ; Showing respect for people from different cultures





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

come across (phr. v)	يصادف - يجد بالصدفة	independent (adj)	مستقل - معتمد
determination (n)	إصرار / تصميم / عزيمة - تحديد		على نفسه
encouragement (n)	التشجيع	pick(ed) ... up (phr. v)	يُقَلِّ / يوصل - يلتقط
get used to	يعتاد علي	pick-up (n)	شاحنة صغيرة
host family (n)	عائلة مضيفة	struggle (n)	كفاح - لُضال
		struggle(d) (v)	يُخافح - يُناضل - يثابر

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

abroad (adv)	بالخارج (خارج البلاد)	explain (ed) (v)	يُفسِّر - يوضِّح
accommodation (n)	إقامة - سُكُن	explore (d) (v)	يستكشف - يستجلي - يتفحَّص
activity (n)	نشاط	extract (n)	مقتطف - اقتباس
afterwards (adv)	فيما بعد	gardener (n)	بُستاني
annoy(ed) (v)	يضايق	harbour (n)	مُرسِي - مرفأ
biology(adv)	علم الأحياء	lamb (n)	خَمَل (صغير الغنم) - لحم الضأن
celebration(n)	احتفال	lonely (adj)	شاعر بالوحدة
certificate(n)	شهادة	maid (n)	خادِمة - وصيفة
challenge(d) (n - v)	تُحدِّي - يتحدى	main (adj)	أساسي / رئيسي
climber (n)	مُتسلِّق	normal (adj)	طبيعي - عادي
concentrate (d) (v)	يُرَكِّز - ينتبه بشدة	publish (ed) (v)	يُنشُر (كتاب - مقال ...)
conditions (n)	ظروف - أوضاع - شروط	secret (n/adj)	سِرّ - سِرِّي
confident (adj)	واثق - متفائل	servant (n)	خادم - خادمة
confused (adj)	متحير - مرتبك	specific(adj)	مُحدَّد - مخصوص
creature (n)	مخلوق - كائن	stressed(adj)	مضغوط - مُثقل بالاعباء
current(adj)	حالي - جاري	support(ed) (n - v)	دعم - يدعم
degree(n)	درجة / شهادة جامعية		
distract(ed) (v)	يشتت - يصرف انتباه		



distracted(adj)	فُشِّتَ	temporary(adj)	مُؤَقَّت - غير دائم
drought(n)	الجفاف	understandable(adj)	مفهوم / ممكن فهمه
experience(d) (v)	يمر بموقف - يعيش تجربة	volunteer(ed) (v - n)	متطوع - يتطوع
experience(n)	تجربة - مغامرة	weigh(ed) (v)	يُزن - يفكر ملياً
		whistle(d) (v - n)	يُصْفِر - صافرة

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>biology</b> علم الأحياء	the scientific study of the life and structure of plants and animals
<b>come across (phr. v)</b> يصادف - يجد ... بالصدفة	to meet, find, or discover someone or something by chance
<b>determination(n)</b> إصرار - عزم - عزيمة	the quality of trying to do something even when it is difficult
<b>encouragement(n)</b> التشجيع - حافز	- the act of encouraging somebody to do something - something that encourages somebody
<b>get used to</b> يعتاد على	to have experienced something so that it no longer seems surprising, difficult, strange etc.
<b>host family(n)</b> عائلة مضييفة	a family which provides board and lodging to students, usually for a fee
<b>independent(adj)</b> مُسْتَقِل - معتمد على نفسه	confident and able to do things by yourself in your own way, without needing help or advice from other people
<b>pick ... up (phr. v)</b> يَقلِّ / يوصل	to let someone get into your car, boat etc. and take them somewhere
<b>struggle (v)</b> يُكافح - يُناضل - يَنابر	to try extremely hard to achieve something, even though it is very difficult

### Exercises On Vocabulary

#### Understand

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Definitions

1. The quality of trying to do something even when it is difficult is called

..... (البحيـرة - المـحمودية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. destination      b. determination      c. confusion      d. distraction

2. To ..... means to find or discover someone or something by chance.  
(كفر الشيخ - فوه ٢٠٢٤)
- a. come up with    b. come into    c. come cross    d. come across
3. To ..... is to try extremely hard to achieve something, despite its difficulty.  
(الجيزة - بولاق الدكرور ٢٠٢٤)
- a. surfing    b. swing    c. struggle    d. strike
4. .... means to have experienced something so that it no longer seems strange.  
(القاهرة - المستقبل ٢٠٢٤)
- a. Is used for    b. Get used for    c. Is using to    d. Get used to
5. .... is the scientific study of the life and structure of plants and animals.  
(السيوط - دبروط ٢٠٢٣)
- a. Chemistry    b. History    c. Botany    d. Biology
6. '.....' is something that motivates (يَحْفَظُ) somebody.  
a. Presentation    b. Encouragement    c. Experience    d. Determination
7. The adjective '.....' means confident and able to do things by yourself in your own way, without needing help or advice from other people.  
a. independent    b. dependent    c. confused    d. stressed
8. To ..... someone up means to let someone get into your car, boat etc. and take them somewhere.  
a. struggle    b. weigh    c. back    d. pick
9. A ..... family provides board and lodging to students, usually for a fee أجر.  
a. guest    b. big    c. host    d. hostess

## 2 Key Vocabulary

10. In the course of the experiments, they ..... a series of new problems.  
(الشرقية - غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤)
- a. dissatisfied    b. distracted    c. determined    d. discovered
11. The climbers showed great..... to reach the top of the mountain. It was not easy.  
(بورسعيد - بورفؤاد ٢٠٢٤)
- a. evaporation    b. determination    c. entertainment    d. condensation
12. Many plants and animals ..... to live where there is a drought.  
(بورسعيد - شمال بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤)
- a. encourage    b. struggle    c. think    d. devote
13. Two ..... studies of the medical qualities of the plant both reached the same conclusion.  
(الاسماعيلية - ابو صوير ٢٠٢٤)
- a. available    b. reliant    c. reusable    d. independent
14. During my stay in London, the ..... family welcomed me warmly.  
(المنوفية - الباجور ٢٠٢٤)
- a. guest    b. host    c. hostel    d. hostile
15. I am going to ..... my brother up from the airport when he arrives.  
(سوهاج - طهطا ٢٠٢٤)
- a. whistle    b. challenge    c. climb    d. pick



16. Our children need some ..... to be better. (بورسعيد - جنوب بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. invitation      b. encouragement      c. starvation      d. exploration

### 3 Important Vocabulary

17. The ..... was changing the sheets when we got back to our hotel room. (سوهاج - ساقلته ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. boss      b. coach      c. maid      d. guard

18. He works in the school project without being paid; he is a/an ..... (بورسعيد - بورفؤاد ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. engineer      b. volunteer      c. expert      d. employee

19. The walk across the desert was very .....; we enjoyed it. (بورسعيد - جنوب بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. challenging      b. boring      c. disappointing      d. frustrating

20. My uncle doesn't like living ..... as he likes staying in Egypt. (الجيزة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. abroad      b. aboard      c. bored      d. broad

21. I'm staying in Tanta, but it's ..... I won't be there for long. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. temporary      b. everlasting      c. along      d. unlimited

22. The students were ..... by the noise inside the classroom. (سوهاج - المنشأة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. attracted      b. enjoyed      c. detached      d. distracted

23. She got lost on the way to the museum because she was ..... (الجيزة - شغال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. received      b. pleased      c. amazed      d. confused

24. Climbing Everest is a new ..... for him. (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. challenge      b. independence      c. accommodation      d. voyage

25. After his mother's death, my friend Samir felt ..... (الجيزة - اوسيم ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. lonely      b. happy      c. glad      d. pleased

26. .... on your aim and don't be distracted. (المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. Depend      b. Relay      c. Focus      d. Pause

27. Every failure one meets adds so much to one's ..... (بورسعيد - شمال بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. experiment      b. illness      c. experience      d. wealth

28. When was the novel entitled "The Secret Garden" .....? (الجيزة - العمرانية ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. come out      b. borne      c. published      d. established

29. We can see a lot of ships in the maintenance..... They are being serviced. (سوهاج - طما ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. portal      b. seaside      c. harbour      d. anchor

30. When a lesson is ....., I can depend on myself.  
 a. understandable      b. stressed      c. confused      d. confident

31. It was funny when the referee's ..... didn't work.  
a. whistle      b. challenge      c. entry      d. sound
32. He was a kind master who never asked his ..... to do hard jobs.  
a. servants      b. leaders      c. volunteers      d. grandparents
33. I am ..... to achieve my goal and join the faculty of medicine.  
a. picked up      b. determined      c. got used      d. come across
34. Don't ask him to do any more jobs. He is already .....  
a. understandable      b. stressed      c. independent      d. confident
35. When children ..... things for the first time, they may be worried and make mistakes.  
a. experience      b. distract      c. publish      d. sound
36. Last year's ..... destroyed most of the forests in the area.  
a. diary      b. accent      c. draught      d. drought
37. He is thin. He only ..... 34 kilograms.  
a. explores      b. feels      c. weighs      d. wishes
38. Walid ..... to look after the old lady.  
a. stressed      b. confused      c. volunteered      d. sounded
39. I have missed the train. I will ..... the possibility of taking a bus.  
a. explore      b. feel      c. give      d. wish
40. Sama is intelligent. I am ..... that she will make the correct choice.  
a. understandable      b. stressed      c. confused      d. confident

## PART II

## VOCABULARY STUDY

## 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

become	independent      يصبح مستقل		a great time      يقضي وقتاً رائعاً
do	an action / activity يقوم بعمل / نشاط	have	a break      يأخذ استراحة
	my best      أبذل ما في وسعي		... for dinner يتناول ... على العشاء
feel	quite confused يشعر بالحيرة إلى حد ما		fun      يمرح
find	a big difference      يجد اختلافاً كبيراً	play	the guitar      يعزف على الجيتار
get	distracted      يتشتت	share	the experience      يعيش التجربة مع
make	notes on      يدون ملاحظات عن	show	respect for      يظهر الاحترام لـ
perform	an action / activity يقوم بعمل / نشاط		



## 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
come across	يصادف - يجد بالصدفة	encounter, find by chance, meet by chance
confident	متفائل	optimistic, hopeful
confused	متحير - مرتبك	puzzled, at a loss, at sixes and sevens
determine	يحدد	identify
distracted	مُشتت	inattentive, confused, puzzled
encourage	يُشجّع	motivate, inspire, urge
encouragement	التشجيع	inspiration, motivation, reinforcement
explore	يستجلي - يتفحص - يمعن التفكير في	look at, examine
identify	يحدد (هوية)	determine, recognise
independent	مستقل - معتمد على نفسه	self-reliant, self-supporting
lonely	شاعر بالوحدة - منطوي	lonesome, solitary, by oneself
main	أساسي / رئيسي	chief, basic, fundamental
pick ... up	يُقبل / يوصل	collect
spare no effort	ي بذل قصارى جهده	do his/her best
struggle	يُكافح - يُناضل - يثار	strive, do one's best, spare no effort, compete, fight

## 3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)
confident	متفائل	pessimistic, hopeless متشائم / يانس
distracted	مُشتت	attentive, clear-headed منته
encourage	يُشجّع	discourage يُثبط العزيمة
encouragement	التشجيع	discouragement, frustration تثبيط - توهين
independent	مستقل - معتمد على نفسه	dependent متواكل - خاضع
lonely	شاعر بالوحدة - منطوي	sociable اجتماعي
specific	محدد	common عام
struggle	يُكافح - يُناضل - يثار	give up, surrender يستسلم - يُذعن

## 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

determination		
determine (v)	يُصمم - يحدد	- The police <b>determined</b> the cause of the accident.
determination (n)	إصرار / تصميم / عزيمة - تحديد	- <b>Determination</b> helps you succeed.
determined (adj)	مُصمم - عازم	- He is <b>determined</b> to achieve his goals in life.
encouragement		
encourage (v)	يُشجّع - يُحفّل	- I work hard because you have <b>encouraged</b> me.

<b>encouragement (n)</b> التشجيع	- I work hard because of your <b>encouragement</b> .
<b>encouraging (adj)</b> مُشجّع / مُحفّز	- Thank you for your <b>encouraging</b> words.
<b>host</b>	
<b>host (v)</b> يستضيف	- Mr Ashraf offered to <b>host</b> us in his house.
<b>host (n)</b> مستضيف / مضيف	- Mr Ashraf offered to be our <b>host</b> .
<b>hostess (n)</b> مستضيفة / مضييفة	- We thanked our <b>hostess</b> .
<b>independent</b>	
<b>depend (v)</b> يعتمد - يُعَوِّل	- You should <b>depend</b> on yourself.
<b>dependence (n)</b> اعتماد/تعويل - تواكل	- <b>Dependence</b> on yourself is a good quality.
<b>independence (n)</b> استقلال - اعتماد على النفس	- <b>Independence</b> is a good quality.
<b>dependent (adj)</b> معتمد على غيره - متواكل	- Huda is <b>dependent</b> on her mother for physical care.
<b>independent (adj)</b> مُستقل - معتمد على نفسه	- Being <b>independent</b> is a good quality.
<b>dependently (adv)</b> بتواكل	- You shouldn't behave <b>dependently</b> .
<b>independently (adv)</b> باستقلالية	- You should behave <b>independently</b> .
<b>struggle</b>	
<b>struggle (v)</b> يُكافح - يُناضل - يَناوِر	- We admire the way you <b>struggle</b> to succeed.
<b>struggle (n)</b> كفاح - نضال - معافرة	- We admire your <b>struggle</b> to succeed.

### 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

a novel by	رواية من تأليف	different from / to	مختلف عن
a short time later	بعد وقت قصير	feel like (+ n / gerund)	يشعر وكأنه - يرغب في
at first	في البداية	for example,	على سبيل المثال
at the beginning of	في بداية	help on a farm	يساعد في أعمال المزرعة
at this time of year	في هذا الوقت من العام	on his own	بمفرده
be confident with	تُتمكّن من	That's all I can do	هذا كل ما يمكنني عمله
be far away from	يتبعد عن - يكون بعيداً عن	There was nothing to do	لم يكن هناك شيء يقوم به
by yourself	بمفردك		

### 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

come into	يدخل	struggle to	يكافح لكي
come out	يصدر - يتم نشره	struggle with	يُكافح في
come to + inf.	يصير - يصبح	talk about	يتحدث عن
decide to	يقرر أن	talk to/with	يتحدث إلي (شخص)
look around	ينظر حول - يبحث في	think of / about	يُفكر في



look out of  
move to  
plan to

ينظر للخارج من خلال  
ينتقل إلى  
يخطط أن

travel across  
work as

يسافر عبر  
يعمل كـ (+ وظيفة)

## 7 Clear the confusion - لاحظ الفرق

### servant - maid

#### • servant

خادم (رجل أو امرأة)

- He was kind to all the servants in his house.

لاحظ أن :

- civil servant

موظف عمومي (حكومي)

- My father is a civil servant.

#### • maid

خادمة / وصيفة (تطلق على الأثني فقط)

- Mr Omar asked the maid to water the plants in the balcony.

### experiment - experience - experienced - expert

#### • experiment (n)

تجربة علمية

- Mr Hossam is doing an experiment in his laboratory.

#### • experience (n)

الخبرة (كلمة لا تُعدّ)

- Travelling gives us so much experience.

#### • experience (n)

تجربة حياتية - موقف (كلمة تُعدّ)

- Getting lost in my first visit to Cairo is an experience I will never forget.

#### • experience (v)

يمر بتجربة - يعايش - يواجه

- We experienced some difficult problems in 2020.

#### • experienced (in) (adj)

ذو خبرة - مُحَنَّك

- My grandfather was experienced in farming.

#### • expert (in / on) (n)

خبير (في) (تستخدم كاسم)

- Mr Hossam is an expert in teaching English.

- She is an expert on heart disease.

#### • expert (in / on / at) + (inf. + ing)

خبير (في) (تستخدم كصفة)

- Mr Hossam is expert at teaching English.

### lonely - alone

#### • lonely = lonesome (adj)

شاعر بالغرلة - منطوي

- I feel sorry for that lonely old woman.

- He leads a very lonely life with no friends.

#### • lonely = remote / desolate (adj)

ناءٍ - مُنعزل

- This old man lives in a lonely farmhouse.

#### • alone = by (myself / yourself ...) = on (my / your ... own) (adj)

بمفرده - وحده (هذه الصفة لا تسبق الاسم)

- After their son had got married, they lived **alone**.  
 = After their son had got married, they lived **by themselves**.  
 = After their son had got married, they lived **on their own**.

### Exercises On Vocabulary Study

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- "Be careful; these games are suitable for specific age groups".  
 'Specific' here is opposite in meaning to .....  
 (اليسريفة - الخبراهديعة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. special      b. ordinary      c. distant      d. near
- Young children are always ..... and need a lot of help and support.  
 a. dependent      b. independent      c. deceived      d. ruined
- All occupied countries struggle for their .....  
 (اليسريفة - عرب ايهاميق ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. dependence      b. independence      c. independent      d. dependent
- I am greatly ..... by your words.  
 a. encouraged      b. encouraging      c. encourage      d. encouragement
- The company sent a driver to pick me ..... from the airport at my arrival.  
 (المنيا - ابو قرقاص ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. up      b. on      c. away      d. for
- It is easy to ..... distracted if you are working with children playing around.  
 (الاقصر - ارميت ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. have      b. do      c. gain      d. get
- He is an adventurous boy. He likes to explore things .....  
 (المنوميه - الشهداء ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. lonely      b. of his own      c. on his own      d. by myself
- "We must give encouragement to students to succeed." The synonym of "encouragement" is .....  
 a. depression      b. frustration      c. support      d. replacement
- Our team struggled to win the fight but failed. The antonym of the verb "struggle" is .....  
 a. suffer      b. surrender      c. fight      d. gain
- "You should appreciate your parents' struggle to make you have a better life." The synonym of "struggle" is .....  
 a. fight      b. betray      c. lift      d. blog
- The police took fingerprints and identified the robber. The synonym of "identified" is .....  
 a. determined      b. damaged      c. removed      d. achieved
- My first novel ..... when I was twenty.  
 a. published      b. spreading      c. publishing      d. came out



13. He spares no effort to help his family. This means he .....  
 a. does his best    b. is lazy    c. is irresponsible    d. is inactive
14. What is the main factor of success? "Main" is similar in meaning to ".....".  
 a. chief    b. secondary    c. available    d. minor
15. Lonely and ..... give the same meaning.  
 a. sociable    b. of his own    c. off his own    d. lonesome
16. Distracted and ..... give antonymous meanings.  
 a. confused    b. attentive    c. inattentive    d. puzzled
17. Whenever I remember them, your words ..... me greatly.  
 a. encourage    b. discouragement  
 c. encouraging    d. encouragement
18. He never ..... on others.  
 a. depends    b. independent    c. independently    d. independence
19. Behaving ..... is one of his best qualities.  
 a. depends    b. independent    c. independently    d. independence
20. She struggles ..... her children well.  
 a. with educating    b. to educate    c. educating    d. b & c
21. I came ..... understand him only after I had known him well.  
 a. in    b. out    c. to    d. up
22. Most people struggle ..... the high cost of living تكلفة المعيشة  
 a. with    b. to    c. by    d. outside

UNIT III

## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

#### The Secret Garden (SB page 7)

The **Secret Garden**<sup>(1)</sup> is a novel by Frances Hodgson Burnett. It was **published**<sup>(2)</sup> in Britain in 1911. At the beginning of the book, we meet the main character, Mary Lennox. Mary was born in India and her parents were rich. When Mary is nine years old, her parents **die**<sup>(3)</sup> and Mary **moves**<sup>(4)</sup> to England to live with her uncle. It is cold and very different from India, and Mary is unhappy at first.

Mary opened her eyes on that first morning because a **maid**<sup>(5)</sup> had come into her room.



- الحديقة السرية 1  
 ينشر 2  
 يموت 3  
 تنتقل 4  
 خادمة - وصيفة 5

"Are you my **servant**<sup>(6)</sup>?" she asked. "I'm Mrs Medlock's servant, and she is Mr Craven's servant," replied Martha, the maid. "Are you going outside today?" Mary looked around her. There was nothing to do in the bedroom.

"Who will go with me?" Mary asked. "You can be **independent**<sup>(7)</sup> and go out **by yourself**<sup>(8)</sup>. My brother is always **exploring**<sup>(9)</sup> **on his own**,"<sup>(10)</sup> said Martha. "There are some **gardens**<sup>(11)</sup>, but it is winter so nothing is **growing**<sup>(12)</sup> now. Oh, now Mrs Medlock's **bell**<sup>(13)</sup> is ringing. I must go!"

A short time **later**<sup>(14)</sup>, Mary was in the gardens when she **came across**<sup>(15)</sup> a small bird **singing**<sup>(16)</sup> in some trees **behind**<sup>(17)</sup> a wall. When she asked an old **gardener**<sup>(18)</sup> about the bird, he **whistled**<sup>(19)</sup> and the bird **flew**<sup>(20)</sup> to him.

"He was **lonely**<sup>(21)</sup> and we became friends," the old man **explained**<sup>(22)</sup>.

"I'm lonely," said Mary. "I don't know anyone in England."

"I'm sure you will **struggle**<sup>(23)</sup> at first, but you will **get used to**<sup>(24)</sup> the people here soon," said the gardener. **Suddenly**<sup>(25)</sup>, the small bird started singing.

"Why is he doing that?" she asked.

"I think he's **decided**<sup>(26)</sup> to be your friend, too," answered the gardener.

(6) خادم

(7) فستقل

(8) بمفردك

(9) بتجول - يستكشف

(10) بمفرده

(11) بساتين

(12) لامي - كثيف

(13) جرس

(14) فيما بعد

(15) يصادف

(16) يغزّد - يصدح

(17) خلف - وراء

(18) بستائي

(19) يُصفر

(20) يطير

(21) شاعر بالوحدة

(22) يُفسّر - يوضح

(23) يكافح - يناضل

(24) يعتاد علي

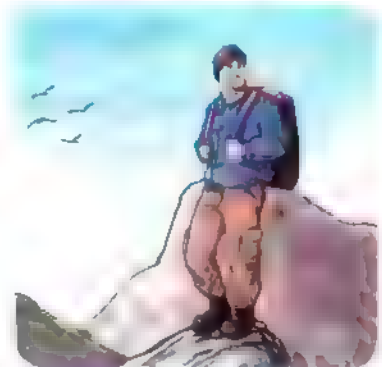
(25) فجأة

(26) يقرر

### Tarek's blog

(WB page 2)

It is two a.m. in Egypt. At this time, people are sleeping, but here in Australia, it is the afternoon, not the morning! At the moment, all the students in my language class are having a short break. Some of them are drinking coffee, but I'm writing this blog. Most of the students are looking out of the window. We can see Sydney **harbour**<sup>(1)</sup> and it's beautiful. I am staying in Australia for another four weeks. Next week, my Uncle Waleed is visiting me and we are travelling across the country. I hope he enjoys it because he is always **falling asleep**<sup>(2)</sup> when we travel by bus and he won't see anything! I'll write about that in my next blog.



(1) ميناء

(2) يغلبه النعاس



To : parents@mail.com

(SB page 10)

From : Amir@mail.com

Dear Mum and Dad

I've now been in India for a month. I am enjoying it here, but the **volunteer**<sup>(1)</sup> work is quite difficult! This week,

I am helping on a farm. There are lots of **baby goats**<sup>(2)</sup> at this time of year. So the farmer and I are **weighing**<sup>(3)</sup> them to **check**<sup>(4)</sup> that they are healthy.

Life is very different here. The food **tastes**<sup>(5)</sup> different. I found it difficult to eat at first, but I am getting used to it now. Every day, I see different animals, buildings and people, too. I wish you were here so we could share the **experience**<sup>(6)</sup>. I **miss**<sup>(7)</sup> you both, too!

Write soon,

Love from Amir



(1) منطوع

(2) صغار الماعز

(3) يزن

(4) يتحقق - يتأكد

(5) يعطي مذاق

(6) تجربة - مغامرة

(7) يفتقد

## 2 Listening Texts

**Ahmed** : I hope you have a great time in England. Don't worry if you struggle with the course in the beginning. After a few weeks you'll get used to the lessons.

(SB page 6)

(1) مفهوم

**Adam** : I'll just do my best in the lessons. That's all I can do. Did I tell you that the mother from my host family is going to come and pick me up from the airport when I arrive ?  
come and pick me up from the airport when I arrive ?

**Ahmed** : That's great! So, you won't be alone when you get there.

**Adam** : Exactly. But I don't want them to take me everywhere and do everything for me. I want to be independent while I'm in England.

**Ahmed** : Yes, that's **understandable**<sup>(1)</sup>. But it will be good to get some encouragement if you feel like your English isn't good enough or anything like that.

**Adam** : You're right. I know that living and studying in England won't be easy, but with a little bit of determination I can do it.

## Speaker 1 :

(SB page 8)

Teen boy : Hi Khaled! How are you?

I'm having a great time  
here in Sydney. Australia  
is such a beautiful country  
and the sun always seems  
to be **shining**<sup>(1)</sup> here!



(1) مشرقة

(2) يشم هواء البحر

(3) يركز على

• نيلاً وبهازا

• مضطرب - مرتبك

It's so wonderful! Every day-after I've finished my lessons,  
I go down to the beach to have a break from studying and  
**smell the sea air**<sup>(2)</sup>. I have a few good friends here now, so we  
usually go together. The only problem is that sometimes I find  
it too difficult to **concentrate on**<sup>(3)</sup> my lessons because I'm  
thinking about going to the beach afterwards!

## Speaker 2 :

Teen girl : Hi Dad. I hope everything's OK at home. I'm fine, but I'm  
finding it quite difficult to get used to life in Tokyo - everything  
is so different here. It's not like at home where it's quiet all the  
time. It's always noisy because of the cars on the road **day and  
night**<sup>(4)</sup>! But the most difficult thing about this experience is  
that I don't know enough Japanese at the moment. People talk  
to me and I only understand a little bit of what they're saying,  
so I'm always feeling **confused**<sup>(5)</sup>. I hope things will get better!

## Speaker 3 :

Teen boy : Hi Mum! I miss you and everyone at home. I'm having a good time  
here in Barcelona. I feel so happy to be here and there are so many  
fun things I still want to do here, like visiting more of the beautiful  
buildings in the city. I'm getting a little bit better at Spanish every  
day - today I went to a café with friends and I remembered enough  
to buy some lunch. I came home feeling really good!



## Stative Verbs

الافعال الثابتة

## Types of Verbs

## أنواع الأفعال

## 1 Stative Verbs الأفعال الثابتة

هي أفعال تصف حالة ولا تُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

be – love – hate – dislike – seem ... etc.

ex. - He is being happy. (X) - He is happy. (✓)

## 2 Dynamic (Action) Verbs أفعال الحركة

هي أفعال تصف حدث أو حركة ويمكن أن تُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

play – visit – build – help – write ... etc.

ex. - She is writing an essay. (✓) - She writes an essay every week. (✓)

## 3 Verbs that are both Dynamic and Stative الأفعال الثابتة والحركة

هي أفعال تصف حدث أو حركة بمعنى معين وتُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة، وتصف حالة بمعنى آخر ولا تُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

be – have – see – smell – taste

ex. - She is having lunch now. (✓) (يتناول)

- She has lunch at three o'clock. (✓) (يتناول)

- She is having a tablet. (X) (يملك) - She has a tablet. (✓) (يملك)

## Most Important Stative Verbs أهم الأفعال الثابتة

## 1 Feelings and emotions أفعال الأحاسيس والمشاعر

care	يهتم - يراعى	miss	يشاق - يفقد
desire	يرغب	need	يحتاج
dislike	يكره	please	يسعد
hate	يكره	prefer	يفضل
impress	يُبهّر - يؤثر في	satisfy	يُرضى - يُشبع
like	يحب	want	يريد
love	يحب	wish	يتمنى
mind	يمنع / يبالى		

**2 Measurement - أفعال القياس**

consist of	يتكون من	include	يشمل / يتضمن
contain	يحتوي على	measure	يبلغ مقاسه
cost	تبلغ تكلفته	suit	يناسب - يلائم
deserve	يستحق	weigh (=have weight)	يبلغ وزنه
fit	يناسب - يلائم		

**3 Possession - أفعال الملكية**

belong	يخص / ينتمي إلى	own	يمتلك
have	يمتلك	possess	يمتلك
owe	يدين بـ (مال / معروف)		

**4 Senses - أفعال الحواس**

feel	يعطي ملمس	see	يرى
hear	يسمع	smell	يعطي رائحة ...
recognize	يتعرف على	taste	يعطي مذاق ...

**5 States/Qualities - أفعال الحالات / السمات**

appear	يبدو / يظهر	resemble	يشبه
exist	يوجد	seem	يبدو
look	يبدو	sound	يبدو

**6 Thoughts & Opinions - أفعال التفكير والقرارات**

agree	يوافق	imagine	يتخيل
believe	يعتقد / يظن	know	يعرف
concern	يهم - يشغل بال	matter	يهم
deny	ينكر	mean	يعني - يقصد
depend	يعتمد على	remember	يتذكر
disagree	يرفض	suppose	يفترض
doubt	يشك في	suspect	يشك في
feel (=have an opinion)	يعتقد / يظن	think (=have an opinion)	يعتقد / يظن
forget	ينسى	understand	يفهم



❶ لا تُستخدم الأفعال التقريرية بالمعاني المذكورة في الجداول السابقة في الأزمنة المستمرة، ويتم استخدام أقرب زمن بسيط حسب معنى الجملة:

- Mr Nasser **is having** a BMW. (مضارع مستمر) (X)
- Mr Nasser **has** a BMW. (مضارع بسيط) (✓)
- I **have been knowing** him for 6 years. (مضارع تام مستمر) (X)
- I **have known** him for 6 years. (مضارع تام بسيط) (✓)
- The tank **was containing** 45 litres of petrol. (ماضي مستمر) (X)
- The tank **contained** 45 litres of petrol. (ماضي بسيط) (✓)
- She **had been owning** a large villa. (ماضي تام مستمر) (X)
- She **had owned** a large villa. (ماضي تام بسيط) (✓)

❷ يمكن استخدام الأفعال التقريرية بمعاني غير المعاني المذكورة في الجدول السابق في الأزمنة المستمرة:

- I **am having** (=eating) lunch now. (المعنى يتناول وليس يمتلك)
- She **is having** (=spending) a great time. (المعنى تقضي وليس تمتلك)



### Important Exceptions

في الجدول التالي سيتم إلقاء الضوء على أهم الأفعال التقريرية التي تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة بمعاني أخرى غير المعاني المذكورة في الجداول السابقة:

Verb الفعل	Stative usage (لا يستخدم في أزمنة مستمرة)	Dynamic meaning (يستخدم في أزمنة مستمرة)
1. be	<b>am / is / are / was / were</b> يكون / يوجد - Nada <b>is being</b> very ill. (X) - Nada <b>is</b> very ill. (✓)	<b>am / is / are / was / were + being</b> يصبح - يتصرف - Nada <b>is being</b> boring. (✓) = She is boring by nature. - Nada <b>is being</b> boring. (✓) = She is temporarily boring.
<b>Note:</b> - يُستخدم الفعل (be) كفعل أساسي في الأزمنة المستمرة ويأتي بعده اسم أو صفة للحديث عن أحداث أو تصرفات وليس عن مشاعر أو وصف حالة دائمة: - He <b>was being</b> very silly. (= He <b>was behaving</b> in a silly way). - Sara <b>is being</b> stupid. (= Sara <b>is doing</b> stupid things).		

	لا يُستخدم الفعل (be) كفعل أساسي في الأزمنة المستمرة للحديث عن مشاعر: - I <b>am being</b> sad now. (X) - I <b>am</b> sad now. (✓)	
2. feel	<b>feel</b> يعنفد - يعطى ملمس - I <b>am feeling</b> he is right. (X) - I <b>feel</b> he is right. (✓) - The floor <b>is feeling</b> smooth. (X) - The floor <b>feels</b> smooth. (✓)	<b>feel</b> يشعر - He <b>is feeling</b> better today. (✓) - I <b>am feeling</b> hot. (✓) - She <b>was feeling</b> very tired yesterday. (✓)
3. have	<b>have / has / had</b> يمتلك - He <b>is having</b> a villa. (X) - He <b>has</b> a villa. (✓) - She <b>was having</b> a bike. (X) - She <b>had</b> a bike. (✓)	<b>have - eat / drink / spend</b> يأكل / يشرب / يقضي - I <b>am having</b> a nice time. (✓) = I <b>am spending</b> a nice time. - We <b>were having</b> fish. (✓) = We <b>were eating</b> fish.
4. look	<b>look</b> يبدو - Mum <b>is looking</b> tired. (X) - Mum <b>looks</b> tired. (✓)	<b>look</b> ينظر / يبحث - I <b>am looking</b> at the screen. (✓) - She <b>was looking</b> for a pen. (✓)
5. measure	<b>measure</b> يبلغ مقياسه - This room <b>is measuring</b> four metres long. (X) - This room <b>measures</b> four metres long. (✓)	<b>measure</b> يقبس - He <b>is measuring</b> the length of the room. (✓) - I <b>was measuring</b> the diameter قطر of the circle. (✓)
6. see	<b>see</b> يرى - He <b>is seeing</b> some fish in the clear water. (X) - He <b>sees</b> some fish in the clear water. (✓)	<b>see</b> يقابل - I <b>am seeing</b> some friends in the club tomorrow. (✓) - She <b>has been seeing</b> the dentist in the afternoon. (✓)
7. smell	<b>smell</b> يعطى رائحة - له رائحة - This meat <b>is smelling</b> delicious. (X) - This meat <b>smells</b> delicious. (✓)	<b>smell</b> يشم - I <b>am smelling</b> the cake. (✓) - Sama <b>was smelling</b> the new bottle of perfume. (✓)



8. taste	<p><b>taste</b> يعطى مذاق - له مذاق</p> <p>- This soup <b>is tasting</b> salty. (X)</p> <p>- This soup <b>tastes</b> salty. (✓)</p>	<p><b>taste</b> يذوق - يذوق</p> <p>- Mum <b>is tasting</b> the soup. (✓)</p> <p>- The chef <b>was tasting</b> the rice. (✓)</p>
9. think	<p><b>think</b> يعتقد</p> <p>- I <b>am thinking</b> she is ill. (X)</p> <p>- I <b>think</b> she is ill. (✓)</p>	<p><b>think</b> يفكر</p> <p>- I <b>am thinking</b> about the best solution to this problem. (✓)</p>
10. weigh	<p><b>weigh</b> يبلغ وزنه</p> <p>- This apple <b>is weighing</b> 70 grams. (X)</p> <p>- This apple <b>weighs</b> 70 grams. (✓)</p>	<p><b>weigh</b> يزن</p> <p>- The butcher <b>is weighing</b> the meat. (✓)</p> <p>- Ali <b>was weighing</b> the bag of rice. (✓)</p>

## Exercises On Language

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

📌 Getting started : Check what you have learnt

- I ..... to read novels during holidays; I prefer to read short stories instead. (سوهاج - المراجعة ٢٠٢٤)
  - am never liking
  - don't like
  - am not liking
  - like
- My uncle has stayed with me for a month, but now he ..... to leave. (الإسكندرية - المنتزه ٢٠٢٤)
  - is wanting
  - wants
  - wanted
  - will want
- I ..... a little boy in the room. He is sleeping on the sofa. (الاسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤)
  - am seeing
  - saw
  - can see
  - had seen
- I woke up at midnight when I ..... loud noise. (الحرية - شمال الحيزه ٢٠٢٤)
  - hear
  - am hearing
  - heard
  - was hearing
- He ..... strange voices every now and then. (المصومنه - صوف ٢٠٢٤)
  - hears
  - is hearing
  - hear
  - is heard
- Most scientists ..... that the world is getting hotter. (بورسعيد - جنوب بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤)
  - believes
  - are believing
  - believe
  - has believed

7. Now, my sister ..... happy as she has a modern mobile. (أسوء - حرجاً ٢٤ ٢٤)  
a. look                      b. is looking                      c. looking                      d. looks
8. This digital camera ..... to my friend Mai. (أسوان - أدفو ٢٤ ٢٤)  
a. belongs                      b. is belonging                      c. belong                      d. have belonged
9. Her baby ..... fifteen kilos now. (الشرقية - القربن ٢٤ ٢٤)  
a. weigh                      b. is weighing                      c. weighs                      d. weighing
10. The English very rarely talk on the underground. They ..... to read their newspapers.  
a. prefers                      b. are preferring                      c. prefer                      d. will prefer
11. His wife's food tastes ....., so he eats outdoors.  
a. badly                      b. well                      c. bad                      d. delicious
12. They ..... they were better at maths. (أسوان - نصر الثوبة ٢٣ ٢٣)  
a. wish                      b. were wishing                      c. are wishing                      d. wishes
13. At the moment, I can't buy this car. It ..... too much money. (الدمهلية - اجا ٢٣ ٢٣)  
a. is costing                      b. costs                      c. cost                      d. was costing
14. He ..... a large villa.  
a. own                      b. owns                      c. owning                      d. is owning
15. Sama ..... her meal right now.  
a. has had                      b. is having                      c. had                      d. have
16. This suggestion ..... good.  
a. sounding                      b. is sounding                      c. sound                      d. sounds
17. When I am away, I ..... my family very much.  
a. am missing                      b. missed                      c. misses                      d. miss
18. Children ..... kittens.  
a. are loving                      b. are being loved  
c. love                      d. are loved
19. Nada ..... like her mother.  
a. looks                      b. is looking                      c. is looked                      d. is being looked
20. I have to change my tight shoes. These ..... me.  
a. kill                      b. are killing                      c. killed                      d. were killing
21. I ..... people who never really listen to what you say.  
a. am hating                      b. hate                      c. hated                      d. am hated
22. Everyone ..... fun. It is such a beautiful day.  
a. has                      b. have                      c. is having                      d. are having



23. Some people ..... bottles of water in their hand. It's hot and they're thirsty.

- a. are holding      b. are held      c. hold      d. holds



### Special cases

24. Nobody ..... the cause of earthquakes.

(نورسعيد - بورفؤاد ٢٠٢٤)

- a. is knowing      b. knows      c. have known      d. was known

25. Hanan ..... about what to do to solve this problem.

(سوهاج - طها ٢٠٢٤)

- a. think      b. thinks      c. is thinking      d. thinking

26. What ..... of the play that we study this year?

(سوهاج - طهطا ٢٠٢٤)

- a. were you thinking      b. had you thought  
c. do you think      d. are you thinking

27. While Nadia ..... in hospital, her friends used to visit her every day.

(سوهاج - جرجا ٢٠٢٤)

- a. was being      b. being      c. was      d. were

28. Hala's little sister ..... very helpful today. That's nice.

(بورسعيد - بورفؤاد ٢٠٢٤)

- a. is being      b. isn't      c. were      d. being

29. You ..... absent-minded today. What has happened?

(كفر الشيخ - ملبس ٢٠٢٤)

- a. look      b. are looking      c. were looking      d. looks

30. The teacher ..... angrily at you because you have made a big mistake.

(المنوفية - الشهداء ٢٠٢٤)

- a. looks      b. look      c. was looking      d. is looking

31. He looks ..... today.

- a. seriously      b. friendly      c. cheerfully      d. nervously

32. My father looked ..... at me when I interrupted our guest.

- a. anger      b. angry      c. angrily      d. angered

33. Ramy was ..... with the waiter who was very slow.

- a. anger      b. angrily  
c. in an angry way      d. angry

34. This sauce ..... great.

- a. taste      b. tastes      c. tasting      d. is tasting

35. Mum ..... the sauce I have prepared. I hope she will like it.

- a. taste      b. tasted      c. tasting      d. is tasting

36. The police dog ..... these passengers' bags for drugs.

- a. smell      b. smells      c. is smelling      d. have smelt

37. I ..... what I say! Do you hear me?  
 a. mean                      b. am meaning      c. am meant                      d. a & b
38. This shirt ..... you. Try another one.  
 a. is fitting                      b. isn't fitting      c. fits                      d. doesn't fit
39. I ..... Dr Mustafa tonight.  
 a. see                      b. am seeing      c. had seen                      d. am seen
40. Rodayna ..... everything quite clearly. She is intelligent.  
 a. realises                      b. doesn't realise      c. is realising                      d. isn't realising
41. The situation ..... on your decision.  
 a. depend                      b. depends                      c. is depending                      d. is depended
42. The price of the meal..... the drinks.  
 a. include                      b. is including      c. isn't including                      d. includes



#### Check your understanding

43. We are having lunch now. The verb 'have' here is a verb showing .....  
 (سوهاج - المراجعة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. command                      b. sense                      c. action                      d. order
44. "My friends and I have arranged to meet for an informal dinner tomorrow." This means .....  
 a. I see my friends for an informal dinner tomorrow.  
 b. My friends see me for an informal dinner tomorrow.  
 c. I am seeing my friends for an informal dinner tomorrow.  
 d. a & b
45. Which of the following is **structurally correct**?  
 a. She is looking exhausted.                      b. She looks exhausted.  
 c. She is seeming exhausted.                      d. a & c
46. Which of the following is **structurally correct**?  
 a. Silk feels soft.                      b. Silk is feeling soft.  
 c. Silk is seeming soft.                      d. Silk is being soft.





### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

all in all,	في المُجمل - بصفة عامة	imagine(d) (v)	يتخيل
believe(d) (v)	يؤمن - يُصدّق	keep in touch	يبقى على تواصل مع
dear diary	ذكرى عزيزة - ذكرى لا تُنسى	miss(ed) (v)	يفتقد - يفوته
feel - felt(v)	يشعر - يلمس - يتحسس	taste(d) (v-n)	يعطي مذاق - يتذوق - مذاق
forget - forgot -	ينسى	think - thought(v)	يعتقد - يفكر
forgotten(v)		wish(ed) (v-n)	يرغب - أمنية

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

accent(n)	لهجة	mention(ed) (v)	يذكر - يقول
celebrate(d) (v)	يحتفل بـ - يحيي ذكرى	organise(d) (v)	يُنظّم
conversation(n)	محادثة	Parthenon(n)	معبد البارثينون
culture(n)	ثقافة - حضارة	passport(n)	جواز سفر
decide(d) (v)	يقرر	presentation(n)	عرض تقديمي
diary(n)	مفكرة يوميات	sound(ed) (v)	يبدو
entry(n)	مُقتطف - مُدخّل	storm(n)	عاصفة
flight(n)	رحلة جوية	summarise(d) (v)	يُلخّص - يختصر
Greece(n)	اليونان	text message(n)	رسالة نصية
include(d) (v)	يضمّن - يُضفّن	unfortunately(adv)	لسوء الحظ
Londoners(n)	اللندنيين (سكان لندن)	voice messages(n)	رسائل صوتية

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>all in all</b> في المُجمل - بصفة عامة	considering every part of a situation تضع في الاعتبار
<b>diary (n)</b> مفكرة يوميات	a book in which you write the things that happen to you each day
<b>keep in touch</b> يبقى على تواصل	when people keep in touch, they see, talk to, or write to each other often

## Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

## 1 Definitions

1. A /An ..... is a book in which you write down the things that happen to you each day.  
a. diary                      b. pamphlet                      c. atlas                      d. dairy
2. '.....' is used to show that you are considering every part of a situation.  
a. Get used to                      b. All in all                      c. Come across                      d. Pick up
3. When people ....., they see, talk to, or write to each other often.  
a. get lost                      b. pick up                      c. come out                      d. keep in touch

## 2 Key Vocabulary

4. .... all, all students should work hard at school. (السوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. All for                      b. All with                      c. Not at                      d. All in
5. .... you were a world-famous footballer, how would you feel? (السوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. Sound                      b. Present                      c. Celebrate                      d. Imagine
6. My uncle has gone to the UAE since January, I've ..... him very much. (الحيزة - شمال الحيزة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. missed                      b. fell                      c. host                      d. dropped
7. Meeting you for the first time is a/an ..... I will never forget.  
a. presentation                      b. accent  
c. diary entry                      d. dear diary
8. I have ..... my tablet at home, so I can't log on the internet.  
a. come across                      b. forgotten                      c. sounded                      d. weighed
9. I prefer the chips that ..... hot pepper and lemon.  
a. imagine                      b. taste                      c. encourages                      d. determines
10. The blind man used his stick to ..... his way.  
a. taste                      b. feel                      c. weigh                      d. wish
11. I'll get you a cold drink if you .....  
a. explore                      b. feel                      c. weigh                      d. wish

## 3 Important Vocabulary

12. After 10 years in Qatar, my uncle lost his Egyptian ..... and you can say he is Qatari. (الدقهلية - ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٤)  
a. nationality                      b. degree                      c. accent                      d. note



13. Admission to the ancient sites is ..... in the Cairo package.

(استوحد - جرحا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. consisted      b. included      c. determined      d. enclosed

14. A diary ..... is a collection of pages on a diary.

- a. milk      b. entry      c. entire      d. title

15. This meeting has been ..... by Mr Ayman.

- a. felt      b. believed      c. organised      d. sounded

16. It ..... like a mad plan to go swimming in that windy weather.

- a. experienced      b. struggled      c. volunteered      d. sounded

17. To ....., Salah is the most professional player in Egypt.

- a. sound      b. summarise      c. organise      d. mention

18. People who live in Europe have ..... different from that of the Arabs.

- a. dairy      b. accent      c. culture      d. drought

19. We ..... Sama's birthday on July 7<sup>th</sup>.

- a. celebrate      b. summarise      c. sound      d. mention

20. When he didn't answer my call, I sent him a ..... message.

- a. text      b. voice      c. flight      d. a & b

## PART II

## VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations - مترادفات لفظية

be	busy with	بشغل بـ	make	sure	يتأكد - يتيقن
do	a job	يؤدي عمل		new friends	يكون صداقات جديدة
feel	at home	يشعر بالترحاب	miss	my family	أفتقد أسرتي
get	better	يتحسن	taste	different	يعطي مذاق مختلف
	home	يصل للبيت	work	abroad	يعمل خارج البلاد
have	conversations	يجري حوارات			

### 2 Synonyms - مترادفات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
all in all,      في المجمل - بصفة عامة	considering everything, on the whole, taking everything into account, taking everything into consideration
diary      مفكرة يوميات	journal, calendar
mention      يذكر	say, name
organise      ينظم	arrange, put in order
unfortunately      لسوء الحظ	unluckily

### 3 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a long way from famous for	يُبعد كثيرا عن مشهور بـ	know what to do longer than usual	يعرف ماذا يفعل أطول من المعتاد
feel at home	يشعر بالراحة (كانه في بيته)	on time	في الوقت المحدد
find it hard to	يجد صعوبة في أن	pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
for the first time	لأول مرة	similar to	مشابه لـ
go back home	يعود للبيت / للوطن	stay/keep in touch with	يبقى على تواصل مع
how well	ما مدى جودة / كفاءة	until tomorrow	إلى الغد - ألقاك / أراسلك ... غدا
keep in touch	يبقى علي تواصل		
kind to me	طيب معي - رفيق بي		
so far	حتى الآن		

### 4 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

arrive at	يصل إلى (مكان صغير)	stay with	يقيم مع
leave ... behind	ينسي أن يحضر ...	try to	يحاول أن
look after	يرعى - يعتنى بـ		

### 5 Clear the confusion أبعث الغموض

#### diary - dairy

- **diary = journal** مذكره / مفكرة يومية
  - My grandfather used to keep a **diary**.
  - I enjoy reading my childhood **diary**.
- **diary = journal** أجندة (سجل مكتوب للتذكير بالمهام اليومية)
  - I forgot to put the time of the flight in my **diary**.
- **dairy** معمل ألبان / شركة ألبان
  - Make sure that everything in the **dairy** is clean.

### Exercises on Vocabulary Study

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Mention the reasons for not coming early to the meeting." 'Mention' can be replaced by ".....".  
 (الحيزه - منشأة القضاير ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. name      b. speak      c. add      d. follow
- The synonym of the verb 'organize' is .....  
 (السريره - القربى ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. damage      b. waste      c. arrange      d. explain
- It's your duty to make your guests ..... at home.  
 (المنوفه - صوف ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. feel      b. do      c. make      d. understand

4. It's very important to ..... in touch with your relatives. (الحيرة - أبو القريس ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. take                      b. keep                      c. do                      d. make
5. The brave soldier refused to run away and leave his fellow soldiers .....  
 (الافضل - ارمنت ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. forward                      b. about                      c. behind                      d. for
6. I have ..... so many friends since I started secondary school.  
 a. done                      b. made                      c. felt                      d. understood
7. Yesterday afternoon, I ..... busy preparing for my online test.  
 a. was                      b. showed                      c. studied                      d. had
8. My mother's food ..... different.  
 a. understands                      b. shares                      c. tastes                      d. finds
9. The word '.....' gives the same meaning of 'journal'.  
 a. dairy                      b. diary                      c. entry                      d. b & c
10. "Unluckily, I missed my flight." The adverb 'unluckily' is an antonym of '.....'.  
 a. unfortunately                      b. luckily                      c. fortunately                      d. b & c
11. How ..... did she do in the test?  
 a. good                      b. well                      c. much                      d. many
12. Don't worry. Rodayna knows .....  
 a. to do                      b. doing                      c. to doing                      d. what to do
13. He works in a .....  
 a. dairy                      b. diary                      c. servant                      d. maid



## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

#### A diary<sup>(1)</sup> entry<sup>(2)</sup> (SB page 11)

28<sup>th</sup> November 2020

I've been in London for six weeks now. It's been a great experience so far<sup>(3)</sup>, but it hasn't always been easy.

When I first arrived, I struggled to understand people. But I'm getting better at understanding their accents<sup>(4)</sup> now. I enjoy listening to Londoners<sup>(5)</sup>.



- (1) مفكرة يومية  
 (2) فقتطف - مدخل  
 (3) حتى الآن  
 (4) لهجات  
 (5) اللندنيون (سكان لندن)



and trying to have **conversations**<sup>(6)</sup> with them. You won't believe what happened to me today! I was talking to a woman in a shop and she asked me if I'm from London! Isn't that amazing? Everyone I've met has been very kind to me, so I feel really at home here. The **host family**<sup>(7)</sup> that I'm staying with are really nice.

They really look after me! There's always a hot **meal**<sup>(8)</sup> waiting on the table when I get home in the evening and I'm getting used to English food!

**All in all**<sup>(9)</sup>, I'm really glad that I decided to study in London. I **miss**<sup>(10)</sup> my family, but we keep in touch by **text messages**<sup>(11)</sup>. I've become more independent since I've been away. I have to **organise**<sup>(12)</sup> a lot of things on my own and **make sure**<sup>(13)</sup> I have enough money, for example. I'm still learning how to do that, but I'm enjoying it.

Until tomorrow!

Heba

- (6) محادثات
- (7) عائلة مضييفة
- (8) وجبة
- (9) في الفجفل - بصفة عامة
- (10) يفتقد
- (11) رسائل نصية
- (12) يُنظم
- (13) يتأكد

## Dalida's Diary

(WB page 5)

### Monday

#### Dear diary

I'm very **excited**<sup>(1)</sup>. My parents have bought our tickets to **Greece**<sup>(2)</sup>, and tomorrow I'm visiting Judy in **Athens**<sup>(3)</sup>. I'm going with Adam.



He's very independent and knows what to do in new places. I always enjoy travelling with my older brother.

### Tuesday

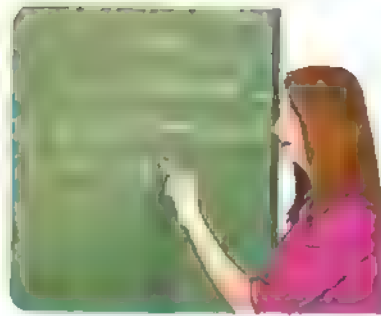
We struggled to leave the house this morning. Adam's always **forgetting**<sup>(4)</sup> things and nearly left his **passport**<sup>(5)</sup> behind! But we arrived at the airport **on time**<sup>(6)</sup>. I believe the **flight**<sup>(7)</sup> was longer than **usual**<sup>(8)</sup> because there was a **storm**<sup>(9)</sup>, but all in all, the journey was not too bad. Now I'm looking out of my window at the buildings of Athens. Isn't that amazing? I wish I could see Judy today, but we arrived very late. We're seeing her tomorrow.

### Wednesday

You won't believe what happened to me! I've been to the **Parthenon**<sup>(10)</sup>! I think it is one of the oldest buildings in the world! Judy took us there this afternoon. Judy loves Athens now and **showed**<sup>(11)</sup> us some amazing places, but I'm too tired to write more now. Until tomorrow!

- (1) متحمس / سعيد
- (2) دولة اليونان
- (3) مدينة أثينا
- (4) ينسى
- (5) جواز سفر
- (6) في الوقت المحدد
- (7) رحله جوية
- (8) معتاد - مألوف
- (9) عاصفة
- (10) معبد البارثينون
- (11) يوضح - يبين

## 2 Listening Texts



(SB page 10)

(1) عرض / تقديم

(2) المزايا والعيوب

(3) العمل خارج البلد

(4) ثقافة

(5) يحتفل

(6) جدال

(7) مهارات التواصل

(8) يشفق

(9) سوء الحظ

**Teen Girl :** Hello everyone. In this **presentation**<sup>(1)</sup>, I'm going to talk about the **pros and cons**<sup>(2)</sup> of working abroad. When you first think about **working abroad**<sup>(3)</sup>, it sounds very exciting. But there are a few disadvantages of working abroad as well as advantages. Let's start with the advantages first.

I believe that the best thing about working abroad is probably that you can learn a lot about another country's **culture**<sup>(4)</sup>.

Imagine trying new food every day and learning about how people from another culture **celebrate**<sup>(5)</sup>.

Another good reason for working abroad is that it helps you to become more independent. Perhaps you feel that you're independent at home, but when you're living far away from home, you really have to be. Finally, I think a further **argument**<sup>(6)</sup> for working abroad is that you can learn useful skills, especially language skills and probably also **communication skills**<sup>(7)</sup>.

These skills can help you to get a good job when you come back home.

However, there are clearly disadvantages to working abroad as well. One serious disadvantage is that you will probably be a long way from home and **miss**<sup>(8)</sup> your family.

And let's not forget that you may not like the country or city that you move to if it's different to your home.

**Unfortunately**<sup>(9)</sup>, it's sometimes difficult to make friends when you're living abroad too, and you might wish you could just go back home and spend time with your old friends.

**Teen boy :** Hi Dalida, I imagine you're thinking that I have forgotten you! Don't worry, I haven't! I've just been really busy in my new job here in Greece. Sorry, I haven't phoned you before! As you probably know, I'm working here in a language school. It's the first time I've worked abroad. It's fun sharing a flat with two other women, but I'm not used to cooking, cleaning and shopping every week for myself! I **suppose**<sup>(1)</sup> I'm becoming more independent though.



Greece is very beautiful and I believe that the weather is quite like Cairo but not so hot! I enjoy hearing Greek music and most of the food tastes really good! Some things are different, though. It is more expensive here, and I don't like the prices of things in the shops! I'm trying to learn Greek but it is not easy. When I say something in Greek to people in the shops, they usually answer me in English! So, I am having a great time, but of course, I miss friends **especially**<sup>(2)</sup> you. Call me back some time, or I'll call again later. Bye!

(1) يفترض

(2) على وجه الخصوص

## UNIT IV LANGUAGE

### The Present Continuous Tense

من المضارع المستمر

Form	The present continuous
<b>Affirmation</b> الإثبات	<p><b>Subject</b> الفاعل + <b>am / is / are + (inf. + ing) ...</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I'm <b>watching</b> a film on TV at home.</li> <li>- Sama <b>is drawing</b> a picture.</li> <li>- They <b>are playing</b> tennis in the club right now.</li> </ul>
<b>Negation</b> النفي	<p><b>Subj. + am not / is not (isn't) / are not (aren't) + (inf. + ing) ...</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I <b>am not watching</b> a film on TV at the office.</li> <li>- Sama <b>isn't writing</b> a letter.</li> <li>- They <b>aren't playing</b> football in the club right now.</li> </ul>
<b>'Yes / No' Q.</b> السؤال بـ (هل)	<p><b>Am / Is / Are + subj. + (inf. + ing) ... ?</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <b>Are you watching</b> a film on TV at home ?</li> <li>- <b>Is Sama drawing</b> a picture?</li> <li>- <b>Are they playing</b> tennis in the club right now ?</li> </ul>



<b>'Wh_' Q.</b> السؤال بأداة استفهام	<b>Q.W. أداة استفهام + am / is / are + subj. + (inf. + ing) ... ?</b> - Where are you watching the film? - Who is drawing a picture? - What are they doing in the club right now?
<b>Passive</b> المبنى للمجهول	<b>Object المفعول + am / is / are + being + p.p. ...</b> - A film is being watched on TV at home (by me). - A picture is being drawn (by Sama). - Tennis is being played in the club right now (by Ahmed).
<b>Time Expressions</b> التعبيرات الزمنية	- now الآن - at (the/this) moment في هذه اللحظة - still - مارال - at present في الوقت الحاضر - currently حالياً ... tomorrow غداً - in the future المستقبل - next القادم ...

### Mini Test 1

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Salma and I ..... cleaning the kitchen.  
a. am                      b. am being                      c. are                      d. are being
- The kitchen .....  
a. is cleaning                      b. is being cleaned                      c. are cleaning                      d. are being cleaned
- What ..... in the kitchen?  
a. is doing                      b. is being done                      c. are you doing                      d. b & c
- Is Nada ..... the baby?  
a. feeding                      b. being fed                      c. feeds                      d. fed
- Is the baby ..... ?  
a. feeding                      b. being fed                      c. feeds                      d. be fed
- Rodayna is revising for the exams .....  
a. at the moment                      b. at that moment                      c. so far                      d. the other day

### Usage

يُستخدم المضارع المستمر في الحالات التالية:

١ وصف أو السؤال عن أحداث أو مواقف تحدث الآن (لحظة الكلام):

ex. - Omar is taking a shower, so he can't answer the phone.

- Are you watching this programme?                      - What are you doing?

٢ وصف مواقف أو أحداث في الحاضر تختلف عما كان سائداً أو مألوفاً في الماضي:

ex. - Young people aren't reading newspapers these days.

- Currently, most businesses are communicating via emails.

٢ التعبير عن مواقف مستمرة تحدث حول المضارع وليس بالضرورة الآن وقد تستغرق مدي زمني طويل، ويمكن أن تستخدم تعبيرات زمنية مثل:

هذا العقد today - tonight - these days - this month - this year - this decade  
- still لا يزال ...

ex. - Ali is taking the final exams these days.  
- I'm reading 'King Lear' today. - Are you still working in London?

٤ التعبير عن الصيق أو عدم الرضا عن أحداث يقوم بها الناس بشكل متكرر، وغالباً يتم استخدام ظروف التكرار (always - constantly) كالتالي:

... am / is / are + always / constantly / never... + (inf. + ing)

ex. - You are always coming to school late, Moataz.  
- Samar is constantly talking about herself.  
- They're always complaining.

٥ وصف الصور (على اعتبار أن الحدث في الصورة مستمر):

ex. - In the picture, everybody is having fun.

٦ التعبير عن الترتيبات المستقبلية (أي التعبير عن أحداث تم الترتيب لحدوثها في وقت معين في المستقبل، وفي هذه الحالة لابد من وجود تعبير زمني دال على المستقبل):

ex. - My sister is getting married next month.

### Comparing Tenses

١ عند التعبير عن الحقائق الثابتة نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس المضارع المستمر:

ex. - Lions are eating meat. (X) - Lions eat meat. (✓)

٢ عند التعبير عن العادات نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس المضارع المستمر:

ex. - Mum is getting up early every day. (X)  
- Mum gets up early every day. (✓)

٣ عند التعبير عن جداول المواعيد نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس المضارع المستمر:

ex. - The first train to Cairo is leaving at six tomorrow. (X)  
- The first train to Cairo leaves at six tomorrow. (✓)

٤ نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس المضارع المستمر مع الأفعال التفريرية (أفعال الحواس والإدراك والمشاعر والملكية ...):

ex. - I am loving my mother. (X) - I love my mother. (✓)

### Mini Test 2

Apply

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Karim can't go out with us. He ..... for his exams.

a. is revising    b. is being revised    c. was revising    d. was revised

2. My car isn't available today. It ..... at the garage.  
a. was checking                      b. was being checked  
c. is checking                        d. is being checked
3. Sending letters is no longer common. Not many people ... .. using them.  
a. communicates                      b. communicated  
c. are communicating                  d. communicating
4. Sama ..... to be a doctor. I think she will achieve her goal.  
a. study                      b. studied                      c. is studying                      d. was studying
5. You ..... my charger, Ahmed. That's annoying.  
a. are always used                      b. are always using  
c. were always using                      d. a & b
6. It is arranged. I ..... to New York next Friday.  
a. am travelling                      b. am being travelled  
c. going to travel                      d. am going to travel
7. Cows ..... grass, not meat.  
a. are eating                      b. are being eaten                      c. have eaten                      d. eat
8. I can't drink this tea. It ..... too sweet.  
a. taste                      b. is tasting                      c. tastes                      d. is tasted
9. My plane ....., off at 6:55 tomorrow.  
a. take                      b. takes                      c. is taking                      d. us being taken

### Check your understanding

- 1- Subj. + am / is / are + (inf. + ing) ...
- 2- Subj. + have / has + prepared / arranged + to + inf. ...
- 3- Subj. + have / has + made arrangements + to + inf. ...
- 4- Everything + is + ready / prepared / arranged + for + .....

٢ لاحظ تحويل جملة المضارع التام المنفي إلى مضارع مستمر مثبت بالصيغة التالية:



## Exercises On Language

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :



Getting started : Check what you have learnt

1. Shady ..... his blog in his room at the moment. (الحريره - شمال الحره ٢٠٢٤)  
a. was writing    b. write    c. is writing    d. will writing
2. They can't go shopping at the moment because it..... heavily. (الاسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. is raining    b. rains    c. will rain    d. rain
3. The film ..... (السوان - نصر اللوة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. watching    b. is being watched  
c. is watching    d. is going to watch
4. Look! The car ..... towards us quickly. (كفر السبخ - موه ٢٠٢٤)  
a. comes    b. came    c. is coming    d. coming
5. Don't make noise; the baby ..... at the moment. (الاسكندرية - وسط الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. was sleeping    b. is sleeping    c. isn't sleeping    d. sleep
6. We have made all our arrangements. We ..... the holiday in Alex. (الحريره - ملساة القناطر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. spend    b. are spending    c. will spend    d. is spending
7. Some friends are ..... by Ali to come. (سوهاج - جلفا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. be called    b. been called    c. being called    d. calls
8. I ..... behind the camera. You can't see me. This isn't a selfie. (سوهاج - جهبله ٢٠٢٤)  
a. am not stood    b. has stood    c. stands    d. am standing
9. I can't play this game with you as I ..... for my next exams. (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. revise    b. have revised    c. was revising    d. am revising
10. We can't enter the hall because it..... now. (أسسوط - صدفا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. was painting    b. was being painting  
c. is painting    d. is being painted
11. These days, most people ..... email instead of writing letters.  
a. have used    b. used    c. are using    d. are used
12. I'm sick of Mona and Reham. They don't get on well. They ..... (سوهاج - ساقلنة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. disputes    b. always disputes  
c. are always disputing    d. never dispute
13. I ..... my sunglasses today because the sun is very strong.  
a. am wearing    b. am being worn  
c. won't wear    d. can't wear

14. .... with us tonight?  
 a. He comes      b. Does he come      c. He is coming      d. Is he coming
15. Why ..... doing your homework? What a lazy boy!  
 a. are you      b. aren't you      c. you are      d. you aren't
16. Ahmed, you ..... me when I speak. Stop it, please! It's so irritating.  
 a. interrupt always      b. always interrupts  
 c. always are interrupting      d. are always interrupting
17. No one of us ..... a bike. You cannot ride a bike in this field.  
 a. are riding      b. is riding      c. rides      d. is ridden
18. Nobody ..... They are not in a hurry.  
 a. runs      b. is being run      c. run      d. is running

## 2 Special cases

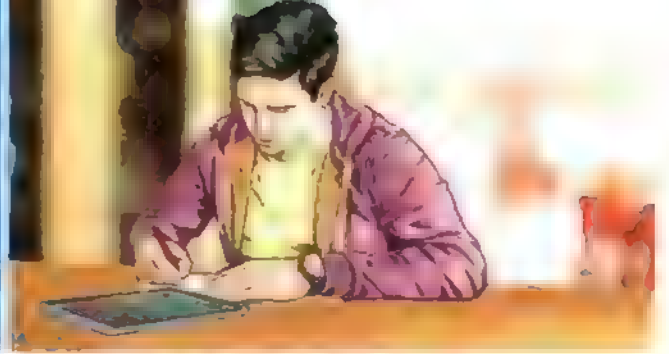
19. We ..... on grammar at the English class tomorrow. (سوهاج - المساء ٢٤)  
 a. are testing      b. were tested  
 c. are being tested      d. have been tested
20. Mona ..... the same mistakes. That's really annoying. (بورسعيد - يورفؤاد ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. is always made      b. is always making  
 c. always make      d. always is making
21. What a nuisance! You ..... me of bad intentions. (المنصورة - السعداء ٢٤)  
 a. are always accusing      b. always are accused  
 c. always accused      d. always accuses
22. My uncle ..... as an engineer. It's his permanent job. (سوهاج - سامية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. is working      b. work      c. had worked      d. works
23. I don't know why ..... at me. (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. he always is shouting      b. he constantly shout  
 c. is he always shouting      d. he is constantly shouting
24. Stress ..... high blood pressure. (المنصورة - اسكفور ٢٤)  
 a. cause      b. causes      c. is causing      d. have caused
25. I ..... a wonderful time here in this hotel. Everyone is really nice.  
 a. had      b. am having      c. going to have      d. had had
26. He ..... that he will mend the door but he never does it.  
 a. says always      b. will always say  
 c. is always saying      d. was always saying
27. My father doesn't like my coffee. He thinks that it ..... awful.  
 a. tastes      b. taste      c. is tasting      d. is being tasted

28. She ..... the truth and it is annoying.  
**a.** never tell                                      **b.** don't tell  
**c.** is never telling                                **d.** is always telling
29. They ..... up early in the morning. That's very good.  
**a.** always get                                     **b.** always gets  
**c.** are always getting                          **d.** always are getting
30. I can see some people who ....., their dogs. Their dogs are on a leash طوق.  
**a.** are walking                                   **b.** are being walked  
**c.** walked                                         **d.** are walked

### 3 Check your understanding

31. Ali is always spending too much time watching TV. الفعل - لا يعرفه
- a. The speaker is clearly criticizing Ali.
- b. It isn't clear that the speaker is criticizing Ali.
- c. The speaker is clearly praising Ali.
- d. The speaker is clearly praising TV.
32. "My sister is helping me with a maths problem." This means that .....
- a. my sister is helped with a maths problem.
- b. I am helping my sister with a maths problem.
- c. I am being helped with a maths problem by my sister.
- d. a maths problem is being helped by my sister.
33. Rodayna can't reply to your email. This means that ... ..
- a. Her laptop is offline.
- b. She is busy welcoming some guests.
- c. She has taken a shower.
- d. Both 'a' and 'b' are possible.
34. "Ahmed has arranged to fly to London next Friday." This means Ahmed .....
- a. is flown to London next Friday
- b. is flying to London next Friday
- c. flies to London next Friday
- d. is being flying to London next Friday
35. "Aya hasn't finished the cooking yet." This means .....
- a. Aya is still doing the cooking.      b. Aya hasn't done the cooking yet.
- c. Aya is still being done the cooking.      d. Aya is not doing the cooking.
36. "What annoys me is his repeated complaints." This means .....
- a. He is never complaining.      b. He is always complaining.
- c. He is constantly complaining.      d. b & c





## PART 1 LANGUAGE HINTS

### verb + object + (inf. + ing)

يمكن استخدام الأفعال التالية ويليها المفعول ثم (inf. + ing) :

→ **keep – hate – dislike – not like – imagine** يتضمن – **involve** يتخيل – **come across** يصادف – **prevent** يمنع – **remember – risk** يخاطر بـ **stop + object** + (inf. + ing) مفعول ...

- ex.** I don't mind you joining the school trip.  
- She can't imagine him not being her father.  
- Be cool or you can risk the boy losing interest in his study.  
- I stopped Leen damaging her toys.

### I wish / I'd rather / It's time + past simple

أ. لاحظ :

أ. جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (I wish) تعبر عن تمني في المضارع .

**ex.** - I wish my father earned more money.

(والدي لا يحصل علي مال كاف و أتمني العكس !)

ب. جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (I would rather) تعبر عن عدم رضا أو رفض (الشيء في المضارع).

**ex.** - I'd rather you didn't ask me to lend you money.

(يعني ذلك أنني لا أريد أن أقرضك أي نقود !)

ج. جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (It's time) تعبر عن تذكير أو لوم :

**ex.** - It's time you returned the book to the library. (المسحود هنا يلوم أو يذكّر)

د. في حالة وجود تعبير زمني يدل علي الماضي بعد (I wish / I'd rather / It's time) استخدم

بعدهم الماضي التام (had + p.p.) وليس الماضي البسيط :

**ex.** - I'd rather you had finished the report last Friday.

**ex.** - I wish I hadn't wasted all my money last summer holiday.

### too + adj. + to + inf. ... جداً لدرجة أنه لا يستطيع

تعطي هذه الصيغة معني اللقي :

→ **too + adj. + to + inf. = so + adj. + that +** جملة منفية

**ex.** - I'm too tired to write more now.

= I'm so tired that I can't write more now.

**ex.** - He is too short to play basketball.

= He is so short that he isn't able to play basketball.

### teach - learn - know - show - tell ... + how to + inf.

يمكن استخدام أدوات الاستفهام قبل (to) بعد بعض الأفعال السابقة :

**ex.** - I don't know what to do in this difficult situation.

- Mrs Noha showed me how to draw a nice flower.
- The shop owner told me where to find the bus stop.

### إِسْمُ الْجَمْعِ Collective nouns

اسم الجمع هو اسم مفرد يدل على مجموعة أفراد أو أشياء، ومن أمثلة هذه الأسماء ما يلي:

- **team** – **group** – **family** **class** – **flock** طاقم **crew** – هيئة عاملين **staff** – قطيع **couple** زوج – **the government** – **gang** عصابة...

هذه الأسماء في صيغة المفرد تدل على جمع ويمكن أن تأخذ فعل مفرد (عندما نشير إلى معالها كوحدة واحدة) أو جمع (عندما نشير إلى الأعضاء المكونة لها) حسب المعنى المقصود:

- ex.** - My family **are** happy. - My family **is** the most important thing in my life.

تأخذ الكلمات السابقة فعل جمع إذا أستخدمنا معها (**who / whom**) أو أي ضمير جمع، أما إذا استخدمنا معها (**which**) أو ضمير غير عاقل فهي تأخذ فعل مفرد

- ex.** - The gang **who** robbed the bank **were** arrested yesterday.  
- The gang **which** robbed the bank **was** arrested yesterday.

### on / of ... own

- **On (your-my-her....) own = by + alone** = ضمير منعكس (دون مساعده). بنفسه/بمفرده

**ex.** - Mariam did her homework **on her own** (alone/by herself).

- **Of (my/his/her/your ..... ) own**

تدل على الملكية (ملكه)

**ex.** - I have a flat **of my own**.

### start / begin + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)

- يأتي بعد (**start / begin**) المصدر مضافا له (**ing**) أو (**to + inf.**) دون فرق في المعنى:

**ex.** - He **began working / to work** for this company last year.

- لكن بعد (**starting / beginning**) نستخدم (**to + inf.**) فقط:

**ex.** - I **was starting to do** my homework when the phone rang.

### find it + adj. + to + inf. ... أن ... يجد من

**ex.** - I **found it difficult** to move the cupboard alone.

- Sama **finds it interesting** to watch programmes about nature.

### else أيضا / آخر

- **Q.W.** ..... أيضا **else** + أداة استفهام

**ex.** - Who **else** did you meet?

- Where **else** have you been?

→ **someone / anyone / something / anything .... + else** آخر

**ex.** - **Someone else** is knocking on the door.

- I don't want **anything else**. Thank you.

كما يمكن استخدام (**else**) بعد (**or**) للتحذير

**ex.** - Do your homework **or else** you will be punished.

## Exercise On Language Hints

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I wish I ..... more for this test; I can't answer a lot of questions.  
(بورسعيد - بورفؤاد ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. study                      b. studied                      c. have studied                      d. **had studied**
2. I wish I ..... to Port Said last week.  
(سوهاج - التلينا ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. would go                      b. went                      c. could go                      d. **had gone**
3. It is the Governor's responsibility. He'd better consider ..... the expansion to public transport network.  
(الاسرعة - عرب (الفرافيق ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. organize                      b. organising                      c. organisation                      d. **organizer**
4. I'd rather he ..... the conference yesterday.  
(دمياط - البروجه ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. attended                      b. **had attended**                      c. attend                      d. would attend
5. The team who won the Champions' League ..... being honoured.  
 a. is                      b. has                      c. are                      d. **have**
6. The team which won the Champions' League ..... being honoured.  
 a. is                      b. has                      c. are                      d. **have**
7. Where ..... did you go during your last holiday ?  
 a. also                      b. **else**                      c. too                      d. **neither**
8. I came across a group of boys ..... in the canal.  
 a. swims                      b. **swam**                      c. to swim                      d. **swimming**
9. Rokaya finds it ..... to understand maths.  
 a. hard                      b. **hardly**                      c. hardy                      d. **hardness**
10. I did all these jobs ..... my own. That's why I am dead tired.  
 a. from                      b. **off**                      c. of                      d. **on**
11. My brother makes a lot of noise, so I want to have a room ..... my own.  
 a. from                      b. **off**                      c. of                      d. **on**
12. There was too much noise and he was starting ..... nervous.  
 a. getting                      b. **to get**                      c. a & b                      d. **to getting**
13. Leen took the medicine and soon she started ..... better.  
 a. getting                      b. **to get**                      c. a & b                      d. **to getting**
14. Mr Mohammed taught me ..... English.  
 a. to speak                      b. **how to speak**                      c. what to speak                      d. **a & b**



## LANGUAGE SKILLS

### 1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (مسيوبه - ده ٢٠٢٤)

"No smoking" is what we read in closed public places and public means of transport. Scientists have found links between smoking and



numerous health problems, including cancer, heart disease and lung disease. On average, smokers die 10 years sooner than non-smokers, according to the Centers for Diseases Control and Prevention. Despite the risks, almost many adults smoke and they can't stop smoking. The main reasons for this are that nicotine is addictive and eliminating the habit is difficult. However, there is much support and help available.

If you don't smoke, don't start. This is a valuable piece of advice we often receive from the majority of doctors. Cigarette smoking and pollution represent fearful enemies to man as they damage health and eventually bring about death.

Doctors have proved that the smoker's lungs, throat and respiratory system are often attacked by cancer. Male cigarette smokers have higher death rate from heart diseases than non-smoking females. Female smokers are less affected because they don't breathe in the smoke so deeply. Smoking is **banned** in cinemas, theatres and all closed public places. In some places, there are special rooms for smoking, just to protect non-smokers from its danger. **They** are helpless victims because they inhale poisonous gas and nicotine; they receive much more smoke than the smokers themselves. The majority of smokers who want to stop smoking prefer to ask a medical specialist's rather than using self-help approaches.

1. The main idea of the passage is about the ..... of smoking.  
a. dangers                      b. pros                      c. causes                      d. symptoms
2. The underlined word '**They**' refers to .....  
a. female smokers                      b. non-smokers  
c. doctors                      d. male smokers
3. Non-smoking females have ... .. death rate from heart diseases than male cigarette smokers.  
a. higher                      b. lower                      c. greater                      d. the same
4. According to the passage, there is a link between smoking and .....  
a. headache                      b. fever                      c. diabetes                      d. cancer
5. The underlined word '**banned**' is similar in meaning to .....  
a. prohibited                      b. profitable                      c. available                      d. permitted
6. Nicotine is an addictive chemical, so it's ..... for smokers to stop smoking.  
a. possible                      b. hard                      c. easy                      d. probable
7. According to the passage, smoking affects the ... .. system most.  
a. circulatory                      b. digestive                      c. respiratory                      d. immune
8. Doctors advise non-smokers not to ..... smoking.  
a. avoid                      b. start                      c. stop                      d. neglect

## 2 Writing a diary Entry كتابة عن موقف أو ذكرى في مقبرة اليوميات

Write a diary entry of about (180) words about a day in your life while you're living in a new place or abroad.

1<sup>st</sup> January 2021

I've been in Paris for two years now. I think it's been a great experience so far, but it hasn't always been as easy as I have expected.

When I first arrived in Paris, I found it very difficult to understand people. However, I'm getting quite better at understanding people's accents now. I really enjoy listening to people from Paris. I usually try to have conversations with them. I have become very good at speaking French. You won't believe what happened to me two days ago! I was talking to a man on the underground and he asked me if I was from Paris!

Isn't that amazing? The people here are very nice. Everyone I've met has usually been very helpful to me. Consequently, I feel really at home here.

The host family that I'm staying with are really generous. They really look after me as if I am a member of their family! There's always a hot meal waiting on the table when I get home in the evening and I'm getting used to French food! In fact, I liked the French kitchen a lot.

I can't deny that I'm really happy that I decided to study medicine here in Paris. Sometimes I miss my family and friends, but I keep in touch with them by video calls, online chatting and emails. I've become more independent since I've arrived here. I have to do a lot of things on my own. I have to make sure I have enough money, for example. I'm still learning how to do so many things, but I'm really enjoying my life here.

Until tomorrow!

Rokaya

## 3 Writing

★ Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:

(بورتسعيد - بورقؤاد ٢٠٢٤)

“Pros and cons of working abroad”

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 3 Translation الترجمة

## 1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. There are many advantages to living aboard, where one can gain many experiences and knowledge of other cultures, as well as developing their abilities.

(سوهاج - طما ٢٠٢٤)

- a. هناك الكثير من المزايا للمعيشة بالخارج، حيث يستطيع المرء اكتساب الكثير من الأموال والإلمام بالثقافات الأخرى بالإضافة إلى تنمية قدراته.
- b. هناك الكثير من المزايا للعمل بالخارج، حيث يستطيع المرء اكتساب الكثير من الخبرات والإلمام بالثقافات الأخرى بالإضافة إلى تنمية قدراته.
- c. هناك الكثير من المزايا للمعيشة بالخارج، حيث يستطيع المرء اكتساب الكثير من الخبرات والتطلع إلى الثقافات الأخرى بالإضافة إلى تنمية قدراته.
- d. هناك الكثير من المزايا للمعيشة بالخارج، حيث يستطيع المرء اكتساب الكثير من الخبرات والإلمام بالثقافات الأخرى بالإضافة إلى تنمية قدراته.

2. Unity and cooperation are the necessary qualities which we need to succeed in our national projects. So, we must help and support each other.

(بورسعيد - بورفؤاد ٢٠٢٤)

- a. إن الوحدة والتعاون هما الصفتان الضرورييتان اللتان نحتاجهم للنجاح في مشروعاتنا القومية، لذلك يجب أن نساعد ونساند بعضنا البعض.
- b. إن الوحدة والتعاون هما الصفتان الضرورييتان اللتان لا نحتاجهم للنجاح في مشروعاتنا القومية، لذلك يجب أن نساعد ونساند بعضنا البعض.
- c. إن الوحدة والتعاون هما الصفتان الأساسيتان اللتان نحتاجهم للنجاح في مشروعاتنا القومية، لذلك يجب أن نساعد ونساند بعضنا البعض.
- d. إن الوحدة والتعاون هما الصفتان الضرورييتان اللتان نحتاجهم للنجاح في مشروعاتنا القومية، لذلك يجب ألا نساعد ونسأهم مع بعضنا البعض.

## 2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

1. التعليم أساسي للطلاب من كل الأعمار في كل مكان في العالم، فهو عملية اكتساب

(سوهاج - المساه ٢٠٢٤)

المعرفة والقيم والمهارات والعادات الإيجابية.

- a. Education is essential for students of different ages all over the world. It is the process of acquiring knowledge, skills and positive habits.
- b. Education is not essential for students of different ages all over the world. It is the process of achieving knowledge, values, skills and positive habits.
- c. Education is essential for students of different ages all over the world. It is the process of acquiring knowledge, values, skills and positive habits.
- d. Education is essential for students of different ages all over the world. It is the process of achieving knowledge, values, skills and negative habits.



٢ التعليم هو عملية يكتسب الناس من خلالها المعرفة والمهارات والقيم التي تساعدكم أن يصبحوا أعضاء نافعين في المجتمع، لذا يجب على الآباء والمعلمين أن يتشاركوا في هذه المسؤولية.

(بورسعيد - يورفؤاد ٢٤ ٢٠٢٢)

- Education is a process by which people acquire knowledge, skills and values that help them become useful members in society. Therefore, parents and teachers should share this responsibility.
- Education is a process by which people acquire knowledge, skills or values that help them become useful members in society. Therefore, parents and teachers should share these responsibilities.
- Education is a process by which people take knowledge, skills and values that help them become useful numbers in society. Therefore, parents and teachers should share this responsibility.
- Education is a process by which people acquire knowledge, skills and values that help them become useful persons in society. Therefore, parents and teachers should share this irresponsibility.



**JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL**

◀ للفائقين فقط

### determination

- **determine (v)** يحدد - يبت في
  - The police have **determined** the cause of the fire.
  - Your marks in the final exams **determine** the faculty الكلية you will join.
- **determination (n)** إصرار - عزيمة
  - Rodayna has great **determination** to reach her goal.
- **determination (n)** تحديد - اتخاذ القرار بشأن
  - The **determination** of the new plan needs a lot of efforts.
- **determined (adj)** ذو عزيمة - يتحلى بالإصرار
  - My uncle is a very **determined** man.
- **be determined + to + inf.** مُصمَّم علي - عازم علي
  - I **was determined to** look for a better job.

### encouragement

- **encourage + (inf. + ing)** يشجع - يحض علي **discourage** يصرف ... عن
  - The government **encourages starting** private businesses. مشروعات خاصة
- **encourage someone to + inf.** يشجع شخص على القيام بشيء
  - His mother **encourages him to do** a sport to keep fit.
- **discourage someone from + (inf. + ing)** يثني ... عن / يضرِّف ... عن
  - I **discourage Rodayna from making** friends with bad girls.

- **encouraging** مُشجّع / مُحفّز ≠ **discouraging** مُحبط - محبط  
- The words of my boss were really **encouraging**.
- **encouragement** تشجيع - تحفيز ≠ **discouragement** إحباط - تثبيط  
- She is hard-working by nature. She doesn't need **encouragement**.

#### لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- give ... **encouragement** يشجع ...
- get **encouragement** ينال التشجيع
- **positive encouragement** تشجيع ايجابي
- **active encouragement** تشجيع بالقول والفعل
- **words of encouragement** كلمات تحفيزية

### explore

- **explore (v)** يفكر بامعان / يتدبر / يتحرى بدقة  
- I have to **explore** other solutions to the problem.
- **explore (v)** يستكشف (مكان)  
- Some areas in this forest haven't been **explored** yet.
- **explore (v)** يتحسس  
- The blind man **explored** the door to find the key hole.
- **explorer (n)** مُستكشف (مكان / فكرة)  
- Some **explorers** went into the forest in the early morning.
- **exploration (n)** استكشاف (مكان)  
- The **exploration** of space costs too much money.
- **unexplored (adj)** مكان غير مُستكشف / فكرة لم يتم مناقشتها  
- Some planets **are still unexplored**.

### independent

- **depend (on / upon) = rely (v)** يعتمد علي  
- Egypt **depends on** tourism as a source of hard currency العملة مصدر الصعبة.
- **dependants / dependents (n)** عيال / معולים (عالة علي غيرهم)  
- Salma is a widow أرملة with several **dependants / dependents**.
- **independent** مستقل - غير مُحتل  
- Egypt became **independent** in 1956.
- **independent (of)** معتمد علي نفسه مستقل في حياته وقراراته  
- You shouldn't be **dependent** on your parents all your life.  
- He is now an adult بالغ who is **independent** of his parents.

• **independent (of)** مستقل بذاته ≠ **dependent** معتمد علي غيره - متواكل

- He has an **independent** supermarket.

• **independence (from)** استقلال (عن) ≠ **dependence (on)** اعتماد (علي)

- Egypt gained **independence from** England in 1956.

### لاحظ التعبيرات التالية

- full / complete independence

استقلال تام

- economic / political independence

استقلال اقتصادي / سياسي

- get / gain / achieve / win independence

يحصل علي الاستقلال

- grant independence

يمنح الاستقلال

- Independence Day

عيد الاستقلال

- struggle for independence

يدرس من حق الاستقلال

### struggle

• **struggle to + inf. (v)**

يتناضل / يكافح لكي

- My parents **struggled to** educate us.

• **struggle with + n / (inf. + ing) (v)**

يدرس / يكافح مع - يتصارع مع

- I am **struggling with** physics which is very difficult to me.

- While he was **struggling with** the bullies, he was badly wounded. خرج

• **struggle for + n / (inf. + ing) (v)**

يتناضل / يكافح من أجل - يتساحر علي

- We **struggle for** better living conditions.

- The two brothers were **struggling for** the new bike.

• **struggle (for / with / against) (n)**

بصلا / كفاح (من أجل / مع ، ضد)

- We are proud of Egypt's history of **struggle for** independence.

• **be a struggle (for somebody)**

يمثل صعوبة (بالنسبة لشخص ما)

- Essay writing is a **struggle for** some students.

### Important Expressions تعبيرات هامة

• **all in all**

في المجمل - بصفة عامة

- All in all, the new villa was a bargain صفقة.

• **dear diary**

ذكري عريرة (تكتب في بداية صفحة في المفكرة لندالة علي ذكري سعيدة)

- Dear diary: Today is one of the best days in my life. My son Ahmed has graduated from the Faculty of Medicine.

- 2003, which was the date of my wedding party, is a **dear diary** to me.

• **get used to + n / (inf. + ing)**

يعتاد علي

- Rodayna **got used to** the noise of the city.

- Rania **got used to** living in Cairo.

• **host family**

عائلة مضيفة (اسرة تستضيف طالباً أجنبياً)

- While I was studying in France, my **host family** were very helpful.



• **pick ... up**

يُقبل / يوصل (شخص في سيارة)

- I will **pick her up** from the airport.

• **Isn't that amazing?**

أليس ذلك رائعاً؟ (تقال للتعبير عن الإعجاب الشديد)

- I have got a very good job. **Isn't that amazing?**

• **You won't believe what happened to me!**

لن تُصدّق ما حدث لي! (تقال في بداية سرد موقف مثير)

• **Until tomorrow!**

إلى الغدا! (تقال في نهاية لقاء أو حديث أو رسالة)

**Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary**

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. He is worried about travelling .....  
a. alone                      b. lonely                      c. loneliness                      d. a & b
2. She has just had her first baby. It is the first time for her to ..... the feelings of real motherhood.  
a. encourage                      b. determine                      c. experience                      d. exercise
3. The fingerprints will ..... who the criminals are.  
a. determine                      b. come across                      c. provide                      d. confuse
4. To "explore" is synonymous with to ".....".  
a. travel                      b. invent                      c. discover                      d. look at
5. I bought this ..... to help me carry goods through the narrow streets to the market.  
a. train                      b. pick-up                      c. ship                      d. aircraft

**Advanced Exercise on Language**

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Can you help me with these boxes or ..... busy?  
a. are you being                      b. are you                      c. you are                      d. b & c
2. Mr Ashraf ..... us greatly. We all enjoy his lessons.  
a. is always impressing                      b. always impresses  
c. is always impressed                      d. always is impressed
3. The current economic crises ..... **تستقر** steadily.  
a. are stabilising                      b. is stabilising  
c. stabilises                      d. stabilise
4. You ..... me a favour **م معروف**.  
a. owe                      b. owes                      c. are owing                      d. owing
5. Naguib Mahfouz ..... for his great novels.  
a. is still remembering                      b. is still remembered  
c. is still being remembered                      d. was still remembered

# Test on Unit 7

● Create

تدريبات

• التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب  
• تدريبات الأزهر الشريف في بنك الأسئلة



اديسار انكسروي

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was over the moon when I ..... one of my first school teachers.  
(البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)  
a. came across    b. got up    c. used to    d. picked up
2. Success in life needs patience, hard work, strong will and .....  
(سوهاج - المنشأة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. destination    b. determination    c. deterioration    d. cultivation
3. He ..... to provide his family with their needs.  
a. distracts    b. struggles    c. includes    d. structures
4. I asked my friend to ..... me up from the airport.  
(بورسعيد - بورفؤد ٢٠٢٤)  
a. pick    b. get    c. grow    d. bring
5. My teacher usually shows great ..... to motivate us to achieve more success.  
(الاسكندرية - وسط الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. unkindness    b. cruelty  
c. encouragement    d. discouragement
6. The air conditioner must have its own ..... power supply.  
(المرسى ٢٠٢٣)  
a. intended    b. prohibited    c. dependent    d. independent
7. My brother writes down his thoughts in his personal ..... every night.  
(البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. dairy    b. article    c. essay    d. diary
8. Now, the house ..... to me.  
(الأقصر - ارمليت ٢٠٢٤)  
a. is belonging    b. belongs    c. belong    d. belonged
9. Now, he ..... tired and exhausted. I think he is going to have a rest.  
(أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. look    b. looks    c. is looking    d. was looking
10. I'm going to make coffee. .... a cup?  
(البحيرة - كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. Do you want    b. Are you wanting  
c. Do you needs    d. Are you needing
11. Normally, you are very sensible. So, why ..... silly about this matter?  
(المنيا - قلوبى ٢٠٢٤)  
a. are you being    b. you are being    c. do you    d. you are
12. New sources of energy ..... these days.  
(السيوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. is developing    b. have developed  
c. had developed    d. are being developed
13. Hazem ..... This is annoying.  
(البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)  
a. always shout    b. shouts always  
c. is always shouting    d. always is shouting.

- **2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :** (پورسخت - پورسخت، ۱۲۰۲۰)

"She's coming. Hide it quickly!" The girls quickly shoved it under the table and acted as if nothing had happened. When Miss Leila entered the classroom, everyone stood and greeted her. She gave them a smile. The girls noticed that there was sadness in her eyes, poor Miss Leila. They wished with all their hearts that they could do something to help her, but there was nothing that they could do. Miss Leila told them that she would miss them. She explained that she would do anything to stay as their teacher but she had no choice. Her father was gravely ill. Her mother was too elderly to be left alone with him. She simply had to return to her hometown in a neighboring town.

Looking at the list of e-mail addresses in her hand, she promised she would keep in touch with them. She encouraged them to study hard and always do their best. Then she got ready to leave. Our class monitor walked over to her and handed her a small package.

With tears in her eyes, Miss Leila opened it. "It's from our trip to Siwa last term. Look at it and remember us always," said our monitor. She nodded. "Thank you, I'll frame it and put it up on the wall of my room". Then she left. Miss Leila is one of the best teachers who devotes all her life to people and she is never forgotten because of her cooperation and tolerance.

- The main idea of the passage is .....
  - Miss Leila's hometown and a neighboring town
  - The good relation between Miss Leila and her class
  - The gift to Miss Leila
  - The illness of Miss Leila's father
- Miss Leila was .....
  - the school headmistress
  - a good student at a secondary school
  - the class teacher
  - ungrateful to her parents
- Miss Leila had to leave the school because .....
  - she was ill and needed to be looked after
  - she hated her work at the school
  - the students were naughty
  - she had to return to her hometown
- Miss Leila planned to keep in touch with her students by .....
  - sending letters
  - exchanging emails
  - visiting each other
  - meeting at the nearby club
- The underlined pronoun 'It' refers to .....
  - Miss Leila's photo at school
  - the picture of Miss Leila's house
  - The picture of Miss Leila's parents
  - the gift for Miss Leila
- The synonym of the underlined word 'devotes' is .....
  - dedicates
  - takes
  - withdraws
  - lets
- The students will remember Miss Leila because of .....
  - the gift they have given her
  - her wealth and happiness
  - her good qualities
  - her care for her parents



8. Miss Leila encouraged her students to .....  
 a. study hard and do their best      b. play hard and give their best  
 c. study hard and not to play      d. both a and b

**3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:**

Travelling abroad is not an aim in itself but it helps us communicate with other countries and peoples.

(جسدانية - الحفرة ٢٢٤)

- a. إن السفر للخارج ليس هدفاً في حد ذاته، ولكنه يساعدنا على التواصل مع الشعوب الأخرى.  
 b. إن السفر للخارج ليس هدفاً في حد ذاته، ولكنه يساعدنا على التواصل مع الدول الأخرى.  
 c. إن السفر للخارج يعتبر هدفاً في حد ذاته، وقد يساعدنا على التواصل مع الدول والشعوب الأخرى.  
 d. إن السفر للخارج ليس هدفاً في حد ذاته، ولكنه يساعدنا على التواصل مع الدول والشعوب الأخرى.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

يمكن للشباب أن يتعلموا مع الناس من ثقافات أخرى طالما أنهم قادرون على الاستفادة مما يناسبهم

(الجسدانية - الحفرة ٢٢٤)

من تلك الثقافات والمحافظة على قيمهم وعاداتهم الأصلية

- a. Young people cannot deal with people from other cultures as long as they aren't able to benefit from what suits them from those cultures and preserve their original values and customs.  
 b. Young people can deal with people from other cultures as long as they are able to benefit from what suits them from those cultures and preserve their original values and customs.  
 c. Young people can't travel with people from other cultures as long as they aren't able to benefit from what suits them from those cultures and preserve their local values and customs.  
 d. Young people can deal with people from other cultures as long as they are able to benefit from what suits them from those cultures without preserving their original values and customs.

**4. Answer the following questions :**

1. Edmund was an evil traitor. Explain giving two points. (الحفرة - الدقة ٢٢٤)

2. Do you think Gloucester deserved what happened to him? Why/Why not?

3. What did Edgar and Cordelia have in common ? (القاهرة - الرسون ٢٢٤)

**5. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :**

(دمياط - الروضة ٢٢٤)

**"How good education changes our life"**

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

# UNIT 8

SB pages 16-17  
WB pages 8-13

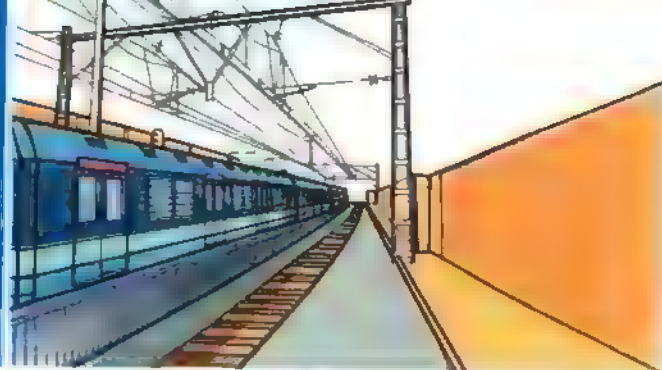
## High-tech transport



### Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- 🕒 **Reading** : A notice about the expansion of the Cairo metro network
- 🕒 **Writing** : A speech for or against an argument;  
An email to the local government about public transport
- 🕒 **Listening** : A talk show debate about the future of transport

- 🕒 **Speaking** : A discussion about the advantages and disadvantages of using public transport; Asking and answering questions about a schedule
- 🕒 **Language** : Future perfect
- 🕒 **Life skills** : Critical thinking ; Problem solving;  
Respect for diversity



1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

connect(ed) (v)	يربط - يُوصل	passenger(n)	مسافر - راكب
expansion(n)	توسُّع - تَمَدُّد	public transport	المواصلات العامة
facilities(n)	تسهيلات - امتيازات	public(adj)	عام - شعبي
	مرافق - مواهب	system(n)	نظام - شبكة
give up on (phr. v)	يفقد الأمل في - يتوقف عن	the Underground(n)	مترو الأنفاق
go down (phr. v)	ينخفض - يقل - يهبط	transport(ed) (n-v)	(وسائل) النقل / المواصلات - ينقل
high-tech(adj)	ذو تقنية عالية	underground (adj - adv)	جوفي - تحت الأرض
network(n)	شبكة		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

add(ed) (v)	يضيف	instead(adv)	بدلاً من ذلك
affordable(adj)	مُتاح - في المتناول - رخيص	interrupt(ed) (v)	يقاطع
authority(n)	السلطة	introduce(d) (v)	يُقدِّم - يطرح / يعرض
available(adj)	مُتاح - في المتناول	involve(d) (v)	يتضمن - يشمل
central(adj)	مركزي	length(n)	طول (مدة / مسافة)
check(ed) in (phr. v)	يُسجِّل وصول - يراجع أوراق السفر	line(n)	خط
coast(n)	ساحل	monorail(n)	قطار أحادي القضبان
complete(d)(adj-v)	كامل - يُكْمَل	New Administrative City	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة
construction(n)	إنشاء - تركيب	operate(d)(v)	يُشغِّل
controls(n)	مفاتيح / أدوات تَحْكُم	operating system (n)	نظام تشغيل
debate(n)	يقاش - مُناظرة	persuade(d) (v)	يُقنع
disagreement(n)	خلاف - نزاع	pollution(n)	التلوث
discussion(n)	مناقشة	practise(d) (v)	يمارس / يتدرب
doubt(n)	شك	precise(adj)	دقيق - مُحكَّم
driverless(adj)	دون سائق	private(adj)	خاص - شخصي
emphasise(d) (v)	يؤكد على	production(n)	إنتاج
equipment(n)	معدات - أدوات	railway(n)	سكك حديدية
first-aid(n)	إسعافات أولية	replace(d) (v)	يستبدل - يحل محل
forms(n)	أنواع - أشكال	schedule(n)	برنامج - جَدول ترتيبات
		security(n)	أمن



gas(n)	غاز	series(n)	سلسلة - قسطنطين
gate(n)	بوابة	size(n)	حجم
guess(ed) (v)	يُخَمِّن	suburb(n)	ضاحية - حارة
importance(n)	أهمية	talk show (n)	برنامج حوارى
improve(d) (v)	يتحسن - يحسن	total (adj - n)	كُلِّي / نهائي - مجموع
improved(adj)	مُحَسَّن - مُطَوَّر	tunnel(n)	نفق
including (prep)	بما في ذلك	understanding (n)	تَفْهَم - تَحْقُل
increase(d) (v - n)	يزداد/يزيد - زيادة - ارتفاع		

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>expansion(n)</b> توسُّع - تَفْدُّد - تَضَخُّم	an increase in the size or length of something
<b>facilities(n)</b> تسهيلات - امتيازات - مرافق	places, buildings or equipment that are used for an activity
<b>high-tech(adj)</b> ذو تقنية عالية	describing something that uses a lot of new technology
<b>network(n)</b> شبكة	any system that has a lot of connected parts
<b>transport (n)</b> وسائل النقل / المواصلات	buses, trains or trams that anyone can use to travel around

### Exercise on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Definitions

- An ..... is an increase in the size or length of something. (توسُّع)  
a. expense      b. expenditure      c. experiment      d. expansion
- A place, building or equipment that is used for an activity is known as a/an .....  
a. argument      b. facility      c. alternative      d. network
- The noun '.....' refers to buses, trains or trams that anyone can use to travel around.  
a. transport      b. argument      c. equipment      d. expansion
- Any system that has a lot of connected parts is called a/an .....  
a. argument      b. facility      c. alternative      d. network
- ..... means using a lot of new technology.  
a. Friendly      b. High-tech      c. Significant      d. Convenient



## Key Vocabulary

6. In large cities, people should be encouraged to depend on public ..... to get around in order to reduce pollution. (المبوم - أبشواى ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. transport      b. transfer      c. transfuse      d. transplant
7. The hotel has special ..... for disabled people. (سوهاج - طما ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. facilities      b. faculties      c. difficulties      d. facilitates
8. The new railway road will ..... the New Administrative Capital to all governorates. (الشرقية - القرين ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. travel      b. contact      c. connect      d. transport
9. The ..... of cities mustn't be at the expense of agricultural land. (الشرقية - القرين ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. expansion      b. invasion      c. intention      d. translation
10. The bank has a/an ..... that connects its branches together. (المنيا - مطاى ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. operation      b. target      c. network      d. alternative
11. It is better to use ..... transport to reduce pollution. (الإسكندرية - المبره نان ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. public      b. gas      c. special      d. personal
12. My friend has recently installed the latest ..... security system to monitor what's going on in the mall. (البحره - أبو حمص ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. outdated      b. degraded      c. old-fashioned      d. high-tech
13. Some people think that smoking is harmful, but they can't give ..... this habit. (القليوبية - قها ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. away      b. up      c. off      d. out
14. The Western Desert in Egypt has ..... water that can be used in reclaiming millions of feddans.  
 a. underground      b. high-tech      c. central      d. precise
15. The plane has 68 ..... on board.  
 a. airplanes      b. hosts      c. pilots      d. passengers
16. When supply is greater than demand, prices .....  
 a. double      b. increase      c. go down      d. rise
17. The ..... is faster and more comfortable than other city transport services.  
 a. away      b. Underground      c. plane      d. microbus
18. Buying and selling is increasingly depending on electronic payment .....  
 a. stem      b. messenger      c. passenger      d. system



## Important Vocabulary

19. The price of the ticket is ..... It doesn't cost much. (البحره - شمال البحيرة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. costly      b. affordable      c. expensive      d. unaffordable
20. This first-aid ..... can be ordered cheaply online. (الأقصر - ارمنت ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. equipment      b. kit      c. press      d. machine

21. Only department managers have the ..... to change the work timetable. (سوهاج - سافلته ٢٠٢٤)  
a. irresponsibility b. authority c. expiry d. rosary
22. We were happy because the tickets were ..... (البحره - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. terrible b. available c. unavailable d. expensive
23. Sorry for ..... you, but I don't know how to deal with this difficult problem. (الإسكندرية - وسط الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. helping b. correcting c. interrupting d. corrupting
24. Everyone ..... in the accident has been questioned by the police.  
a. revolved b. involved c. secluded d. included
25. I have a flexible job ....., so I can meet you at any time.  
a. column b. seminar c. speech d. schedule
26. The project involves 10,000 workers ..... engineers.  
a. containing b. consisting c. content d. including
27. Quick! We are short of time. We must ..... in before the flight.  
a. shake b. check c. apply d. lock
28. The Underground moves in ..... under the surface of the earth.  
a. schedules b. tunnels c. research d. farm
29. The company ..... a new site for its products.  
a. spoke b. stuck c. created d. rescued
30. I have a ..... car. I don't have to take the bus.  
a. precise b. central c. private d. driverless
31. Mr Mohammed ..... an important point for discussion.  
a. interrupted b. tunnelled c. operated d. introduced
32. A ..... is usually quieter than the city centre.  
a. suburb b. pollution c. debate d. market
33. I want my mother to ..... my father to let me join the school trip.  
a. interrupt b. persuade c. consider d. create
34. The user guide tells you how to ..... a device.  
a. interrupt b. introduce c. emphasise d. operate
35. "Naturally, people like any increase in their income." In this utterance, the word 'increase' is a/an .....  
a. noun b. pronoun c. verb d. adverb
36. The research ..... the importance of planting trees.  
a. interrupts b. creates c. emphasises d. operates
37. The committee اللجنة are ..... the possible solutions to the problem.  
a. cycling b. debating c. creating d. leading to
38. While a traditional train moves on two rails, a/an ..... moves on one rail.  
a. railway b. Underground c. construction d. monorail



## 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

<b>build</b>	a metro line	يُنشئ خط مترو	<b>make</b>	notes	يُدون ملاحظات عن
<b>create</b>	pollution	يسبب التلوث	<b>show</b>	disagreement	يُبدى رفضاً
	a connection	يوجد صلة		doubt	يُبدى الشك
<b>do</b>	a cooking course	يحصل على دورة تدريبية في الطهي	<b>take</b>	a test	يُمتحن - يخضع لامتحان
<b>have</b>	a precise schedule	لديه جدول عمل واضح		place	يُحدِّث

## 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
affordable	cheap, inexpensive
connect	join, attach, associate, link
expansion	growth
facility	talent
public	national
public	prominent, well-known

## 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
affordable	expensive, costly, dear
connect	disconnect, dissociate
expand	contract
expansion	contraction
public	private
public	obscure, unknown
public	secret

## 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مُشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

	connect
<b>connect(v)</b>	يربط - يُوصل
<b>connection(n)</b>	رابط - اتصال
<b>connected(adj)</b>	مُتَّصل - ذي صلة

- Try to **connect** causes and results.- Try to make a **connection** between causes and results.- Results are **connected** to causes.

expansion		
<b>expand(v)</b>	يُمدّد - يتمدد	- Metals <b>expand</b> when they are heated.
<b>expansion(n)</b>	توسّع - تمّدد	- Very high temperatures lead to the <b>expansion</b> of metals.
<b>expandable(adj)</b>	قابل للتوسعة أو التمدّد	- Metals are <b>expandable</b> when they are heated.
facility		
<b>facilitate(v)</b>	يسهّل - ييسّر	- The role of the teacher is to <b>facilitate</b> complicated points.
<b>facilitation(n)</b>	التسهيل - التوضيح	- The role of the teacher is the <b>facilitation</b> of complicated points.
<b>facilitator(n)</b>	ميسّر	- A teacher is more of a <b>facilitator</b> .
<b>facilities(n)</b>	تسهيلات - امتيازات - مرافق - مواهب	- Luxor has great tourist <b>facilities</b> .
public		
<b>public(n)</b>	الجمهور - العامة	- Most of the <b>public</b> are against crime.
<b>public(adj)</b>	عام - شعبي	- Trains are <b>public</b> transport.

## 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

along the coast	على امتداد الساحل	make it easier for	يجعل من الأسهل بالنسبة لـ
around the world	حول العالم	metro network	شبكة المترو
bad for	ضار بـ	monorail line	خط سكة حديد أحادي القضبان
bring the total number to	يصل بالرقم النهائي إلى	over the next ten years	على مدار السنوات العشر القادمة
by the end of	قبل نهاية	public transport network / system	شبكة المواصلات العامة
Cairo Metro Authority	هيئة مترو القاهرة	talk show	برنامج جوارى
close to	قريب من	ten times the pollution of	عشر أضعاف التلوث الناتج عن
for or against	مع أو ضد	total number	الرقم النهائي - المجموع
forms of transport	أنواع وسائل المواصلات	underground network	شبكة مترو الأنفاق
Greater Cairo	القاهرة الكبرى		
increase in	زيادة في		
instead of	بدلاً من		

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

connect ... to	... يربط ... بـ	stop ... from	يمنع ... من أن
expect to	يتوقع أن	travel around	يتنقل في أنحاء
get to	يصل إلى	work for	يعمل لحساب
plan to / for	يخطط (لـ / من أجل)		

### Exercises On Vocabulary Study

#### ★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- It's known that metals ..... with heat. (السيوط - صدف ٢٤)  
 a. exist                      b. expect                      c. expand                      d. explore
- "The rapid growth of population can cause social and economic problems." 'Growth' is a synonym for ..... (السوان - دراو ٢٤)  
 a. decrease                      b. expansion                      c. reduction                      d. decline
- The Microsoft Computer Company has expanded all over the world. The antonym of 'expand' is ..... (البحيرة - كم حمادة ٢٤)  
 a. extend                      b. widen                      c. enlarge                      d. contract
- The synonym of the word 'affordable' is ..... (البحيرة - انعموديه ٢٤)  
 a. economical                      b. costly                      c. expensive                      d. unreasonable
- The government is ..... a new metro line in the capital city.  
 a. doing                      b. building                      c. taking                      d. travelling
- Drinking too much coffee is bad ..... your health. (البحيرة - مساه الماطر ٢٤)  
 a. to                      b. at                      c. off                      d. for
- The antonym of affordable is ..... (دمياط - الروضة ٢٣)  
 a. cheap                      b. inexpensive                      c. expensive                      d. high
- Man's activities ..... much pollution.  
 a. create                      b. do                      c. cause                      d. a & c
- When we say that someone is a public figure, we mean that they are not .....  
 a. prominent                      b. obscure                      c. famous                      d. well-known
- He hadn't made up his mind. He ..... doubt.  
 a. built                      b. showed                      c. took                      d. got
- Youssef is ..... a cooking course because he wants to start his own restaurant.  
 a. emphasising                      b. giving                      c. doing                      d. making
- 'Expansion' is to ..... as 'connect' is to 'associate'.  
 a. contraction                      b. growth                      c. reaction                      d. significance
- "Rodayna has a wonderful facility for Maths." The word 'facility' in this sentence is the synonym of .....  
 a. easy                      b. difficulty                      c. talent                      d. a & c
- The company plans ..... a new branch in Aswan.  
 a. open                      b. to open                      c. opening                      d. to opening
- The Underground is the best ..... of transport in busy cities.  
 a. formula                      b. forum                      c. from                      d. form



16. The streets were crowded, so I got ..... the office late.  
 a. to                      b. up                      c. off                      d. from
17. The internet ..... needs to be fixed.  
 a. connection              b. connects              c. transport              d. transports

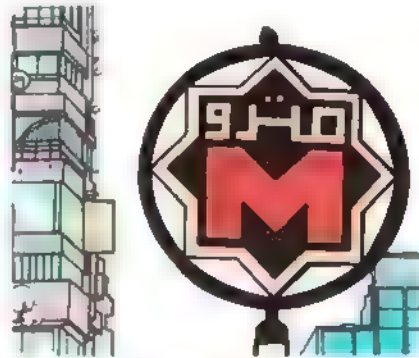
## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

#### Cairo Metro network: Expansion work

(SB page 17)

We hope that all our **passengers**<sup>(1)</sup> will enjoy using our new **Line**<sup>(2)</sup> 3. This **expansion**<sup>(3)</sup> of the Cairo Metro **adds**<sup>(4)</sup> seven kilometres and six new **stations**<sup>(5)</sup> to our **underground network**<sup>(6)</sup>. Line 3 will help people in the east of the city to **get to**<sup>(7)</sup> work faster and more easily because it **connects**<sup>(8)</sup> Heliopolis and the **central**<sup>(9)</sup> station of Adly Mansour. We **expect**<sup>(10)</sup> that 1.5 million passengers will use the new line this year. **High-tech**<sup>(11)</sup> **systems**<sup>(12)</sup> were used to build this 21<sup>st</sup> Century **public**<sup>(13)</sup> **transport**<sup>(14)</sup> system, and more expansion work is planned for in the future. By 2030, we expect to have built three more new lines to **bring**<sup>(15)</sup> the **total**<sup>(16)</sup> number to six. We are already building Line 4 and we will have completed it by 2024. Line 4 will connect the east and west of Cairo and make it easier for people to travel around the city. However, due to the expansion work on Line 4, some trains will be late and we may have to close some stations for short **periods**<sup>(17)</sup> of time.



- (1) مسافرين - ركاب  
 (2) خط  
 (3) توسع  
 (4) يضيف  
 (5) محطات  
 (6) شبكة مترو الأنفاق  
 (7) يصل إلى  
 (8) يربط  
 (9) مركزي  
 (10) يتوقع  
 (11) ذو تقنية عالية  
 (12) أنظمة - شبكات  
 (13) العامة  
 (14) المواصلات  
 (15) يصل  
 (16) كلي - نهائي  
 فترات  
 دقيق  
 جدول  
 (17) تفهم - تحمل  
 يحدث  
 (22) فحش - فظور

Although we don't have a **precise**<sup>(18)</sup> **schedule**<sup>(19)</sup> for the building work on Line 5 and 6 at the moment, we expect to have started building Line 5 by the end of next year.

We would like to thank all Cairo Metro passengers for your **understanding**<sup>(20)</sup> while the building work is **taking place**<sup>(21)</sup>. We hope that you will enjoy using the **improved**<sup>(22)</sup> underground network.

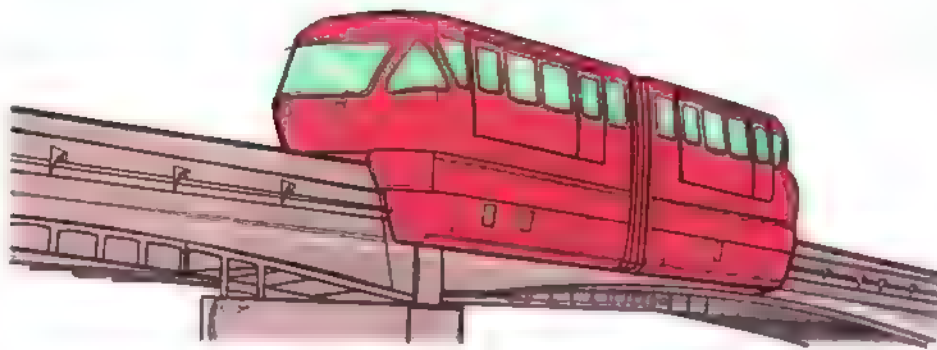
Regards,

The Cairo Metro Authority



## Public transport projects for the future

(WB page 8)



- (1) شبكات المواصلات العامة
- (2) يتحسّن
- (3) مشروعات
- (4) خطط
- (5) يُنشئ - يُوجد
- (6) رابط - اتصال
- (7) العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة
- (8) قطار أحادي الخط
- (9) يتضمن - يشمل
- (10) إنشاء
- (11) القاهرة الكبرى
- (12) باستخدام
- (13) الأحدث
- (14) ضاحية
- (15) تحت الأرض
- (16) نفق
- (17) بما في ذلك
- (18) بمحاذاة - على امتداد
- (19) الساحل

Public transport networks<sup>(1)</sup> everywhere will improve<sup>(2)</sup> a lot over the next ten years. Here is a look at some of the biggest projects<sup>(3)</sup> being planned around the world.

In Cairo, there are plans<sup>(4)</sup> to create<sup>(5)</sup> the first public transport connection<sup>(6)</sup> from both New Administrative Capital<sup>(7)</sup> and 6th of October City to the Greater Cairo area.

The Cairo Monorail<sup>(8)</sup> will involve<sup>(9)</sup> the construction<sup>(10)</sup> of two monorail lines which will take passengers 52 km from New Administrative Capital to East Cairo, and 42 km from 6th of October City to the Greater Cairo<sup>(11)</sup> area. The lines will open in 2025.

There are plans for an expansion of the Paris underground network in France. Using<sup>(12)</sup> the latest<sup>(13)</sup> technology, the high-tech Line 18 will connect Orly airport to the suburb<sup>(14)</sup> of Versailles. 21 km of the 35 km-long line will be underground<sup>(15)</sup>. It will open in 2030.

By 2030, there are plans to build the longest tunnel<sup>(16)</sup> in Australia's history. The 50 km-long tunnel will be part of the new Sydney Metro West underground system. The project involves 10,000 workers including<sup>(17)</sup> engineers.

In the north of Europe, Sweden is building a new train line along<sup>(18)</sup> the coast<sup>(19)</sup> of the country. The 270 km line will be finished in 2030 and will carry more than 1.6 million passengers a year.

## 2 Listening Texts



(SB page 18)

(1) ضيوف

(2) كهربى

(3) يسبب / يُلحق به

(4) يدمر / يُلحق

(5) صديق البيئة

(6) مركبة

(7) متاح

(8) سيارات بدون سائق

**Talk show host :** So, this evening, I'd like to welcome our two **guests**<sup>(1)</sup>. We have Karima, who works for an organisation that wants us to use public transport more often. And we also have Nadiya, who works for a company that makes **electric**<sup>(2)</sup> cars. Karima, maybe you could start the conversation. Why do you think more people will have decided to use public transport in twenty years' time?

**Karima :** Well, I think the answer is quite clear. Because the dangerous gases that cars **produce**<sup>(3)</sup> are bad for the environment. By the 2040s, everybody will have realised that and decided to do something about it.

**Nadiya :** I'm sorry, but that isn't true of all cars. The electric cars that we make don't produce any gases that **damage**<sup>(4)</sup> the environment. They're very **environmentally-friendly**<sup>(5)</sup>. Experts believe that by 2030 most people will have bought an electric **vehicle**<sup>(6)</sup>.

**Karima :** I'm not so sure about that, Nadiya. Do you really think all drivers will have changed the type of vehicle they drive in less than ten years ? I think that by 2050 the price of electric cars won't have gone down so much that everyone can buy one.

**Talk show host :** Can I just say something here? By 2030, the types of transport **available**<sup>(7)</sup> to us will have changed completely - don't you think? Perhaps we will have flying vehicles instead of driving on the roads. And if we do still have cars, we won't drive them ourselves because we'll have bought **driverless cars**<sup>(8)</sup>. What would you say to that?



**Nadiya** : Whatever happens in the future, in ten years we won't have given up on driving our own vehicles. So, let's make sure those vehicles are environmentally-friendly.

**Talk show host** : Karima ?

**Karima** : Well, I think people will still want to travel in the future, of course, but everyone will have realised that protecting the environment is the most important thing and choose public transport instead.

**Huda** : Which is the best way to travel ?

(WB page 9)

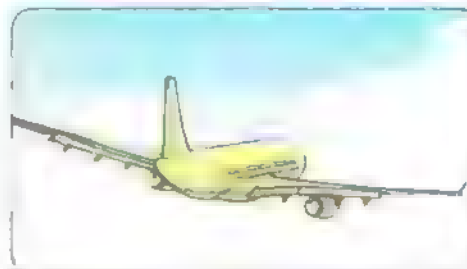
**Injy** : I think the answer is quite clear.  
Flying.

**Huda** : I'm sorry, but that isn't true. Flying causes a lot of pollution.

**Injy** : I'm not so sure about that. Modern planes don't cause much pollution because ...

**Huda** : Can I just say something here ? Planes create more than ten times the pollution of a train!

**Injy** : Yes, but it is much more expensive to build railway lines than airports. What would you say to that ?



## LANGUAGE

### The Future Perfect Tense

زمن المستقبل التام

Form	Active	Passive
<b>Affirmation</b> الإثبات	<b>Subj. + will + have + p.p. ....</b> - He <b>will have decorated</b> the house by next August.	<b>Obj. + will + have + been + p.p. ....</b> - The house <b>will have been decorated</b> by next August.
<b>Negation</b> النفى	<b>Subj. + won't + have + p.p. ....</b> - He <b>won't have decorated</b> the house by six o'clock.	<b>Obj. + won't + have been + p.p. ....</b> - The house <b>won't have been decorated</b> by six o'clock.

<p><b>'Yes / No' Q.</b> السؤال بـ (هل)</p>	<p><b>Will + subj. + have + p.p. .... ?</b> - Will he have decorated the house by next August?</p>	<p><b>Will + obj. + have been + p.p. .... ?</b> - Will the house have been decorated by next August?</p>
<p><b>'Wh' Q.</b> السؤال بأداة استفهام.</p>	<p><b>Q.W. + will + subj. + have + p.p. .... ?</b> - When will he have decorated the house?</p>	<p><b>Q.W. + will + obj. + have been + p.p. .... ?</b> - When will the house have been decorated?</p>

### Uses of the Future Perfect

١ التعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد تم قبل أو بحلول وقت معين في المستقبل ، وعادة ما يُستخدم معه تعبيرات زمنية مستقبلية تبدأ بـ (by / before / this time / by the time) :

- My son Ahmed will have started school by next October.
- Before her marriage, Rokaya will have studied unit 16.
- This time next year, our company will have achieved great success.

٢ يمكن استخدام التعبيرات الزمنية الدالة على المستقبل بدون (by / before) بشرط استخدام :

for + period of time مدة زمنية

- In 2018, Mona will have lived in her house for ten years.
- Next Monday, I will have stayed in Aswan for a week.

٣ ويستخدم المستقبل التام أيضًا للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهى أو تم قبل وقوع حدث آخر في المستقبل، وهنا يتوقف استخدام المستقبل البسيط أو المستقبل التام على المعنى :

مستقبل + مضارع بسيط + After/As soon as/ Once / When / The moment

- When you leave the office, I will have sent the emails.  
(سيكون الإرسال قد تم قبل مغادرتك للمكتب)
- When you leave the office, I will send the emails.  
(بعد مغادرتك للمكتب، سأقوم بالإرسال)

مستقبل (تام غالبًا) + مضارع بسيط + Before / By the time

- By the time I go home, I'll have visited two friends.

١ يمكن ان يُستخدم المستقبل التام وأزمنة المستقبل الأخرى مع تعبيرات زمنية مستقبلية تبدأ بحروف جر وظروف أخرى مثل:

- This time (tomorrow/ next Monday / next week .... etc.)
- In (a year's / four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes' /.....) time
- This time next Friday, I will have moved into my new flat.  
(سأكون قد انتقلت بالفعل)
- This time next Friday, I will be moving into my new flat.  
(سأكون مستمرا في نقل الأشياء)

٢ يمكن استخدام المستقبل البسيط أو المستقبل المستمر في ظل وجود تعبيرات زمنية مستقبلية تبدأ بـ (by) اذا كان الحدث غير تام :

- By the year 2030, we will be able to send text messages by the power of thought.
- By 2040, people will use renewable sources of energy.

٣ يمكن استخدام الصيغة التالية لتؤدي نفس معني المستقبل التام:

- **expect to have + p.p. ...** (مبني للمعلوم)
- We expect to have built Line 5 by the end of next year.
- **... am / is / are + expected to have been+ p.p. ...** (مبني للمجهول)
- Line 5 is expected to have been built by the end of next year.

## Exercises on Language

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Getting started : Check what you have learnt

1. By the year 2050, scientists will .....discovered a cure for cancer.

(سوهاج - طما ٢٠٢٤)

- a. be                      b. have been                      c. be had                      d. have

2. We will ..... the new project in a few months, maybe by August.

(المصميه - الشهداء ٢٠٢٤)

- a. have started                      b. be starting  
c. have been started                      d. be started

3. By 2027, all second-year students ..... GSEC.

(المنيا - بحر البوصه ٢٠٢٤)

- a. will finish                      b. will be finishing  
c. have finished                      d. will have finished

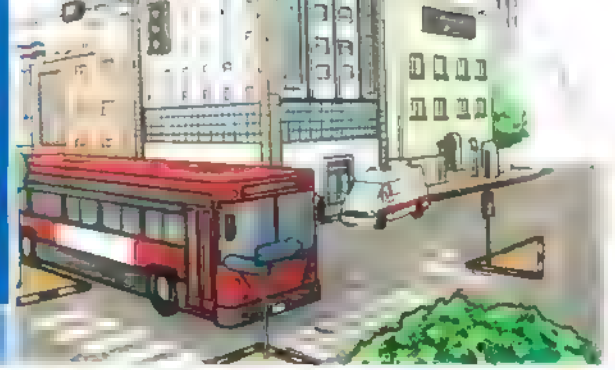




15. Come to my house at eight o'clock because I ..... my school project by then.  
 a. am finishing                      b. have finished  
 c. will have finished                d. finish
16. In two weeks' time, my car .....  
 a. will have repaired                b. will repair  
 c. will have been repaired          d. is repairing
17. The first plane to London ..... at 6 a.m. tomorrow.  
 a. leaves                      b. is leaving                      c. will leave                      d. is being left
18. My little sister ..... 10 next week.  
 a. is going to be                      b. is                      c. will be                      d. will have been
19. Samira's father won't come home until he ..... his work.  
 a. finished                      b. had finished                      c. has finished                      d. will finish
20. At ten o'clock tomorrow, I ..... the match on TV.  
 a. will be watching                      b. will be watched  
 c. going to watch                      d. watch
21. I'll wait at the station until the train .....  
 a. will come                      b. comes                      c. is coming                      d. came

### Check your understanding

22. One of the following sentences is **incorrectly structured** : ..... .  
(الاسكندرية - وسط الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)
- The box is heavy. Shall I carry it for you?
  - I think it will be cold tomorrow.
  - I going to buy a new car next month as intended.
  - I hope the problem will be solved tomorrow.
23. Before my mom gets home, I will have cleaned the entire house.  
This means : ..... .  
(المنيا - العدوّة ٢٠٢٤)
- I am cleaning the house currently.
  - I plan to clean the house at some point.
  - I will finish cleaning the house before my mom arrives.
  - After my mother had reached home, I cleaned the entire house.



## VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

alternative (n. - adj.)	بدیل - مختلف	issue(n)	قضية
argument(n)	نرھان / حجة - جدال	later (adj - adv)	متأخر عن - بعد ذلك / فيما بعد
consider(ed) (v)	يفكر مي - يعتبر	on / in behalf of	بالنيابة عن - لمصلحة
convenient(adj)	ملائم - مناسب	respond(ed) (v)	يرد - يستجيب
current (adj - n)	حالي / جاري - التيار	satisfactory(adj)	مُرضي - كاف
earlier (adj)	أبكر من - قبل (ذلك)	significant(adj)	هام - مؤثر - ذو مغزى
earlier (adv)	قبل (ذلك) - من قبل		ملحوظ
environmentally	صديق للبيئة		
friendly(adj)			

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

appropriate(adj)	ملائم / مناسب	pause(d)(v-n)	يتوقف - يصمت - وقفة
conclusion(n)	خاتمة		لحظة صمت
crowded(adj)	مزدحم - مكتظ	playground(n)	ملعب
cycle(d) (v)	يركب دراجة	point(n)	نقطة - فكرة - رأي
decrease(d) (n - v)	انخفاض - ينخفض - يحفض	popularity(n)	شعبية - شهرة
disability(n)	إعاقة	present(adj)	حالي / حاضر
effect(n)	أثر - تأثير	provide(d) (v)	يوفر
flying vehicle	فروضة طائرة	region(n)	منطقة - إقليم
further (adj-adv)	إضافي - أبعد	research(n)	بحث
governorate(n)	محافظة	solution(n)	حل
grateful(adj)	شاكر - ممتن	speech(n)	خطبة - كلمة
impossible(adj)	مستحيل	stress(ed)(v)	ضغط - يضغط / يؤثر على
inexpensive(adj)	رخيص	style(n)	نمط - أسلوب
lead to - led to (v)	يؤدي إلى	wildlife(n)	الحيوانات البرية / الحياة البرية
level(n)	مستوى - نسبة		

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
alternative (adj - n) بدیل	(describing) something you do or use instead of something else
argument(n) برھان / حجة	the reasons that you give to say why something is right or wrong



**environmentally**

**friendly(adj)** صديق للبيئة

when something is not bad for nature

**significant(adj)**

هام - ملحوظ

having an important effect or influence,  
especially on what will happen in the future

## Exercises On Vocabulary

☛ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

### 1 Definitions

1. .... means important enough to have an effect or to be noticed.

(الحبرة - أوسيم ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Useless      b. Giant      c. Significant      d. Tiny

2. .... are things you do or use instead of something else.

(بورسعيد - جنوب بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Arguments      b. Issues      c. Alternatives      d. Environments

3. .... means not bad for nature.

- a. Environmentally friendly      b. High-tech  
c. Significant      d. Convenient

4. A/An ..... is the reasons that you give to say why something is right or wrong.

- a. argument      b. facility      c. alternative      d. network

### 2 Key Vocabulary

5. He was killed during a violent ..... over money.

(المبا - غدوة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. arrangement      b. debate      c. agreement      d. argument

6. There is a/an ..... increase in production rate that we might achieve self-sufficiency.

(الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٠٢٤)

- a. confident      b. significant      c. affordable      d. confusable

7. The conference discussed some important environmental ..... such as global warming.

(البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٤)

- a. trials      b. causes      c. reasons      d. issues

8. Every word in the poem has its .....

(كفر تسيح - موه ٢٠٢٤)

- a. significance      b. significant      c. signify      d. significantly

9. The menu at this restaurant offers several vegetarian ..... for people who don't eat meat or fish.

(البحيرة - أبو حمص ٢٠٢٤)

- a. affection      b. alternatives      c. attention      d. attributes

10. The judge asks the lawyer to present ..... evidence that his client is innocent.

(البحيرة - كوم حفانه ٢٠٢٤)

- a. inconvenient      b. high-tech      c. satisfactory      d. inappropriate

11. You know for sure that solar energy is ..... friendly.

- a. powerful      b. environmental  
c. environmentally      d. significant

12. I think tomorrow evening is a/an ..... time to meet.

(سوهاج - جهينه ٢٠٢٤)

- a. inexpensive      b. delivered      c. convenient      d. frustrated

13. Leave me alone. Let's discuss this matter ..... (القبوينة - هبوف ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. latter                      b. lately                      c. later                      d. early
14. She spoke ..... of the other students in her class. (بورسعيد - بورمؤاد ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. in charge                      b. as if                      c. on behalf                      d. about
15. My headache ..... quickly to the painkiller and soon I felt better.  
 a. inquired                      b. considered                      c. objected                      d. responded
16. She is ..... looking for another job as her current one is not rewarding.  
 a. avoiding                      b. thinking                      c. considering                      d. leaving

### 3 Important Vocabulary

17. It is not ..... to call people too late at night. (البحيرة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. inconvenient                      b. ugly                      c. appropriate                      d. bad
18. The driver was blinded by the lights from an oncoming ..... (سوهاج - المنشأة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. vehicle                      b. bicycle                      c. plane                      d. transport
19. The spokesman ..... for some water before continuing his speech. (الشرقية - غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. acquired                      b. offered                      c. created                      d. paused
20. One of the advantages of the underground is that it is ..... to travel on. (البحيرة - أبو حمص ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. inexpensive                      b. inconvenient                      c. local                      d. expensive
21. This suit is ..... for your job interview.  
 a. present                      b. appropriate                      c. crowded                      d. possible
22. Doing enough physical exercise ..... to getting fit.  
 a. cycles                      b. debates                      c. creates                      d. leads
23. I ..... to school. This way, I keep fit and, help the environment.  
 a. cycle                      b. debate                      c. create                      d. lead
24. I have no ..... comments. That's all.  
 a. inexpensive                      b. safe                      c. along                      d. further
25. I am giving a ..... at the meeting tomorrow.  
 a. governorate                      b. vehicle                      c. speech                      d. disability
26. When production ....., there are economic crises (أزمات اقتصادية).  
 a. provides                      b. decreases                      c. stresses                      d. expects
27. I am really ..... to my mother. She did her best to educate me.  
 a. public                      b. affordable                      c. current                      d. grateful
28. Sama was not ..... at the meeting. I wonder why she didn't come.  
 a. appropriate                      b. present                      c. crowded                      d. possible
29. Too much work without breaks ..... me a lot.  
 a. provides                      b. decreases                      c. stresses                      d. pauses
30. You need to be very careful when you drive in a/an ..... street.  
 a. present                      b. appropriate                      c. crowded                      d. possible

## FAST II

# VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations - مترادفات لفظية

do	some research	يُجري بعض الأبحاث	... better	يُحسن
emphasise	a point	يؤكد وجهة نظر	make a point	يطرح وجهة نظر
get	paid	يحصل علي أجر	the argument	يقدم الحجة - يبرهن
give	a reason	يُبرز	plan	يخطط لمشروع
have	an effect on	له تأثير علي		

### 2 Synonyms - مترادفات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
alternative	بديل
convenient	ملائم - مناسب
debate	مناظرة - نقاش
earlier	قبل (ذلك)
environmentally	صديق للبيئة
friendly	
on/in behalf of	بالنيابة عن
respond	يستجيب
respond	يُرد
satisfactory	مُرضي - كاف
significant	هام - ملحوظ - بارز
significant	ذو مغزى
substitute, option, choice	
suitable, appropriate, comfortable	
argument	
before, before that time	
eco-friendly	
as a representative of	
react	
answer, reply to, make a response	
adequate, acceptable, sufficient	
notable, remarkable, outstanding, important	
meaningful, purposeful	

### 3 Antonyms - المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
convenient	غير ملائم
earlier	فيما بعد
respond	يسأل - يستفسر - يتساءل
respond	يتجاهل
satisfactory	غير مرضي - غير ملائم
significant	غير هام - تافه
significant	بلا معني
inconvenient, awkward	
later	
ask, inquire, wonder	
ignore	
unsatisfactory, improper, inadequate, unacceptable	
insignificant	
meaningless	



## 4 مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية Derivatives of key vocabulary

alternative		
alternative (n)	بدیل	- Electricity is a clean <b>alternative</b> to oil.
alternative (adj)	بدیل - مختلف	- Electricity is <b>alternative</b> energy to oil.
alternatively (adv)	بدلاً من ذلك	- We should limit the use of oil. We need to use electricity <b>alternatively</b> .
argument		
argue (v)	يتجادل - يدعم - يدافع عن	- I could hear Sama and Rodayna <b>arguing</b> . - He <b>argues</b> for human rights.
argument (n)	جدال - خلاف - بُرْهان / حُجَّة	- Rodayna had a big <b>argument</b> with Sama. - He provided strong <b>arguments</b> to prove he is right.
argumentative (adj)	مجادل - شديد الجدال	- He quickly becomes <b>argumentative</b> when I disagree with him.
convenient		
convenience (n)	مُلاءمة - مُناسبة - مُوافقة - راحة	- The bank provides seats for the <b>convenience</b> of its customers.
convenient (adj)	ملائم - مناسب	- I think tomorrow is a <b>convenient</b> time for the meeting.
conveniently (adv)	بشكل مُلائم	- The club is <b>conveniently</b> located outside the city.
environmentally		
environment (n)	البيئة	- We all should protect the <b>environment</b> .
environmental (adj)	بيئي	- Pollution is an <b>environmental</b> issue.
environmentally (adv)	من الناحية البيئية	- This is an <b>environmentally</b> harmful project.
friendly		
friend (n)	صديق	- Mr Hossam is a good <b>friend</b> .
friendly (adj)	ودود - وُدِّي	- Our team won its first <b>friendly</b> match.
friendliness (n)	الود - المحبة	- They welcomed us with love and <b>friendliness</b> .
friendship (n)	الصداقة	- <b>Friendship</b> is a valuable relationship.
respond		
respond (v)	يرد - يستجيب	- She <b>responded</b> to my offer positively. - I hope my headache will <b>respond</b> to this medicine.
response (n)	رد - استجابة	- She gave a positive <b>response</b> to my offer.

### satisfactory

<b>satisfy (v)</b>	يُرْضِي - يُلْبِي احتياجات	- Only winning our matches <b>satisfies</b> our fans.
<b>satisfaction (n)</b>	الرضا - الكفاية	- When I agreed, mum gave a smile of <b>satisfaction</b> .
<b>satisfactory (adj)</b>	مُرْضِي - كاف	- My teacher gave a <b>satisfactory</b> explanation to the lesson.

### significant

<b>signify (v)</b>	يعني - يعطي مغزي	- What does this reply <b>signify</b> ?
<b>significance (n)</b>	أهمية - تأثير - مغزي	- Do you understand the <b>significance</b> of his comment ?
<b>significant (adj)</b>	هام - مؤثر - ذو مغزي ملحوظ	- He gave a <b>significant</b> reply.
<b>significantly (adv)</b>	بشكل ملحوظ	- The number of internet users has increased <b>significantly</b> in the last ten years.

### 5

### Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

alternative to + n / (inf. + ing)	بديل لـ	local issues	مشكلات محلية
at least	على الأقل	people with disabilities	ذوي الإعاقة
be based on	قائم على	point of view	وجهة نظر
children of all ages	الأطفال من كل الأعمار	possible for	ممكّن لـ
decrease in	نقص / تقليل في	significant decrease	انخفاض ملحوظ
disagreeing strongly	الرفض بشدة	that is because	ذلك لأن
help out with	يتنقل للمساعدة في	using = by using	باستخدام
keep in mind	يضع في الاعتبار	Yours faithfully	المخلص

### 6

### Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

lead to + n / (inf. + ing)	يؤدي إلى	support ... with	يدعم ... بـ
respond to	يرد على - يستجيب لـ		

### 7

### Clear the confusion توضيح الشك

### argument – disagreement – dispute – quarrel

- **argument (n)** جدال - خلاف (يتضمن التحدث بغضب)  
- The traffic stopped because of an **argument** between two drivers.
- **disagreement (n)** خلاف (لا يتضمن التحدث بغضب)  
- Mr Hassan left the room after a **disagreement** with the manager.
- **dispute (n)** نزاع - خلاف (عام أو قانوني وغالباً يستمر لفترة طويلة)  
- The long legal **dispute** between the two companies has finally been ended.
- **quarrel (n)** جدال - خلاف (يتضمن التحدث بغضب ويستمر لفترة طويلة)  
- The traffic stopped because of a **quarrel** between two drivers.

## Exercises On Vocabulary Study

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "The second point in the report is very significant." The word 'significant' means .....  
(كفر الشيخ - قلين ٢٠٢٤)  
a. important      b. alternative      c. independent      d. hilarious
2. "Olive is a healthy alternative to butter." The synonym of the word 'alternative' is .....  
(المنيا - أبو قرقاص ٢٠٢٤)  
a. substitute      b. necessity      c. division      d. decision
3. "There has been much debate over cloning. 'Debate' is the synonym of .....  
(الدقهلية - الممرله ٢٠٢٤)  
a. argument      b. conclusion      c. introduction      d. resolution
4. "I expect him to respond to my request." 'Respond' here means .....  
(كفر الشيخ - فؤه ٢٠٢٤)  
a. reply      b. repeat      c. ignore      d. ask
5. "For a beginner, this camera produces satisfactory results." The antonym of 'satisfactory' is .....  
(الأقصر - ارمث ٢٠٢٤)  
a. sufficient      b. improper      c. efficient      d. adequate
6. "Researchers show that mild exercises and relaxation can help you reduce the stress of daily life." The synonym of "stress" is .....  
(البحيرة - أبو حمص ٢٠٢٤)  
a. anxiety      b. amusement      c. pleasure      d. treasure
7. I think this offer is very good and satisfying. It will be ".....".  
(كفر الشيخ - قلين ٢٠٢٤)  
a. unrecognisable      b. unprofitable      c. changeable      d. acceptable
8. The word 'convenient' means the same as the word .....  
(البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. comfortable      b. difficult      c. complex      d. uncomfortable
9. To "respond" gives an antonymous meaning to .....  
(سوهاج - جرجا ٢٠٢٣)  
a. require      b. inquire      c. tell      d. wander
10. "Your exam results are satisfactory, but you need to work harder next time." The synonym of "satisfactory" is .....  
(القاهرة - المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. important      b. acceptable      c. reliable      d. variable
11. The manager is ill, so I'm speaking ..... his behalf. (الجيزة - العمرانية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. at      b. of      c. over      d. on
12. I need to ..... my points.  
a. emphasise      b. make      c. deal      d. a & b
13. People ..... disabilities need special care.  
a. with      b. for      c. about      d. who's
14. Scientists are trying to find better alternatives to ..... harmful traditional petrol engines.  
a. use      b. uses      c. using      d. used



15. They are ..... some research into air pollution.  
 a. saving                      b. causing                      c. making                      d. doing
16. He is no volunteer. He ..... paid.  
 a. builds                      b. shows                      c. takes                      d. gets
17. I'd like to ..... the argument that we will all have stopped driving cars in fifty years' time.  
 a. save                      b. cause                      c. make                      d. do
18. "There's a significant difference between distance learning and face-to-face one." The adjective 'significant' in this context is the antonym of .....  
 a. meaningful                      b. insignificant                      c. remarkable                      d. a & c
19. You have to write back in ..... to this email as soon as possible.  
 a. argue                      b. argument                      c. respond                      d. response



## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

#### A speech about :

(WB page 10)

#### The future of public transport

I'd like to **make the argument**<sup>(1)</sup> that we will all have stopped driving cars in fifty years' time. That is **because**<sup>(2)</sup> there will be lots of **inexpensive**<sup>(3)</sup> and **environmentally friendly**<sup>(4)</sup> **forms**<sup>(5)</sup> of public transport. Another **important**<sup>(6)</sup> point I'd like to make is that, because roads will be **safer**<sup>(7)</sup>, there will be **alternatives**<sup>(8)</sup> to using trains and buses, too. For example, more people will walk and **cycle**<sup>(9)</sup>. It's important to **keep in mind**<sup>(10)</sup> that these ways of travelling will **lead to**<sup>(11)</sup> a significant **decrease**<sup>(12)</sup> in **levels**<sup>(13)</sup> of **pollution**<sup>(14)</sup>.



- (1) يقدم برهان - يبرهن  
 (2) لأن  
 (3) رخيص  
 (4) صديق للبيئة  
 (5) أشكال - أنواع  
 (6) هام - ملحوظ  
 (7) أكثر أماناً  
 (8) بدائل  
 (9) يركب دراجة  
 (10) يأخذ بعين الاعتبار  
 (11) يؤدي إلى  
 (12) انخفاض  
 (13) مستويات  
 (14) التلوث

#### An email to the local governorate

(SB page 21)

Dear Sir or Madam,

I am writing **on behalf of**<sup>(1)</sup> myself and the other students in my class at school.

We would be very **grateful**<sup>(2)</sup> if the **governorate**<sup>(3)</sup> would **consider**<sup>(4)</sup> **organising**<sup>(5)</sup> the expansion to our town's public

- (1) بالنيابة عن  
 (2) شاكر - ممتن  
 (3) المحافظة  
 (4) يفخر في  
 (5) لتنظيم

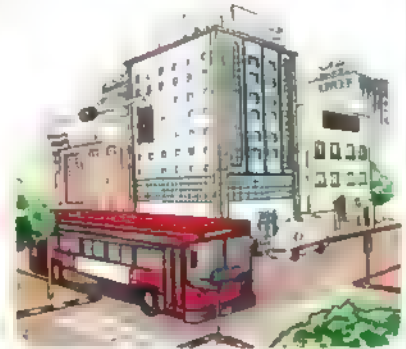
transport network. The **current**<sup>(6)</sup> network is not **satisfactory**<sup>(7)</sup> because there are not enough buses to take children to school early in the morning.

I have done some **research**<sup>(8)</sup> and some children arrive at school much later than they need to, and the buses are very **crowded**<sup>(9)</sup>.

I suggest that the City Council Office either **provide**<sup>(10)</sup> more buses at the time when students travel to school or it change the bus **timetable**<sup>(11)</sup> so that the buses arrive at our school twenty or thirty minutes **earlier**<sup>(12)</sup>.

I would be very happy to discuss this **issue**<sup>(13)</sup> **further**<sup>(14)</sup> at any time that would be **convenient**<sup>(15)</sup>. Then we could discuss which **solution(s)**<sup>(16)</sup> would be **possible**<sup>(17)</sup> for our city. Should you have any further questions about the public transport students need, please **respond**<sup>(18)</sup> to this email.

Yours faithfully,  
Sara Abdelaziz



- (6) الحالي
- (7) مرضي - كاف
- (8) بحث
- (9) مزدحم
- (10) يوفر
- (11) جدول مواعيد
- (12) أبخر - قبل
- (13) قضية
- (14) أكثر
- (15) فلانم
- (16) حل (حلول)
- (17) ممكن
- (18) يرد - يجيب

### Join us to help your community!

(WB page 11)

We are a group of volunteers who are working on behalf of the **local**<sup>(1)</sup> government and we **help out with**<sup>(2)</sup> local issues. Would you consider working with us?

Our current project is improving the local **playgrounds**<sup>(3)</sup>. These are great places for local families, but some of the **equipment**<sup>(4)</sup> is not satisfactory.

Our volunteers are working hard to make sure that all the playground equipment is **safe**<sup>(5)</sup> and fun to use for children of **all ages**<sup>(6)</sup>.

We will be at the town **hall**<sup>(7)</sup> all day on Tuesday 6<sup>th</sup> July. Come and join us at a time that is convenient!



Like



Comment



- (1) محلي
- (2) يبتذل للمساعدة في
- (3) ملاعب
- (4) معدات / أدوات
- (5) أمن
- (6) من كل الأعمار
- (7) قاعة

## 2 Listening Text

(SB page 20)

**Presenter :** I'm here today to talk to you about cars and tell you why we will not have stopped driving them by 2050.

The first argument I would like to make, and something we should never forget, is that cars are everywhere. Just look around! Most people drive their cars every day. It's hard-perhaps impossible-to **imagine**<sup>(1)</sup> that people will have changed the way they travel so much that by 2050, nobody will be driving.

Another very **significant point**<sup>(2)</sup> that I'd like to make is that it's hard to imagine

a good alternative to the car at the moment. Some people have suggested that we will have started using flying vehicles by 2030, but I **doubt**<sup>(3)</sup> that. Alternatives to the car are usually too expensive, too dangerous, and many of them might also damage the environment in the same way that some cars do. It's important to keep in mind that more and more of the cars that we're making today are environmentally-friendly. Just look at the **popularity**<sup>(4)</sup> of electric cars. They don't damage the environment when we drive them and so we can expect that, in a few years' time, they will have become even more popular.



١. يتصور / يتخيل

٢. نقطة هامة

٣. يشك

٤. شعبية / شهرة

PART IV

## LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

التوبة

### Exercises On Language

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

† Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. By 2030, we ..... able to make cars that run on water.

a. will be not

b. will have been

c. will be being

d. will have

2. I'm sorry I can't go to your party. I ..... to the dentist this afternoon.

a. am going

b. will go

c. will have gone

d. going

(بورسعيد - بورمؤاد ٢٠٢٣)



3. What ..... before next summer? (إبنى سوييف - الواسطي ٢٣ ٢٢)  
 a. will have you done      b. you will have done  
 c. have you done      d. will you have done
4. By 21<sup>st</sup> May, I ..... all my final exams. (السيوط - انبوت ٢٣ ٢٢)  
 a. will have taken      b. take  
 c. will take      d. will have been taken
5. Five percent of the desert ..... by 2030. (البحيرة - ابو حمص ٢٣ ٢٢)  
 a. will have reclaimed      b. will reclaim  
 c. will have been reclaimed      d. would be reclaimed
6. By the time I finish this course, I ..... ten tests. (القاهرة - المرح ٢٣ ٢٢)  
 a. will have taken      b. will take      c. am taking      d. will be taking
7. I ..... read the book by the end of this week. (القاهرة - الرينون ٢٣ ٢٢)  
 a. will have      b. will      c. am going to      d. can
8. By the age of 24, I will ..... (اسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٣-٢٢)  
 a. have graduated      b. have been graduated  
 c. graduate      d. be graduated
9. My daughter ..... her exams until next weekend.  
 a. will be finishing      b. won't be finished  
 c. will have finished      d. won't have finished
10. I expect we ..... all the work by five o'clock this evening.  
 a. will have been done      b. will have done  
 c. will be done      d. will be doing
11. The clear sky is a sign that it ..... another sunny day.  
 a. will be      b. is being      c. is going to be      d. will have been
12. We ..... in Cairo for five years next month.  
 a. will have been      b. will be      c. are going to be      d. are being
13. You won't need to call them as they ..... by lunchtime.  
 a. arriving      b. going to arrive      c. will be arrived      d. will have arrived
14. They ..... dinner by the time we get there. There will be no food left.  
 a. will have      b. will be had      c. had had      d. will have had
15. You ..... done a lot of your work by the end of this month. You will be free then.  
 a. will have      b. will be      c. had      d. have
16. You ..... the book before the next class, won't you?  
 a. will have read      b. won't have read  
 c. have read      d. didn't read
17. By 2026, the population of Egypt ..... to about 120 million.  
 a. will have been grown      b. would grow  
 c. will be grown      d. will have grown
18. Many of these vegetables ..... become corrupt فاسدة before we cook them.  
 a. would have      b. will have been      c. will be      d. will have

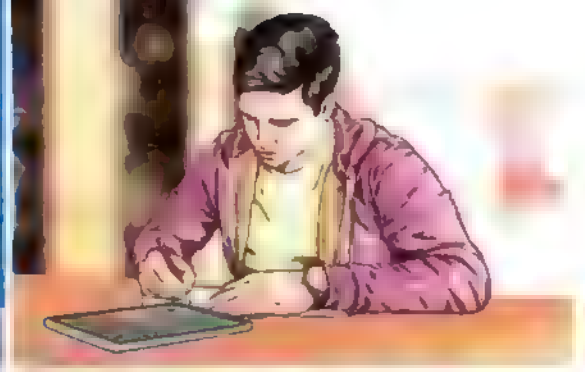
## 2 Special cases

19. Ahmed's birthday ..... after two weeks, on 26<sup>th</sup> April.  
 a. will have been      b. is being      c. is going to be      d. will be

20. Mum won't visit grandma tomorrow as she ..... the houseworks all day.  
 a. will have done                      b. will be doing  
 c. will be done                         d. would be done
21. In 2026, the population of Egypt ..... to about 120 million.  
 a. will be grown    b. will grow    c. has grown    d. have grown
22. After I ..... all my jobs at the office, I will go home to have a nap.  
 a. finishes                                b. will finish  
 c. am going to finish                    d. have finished
23. I ..... with my aunt during my next two-week holiday in Alexandria.  
 She has invited me.  
 a. am staying    b. shall stay    c. am going to    d. stay
24. Leave the baby here and I ..... after her.  
 a. will look                                b. will have looked  
 c. am going to look                      d. am looking
25. I ..... that book by the time you get here. It is very long.  
 a. will have read                         b. won't have read  
 c. won't have been read                d. will be read
26. Our company ..... a delegation to the international economic conference.  
 a. is sending    b. will send    c. is being sent    d. going to send

### Check your understanding

27. "I expect to have finished the report by 11 o'clock tomorrow." This means that .....  
 a. the report expects to have finished by 11 o'clock tomorrow  
 b. the report is expected to have finished by 11 o'clock tomorrow  
 c. the report is expected to have been finished by 11 o'clock tomorrow  
 d. b & c
28. "My car is expected to have been checked in half an hour." This means that .....  
 a. I expect my car to have checked in half an hour  
 b. the mechanic will have checked my car in half an hour  
 c. the mechanic will have been checked my car in half an hour  
 d. my car is expected to have checked in half an hour
29. "I will have returned home by nine." The word 'by' here means .....  
 a. before                      b. after                      c. at                      d. exactly at
30. "I expect Dr Mustafa to have opened his clinic by 2028." What does this mean?  
 a. Dr Mustafa is expected to have opened his clinic by 2028.  
 b. Dr Mustafa's clinic is expected to have been opened by 2028.  
 c. Dr Mustafa will have opened his clinic by 2028.  
 d. a, b & c



للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة

نصائح

PART 1

## LANGUAGE HINTS

### Should / If

- تُستخدم (Should) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الشرطية الاولى كالتالي:

- Should + subj. + inf. ..., + subj. + will / can / may + inf. ...

ex. - If Sama studies hard, she will get high marks.

= Should Sama study hard, she will get high marks.

- تُستخدم (Should) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الشرطية الثانية كالتالي:

Should + subj. + inf. ..., + subj. + would / could / might + inf. ...

ex. - If Ahmed had enough time, he will help me.

= Should Ahmed have enough time, he will help me.

### Present participle clauses (inf. + ing) عبارات اسم الفاعل

تبدأ هذه العبارات بـ (inf. + ing) وتستخدم في حالة المبني للمعلوم، ويمكن أن تُستخدم بدلا من الروابط التالية:

1 While / As بينما + جملة مبنية للمعلوم = (Inf. + ing)...

ex. - While I was walking in the street, I lost my keys.

= Walking in the street, I lost my keys.

2 When عندما + جملة مبنية للمعلوم = (Inf. + ing)...

ex. - When I opened the door of the room, I realised that Ahmed was asleep.

= Opening the door of the room, I realised that Ahmed was asleep.

3 After / As soon as / Once بمجرد أن + جملة مبنية للمعلوم = (Inf. + ing)...

ex. - As soon as Sama had arrived home, she turned on the lights.

= Arriving home, Sama turned on the lights.

4 Because لأن + جملة مبنية للمعلوم = (Inf. + ing)...

ex. - Because I was very ill, I didn't go to school.

= Being very ill, I didn't go to school.

5 ..... by + (inf. + ing) / the + noun اسم + of = (inf. + ing)...

ex. - I kept warm in the cold weather by wearing a lot of clothes.

= I kept warm in the cold weather wearing a lot of clothes.

- I managed to open the door by the use of my sister's key.

= I managed to open the door using my sister's key.



**6** ... who / which / that + جملة وصل مبنية للمعلوم = (inf. + ing)...

- ex.** - The man who is wearing a black jacket is my uncle.  
 = The man wearing a black jacket is my uncle.  
 - The factory which produces a lot of pollution must be closed.  
 = The factory producing a lot of pollution must be closed.

## Compound Adjectives الصفات المركبة

تتكون الصفة المركبة من كلمتين أو أكثر وبينهم (-) :

Expression	Hyphenated Adjective
Tools which have worn out	worn-out tools
A girl who is five years old	a five-year-old girl
A pole which is two and a half metres long	a two-and-a-half-metre-long pole
A horse which is very friendly looking	a friendly-looking horse
A house which is ten years old	a ten-year-old house
A ladder which is four metres long	a four-metre-long ladder
Rules which are easy to remember	easy-to-remember rules

## stop

• stop + obj. + from + (inf. + ing) = stop + obj. + (inf. + ing) ... من أن ... يمنع  
 بمعنى: stop + obj. + مفعول + from + (inf. + ing) = stop + obj. + مفعول + (inf. + ing) ... من أن ... يمنع

- ex.** - We must stop people from polluting the river.  
 = We must stop people polluting the river.

• stop + to + inf.

يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئاً

- ex.** - On my way home, I stopped to buy some fruit.

• stop + (inf. + ing)

يتوقف عن فعل شيء

- ex.** - My uncle has stopped smoking and his health is better now.

## enjoy / love / consider + (inf. + ing)

- ex.** - Ashraf enjoys drinking fresh juice.  
 - Nora loves writing poems.  
 - Salah considers playing for another club.

- تذكر أن الفعل (love) يأتي بعده (inf. + ing) أو (to + inf.) دون فرق في المعنى:

- ex.** - Mohamed loves meeting / to meet people from different countries.

## Ways to express reason التعبير عن السبب

(inf. + ing) + بفضل / بسبب because of / due to / owing to + جملة مضارع  
 جملة مضارع تام / مضارع تام مستمر + لأن because / since / as + جملة مضارع

- ex.** - I'm very tired because of working very hard all day.  
 - I'm very tired because I have been working very hard all day.  
 - Because of looking at the computer screen for a long time, he has problems with his sight.  
 - Because he has been looking at the computer screen for a long time, he has problems with his sight.

• **This / That is because +** جملة سبب

وذلك لأن

- ex.** - I am very tired. **That's because** I have been working all day.  
- He has a problem with his sight. **This is because** he has been looking at the computer screen for a long time.

**equipment**

كلمة (equipment) لا تُعد وتُعاقل مُعاملة المفرد:

- ex.** - **This equipment** is very expensive. (**Not:** These equipments are ...)

**Exercise On Language Hints**

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- ..... he die without making a will, his closest relative will inherit all the properties. (الشرقية - غرب الزقاريق ٢٠٢٤)  
a. If                      b. Should                      c. Were                      d. Unless
- He is a ..... boy. (المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٤)  
a. ten year-old                      b. ten year old                      c. ten-year-old                      d. ten-years- old
- He was punished ..... he had made a serious mistake. (المنيا - المراغة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. because                      b. so                      c. due to                      d. that's why
- Can you tell me the reason ..... you broke the school rules? (دمياط - الروضة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. for                      b. of                      c. why                      d. at
- Without ..... your parents, you will lose more. (السيوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٣)  
a. obeyed                      b. disobey                      c. obeying                      d. disobeying
- ..... up next to the sea, Amira learned to swim when she was very young.  
a. Growing                      b. Grow                      c. She grew                      d. Grew
- Picking up her pen, Samira ..... to write a letter to her friend in Italy.  
a. start                      b. had started                      c. started                      d. starting
- ..... along the street, my sister and I saw a famous athlete!  
a. To walk                      b. Walk                      c. Walked                      d. Walking
- Driving into town, we saw that the streets were full of people ..... their shopping.  
a. do                      b. did                      c. had done                      d. doing
- Tarek fell over, ..... over a table at the same time.  
a. knocking                      b. knock                      c. knocked                      d. to knock
- He was punished ..... the mistake he had made.  
a. that's because                      b. because                      c. due to                      d. a & b
- He was punished ..... he had made a big mistake.  
a. that's because                      b. because                      c. due to                      d. a & b
- The equipment of the classrooms ..... been delivered.  
a. is                      b. has                      c. are                      d. have

14. I started to change my mind about the new car. I consider .....  
for my money back.  
a. to ask                      b. ask                      c. to asking                      d. asking
15. Sama stopped ..... fizzy drinks because they are unhealthy.  
a. drinking                      b. to drink                      c. to drinking                      d. drink
16. Yara stopped ..... some water because she was thirsty.  
a. drinking                      b. to drink                      c. to drinking                      d. drink
17. The policeman stopped me ..... my car in this 'No Parking' area.  
a. parking                      b. from parking                      c. a & b                      d. to park
18. Our flat has a ..... ceiling.  
a. four metres high                      b. four metre high  
c. four-metres-high                      d. four-metre-high
19. There was a ..... wind.  
a. thirtieth-kilometre-an-hour                      b. thirtieth kilometre an hour  
c. thirty kilometre an hour                      d. thirty-kilometre-an-hour



## LANGUAGE SKILLS

### 1 Reading

⊛ Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

(الماهرة - بشرق هدية مصر ٢٠٢٤)

Public transport refers to transportation services that are available for use by the general public, typically operated by the government or private companies. This can include buses, trains, subways, tunnels, ferries, and more. Public transport systems vary in quality and efficiency.

There are some pros of public transportation. Public transportation is often cheaper than owning and maintaining a car, especially for daily commuters. Public transportation helps reduce pollution and greenhouse gas emissions by decreasing the number of cars on the road. By encouraging people to use public transport, it can help **alleviate** traffic congestion in cities. Public transportation provides mobility options for people who may not have access to a car or are unable to drive. You can work or read during your commute. Reduced air pollution leads to better public health. Public transport allows you to travel with neighbours and friends. Public transport provides employment opportunities.

There are also some cons of public transportation. Its schedules may not always align with individual travel needs, leading to potential delays and longer travel time. During peak hours, public transport can be crowded, uncomfortable, and sometimes unreliable. Some people may feel unsafe or uncomfortable using public transportation, especially at night or in certain areas. In some areas, public transportation options may be limited, making it challenging for people to reach certain destinations. You share public transport with strangers. Sometimes, waiting for public transport can be inconvenient. Overall, public transportation offers numerous benefits, but it also has its limitations and problems.



1. A suitable title for the passage is “.....”.
  - a. The advantages of public transportation
  - b. The disadvantages of public transportation
  - c. The merits of public transportation
  - d. Public transportation
2. .... can use public transportation.
  - a. Anyone
  - b. Only rich people
  - c. Only poor people
  - d. No choice is correct
3. One of the following is not a demerit of public transportation:
  - a. crowdedness.
  - b. waiting times.
  - c. working during commuting.
  - d. travelling with strangers.
4. The writer suggests that public transport systems be ..... in terms of efficiency.
  - a. equal
  - b. different
  - c. similar
  - d. the same
5. The opposite of the underlined word ‘alleviate’ is .....
  - a. reduce
  - b. ease
  - c. increase
  - d. relieve
6. According to the text, in remote areas people might feel ..... especially at night.
  - a. safer using public transport
  - b. safer using their private cars
  - c. relaxed using public transport
  - d. less dangerous using public transport
7. The writer suggests that encouraging people to use public transport ..... the environment.
  - a. helps
  - b. has no effect on
  - c. damages
  - d. harms
8. The writer thinks that public transport has ..... advantages.
  - a. insufficient
  - b. many
  - c. unimportant
  - d. inadequate

### 1 كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني Email Writing

هناك بعض التعبيرات الخاصة برسائل البريد الإلكتروني التي تختلف في اللغة العامية عن اللغة الدارجة مثل -

	Formal	Informal
1.	Dear Sir or Madam عريزي السيد / السيدة	Hello / Hi مرحباً
2.	We would be very grateful if ... could ... سلكون ممثلين لو ان ...	Please, could you ...? هل يمكن ان ... من فضلك؟
3.	The ... is not satisfactory ... ان ... ليس مرضياً	The ... isn't good enough. ان ... ليس جيداً بما يكفي
4.	As a result, لذلك	Because of that لهذا السبب
5.	I would suggest that اود ان اقترح ان ...	One idea is ... أحد الأفكار هي ان

6.	I would be very happy to ... يسعدني أن ...	It would be no problem to ... لا توجد مشكلة في أن ...
7.	Should you have any further questions, please respond to this email. إذا كان لديكم مزيد من الاستفسارات، يمكنكم الرد على هذه الرسالة	Write to me if you need to know anything else. راسلني إذا أردت أن تعرف أي شيء آخر.
8.	Yours faithfully المخلص	Bye إلى اللقاء

### Model Email

- ★ Write an email of about (180) words to your friend Nadi(a) telling him / her about the advantages and disadvantages of smart phones. Your email is nabil(a@student.com and your friend's email is nadi(a@student.com

**From :** nabil.a@student.com  
**To :** nadi.a@student.com  
**Subject :** advantages and disadvantages of smartphones

**Dear Nadi(a),**

How are you, Nadia? I hope you and your family are your best. It gives me great pleasure to send this email to you. I want to tell you about my opinion of smartphones.

Like everything else, smartphones have advantages and disadvantages. On the one hand, they have made communication easier than before. You can call anybody anywhere at any time. You can also send text messages. They allow you to send and receive video calls. You can also log on the internet quickly. Smart phones have a lot of applications that allow you to know and follow everything through them. And, believe it or not, you can work and get money through smartphones.

On the other hand, mobile phones have some disadvantages. People have stopped visiting each other because it has become easier to phone them. Some young people use smartphones in bad ways. They can also cause some health problems.

Finally, I think that we have to use smartphones in a way that makes us benefit from them and, at the same time, avoid their downsides. Now, what do you think of smartphones? I'm waiting for your reply.

**Yours,**  
**Nabil(a)**

## 3 Writing

- ✪ Write an e-mail of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words to your friend Tarek about your suggestions to solve the problem of traffic in your city. Your name is Ashraf.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 4 Translation الترجمة

- 1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Public means of transport have been modernised all over Egypt.

As a result, people save much time and effort due to reaching their destinations more comfortably than before.

(اسوهاج - حرجا ٢٤ ٢)

- a. لقد تم تحديث المواصلات خاصة في جميع أنحاء مصر، ونتيجة لذلك يوفر الناس كثير من الوقت والجهد بسبب وصولهم إلى وجهاتهم بشكل أكثر راحة من ذي قبل.
- b. لقد تم تحديث المواصلات العامة في جميع أنحاء مصر، ونتيجة لذلك يوفر الناس كثير من الوقت والجهد بسبب وصولهم إلى وجهاتهم بشكل أكثر راحة من ذي قبل.
- c. لقد تم تحديث المواصلات العامة في جميع أنحاء العالم، ونتيجة لذلك يوفر الناس كثير من الوقت والجهد بسبب وصولهم إلى وجهاتهم بشكل أكثر راحة من ذي قبل.
- d. لقد تم تحديث بعض المواصلات العامة في جميع أنحاء مصر، ونتيجة لذلك يوفر الناس كثير من الوقت والجهد بسبب وصولهم إلى وجهاتهم بشكل أكثر راحة من ذي قبل.

2. Facing global problems is the responsibility of governments as well as individuals. Therefore, we should play a positive role in facing these challenges to lead a better life.

(بورسعيد - جنوب بورسعيد ٢٤ ٢)

- a. مواجهة المشكلات العالمية هي مسئولية الحكومات والأفراد، لذلك يجب أن تلعب دوراً محورياً في مواجهة هذه التحديات للحياة أفضل.
- b. مواجهة المشكلات العالمية هي مسئولية الحكومات والأفراد، لذلك يجب أن تلعب دوراً إيجابياً في مواجهة هذه التحديات للحياة أفضل.
- c. إن مواجهة المشكلات العلمية هي مسئولية الحكومات والأفراد، لذلك يجب أن تلعب دوراً إيجابياً في مواجهة هذه التحديات لنفوذ حياة أفضل.
- d. إن مواجهة المشكلات العالمية هي مسئولية الحكومات والأفراد، لذلك يجب ألا تلعب دوراً إيجابياً في مواجهة هذه التحديات للحياة أفضل.



## 2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

١ يعتمد النقل والكثير من الصناعات بشكل كامل على النفط، لذا نحن بحاجة إلى البحث عن مصادر بديلة من الطاقة المتجددة لأن النفط سينفذ في المستقبل. (سوهاج - حرجا ٢٤ ٢٢)

- Transport and a lot of factories completely reliant on natural gas so we need to look for alternative sources of renewable energy because oil will run out in the future.
- Flights and many industries completely reliant on oil so we need to look for alternative sources of nonrenewable energy because oil will run out in the future.
- Transport and many industrialists completely rely on oil so we need to look for alternative sources of renewable energy because oil will run away in the future.
- Transport and a lot of industries completely depend on oil so we need to look for alternative sources of renewable energy because oil will run out in the future.

١ يُعتبر استخدام وسائل النقل العامة أحد الحلول المثلى للقضاء على الازدحام المروري وتوفير الطاقة، وتساعد هذه الفكرة في تقليل نسبة التلوث خصوصاً في المدن التي تعاني من الانفجار السكاني. (بورسعيد - نورمؤيد ٢٤ ٢٢)

- Using public means of transport is an ideal solution to lessen traffic jam and save energy. This idea helps to reduce the pollution percentage especially in cities that suffer from overpopulation.
- Used public means of transport is an ideal solution to lessen traffic jam and save energy. This idea helps to reduce the pollution percentage especially in cities that suffer from overpopulation.
- Using public means of transport is an ideal solution to increase traffic jam and save energy. This idea helps to reduce the pollution percentage especially in cities that suffer from overpopulation.
- Using public means of transport is an ideal solution to lessen traffic jam and save energy. This idea helps to reduce the pollution percentage especially in cities that suffer from under population.



## JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

◀ للمناقشة فقط

### alternative

#### • alternative (adj)

بدیل (صفة تأتي فقط قبل الاسم)

- The boss said that he has a plan which is **alternative**. (X)
- The boss said that he has an **alternative** plan. (✓)

- **alternative (adj)** مُختلف - مُغاير (صفة تأتي غالباً قبل الاسم)  
- In modern cities, people have an **alternative** lifestyle.
  - **alternative (n)** بديل - اختيار آخر  
- I had no **alternative** but to report him to the police.
  - **alternative to + n / (inf. + ing)** بديل - اختيار آخر  
- I had no **alternative** to reporting him to the police.
- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
- have no alternative ليس لديه اختيار بديل
  - leave somebody with no alternative لا يترك له مجال للاختيار - يفرض عليه
  - a practical / safe alternative بديل عملي / آمن

### argument

- **argue (with) (v)** يجادل - يتنازع (مع)  
- The teacher was angry because Soha continued to **argue with** her friend during the lesson.
  - **argue about / over (v)** يجادل - يتنازع (علي / بشأن)  
- These two girls **argue over** everything.
  - **argue (for / against) (v)** يترافع - يحاجج (مع / ضد)  
- My mother **argued for** keeping our old car.  
- My mother **argued against** selling our old car.
  - **argue + شخص + into + (inf. + ing)** يُقنع ... أن يقوم بـ ...  
- I **argued** my mother **into** selling our old car.
  - **arguable = debatable (adj)** مشكوك فيه - قابل للجدل والمناقشة  
- His skills as a teacher are **arguable**.
  - **argumentative (adj)** مُحب للجدل  
- My daughter is **argumentative**. She is never persuaded easily.
  - **argument (with / over / about) (n)** خلاف - نزاع (مع / بشأن)  
- He felt sorry after his **argument with** his wife.
  - **argument (for / against) (n)** حجة - دليل - مرافعة (مع / ضد)  
- He made a good **argument against** child labour.
- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
- for the sake of argument لمجرد النقاش - فلنفترض جدلاً
  - do something without argument يفعل ... دون نقاش
  - argument in favour of حجج في صالح
  - bitter / furious/ fierce / violent argument نقاش حاد

### connection

- **connect (to / with) (v)** يربط - يُوصل  
- The new road **connects** our village to the nearest town.

• **connect (with) (v)**

يرتبط - يكون علي علاقة بـ

- He finds it easy to **connect with** other people.

• **connected (to / with / by) (adj)**

متصل بـ / مرتبط - علي علاقة بـ

- Our school is **connected to** the internet.

• **connection (to / with / between) = link (n)**

اتصال - ارتباط - علاقة

- I can't understand the **connection between** these two people.

لاحظ المتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- have a connection to / with

علي علاقة بـ - متصل بـ

- see a connection between ... and ...

يربط بين ... و ...

- make a connection

يوجد علاقة - يربط بين

- stop a connection

ينهي العلاقة - يفصل

**expansion**

• **expand (v)** ينكمش / يتقلص - يَبْلُ - ينمّش - يتوسع - يتزايد

- Metals **expand** when they are heated.

• **expand (v)**

يتوسع

- Our company **has expanded** its business by adding new products.

• **expandable (adj)**

قابل للتوسعة أو الزيادة

- This tablet has an **expandable** memory.

• **expansion (of / in) = growth (n)**

التمدد - الزيادة - التوسع

- The **expansion** student numbers makes it necessary to build new schools.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- a big / huge / great / massive expansion

توسع هائل

- a major / significant expansion

زيادة ملحوظة

- urban expansion

التوسع في المدن

- expansion plan / programme

برنامج / خطة التوسع أو الريادة

**facilities**

• **facilities (n)**

تسهيلات - مرافق - امكانيات (دائماً جمع)

- Sharm has a lot of tourist **facilities**.

• **facility (n)**

منشأة / مركز (لغرض معيّن)

- The club has a large **facility** for indoor sports.

• **facility (n)**

موهبة / فلكة

- Rokaya has a clear **facility** for drawing.

• **facilitate(d) (v)**

يُيسّر - يُسهّل

- The internet **has facilitated** getting information.

• **facilitation (n)**

التيسير - التسهيل

- The **facilitation** of getting information was one of the advantages of the internet.

• **facilitator (n)**

مُيسّر

- A teacher sometimes acts as a **facilitator**.



## public

- **publicise(d) / publicize(d) (v)** ينشر - يشيع - يروج ل
  - The government **publicised** the new employment law.
- **publicity (n)** دُيُوع - شعبية - شهرة
  - Smoking has received bad **publicity** over the last years.
- **publicity (n)** الدعاية
  - Good **publicity** increases the sales المبيعات.
- **public (adj)**
  - bad / negative / adverse publicity
  - get / receive / gain publicity
  - the glare of publicity
- **public (adj)** عامي - شعبي (يخص عامة الشعب)
  - Social Media attract **public** attention.
- **public (adj) ≠ private** خاص / شخصي
  - It is better if we use transport which is **public**. (X)
  - It is better if we use **public** transport. (✓)
- **public (adj)** معروف - ظاهر
  - The governor **public** figure.
- **the public (n)** الجمهور - العامة - الملا (يتبعها فعل مفرد أو جمع)
  - **The public** don't / doesn't support the new law.
- **in public** علي الملا
  - Don't talk about this plan **in public**. It is secret.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- go public on / with يُعلن عن / يكشف النقاب عن
- public property ملكية عامة

## respond

- **respond (to / that) (v)** يجيب (علي) - يرد (علي)
  - Omar didn't **respond to** my last email.
  - She **responded that** she didn't want to come with us.
- **respond (to / with / by) = react (v)** يستجيب (ل) - يتجاوب (مع)
  - The manager **responded to** the complaint الشكوى and increased my salary.
- **respond (to) (v)** يتحسن (للحجة ل)
  - Mum didn't **respond to** this medicine.
- **responsive (to) (adj) ≠ unresponsive (to)** غير مستجيب ل - مستجيب ل - متجاوب مع
  - The pain was **responsive to** this painkiller. مُسكِّن

## • response (to) (n)

استجابة (ل) - رد (علي)

- Her response to my suggestion was disappointing. مخيب للآمال.
- I am waiting for your response to my offer.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- in response to رداً علي - استجابة لـ
- get / receive a response يتلقى رد - يلقي استجابة
- a positive response - استحسنان - رد إيجابي
- negative response رد سلبي

## Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

### ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I don't know how you could ..... him into accepting the offer. He refused it at first.  
a. transport      b. publicise      c. facilitate      d. argue
2. Amira is a real artist. She has got an amazing ..... for drawing.  
a. publicity      b. facility      c. transportation      d. expansion
3. The public ..... waiting for the important match.  
a. am      b. is      c. are      d. b & c
4. A secretary is supposed to have the ability to ..... with all staff members.  
a. practise      b. pronounce      c. connect      d. salute
5. My cold ..... well to this antibiotic.  
a. damaged      b. spread      c. responded      d. sneezed

## Advanced Exercise on Language

### ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. By 2030, he ..... a house in Cairo. He has got a promise that his father will do so.  
a. will have bought      b. will have been bought  
c. will be bought      d. will be buying
2. I am sure that tomorrow you ..... all about these rules. You will break them again.  
a. will be forgotten      b. won't forget  
c. won't have forgotten      d. will have forgotten
3. Before you leave home, your belongings .....  
a. will have been collected      b. will have collected  
c. will collect      d. will be collecting
4. Next year, he ..... a farmer for 20 years.  
a. will have been      b. will be      c. is going to be      d. is being
5. By the time I'm a father, students ..... much better schools.  
a. will attend      b. will have attended  
c. will be attended      d. will have been attended

# Test on Unit 8

● Create



• التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب

• تدريبات الزهر الشريف في بنك الأسئلة



اختبار الكبروني

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We shouldn't give ..... our goals and should try hard to achieve them. (الدقهلية - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. out                      b. up                      c. away                      d. off
2. There has been a big ..... in the number of people using mobile phones in recent years. (بورسعيد - شمال بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤)  
a. invitation              b. invention              c. expansion              d. upload
3. The resort has a lot of ..... to attract more tourists. (بورسعيد - بورمؤاد ٢٠٢٤)  
a. inventors              b. facilities              c. difficulties              d. discoverer
4. Pollution is a global ..... which is discussed in international conferences. (الدقهلية - دكرس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. issue                      b. tissue                      c. ratio                      d. rate
5. My noisy neighbours left me no alternative but to call the police. The synonym of the noun 'alternative' is ..... (الاسماعيلية - ابو صوير ٢٠٢٤)  
a. substitute              b. obligation              c. necessity              d. device
6. Using ..... transport reduces pollution but it is slow and crowded. (دار السلام ٢٠٢٣)  
a. special                      b. private                      c. public                      d. republic
7. Egypt is building a modern ..... of roads and flyovers.  
a. alternative              b. argument              c. authority              d. network
8. I can't meet you since I ..... my lessons all day.  
a. will revise                      b. had revised  
c. will be revising                      d. have revised
9. By this time next month, the prisoner ..... set free.  
a. had                      b. had been                      c. will have                      d. will have been
10. The guests are coming at 8 p.m. I ..... cooking by then.  
a. am finishing                      b. will be finished  
c. may be finished                      d. will have finished
11. A new Egyptian solar-powered vehicle is expected to ..... soon.  
a. show                      b. have being shown  
c. have been shown                      d. have been showing
12. Experts think that Egypt's exports ..... by more 30% next year.  
a. will grow                      b. is growing                      c. is going to grow                      d. grows
13. Sorry, I can't see you later this evening. I ..... my homework.  
a. did                      b. will be done                      c. am doing                      d. was doing



2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

It is clear that people are spending a lot of time on the internet nowadays, and thus spending less time with real people. I strongly agree that although this use of the internet has greatly increased the level of communication, it has also had detrimental effects on social interaction among people.

With people connected across the globe, the benefits of the internet are obviously clear. In the past, communication was only possible by phone or mail, which required time and expense. It also usually meant just keeping in contact with those people already known to you. With the internet, this has changed. Email and social networking sites and apps such as Facebook and WhatsApp have created online communities that are global in scale, and they have fostered communication between people and countries, which we didn't think possible in the near past.

People, especially the younger generation, spend hours chatting with online friends. Although this can be beneficial, it is certainly not the same as real interaction with human beings and does not involve the same human skills. It can also have negative effects on local communities. It is important that children have and maintain real friendships in order to develop their own interpersonal skills. If people are spending most of their time communicating online and not mixing with their families, relatives and real friends, this will certainly lead to feelings of isolation for those people who do not have a 'real' person to find in the times of need.

1. The main idea of the passage is .....
  - a. The benefits of friendship
  - b. Different means of communication
  - c. The pros and cons of the internet
  - d. The uses of the internet
2. The internet is a ..... means of communication.
  - a. global
  - b. national
  - c. local
  - d. personal
3. The underlined word 'detrimental' is equal in meaning to .....
  - a. helpful
  - b. natural
  - c. useful
  - d. harmful
4. According to the passage, which of the following sentences is true?
  - a. Internet friends are more useful than real ones.
  - b. Young people avoid spending much time on the internet.
  - c. The internet is cheaper than the older means of communication.
  - d. The internet helps us to develop our own interpersonal skills.
5. Spending most of the time online and not mixing with real people may lead to .....
  - a. success in life
  - b. feelings of isolation
  - c. avoiding bad people
  - d. saving a lot of money

6. The second paragraph is about .....  
 a. the advantages of the internet      b. the disadvantages of the internet  
 c. ways to save money online      d. finding good friends
7. According to the passage, people should use the internet .....  
 a. excessively      b. at a great deal  
 c. wisely      d. only once a day
8. If we make a balance between our online life and our contact with real human beings, it will be .....  
 a. expensive      b. useful      c. harmful      d. excessive

3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

School life is a very important part of one's life because it provides an opportunity for study and discipline.

(انسبوت - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٤)

- a. تُعَدُّ الحياة المدرسية جزءاً مهماً جداً من حياة البعض، لأنها توفر فرصة للدراسة والانضباط.  
 b. تُعَدُّ الحياة المدرسية جزءاً مهملاً جداً من حياة الفرد، لأنها توفر فرصة للدراسة والانضباط.  
 c. تُعَدُّ الحياة المدرسية جزءاً مهماً جداً من حياة الفرد، لأنها توفر فرصة للدراسة والانضباط.  
 d. تُعَدُّ الحياة المدرسية جزءاً مهماً جداً من الحياة الواحدة، لأنها توفر فرصة للدراسة والانضباط.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

إن تطوير النقل العام يعتمد على الابتكار والتكنولوجيا الذكية، فهذه الأنظمة تساعد في تقليل الازدحام وتحسين تجربة الركاب.  
 (العنيا - العدة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. The development of public transport systems relies on innovation and smart technology. These systems help reduce congestion and improve the passenger experience.  
 b. The development of public transport systems resists innovation and avoids smart technology. This leads to increased congestion and worsens the passenger experience.  
 c. Public transport systems develop without reliance on innovation or smart technology. They contribute to increasing congestion and degrading the passenger experience.  
 d. The evolution of public transport systems depends solely on traditional methods. These systems increase congestion and reduce the quality of the passenger experience.

4. Answer the following questions :

1. If you were Edgar, would you reveal your true identity to your father, Gloucester to comfort him ? Why/Why not ?  
 (المبيا - ملوى ٢٠٢٤)

.....

2. Goneril was neither a loving daughter nor a good wife. Explain.

.....

3. What do you think of Albany?

(الماهرة - حدائق الغنة ٢٠٢٤)

.....

5. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :

(الدقهلية - اجا ٢٠٢٤)

**“Different means of modern transport”**

# UNIT 9

SB pages 26 : 35

WB pages 14 : 19

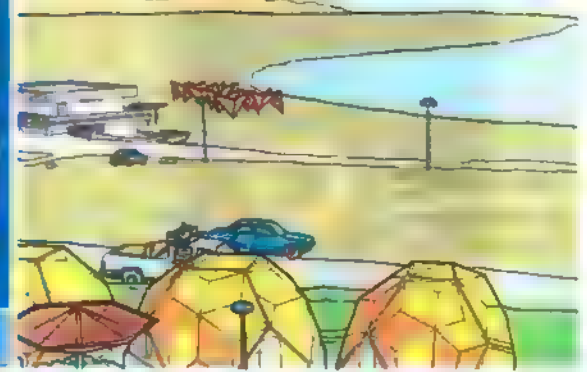
## Conservation



### Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- ✪ **Reading** : An online advertisement for volunteer conservation trips
- ✪ **Writing** : An email on the best solution to a local problem;  
An opinion essay about the benefits of volunteering
- ✪ **Listening** : A news report about the protection of the environment
- ✪ **Speaking** : Discussing the benefits of volunteering;  
Discussing problems and choosing the best solution
- ✪ **Language** : Comparative phrases; Used to / didn't use to
- ✪ **Life skills** : Problem-solving; Negotiation and decision-making; Collaboration





## VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

biodiversity(n)	التنوع البيولوجي	native(adj)	محلي
challenging(adj)	تنطوي على تحدي	preserve(d) (v)	يصون - يحمي
conservation(n)	حماية البيئة - حفظ	rewarding(adj)	مُجزي
exactly(adv)	تماماً - بالضبط	scholarship(n)	مُلحة دراسية
expedition(n)	بعثة استكشافية	slightly(adv)	بدرجة طفيفة
inhabitant (n)	أحد سُكّان - قاطن	species(n)	نوع - أنواع
native inhabitants(n)	السكان المحليين	survival(n)	البقاء - النجاة

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

advert(n)	إعلان	male(n – adj.)	ذكر - مُذكر
bay(n)	خليج	monitor(ed) (v)	يرصد - يراقب
caring (adj)	فهم / فاعي	original(adj)	أصلي - أساسي
colony(n)	مستعمرة	partly(adj)	جزئياً
colourful(adj)	زاهي الألوان	progress(ed) (n - v)	التقدم - يتقدم
complain(ed) (v)	يشكو	rainforest(n)	غابة مطيرة
coral(n. - adj.)	المرجان - مرجاني	realise(d) (v)	يُدرك
council(n)	مجلس - قنصلية	recognise(d) (v)	يتعرف علي
creature(n)	مخلوق - كائن	recycling(n)	تدوير - إعادة تصنيع
crop(n)	محصول	reef(n)	خيد - شُعب مرجاني
digital(adj)	رقمي	reserve	يحجز
diver(n)	غواص	rides(n)	جولات
economy(n)	الاقتصاد	sports field(n)	ملعب رياضي
endangered(adj)	مُعرّض للخطر - مُهدّد	starfish(n)	نجم البحر
ensure(d) (v)	يضمن / يَأكّد	state(n)	حالة - ولاية - دولة
exotic(adj)	أجنبي - غريب - مثير	support(ed) (v - n)	يدعم - دعم
face(d) (v)	يواجه	task(n)	مهمة
female (n. – adj.)	أنثى - مؤنث	threat(n)	تهديد
fight - fought(v)	يقاتل - يقاتل	tusk(n)	سِنُّ الفيل
forest(n)	الغابة	typical(adj)	أصلي - نموذجي
generation(n)	جيل		

industry(n)	صناعة - نشاط	unique(adj)	فريد - متميز
involved(adj)	مشارك - مشغول	variety(n)	التنوع - التعددية
keep - kept	يحافظ على - يُوفّر	waste(d) (n - v)	نفايات - يبدد / يهدر
limit(n)	حد	well-known(adj)	مشهور
livestock(n)	الماشية	wildlife(n)	الحياة البرية

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>biodiversity(n)</b> التنوع البيولوجي	the variety of plants and animals in a particular محدد place
<b>challenging(adj)</b> تنطوي على تحدي	interesting but difficult to do
<b>expedition(n)</b> بعثة استكشافية	- a journey to study or know about wildlife - the people that make a long, difficult journey to study or know about wildlife
<b>native inhabitants(n)</b> السكان المحليين	the people who first lived in the country
<b>preserve(d) (v)</b> يصون - يحمي - يحفظ طعام	- to save something or someone from being harmed or destroyed - to store food for a long time after treating معالجة it so that it will not decay يتحلل
<b>scholarship(n)</b> منحة دراسية	an amount of money that is given to someone by an educational organization to help pay for their education
<b>species(n)</b> نوع - أنواع	a group of animals or plants whose members are similar and can breed يتزاوج together to produce young animals or plants

### Exercises On Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Definitions

- ..... is the variety of plants and animals in a certain place. (سوهاج - المصنّاه ٢٠٢٤)  
a. Exhibition      b. Biodiversity      c. Agriculture      d. Conservation
- An ..... is a journey to study or know about wildlife. (الماهره - المستقبل ٢٠٢٤)  
a. expansion      b. explanation      c. expedition      d. exclamation
- ..... inhabitants are the people who first lived in a country. (البحيره - رسيڤ ٢٠٢٣)  
a. Native      b. International      c. Foreign      d. Aliens

4. To ..... is to save something or someone from being harmed or destroyed.  
a. run                      b. endanger                      c. ensure                      d. preserve
5. A/An ..... is an amount of money that is given to someone by an educational organization to help pay for their education.  
a. species                      b. scholarship                      c. biodiversity                      d. expedition
6. A/An ..... is a group of animals or plants whose members are similar and can breed together to produce young animals or plants.  
a. species                      b. scholarship                      c. biodiversity                      d. expedition



### Key Vocabulary

7. Native ..... are responsible for conserving their environment.  
(سوهاج - جرجا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. inhabitants                      b. habitats                      c. tourists                      d. biodiversity
8. Scientists are going on a/an ..... to study wildlife in the Arctic.  
(كفر الشيخ - قلين ٢٠٢٤)  
a. scholarship                      b. biodiversity                      c. expedition                      d. expansion
9. We must protect ..... to keep the balance of nature.  
(كفر الشيخ - فؤه ٢٠٢٤)  
a. conservation                      b. challenges                      c. biodiversity                      d. scholarship
10. Your accent is excellent; I thought that you were a /an ..... speaker at first.  
(البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. horrible                      b. strange                      c. foreigner                      d. native
11. Wildlife organisations aim to protect rare ..... of animals from becoming extinct.  
(الشرقية - الجيزا هبعية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. spicks                      b. spices                      c. spies                      d. species
12. It is a/an ..... task to participate in keeping the environment clean.  
(سوهاج - طهطا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. illegal                      b. challenging                      c. charging                      d. useless
13. Our ..... on this planet depends on the natural resources God grants us.  
a. biodiversity                      b. survival                      c. inhabitant                      d. scholarship
14. A/An ..... job makes us feel happy and satisfied.  
(الإسكندرية - المنزه ٢٠٢٤)  
a. challenging                      b. specific                      c. obligatory                      d. rewarding
15. My grandmother often put fruit in a jar with lots of sugar to ..... them.  
(السوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. reserve                      b. preserve                      c. deserve                      d. serve
16. Through the ..... of biodiversity, the survival of many species can be ensured.  
(الفيوم - أبنشواي ٢٠٢٤)  
a. conversation                      b. illustration                      c. demonstration                      d. conservation
17. My brother won a/an ..... to study at Harvard University.  
a. spaceship                      b. ownership                      c. scholarship                      d. relationship



18. Dina's sister is ..... the same height as her! (أسوان - ادمو ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. very                      b. far                      c. exactly                      d. more
19. The men made ..... to Spain, Greece and Asia Minor to find fossils. (بورسعيد - يورفؤاد ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. duties                      b. picnics                      c. tasks                      d. expeditions
20. The trip to New Zealand is ..... more expensive than the trip to Brazil. (بورسعيد - جنوب بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. slightly                      b. almost                      c. as                      d. exactly
21. Living abroad has many ..... and needs strong determination. (سوهاج - جرجا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. encouragement                      b. challenges  
 c. accommodation                      d. fun

### 3 Important Vocabulary

22. My uncle managed to ..... a ticket to watch the final at the stadium. (الشرقية - القرين ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. conserve                      b. deserve                      c. reserve                      d. observe
23. I'm going to ..... to the customer service about the salesman's bad treatment. (سوهاج - سافلته ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. treat                      b. salute                      c. greet                      d. complain
24. I'll install some cameras in my supermarket to ..... shoplifters. (الجبلة - بولاق الذكور ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. monitor                      b. amuse                      c. entertain                      d. look
25. There are some discussions on a/an ..... of issues. (المسا - العدو ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. authority                      b. severity                      c. quantity                      d. variety
26. A maid is a/an ..... servant who cleans the rooms and makes beds in hotels. (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. adult                      b. male                      c. man                      d. female
27. I don't like this remake; I prefer the ..... film.  
 a. origin                      b. fake                      c. false                      d. original
28. There is always a ..... gap between parents and their children.  
 a. birth                      b. genre                      c. livestock                      d. generation
29. After 20 years, it wasn't easy to ..... our old friend when we last met.  
 a. meet                      b. see                      c. recognise                      d. remind
30. Mohamed Salah is ..... for his voluntary work.  
 a. satisfied                      b. well-known                      c. dissatisfied                      d. mysterious
31. The bright sunshine is ..... of Aswan's weather in winter.  
 a. typical                      b. exotic                      c. original                      d. male

32. The local ..... has decided to renew the asphalt of the streets.  
a. barrier      b. council      c. economy      d. livestock
33. Tourists come from all over the world to see our ..... monuments. آثار  
a. suitable      b. valueless      c. unique      d. a & c
34. A ..... is a part of the sea that is partly enclosed by a curve in the land.  
a. progress      b. state      c. bay      d. colony
35. I like those ..... birds you see near the river in summer.  
a. exotic      b. typed      c. coral      d. male
36. If a type of animals is ....., this means it may die out بنقرض soon.  
a. dangerous      b. endangered      c. strong      d. strange
37. The rabbit is a nice .....  
a. generation      b. variety      c. creature      d. opportunity
38. Parents work hard to ..... that their children get enough care.  
a. inspire      b. ensure      c. reward      d. face
39. Tunisia was a French .....  
a. progress      b. state      c. bay      d. colony
40. Wars affect the world's ..... badly. Businesses make great losses.  
a. barrier      b. council      c. economy      d. livestock
41. .... plastic and glass is possible.  
a. Recycling      b. Rewarding      c. Arising      d. Threatening
42. Pollution is a real ..... to mankind البشرية.  
a. recycling      b. male      c. female      d. threat
43. He is a member of the team ..... in supporting the charity.  
a. involved      b. caring      c. psychological      d. coral
44. My students have made reasonable ..... recently.  
a. progress      b. colony      c. bay      d. state
45. Keeping ..... is an important source of income to farmers.  
a. barrier      b. council      c. economy      d. livestock

## PART II

## VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations - متلازمات لفظية

<b>face</b>	a problem	يواجه مشكلة	<b>have</b>	a bath	يستحم
<b>fight</b>	pollution	يكافح التلوث	<b>make</b>	a decision	يتخذ قرار
<b>keep</b>	clean	يبقى ... نظيفاً		space for	يفسح المجال لـ
	facilities	يوفر تسهيلات	<b>stay</b>	calm	يبقى هادئاً

## 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
native(adj)	محلي - أصلي	original
native(n)	مواطن	citizen
preserve	يصون - يحمي	conserve, protect
rewarding	مُجزي	satisfying, pleasing, worthwhile

## 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
challenging	تطوي على تُخْذِي	easy, uninspiring	سهل
male	ذكر	female	أنثى
native(adj)	محلي - أصلي	immigrant	مهاجر
native(n)	مواطن	foreigner, outsider	أجنبي / وافد
rewarding	مُجزي	unrewarding	غير مُجزي

## 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

challenge		
challenge (v)	يتحدى	- He accepted to <b>challenge</b> me to a tennis game.
challenge (n)	تُخْذِي	- He accepted my <b>challenge</b> to a tennis game.
challenging (adj)	تطوي على تُخْذِي	- I enjoy <b>challenging</b> tasks.
conservation		
conserve (v)	يصون - يحافظ علي	- It is our duty واجب to <b>conserve</b> the environment.
conservation (n)	حماية البيئة - حفظ	- The <b>conservation</b> of the environment is our duty.
conservationist (n)	مُحافظ علي البيئة	- <b>Conservationists</b> try to protect the environment.
conservative (adj)	محافظ	- Mr Mohammed is a <b>conservative</b> person.
inhabitant		
inhabit (v)	يسكن - يقطن	- The pharaohs <b>inhabited</b> Egypt thousands of years ago.



<b>inhabitant (n)</b>	ساكن / قاطن	- The <b>inhabitants</b> of this island speak Spanish.
<b>inhabited (adj)</b>	مسكون / مأهول	- This island is <b>inhabited</b> , not deserted . مهجور
<b>preserve</b>		
<b>preserve (v)</b>	يصون - يحمي	- Salt is used to <b>preserve</b> some foods.
<b>preservative (n)</b>	مادة حافظة	- Salt is a <b>preservative</b> for some foods.
<b>preservation (n)</b>	حماية / صيانة	- Salt is used for the <b>preservation</b> of some foods.
<b>preserved (adj)</b>	محفوظ	- Some <b>preserved</b> foods are harmful.
<b>survive</b>		
<b>survive (v)</b>	ينجو - يبقى حيا	- The old woman <b>survived</b> the accident.
<b>survival (n)</b>	البقاء على قيد الحياة	- Everyone needs food and water for <b>survival</b> .
<b>survivor (n)</b>	ناجي	- The <b>survivors</b> of the accident were lucky.
<b>surviving (adj)</b>	ناجي	- The <b>surviving</b> woman looks shocked.

## 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

coloured coral	المرجان الملون	ready for	مستعد لـ
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	Red Sea Coast	ساحل البحر الأحمر
go on a trip	يذهب في رحلة	tourist industry	النشاط السياحي
in digital form	بصيغة رقمية	unique biodiversity	التنوع البيولوجي الفريد
interested in	مهتم بـ	well-known for	مشهور بـ
involved in	مُتَشَغِل بـ - متورط في	what is more,	بالإضافة لذلك
land animals	الحيوانات البرية	work on a farm	العمل في مزرعة
original state	الحالة الأصلية		

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	love + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)	يُحِبُّ أن
care for	يرعى - يهتم بـ	play with	يلعب بـ / مع
fight for	يكافح / يقاتل من أجل	stop ... from	يمنع ... من
look after	يرعى - يعتني بـ		

## well-known + as / for / to

- **well-known as** + (وظيفة / مهنة / ميزة مشهور بها) مشهور ك / معروف ك
  - Mohammed Salah is well known as a footballer.
  - Egypt is well known as a peace loving country.
- **well-known for** + اسم يدل على سبب الشهرة مشهور بـ
  - Mohammed Salah is well-known for his skills.
  - Aswan is well-known for its warm weather in winter.
- **well-known to** + شخص / اشخاص مشهور لدي
  - Mohammed Salah is well-known to football fans all over the world.
  - Aswan is well-known to tourists.

## dangerous - endangered

- **dangerous** خطير
  - COVID- 19 is a dangerous disease.
  - He was in a dangerous situation.
- **danger (n)** الخطر
  - Keep children away from danger.
- **endanger(ed) (v)** يعرّض للخطر
  - Don't endanger children.
- **endangered (adj)** مُعرّض للخطر - في موقف خطير
  - Lions are endangered. They might die out soon.
  - The people who live in this old house are endangered.
- **endangerment (n)** التعريض للخطر
  - He was arrested for child endangerment.

## schooling - scholarship

- **schooling** التعليم المدرسي
  - My mother had only three years of schooling.
- **scholarship** ملحة دراسية
  - Sama won a scholarship to the German University.

## diversity - biodiversity

- **diversity = variety** التعددية / التنوع
  - Modern societies have to respect cultural diversity.
- **biodiversity** التنوع النباتي والحيواني (التنوع البيولوجي)
  - We must protect the biodiversity of the forests.
- **bio-** = relating to or using living things لاحظ أن البادئة (bio) تعني (متعلق بالكائنات الحية - عضوي)
  - biology علم الأحياء
  - biochemistry الكيمياء العضوية

## Exercises On Vocabulary Study

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "Only one person could survive the accident." The adjective of the verb 'survive' is .....  
(المنيا - ملوئ ٢٠٢٤)  
a. survivor      b. survival      c. survives      d. surviving
2. Most foods include ..... despite being unhealthy.  
(السيوط - صدفا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. flour      b. preservatives      c. poisons      d. flavours
3. Many species of wild animals are in .....  
(سوهاج - جهينة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. danger      b. dangerous      c. endanger      d. endangered
4. These books are also available in an ..... form.  
(السيوط - صدفا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. electronic      b. electricity      c. electrical      d. electric
5. We must care ..... the unique and beautiful creatures.  
(القاهرة - دار السلام ٢٠٢٣)  
a. of      b. off      c. for      d. at
6. You need to make .....  
a. calm      b. clean      c. a decision      d. problems
7. "It is our duty to preserve our environment." In this sentence, 'preserve' can be replaced by .....  
a. conserve      b. protect      c. affect      d. a & b
8. Something that is 'rewarding' is .....  
a. unrewarding      b. native      c. satisfying      d. uninspiring
9. "He is not a native of Egypt." He is a .....  
a. strong      b. foreigner      c. patriot      d. citizen
10. I love ..... my daughter Rody, not Rodayna.  
a. calling      b. to be called      c. to call      d. a & c
11. The best solution is to ..... this problem.  
a. face      b. cause      c. have      d. stay
12. All world countries have to unite to ..... pollution.  
a. fight      b. go      c. provide      d. give
13. The Pharaohs ..... Egypt and had a great civilization thousands of years ago.  
a. inhabited      b. inhabitants      c. preserved      d. preservation
14. He loves nature and he is an active .....  
a. conserve      b. conservative      c. conservationist      d. conservation
15. Ahmed Zaki is well-known ..... his great films.  
a. as      b. for      c. to      d. about
16. Ahmed Zaki is well-known ..... a great actor.  
a. as      b. for      c. to      d. about
17. Ahmed Zaki is well-known ..... most Egyptian people.  
a. as      b. for      c. to      d. about



## 1 Reading Texts

### Book your conservation volunteer trip today!

(SB page 27)

Are you interested in **conservation**<sup>(1)</sup>? Are you ready for a new **challenge**<sup>(2)</sup>? If your answer to both of these questions is 'yes', we have some excellent **volunteer**<sup>(3)</sup> programmes for you.



#### A – New Zealand

Come to New Zealand and help us **preserve**<sup>(4)</sup> the country's **unique**<sup>(5)</sup> **biodiversity**<sup>(6)</sup>. You'll **plant**<sup>(7)</sup> trees so that **endangered**<sup>(8)</sup> birds have a far better environment to live in. You'll also help us to **monitor**<sup>(9)</sup> changes in a **variety**<sup>(10)</sup> of plant **species**<sup>(11)</sup> in different areas. Another **slightly**<sup>(12)</sup> more **challenging**<sup>(13)</sup> **task**<sup>(14)</sup> is cleaning beaches and helping to **run**<sup>(15)</sup> **recycling**<sup>(16)</sup> centres where **local**<sup>(17)</sup> people can bring their **waste**<sup>(18)</sup>.

Twenty-one days / Prices with flights from \$3,799

#### B – Thailand

Here in Thailand, we're **involved**<sup>(19)</sup> in **caring**<sup>(20)</sup> for elephants that used to take tourists on **rides**<sup>(21)</sup> around big cities. You'll monitor these elephants' **progress**<sup>(22)</sup> as they start their new lives in the **forest**<sup>(23)</sup> to make sure that they're healthy and happy. These unique and beautiful **creatures**<sup>(24)</sup> love to play with our **volunteers**<sup>(25)</sup> almost as much as they love having a bath in the river with them!

Fourteen days / Prices with flights from \$2,599

#### C – Brazil

Brazil is **well-known**<sup>(26)</sup> for its amazing biodiversity. However, the native **inhabitants**<sup>(27)</sup> of the Amazon **face**<sup>(28)</sup> exactly the same **threat**<sup>(29)</sup> as the rainforests – they are also **fighting**<sup>(30)</sup> for their **survival**<sup>(31)</sup>.

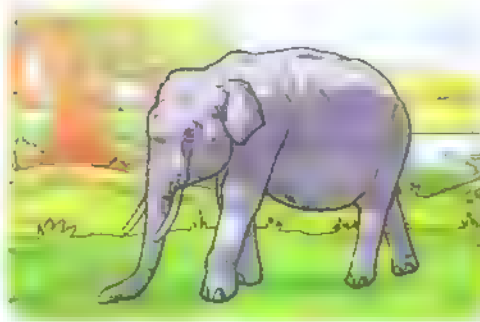
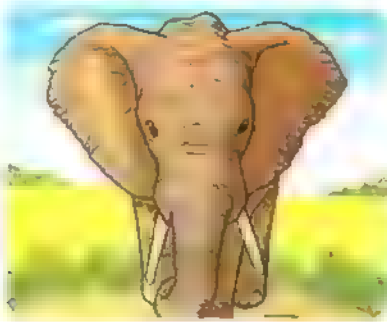
You can help the native inhabitants to preserve their languages in **digital**<sup>(32)</sup> form for future **generations**<sup>(33)</sup>. What is more, you can apply for a **scholarship**<sup>(34)</sup> for the **costs**<sup>(35)</sup> of this **rewarding**<sup>(36)</sup> trip.

Sixteen days / Prices with flights from \$2,599

1. حماية البيئة
2. تحدي
3. تطوعي
4. يحمي - يصبون
5. فريد
6. التنوع البيولوجي
7. يزرع
8. معرض للخطر
9. يرصد - يراقب
10. تنوع
11. نوع - أنواع
12. بدرجة طفيفة
13. تلتطوي على تحدي
14. مهمة
15. يدير
16. تدوير - إعادة تصنيع
17. محلي
18. نفايات
19. مشغول بـ
20. رعاية
21. جولات
22. تقدم
23. الغابة
24. مخلوقات
25. متطوعين
26. مشهور
27. سُكَّان
28. يواجه
29. لهديد
30. يخاف
31. البقاء
32. رقمي
33. أجيال
34. منحة دراسية
35. تكاليف
36. مجز

## Asian and African elephants

(WB page 14)



- (1) تماماً - بالضبط  
(2) بعضهم البعض  
(3) ذكر  
(4) ناب الفيل  
(5) أنثى

Did you know that elephants live in both Africa and Asia? When you first see elephants from these two places, you might think that they are **exactly**<sup>(1)</sup> the same as **each other**<sup>(2)</sup>, but they are not. African elephants are slightly larger than Asian elephants, while African elephant's ears are usually far bigger than Asian elephant's. Only **male**<sup>(3)</sup> Asian elephants have **tusks**<sup>(4)</sup> (those big teeth!). However, **female**<sup>(5)</sup> African elephants have tusks, too, and they are almost as big as the male elephants'.

## 2 Listening Texts

(SB page 28)



Naama Bay near  
Sharm el-Sheikh, 1983



Naama Bay today

- (1) ساحل البحر الأحمر  
(2) سباحة  
(3) البيئة المحلية  
(4) مراكز الغطس  
(5) يضع حداً  
(6) حاجز مرجاني  
(7) المجلس المحلي  
(8) يتخذ إجراء

**Speaker** : My name's Mohamed Mansour and I'm reporting from a small town on the **Red Sea coast**<sup>(1)</sup> in Egypt. It's an area that has been popular with tourists from all the over world for a long time, but a few years ago it became clear that **tourism**<sup>(2)</sup> was causing damage to the **local environment**<sup>(3)</sup>.

The biggest problem was that too many tourists would visit **diving centres**<sup>(4)</sup> at the same time. Local companies didn't use to **put a limit**<sup>(5)</sup> on how many people could dive. During the summer, they used to take ten divers at a time to explore one **reef**<sup>(6)</sup>. That's just too many.

However, things have changed since the **local council**<sup>(7)</sup> decided to **take action**<sup>(8)</sup>. There are now rules about how many divers can be in one area at the same time.

Divers also have to pay a small amount of money which goes towards projects which help to protect the local environment.

(9) تسهيلات / مرافق

(10) ملاعب رياضية

(11) يساعد / يساعد

(12) اقتصاد

Another problem that the local people had in the past was that hotel companies would buy the best land in the town, remove any buildings already on it and build hotels instead. In places where there used to be **facilities**<sup>(9)</sup> for local people like **sports fields**<sup>(10)</sup>, cafés and a cinema there are now hotels. Fortunately, the council now has new rules for how much land hotel companies can buy. Local people used to complain about tourists in their town, but now they're a lot happier to see them.

This should help tourists to enjoy their visit even more and they will then return to the area more often, helping to **support**<sup>(11)</sup> the local **economy**<sup>(12)</sup> in the future.

(WB page 15)

**Presenter :** Welcome to programme. Today, I'm reporting from the **Great Barrier Reef**<sup>(1)</sup> in Australia and I'm going to be talking about the problems this beautiful place is facing.

(1) الحاجز المرجاني الكبير

(2) ملون

**Presenter :** The Great Barrier Reef is an area of coral which lives under the sea in an area that is 2,600 kilometres long. People love visiting the reef because there are so many **colourful**<sup>(2)</sup> fish that live here.

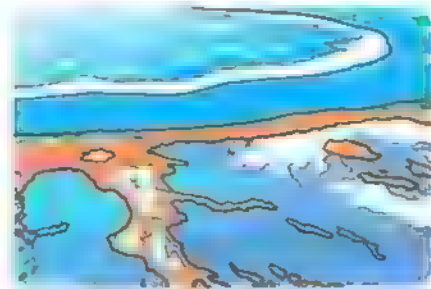
(3) جزئيا

(4) الاحتباس الحراري

(5) فصيلة / نوع

(6) في الواقع

**Presenter :** In the past, all of the reef used to have beautifully coloured coral. Today, things are changing and much of the coral is white. Why is this ?



**Interviewee :** Well, it's **partly**<sup>(3)</sup> because the sea didn't use to be as warm as it is today. **Global warming**<sup>(4)</sup> is starting to kill the coral, which turns white when it dies. Another problem is star fish. In the past, there used to be many **species**<sup>(5)</sup> of fish that ate the star fish. But people have caught so many of these fish that they have disappeared. There is nothing to eat the star fish, so today, the star fish **actually**<sup>(6)</sup> eat the coral.

**Interviewee :** Another problem, I'm afraid, is people! The area did not use to have so many tourists visiting the Barrier Reef. Now, about two million people visit every year. Boats damage the reef and pollution is not good for the coral, either.

**Presenter :** So, life is difficult for the coral here. In next week's programme, we will be looking at what we can do about this problem.



## PART IV LANGUAGE

## 1 Comparative Expressions

عبارات المقارنة

## Remember

نستخدم صفات المقارنة لتقارن بين طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهما

- ex. - Rodayna is older than Ahmed. - A car is fast, but a plane is faster.  
- Films are more exciting than plays. - Bread is less expensive than meat.

- تكوين صفات المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة (التي تتكون من مقطع واحد)

## ١ يُضاف المقطع (-er) للنهاية الصفة:

- ex. - quiet → quieter - cheap → cheaper - narrow → narrower

٢ إذا كانت الصفة القصيرة تنتهي بحرف (e) قبلها حرف ساكن يُضاف لها حرف (r) فقط:

- ex. - wide → wider - nice → nicer  
- large → larger - simple → simpler

٣ إذا انتهت الصفة القصيرة بحرف متحرك واحد يليه ساكن واحد لضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة (er):

- ex. - hot → hotter - fat → fatter - thin → thinner

٤ الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن تتحول (y) الي (ier):

- ex. - lucky → luckier - healthy → healthier - easy → easier

- تكوين صفة المقارنة من الصفات الطويلة

more / less + adj. الصفة + than أكثر / أقل

- ex. - more / less expensive than - more / less terrifying than  
- more / less exciting than - more / less dangerous than

## Comparative Phrases! عبارات المقارنة

- 1 No difference لا يوجد اختلاف Exactly the same as يشبهه ... تماماً

وتستخدم هذه العبارة عند التعبير عن التطابق (عدم وجود اختلاف) بين طرفين:

- ex. - This car is exactly the same as my car.  
- Your bag is exactly the same as Aya's bag.

في حالة وجود مفعول فإنه يوضع بين (the same ... as) كالتالي:

- ex. - Omar is exactly the same age as Ali.  
- My father does exactly the same job as your father.

- 2 A small difference اختلاف بسيط almost as + صفة + as يشبهه ... إلى حد كبير  
slightly + صفة مقارنة + than قليلاً عن / من ...

تستخدم (almost as ... as) او (slightly ... than) في حالة وجود اختلاف بسيط بين طرفين:

- ex. - Mariam is almost as tall as her father.  
- My car is almost as expensive as your car.

- Our flat is **slightly larger than** your flat.
- This match is **slightly more exciting than** the last match.

**3 A big difference**      اختلاف كبير      **far + صفة مقارنة + than ...** كثيرا من / عن

تستخدم (far ... than) في حالة وجود اختلاف كبير بين طرفين:

- ex.** - Mariam is **far taller than** her mother.  
 - Playing football is **far more exciting than** watching it.

## IMPORTANT NOTE

**١** يأتي اسم بعد أو بين (the same ... as):

- He looks exactly the same as his brother.
- She has exactly the same green eyes as her mother.

**٢** يأتي بين (as ... as) صفة عادية (وليس صفة مقارنة):

- Omar is as tall as his father. (Not: as taller as)
- Rokaya's story is as interesting as Leen's story.

(Not: as more interesting as)

**٣** يأتي بين (slightly / far ... than) صفة مقارنة (وليس صفة عادية):

- Omar is slightly taller than his sister. (Not: slightly tall than)
- Rokaya's story is far more interesting than Aya's story.

(Not: slightly interesting than)

**٤** يمكن استخدام (a little / a bit) بدلا من (slightly) قبل صفات المقارنة للتعبير عن وجود

اختلاف بسيط بين طرفين:

- Noha is a bit shorter than Malak.
- My mother is a little younger than my uncle.

**٥** لا تُستخدم (very) قبل صفات المقارنة، لكن يمكن استخدام (much / a lot / even) بدلا

من (far) للتعبير عن وجود اختلاف كبير بين طرفين:

- Mr Hossam is much better than me at tennis. (Not: very better)
- My father is a lot older than my uncle. (Not: very older)

**٦** لا تُستخدم (quite) قبل صفات المقارنة إلا في التعبير (quite better) بمعنى [تعافى من مرض

إلى حد ما]:

- My grandfather was very ill, but he is quite better now.
- Sama is slightly more intelligent than Hala. (Not: quite more intelligent)

**٧** لا تُستخدم (any / no / a bit / a lot) قبل صفات المقارنة التي يتبعها اسم:

- This is a far larger flat than your flat. (Not: a lot larger flat)

**٨** هناك أكثر من طريقة للتعبير عن تشابه أو تساوي طرفين في صفة معينة، ومن أهم هذه الطرق:

الطرف الثاني + as + الصفة + as + be + الطرف الأول

- Rodayna is as tall as Mariam.

الطرف الثاني + as + الاسم من الصفة + the same + have + الطرف الأول

- Rodayna **has the same height as** Mariam.

الاسم من الصفة + **have + the same** + الطرف الثاني + **and** + الطرف الاول

- Rodayna and Mariam **have the same height**.

الاسم من الصفة + **be + of the same** + الطرف الثاني + **and** + الطرف الاول

- Rodayna and Mariam **are of the same height**.

4 لاحظ الاسم الذي يمكن استخدامه بعد أو بين (**the same + ...+as**) من الصفات الآتية:

Adjective الصفة	Noun الاسم	Adjective الصفة	Noun الاسم
big / small	size	long	length
deep	depth	old / young	age
expensive/ cheap	price	strong	strength
far / near	distance	wide	width
high / tall	height		

- This house is as **high** as yours. = This house is the same **height** as yours.

- The green blouse is as **expensive** as the red blouse.

= The green blouse is the same **price** as the red blouse.

## Exercises On Comparative Expressions

Getting started : Check what you have learnt

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My father is ..... than my uncle.

(الجيزة - منشأة القناطر ٢٠٢٤)

a. taller

b. tall

c. as tall

d. more tall

2. He has exactly the same intelligence ..... his brother.

(كفر الشيخ - فؤه ٢٠٢٤)

a. as

b. so

c. to

d. or

3. English is much ..... than Chinese.

(المصوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٤)

a. easy

b. easier

c. more easier

d. most easy

4. Shakespeare's poems are ..... as exciting as his plays.

(الشرقية - القرين ٢٠٢٤)

a. exact

b. more

c. almost

d. slightly

5. Our street is ..... as yours.

(البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)

a. as bigger

b. almost the same size

c. same size

d. as almost big

6. The show was ..... better than I expected.

(سوهاج - المنشأة ٢٠٢٤)

a. quiet

b. very

c. every

d. even

7. Basmala's dress is ..... colour as her sister's.

(سوهاج - المنشأة ٢٠٢٤)

a. same

b. the same

c. like

d. as



8. She is almost as ..... as her elder brother. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. tallest                      b. taller                      c. tall                      d. a tall
9. We aren't the same height. You're ..... me. (الجيزة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. tall                      b. taller than                      c. as tall as                      d. the tallest
10. My grandfather is ..... older than my grandmother. (البحيرة - أوسيم ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. more                      b. many                      c. a lot                      d. fewer
11. It's ..... cheaper to drive than go by plane. (السفرية - غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. almost                      b. as                      c. more                      d. far
12. My new dress is exactly ..... as the film star's one. (سوهاج - حرجا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. sum                      b. similar                      c. the same                      d. very
13. In my opinion, working on a farm is far ..... tiring than working in an office. (بورسعيد - جنوب بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. much                      b. more                      c. most                      d. little
14. Rahma is much ..... with children than Jehan. (المنيا - أبو قرقاص ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. more patient                      b. patient                      c. far patient                      d. as patient
15. My new mobile is ..... more expensive than yours. (بورسعيد - نورفؤاد ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. much                      b. many                      c. very                      d. slight
16. Let's walk. It's almost ..... taking the bus. (الاسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. quick                      b. as quick as                      c. as quickly as                      d. quicker as
17. Cairo is ..... than Aswan. (السوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. the hotter                      b. more hotter                      c. much hot                      d. less hot
18. The ..... you read, the more knowledge you gain. (السيوط - صدفا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. many                      b. most                      c. less                      d. more
19. I don't think this is my book. Mine is ..... . (المنوفية - السهداء ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. more new                      b. slightly newer                      c. much new                      d. a little newly
20. My mother is ..... of my parents. (البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. kind                      b. kinder                      c. the kindest                      d. the kinder
21. My neighbour lives upstairs in the block of flats where I live, so my apartment is exactly ..... as my neighbour's. (البحيرة - أبو حمص ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. so wider                      b. wider                      c. the same width                      d. the same wide
22. Studying English is ..... interesting than studying Latin. (البحيرة - كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. more much                      b. more slightly                      c. a little much                      d. far more
23. Revising our answers, we found out that we had made ..... mistakes. (البحيرة - كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. almost as                      b. exactly the same                      c. the same as                      d. exactly same
24. My friend is the same ..... as me. (المنيا - العدو ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. old                      b. older                      c. oldest                      d. age

**Used to + inf. اعتاد أن + inf.**

١ نستخدم (used to + inf.) بمعنى «اعتاد أن» للتعبير عن عادة كانت موجودة في الماضي ولم تعد موجودة الآن:

.... المصدر. **inf. + اعتاد أن + used to + الفاعل. Subj.**

- ex. - I used to eat a lot of sweets when I was a child.  
- Omar used to read novels in his free time.

٢ نستخدم (didn't use to + inf.) في حالة النفي:

.... **inf. + اعتاد أن + didn't use to + الفاعل. Subj.**

- ex. - I didn't use to eat a lot of sweets when I was a child.  
- Omar didn't use to read novels in his free time.  
ex. - He never used to listen carefully. للفي (never used to) كما يمكن استخدام

٣ للسؤال بـ «هل» يبدأ بـ (Did) ثم الفاعل ثم (use to + inf.):

**Did + subj. الفاعل + use to + inf. ....?**

- ex. - Did you use to eat a lot of sweets when you were a child?  
- Did Omar use to read novels in his free time?

٤ للسؤال بـ «أداة استفهام» نتبع الصيغة التالية:

**Q.W. الفاعل + use to + inf. ....? + did + subj. أداة استفهام.**

- ex. - What did you use to read when you were a child?  
- Who used to read novels in his free time?

٥ وتبنى هذه الصيغة للمجهول كالتالي: **Obj. used to + be + p.p. .... + المفعول.**

- ex. - A lot of sweets used to be eaten by me when I was a child.  
- Novels used to be read by Omar in his free time.

**Important Notes**

١ تعبر (used to + inf.) عن عادة كانت موجودة في الماضي و هذه العادة توقفت ولم تعد تحدث في الحاضر:

- My uncle used to be a heavy smoker. (Now he doesn't smoke.)

٢ تعبر (used to + inf.) أيضاً عن أشياء كانت مختلفة في الماضي عن الحاضر:

- Tawfik used to work in tourism. Now he has a taxi.

٣ العادة تستمر ويتكرر حدوثها فترة طويلة ، لذلك لا يجوز استخدام تعبيرات زمنية تحصر العادة في مدي زمني قصير مثل:

yesterday / last Friday / last week / this morning .... etc.

- He used to go to the cinema last week. (X)  
- He went to the cinema last week. (✓)

٤ للتعبير عن أن شيء ما كان عادياً أو مألوفاً نستخدم:

**Subject + was / were + used to + noun / (inf.+ing) ....**

- Amira **was used to** easy life. Now she is a wife, a mother and a teacher.
- We **were used to** working on farms.

لاحظ أن (**be used to**) يمكن أن تأتي بمعنى «يستخدم لشيء» بجمل مبنية للمجهول وبليها المصدر:

- Wood **is used to** make furniture. (Note: used to making)
- Milk **is used to** make cheese and butter.

٥ للتعبير عن التعود على عمل شيء في الماضي نستخدم:

**Subject + got / became / grew + used to + noun / (inf.+ing) ....**

- Rokaya **got used to** (living in) her new flat.

٦ لاحظ الصيغة التالية:

• **There used to be .... / There didn't use to be ....**

- There **used to be** a cinema in our street. Now it is a big restaurant.
- There **didn't use to be** an airport in Aswan in 1900.



### Check your understanding

١ لاحظ استخدام الصيغ التالية بدلاً من (**used to + inf.**) والعكس:

**1 Subj. + no longer** لم يعد **+ inf. / (inf. + s / es / ies)**

- Ali **used to** smoke. = Ali **no longer** smokes.

**2 Subj. + don't / doesn't + inf. .... anymore / any longer** لم يعد

- Noha **used to** live in Aswan.
- = Noha **doesn't** live in Aswan **anymore / any longer**.

**3 It was + someone's / صفة ملكية + habit + عادة + to + inf. ....**

- Sherry **used to** play computer games.
- = It was Sherry's **habit** to play computer games.

**4 Subj. + was / were + in the habit of + n. / (inf. + ing) ....**

- Malik **used to** go to school by bike.
- = Malik **was in the habit of** going to school by bike.

**5 Subj. + s.c. التصريف الثاني .... as a habit.**

- Omnia **used to** visit her aunt once a week.
- = Omnia **visited** her aunt once a week **as a habit**.

٢ لاحظ استخدام (**accustomed**) بدلاً من (**used**) في الصيغة التالية:

- **Subject + got / became / grew + used to + noun / (inf. + ing) ....**

= **Subject + was / were / got / became + accustomed to + noun / (inf. + ing) ....**

- I **got used to** working as a teacher.
- = I **got accustomed to** working as a teacher.



٢ للتعبير عن عادة في المضارع يمكن ان تستخدم:

Subj. + am/is/are + used to + n / (inf. + ing).....

- I am used to going to school on time.

### would + inf.

لاحظ أوجه التشابه والاختلاف في استخدام كل من (used to + inf.) و (would + inf.):

١ نستخدم كل من (used to + inf.) أو (would + inf.) للتعبير عن العادات المتكررة في الماضي:

- When I was a little girl, I used to cry easily when someone shouted at me.
- = When I was a little girl, I would cry easily when someone shouted at me.

٢ نستخدم (used to + inf.) وليس (would + inf.) لوصف حالة في الماضي - أي لا يمكن استخدام (would + inf.) إذا كان الفعل الأساسي أحد الأفعال التقريرية، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

- be / have=possess = own / love / like / dislike / enjoy / hate / want / wish / weigh / hear / cost / deserve يستحق / understand / feel ...

- I used to have a small bike when I was a child. (✓)
- I would have a small bike when I was a child. (X)
- When my father was 25, he used to be strong. (✓)
- When my father was 25, he would be strong. (X)

٣ تشير (used to + inf.) بشكل واضح إلى عادات الماضي، لكن (would + inf.) لا تشير

بالضرورة إلى الماضي، لذلك من الأفضل أن يسبقها ظرف زمان أو تعبير يدل على الماضي:

- Sama used to get up early.
- When she was a student, Sama would get up early.

٤ يمكن أن نستخدم ظروف التكرار مثل (always, usually, sometimes ...) قبل أو بعد (used):

- When I was younger, I always used to help my mother with the housework.
- When I was younger, I used always to help my mother with the housework.

٥ نستخدم ظروف التكرار مثل (always, usually, sometimes ...) بعد (would):

- When I was younger, I would always help my mother with the housework.

٦ عند النفي أو الاستفهام لا نستخدم (would) فقط نستخدم (used to):

- She wouldn't read much when she was young. (X)
- She didn't use to read much when she was young. (✓)

### Exercises On Past Habits

#### 1 Getting started : Check what you have learnt

1. Marim ..... live in a small house when she was young. (الجيزة - منشأة القناطر ٢٠٢٤)

- a. used                      b. used to                      c. didn't used                      d. use to

2. I ..... to bring my mother a present every 21<sup>st</sup> of March before she died in 2010. (الشرقية - القرن ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. used                      b. get used                      c. was used                      d. use
3. I ..... to help my grandmother feed the birds when I was a teenager. (الاسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. use                      b. was used                      c. am used                      d. used
4. The boys ..... rubbish in the school grounds, but now they keep the school grounds clean. (الاسماعيلية - المصاطيب ٢٠١٤)  
 a. leave                      b. were leaving  
 c. used to leave                      d. didn't use to leave
5. In the past, the sea ..... as warm as it is today; matters are getting worse nowadays. (الشرقية - الإبراهيمية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. wouldn't be                      b. used to being  
 c. didn't use to be                      d. doesn't use to be
6. My grandfather ..... lessons easily when he was a child. (المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. had understood                      b. used to understand  
 c. would understand                      d. was understanding
7. My father ..... to go to work by car but now he does. (سوهاج - طهطا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. didn't use                      b. used                      c. isn't used                      d. uses
8. I used to play badminton ..... I was younger. (الاسماعيلية - أبو صوم ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. since                      b. when                      c. while                      d. during
9. Did your grandfather ..... in a bank when he was younger?  
 a. to work                      b. use to work                      c. used no work                      d. working
10. We ..... a lot of trees near the sea, but now, they are gone.  
 a. had had                      b. are used to have  
 c. used to have                      d. were used to have
11. She goes shopping every day now, but she ..... go before. (السوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. didn't use                      b. didn't use to                      c. never use to                      d. didn't used
12. She ..... living in such hot weather; she came from Scotland. (سوهاج - جهينة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. used to                      b. isn't used to                      c. didn't use to                      d. uses to
13. We did not use to like talent shows on TV, but now, we ..... them twice a week. (المنيا - العدة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. do not watch                      b. watch  
 c. watched                      d. were watching
14. In the past, all the reef ..... beautifully colored coral.  
 a. used to have                      b. use to have                      c. don't use to have                      d. have
15. Mr Rashad gets used to ..... in that restaurant. Its food tastes nice. (الحيرة - اوسيم ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. eating                      b. be eating                      c. have eaten                      d. eat

16. When I joined that club, I hated it but later I ..... to it. (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. use                      b. would use                      c. am used                      d. got used
17. There ..... a cinema here. Now, there is a school. (المبوقية - صوف ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. use to be                      b. didn't use to be                      c. used to be                      d. used to
18. He used to live in Italy, but he ..... lives there. (السيوط - صدف ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. no longer                      b. is used to                      c. used to                      d. any longer
19. I used to play tennis a lot, but I don't play ..... . (سوهاج - المنيا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. no longer                      b. any more                      c. some more                      d. some time
20. He didn't use to eat beans, but now, he ..... . (نورسعيد - بورمؤاد ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. doesn't                      b. is                      c. did                      d. does
21. He didn't use to be a heavy smoker, but now, he ..... . (المنيا - بني هلال ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. did                      b. does                      c. is                      d. was
22. Rania used to be thin, but now, she ..... . (الاسكندرية - وسط الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. doesn't                      b. hasn't                      c. isn't                      d. is
23. My father no longer smokes as he ..... . (المنيا - ابو قرقاص ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. used to be                      b. used to have                      c. is used to                      d. used to
24. When I was young, I ..... have tea after meals. (البحيرة - ابو النمرس ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. was used to                      b. would                      c. got used to                      d. use to
25. When we were young, mum ..... accompany us to bed and read us a bedtime story. (سوهاج - ساقلتة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. didn't used to                      b. wasn't used to                      c. would                      d. was used to
26. My memory isn't as good as it ..... . (كفر الشيخ - قلين ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. used to be                      b. used to do                      c. used for                      d. used
27. People ..... have a lot of children in the past. (كفر الشيخ - فؤة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. would                      b. used to                      c. had used to                      d. using to
28. Did he ..... to the cold weather when he was in Scotland? (البحيرة - كوم حماده ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. use                      b. uses                      c. used                      d. get used
29. Long ago, I ..... go fishing with my grandfather in summer. Which can best complete the statement? (المبوقية - الشهداء ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. used to                      b. would                      c. a & b                      d. always



### Check your understanding

30. Which of these sentences is grammatically correct and talks about a past habit? (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. He used always to smoke.  
 b. When I was young, I got lost in the city.  
 c. She would always help me with the housework.  
 d. Cars are used to travel easily.





## VOCABULARY

### 1

#### Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Formal	Less formal
arise(from) - arose - arisen (phr. v)	come from (phr. v)
consequently(conj)	as a result
however	but
in order to	so that
lead to (phr. v)	result in (phr. v)
not only ... but also	... as well as ...

### 2

#### Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

benefit(ed) (n - v)	paid(adj)	مدفوع الأجر
career(n)	pros (n)	مميزات - مزايا
certain(adj)	psychological(adj)	نفسي
charity(n)	purpose(n)	غرض
community(n)	related(adj)	مرتبط / متعلق
conclusion (n)	repair(ed) (v)	يصلح
cons (n)	reward(ed) (v - n)	يكافئ - مكافأة
contacts(n)	rise - rose - risen (v)	يرتفع / يزداد / تشرق
contrast(n)	run - ran - run (v)	يدير
costs(n)	sign(ed) (n - v)	لافتة - يوقع / يمضي
enjoyable(adj)	skateboard(n)	لوح التزلج
eventually(adv)	skatepark(n)	متنزه للتزلج
exist(ed) (v)	specific(adj)	محدد
expression(n)	suitable(adj)	مناسب
formal(adj)	sunshade(n)	شمسية - مظلة
gain(ed) (v)	valuable(adj)	قيم
inspire(d) (v)	visible(adj)	قرني
leader(n)	voluntary(adj)	تطوعي
majority(n)	volunteer (n)	مُتطوع
mental health(n)	volunteer(ed) (v)	يتطوع
necessary(adj)	volunteering(n)	العمل التطوعي - التطوع
opportunity(n)	youth(n)	الشباب

## Exercises On Vocabulary

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

## 1 Key Vocabulary

1. There are several benefits that ..... from working for a charitable organization. (البحيرة - كوم حمامه ٢٠٢٤)  
a. rises                      b. arise                      c. raise                      d. arouse
2. She was tired. ...., she helped us. (كفر السبخ - قوه ٢٤)  
a. Consequently      b. However      c. As a result of      d. So that
3. She was tired. ...., she did not help us.  
a. Consequently      b. However      c. As a result of      d. So that
4. Smoking ..... to a lot of diseases. (السيوط - القوصة ٢٣)  
a. leads                      b. lives                      c. leaves                      d. levels
5. 'In order to' is the formal synonym of '.....'.  
a. so that                      b. however                      c. as a result                      d. consequently
6. "Hard work and time planning lead to success. In a less formal style, we can replace 'lead to' in this sentence with .....  
a. arise from                      b. exist                      c. result in                      d. result from
7. "Many health problems come from overweight." In a formal style, '.....' can replace 'come from' in this context.  
a. arise from                      b. look for                      c. result in                      d. lead to
8. The ..... work we do for charities is a good thing for the whole society.  
a. involved                      b. coral                      c. paid                      d. voluntary
9. "I have so little free time. Consequently, I don't have enough time for fun." In an informal style, we can use '.....' instead of 'consequently'.  
a. but                      b. as a result                      c. however                      d. so that

## 2 Important Vocabulary

10. The executive manager decided to ..... the volunteers. (الإسكندرية - الملتزه ٢٠٢٤)  
a. award                      b. win                      c. reward                      d. gain
11. Are you just looking around or are you looking for something ..... today? (أنسيوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. specific                      b. species                      c. spices                      d. infection
12. My sister has bought a/an ..... necklace. It was very expensive. (الحيزة - منشأة القناطر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. worthless                      b. valuable                      c. inexpensive                      d. cheap

13. My brother plays a/an ..... part in society; his role is really wonderful.  
(سوهاج - المراجعة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. unknown      b. minor      c. positive      d. negative
14. Used-car sales have ..... because of the increased cost of new cars.  
(السيوط - ديروط ٢٠٢٣)  
a. risen      b. raised      c. aroused      d. arisen
15. During his long ..... in business, my uncle achieved a lot of profits.  
(القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)  
a. task      b. career      c. job      d. mission
16. More than half the people means the ..... of people.  
(السيوط - الغنايم ٢٠٢٣)  
a. trend      b. minority      c. crew      d. majority
17. A/An ..... is someone who does a job willingly without being paid.  
(القاهرة - المطرية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. volunteer      b. professional      c. minister      d. engineer
18. "When mum is tired, I volunteer to do the cooking." The word 'volunteer' here is a/an .....  
a. verb      b. adverb      c. noun      d. adjective
19. Sleep disorders اضطرابات are sometimes the result of ..... problems.  
a. involved      b. positive      c. psychological      d. coral
20. This is a ..... service. It is not free.  
a. voluntary      b. paid      c. positive      d. negative
21. In ....., I can say that protecting biodiversity is very important.  
a. conclusion      b. conservation      c. preservation      d. expedition
22. She was dressed in black, which is a ..... colour for funerals.  
a. private      b. valuable      c. suitable      d. visible
23. The good ..... he has with important people help him a lot.  
a. creatures      b. contacts      c. costs      d. pros
24. Eating too much leads to ..... weight.  
a. having      b. gaining      c. fighting      d. recycling
25. Finding a good job is the main ..... of joining a language course.  
a. contrast      b. purpose      c. community      d. majority
26. Stress الضغط for a long time may affect ..... health badly.  
a. well-known      b. local      c. native      d. mental
27. He told me about the pros and ..... of the new plan.  
a. advantages      b. upsides      c. cons      d. a & b
28. I ..... a lot from my grandfather's experience.  
a. paid      b. ran      c. benefitted      d. fought



29. He was ..... for the great efforts **بذلها** he has exerted **الجهود**.  
 a. inspired      b. ensured      c. rewarded      d. faced
30. Sama doesn't like reading. In ....., Rodayna is a bookworm.  
 a. contrast      b. purpose      c. community      d. majority
31. Intelligent people make use of **يُحسِن استغلال** the ..... offered to them.  
 a. generations      b. variety      c. creatures      d. opportunities
32. The government plans to ..... a new factory to recycle waste from the city.  
 a. pay      b. run      c. benefit      d. fight
33. Your success has ..... us all. You have showed us that nothing is impossible.  
 a. inspired      b. recycled      c. awarded      d. faced
34. The teachers' ..... must have a better position in society.  
 a. contrast      b. purpose      c. community      d. majority
35. During daytime, the sun makes other stars not ..... to us.  
 a. specific      b. valuable      c. suitable      d. visible



## VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations - متلازمات لفظية

<b>achieve</b>	a specific goal <b>يحقق هدفاً محدداً</b>	<b>go</b>	diving <b>يذهب للغوص</b>
<b>bring</b>	benefits <b>يجلب منافع</b>	<b>make</b>	useful contacts <b>يقيم علاقات / صداقات مفيدة</b>
<b>cover</b>	the costs <b>يغطي تكاليف</b>		a rule <b>يضع قاعدة</b>
<b>develop</b>	useful skills <b>يُنمّي مهارات مفيدة</b>	<b>offer</b>	... opportunities <b>يُتيح لـ ... فرص</b>
	valuable experience <b>يُنمّي خبرة قيّمة</b>		extremely useful <b>يُثبت أنه مفيد للغاية</b>
<b>gain</b>	weight <b>يزداد في الوزن</b>	<b>prove</b>	the opportunity <b>يمنح الفرصة</b>
<b>give</b>	... the opportunity <b>يُعطي ... الفرصة</b>	<b>provide</b>	turns <b>يتبادل الأدوار</b>
	the result <b>يُعطي النتيجة</b>	<b>take</b>	

### 2 Synonyms - مترادفات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
arise from	arise out of, come from, come up
consequently	so, that's why, as a result
pros	advantages, merits, upsides
voluntary	unpaid, for free, free of charge

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
arise from	يؤدي إلى - ينتج عنه
majority	الأقلية
pros	عيوب - مساوئ
voluntary	مدفوع الأجر
يُنشأ عن - ينشأ من	lead to, result in
الغلبية	minority
مميزات - مزايا	cons, disadvantages, demerits, downsides
تطوعي	paid

### 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary المشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

consequently	
consequence (n)	نتيجة / اثر
consequent (adj)	تابع / ناتج
consequently (adv)	بالتالي - لذلك
lead	
lead (v)	يؤدي - يقود
leader (n)	قائد
leading (adj)	بارز - قيادي

### 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

as I explained above	كما أوضحت أعلاه	possible solutions	حلول ممكنة
different to / from	مختلف عن	put ... into contact with	يساعد ... على التواصل مع
feel good about	يشعر بالرضا عن	put up signs	يضع لافتات
get to know	يعرف بالصدفة	research studies	دراسات بحثية
in conclusion	الخلاصة	take ... on rides	ياخذ ... في جولات
in different languages	بلغات مختلفة	visible places	أماكن مرئية
many reasons why/that	أسباب كثيرة لـ	volunteer job	عمل تطوعي
paid work	عمل بأجر	volunteer programme	برنامج تطوعي
people of any age	الناس من مختلف الأعمار		

### 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

benefit from	يستفيد من	pay for	يدفع ثمن
download ... from	يُنزل ... من	pick up	يلتقط - يجمع
find out	يكتشف - يعرف		

## 7 Clear the confusion - لاحظ الفرق

### raise - rise - arise - arouse

- **raise (d) + مفعول** يربي / يجمع مال / يرفع
  - His uncle **raises** cattle and sheep. يربي
  - He **raised** a lot of money abroad. يجمع مال
  - **Raise** your hand if you want to answer. يرفع
- **rise - rose - risen (بدون مفعول)** يرتفع / تشرق / ينهض ليحيى شخص / يستيقظ
  - Gold prices have **risen**. يرتفع
  - The sun **rises** in the east. تشرق
  - When the teacher entered, all students **rose**. ينهض
  - I **rise** at 6.00 in the morning. يستيقظ
- **arise - arose - arisen = come up (بدون مفعول)** ينشأ / ينتج
  - A lot of problems **arise** because of misunderstanding.
- **arouse - aroused + مفعول** يثير / يوقظ
  - His behaviour **aroused** the suspicion of the police.
  - Don't **arouse** the baby.

### other than - rather than

- **other than = apart from** بخلاف / غير
  - There are so many sources of protein **other than** meat.
- **rather than = instead of** بدلا من
  - I will go to bed early **rather than** watch this boring film.

### award - reward

- **award(ed) (v)** يمنح (جائزة - شهادة ...)
  - Dr Zewail was **awarded** the Nobel Prize in 1999.
- **award (n)** ملحة - جائزة - شهادة
  - Naguib Mahfouz won a lot of **awards**.
- **reward(ed) (v)** يكافئ
  - The officer **rewarded** the soldier for his honesty. أمانة.
- **reward (n)** مكافأة (مقابل سلوك حسن أو عمل جيد) أو تقديم خدمة
  - My father gives us chocolate as a **reward** when we do well.

## Exercises On Vocabulary Study

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. During the last few months, many shops have ..... their prices.

(الجيزة - أبو النمرس ٢٠٢٤)

- a. aroused      b. arisen      c. raised      d. risen

2. The bank interest price is expected to ..... in the next few months.

(الشرقية - القرن ٢٠٢٤)

- a. will have raised      b. have been raised  
c. rise      d. be risen



3. Many people believe that poverty is one of the direct ..... of economic depression. (الأقصر - أرميت ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. reasons      b. purposes      c. consequences      d. causes
4. Researchers think that a lot of problems arise ..... unemployment. (القاهرة - المطرية ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. in      b. from      c. at      d. for
5. Turkey's damaging earthquake resulted ..... great number of deaths. (بناسيوط - الواسطي ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. from      b. of      c. in      d. by
6. Egypt is a/an ..... country in the Middle East area. (السيوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. exciting      b. public      c. leading      d. bored
7. "Several health problems arise from obesity." الـبـيـمـنـة Which of the following choices is antonymous with 'arise from'?  
 a. come from      b. happen because of  
 c. are a result of      d. result in
8. "Charities need young people to do voluntary work." The word 'voluntary' in this context can be replaced by .....  
 a. paid      b. unpaid      c. free-of-charge      d. b & c
9. The manager doesn't like me. He will accept any opinion ..... mine.  
 a. rather than      b. other than      c. thanks to      d. as well as
10. Volunteering ..... the opportunity for volunteers to find out if working in a certain area would be enjoyable and suitable.  
 a. fights      b. goes      c. provides      d. rewards
11. When I was in Sharm, I ..... diving very often.  
 a. fought      b. went      c. provided      d. gave
12. I think that your monthly income دخل will ..... the costs of living in a new city.  
 a. gain      b. keep      c. make      d. cover
13. The leader of the group ..... them on rides through the countryside.  
 a. made      b. had      c. did      d. took
14. While I was talking to the English tourist, I ..... to know that his father is Egyptian.  
 a. got      b. did      c. had      d. ought
15. She ..... to look after the baby.  
 a. volunteer      b. voluntary      c. volunteering      d. volunteered
16. I will join a charity ..... waste my time playing computer games.  
 a. rather than      b. other than      c. apart from      d. b & c
17. He was ..... the Nobel Prize.  
 a. rewarded      b. reward      c. award      d. awarded

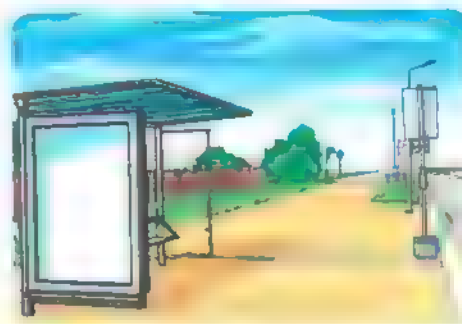
## 1 Reading Texts

## Problem Solving :

(WB page 16)

## The problem

Many students at your school take the bus home at the end of each day. The problem is that the bus stop is always very sunny. It is very hot waiting for the bus and some children don't feel well if the bus is late.



## Possible solutions

1. Give **sun shades**<sup>(1)</sup> to all the students so that they can **stay out of**<sup>(2)</sup> the sun. You can also advise them to wear hats.
2. Plant trees around the bus stop, so that students can stay out of the sun while they are waiting.
3. Move the bus stop next to a building, so that students can stay out of the sun while they are waiting.
4. Tell the students to wait inside the school until they can see the bus arriving.

(1) شمسبيلة - مظلة

(2) يبتغي بعيداً عن

## Can volunteering benefit young people today?

(SB page 31)

Several<sup>(1)</sup> research studies<sup>(2)</sup> have proved<sup>(3)</sup> that significant<sup>(4)</sup> psychological<sup>(5)</sup> benefits<sup>(6)</sup> can arise from<sup>(7)</sup> volunteering<sup>(8)</sup>, for people of any age. For young people<sup>(9)</sup> though, there are many reasons why volunteering would benefit them.



In my opinion, the most important benefit is that it simply makes them feel good about themselves.

I believe that a further<sup>(10)</sup> important benefit is that young people can develop<sup>(11)</sup> useful skills and valuable<sup>(12)</sup> experience<sup>(13)</sup>. These can prove extremely useful not only at school, but also in their careers<sup>(14)</sup>. For example, a volunteer job with an organisation may lead to<sup>(15)</sup> paid<sup>(16)</sup> work. Volunteering could also provide<sup>(17)</sup> the opportunity<sup>(18)</sup> to find out<sup>(19)</sup> if working in a certain<sup>(20)</sup> area would be enjoyable and suitable<sup>(21)</sup>.

(1) عديد

(2) دراسات بحثية

(3) أثبتت

(4) بارز - هام

(5) نفسي

(6) فوائد

(7) لتلج عن

(8) العمل التطوعي

(9) الشباب

(10) أكثر

(11) ينمي

(12) قيم

(13) تجربة - خبرة

(14) الحياة المهنية

(15) يؤدي إلى

(16) مدفوع الأجر

(17) يوفر

(18) فرصة

(19) يكتشف

(20) محدد

(21) مناسب

The third and final benefit of volunteering is that it gives young people the opportunity to make useful **contacts**<sup>(22)</sup>. A **majority**<sup>(23)</sup> of volunteers work together **in order to**<sup>(24)</sup> achieve a **specific**<sup>(25)</sup> goal. **Consequently**<sup>(26)</sup>, they often get to know each other very well and team **leaders**<sup>(27)</sup> may then put volunteers into contact with people who can offer them other interesting opportunities.

**In conclusion**<sup>(28)</sup>, it is clear that volunteering **brings**<sup>(29)</sup> several important benefits for the volunteers **involved**<sup>(30)</sup>. **However**<sup>(31)</sup>, as I **explained**<sup>(32)</sup> above, the most important benefit is the **positive**<sup>(33)</sup> **effect**<sup>(34)</sup> that volunteering has on the volunteers' **mental health**<sup>(35)</sup>.

- (22) علاقات
- (23) الأغلبية
- (24) لكي
- (25) محدد
- (26) لذلك
- (27) قادة
- (28) الخلاصة
- (29) يجلب
- (30) مُشارك
- (31) ومع ذلك
- (32) يوضح
- (33) إيجابي
- (34) أثر
- (35) الصحة النفسية

## We should reward all volunteers

Some people **argue**<sup>(1)</sup> that we should **reward**<sup>(2)</sup> volunteers by giving them some money for their work. However, I believe that this is not **necessary**<sup>(3)</sup>. Why is this?



The **definition**<sup>(4)</sup> of to volunteer is to work or help someone without being paid. Many **charities**<sup>(5)</sup> need volunteers in order to help people who have problems or who are very poor. In my opinion, the charities need all the money they receive to help these people.

Consequently, they do not have enough money to **pay**<sup>(6)</sup> volunteers.

So why should volunteers work **for no money**<sup>(7)</sup>? Not only do volunteers **gain**<sup>(8)</sup> valuable experience from volunteering, but they also teach them skills that they can use in their careers. I believe that **voluntary**<sup>(9)</sup> work can **eventually**<sup>(10)</sup> lead to a volunteer getting a good job.

In conclusion, I would say that there are many benefits that arise from volunteering **rather than**<sup>(11)</sup> being paid.

(WB page 17)

- (1) يرفع
- (2) يكافئ
- (3) ضروري
- (4) تعريف
- (5) جمعيات خيرية
- (6) يدفع مال
- (7) دون مقابل
- (8) يكتسب
- (9) تطوعي
- (10) في النهاية
- (11) بدلاً من



## 2 Listening Texts

(SB page 30)

**Student 1 :** So, we're trying to find a solution for a problem that a lot of young people are having in our town at the moment.

**Student 2 :** Yes, there aren't enough facilities for young people in our town. When you're not at school or doing your homework, the only things you can do you can go for a walk, go shopping or go swimming.

- (1) حديقة تزلج
- (2) رياضة التزلج
- (3) اقتراحات
- (4) نادي للشباب
- (5) ينظم
- (6) أطفال

**Student 1 :** Yes, I think we should have a far wider range of facilities for young people here.

**Student 2 :** We could ask the local council to build a **skatepark**<sup>(1)</sup>. That wouldn't cost very much money and it wouldn't take up very much space either.

**Student 1 :** That's true but not all young people like **skateboarding**, and what if there's a storm or it's too hot outside?

**Student 2 :** That's a good point. Do you have any other **suggestions**<sup>(2)</sup>?

**Student 1 :** Well, what about starting a **youth club**<sup>(3)</sup> in a building that's already there? The council wouldn't have to build anything new and the youth club could offer lots of different activities, so there's something for everyone.

**Student 2 :** Well, the council would still need to pay some people to **organize** the youth club, so it wouldn't be completely free.

**Student 1 :** OK, but it might not cost a lot and they could ask for volunteers.

**Student 2 :** OK, but what activities could we do at the youth club? Playing games and drawing isn't very interesting for older **kids**<sup>(4)</sup>.

**Student 2 :** OK, so we have two possible solutions so far. It seems like we need to find something that doesn't cost very much money, but which is interesting and a lot of young people will find interesting ?

**Narrator :** In today's programme, we listen to your computer problems, then ask three **experts**<sup>(1)</sup> to suggest a solution. First, we have Ola. What's your problem, Ola?

(1) خبراء  
(2) يحمل (من الإنترنت)  
(3) نظام تشغيل

**Ola :** Hi. I have an old laptop which used to be really good. At school, we did a project for homework about sea life. All my friends could **download**<sup>(2)</sup> photos and information from the internet, but now my laptop won't do this. What should I do ?

**Presenter :** OK, let's ask our first expert. First, what do you think Ola should do, Amal ?

**Amal :** Well, it sounds like your computer is very old. Why don't you buy a new one ? Then I think your problem will be solved.

**Presenter :** Thanks. Do you agree, Dina ?

**Dina :** No, because new computers are expensive! Even an old laptop should be able to download photos, so perhaps there is a problem with it. I think you should take it to a shop. I'm sure they can repair it.

**Presenter :** OK. What about you Manal? What advice do you have?

**Manal :** I think you can solve the problem yourself. You probably just need a new **operating system**<sup>(3)</sup>. This is a program you can download from the internet. I think this will solve your problem.



## LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

### Exercises on Language

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

📌 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. A kilo of cotton is exactly the same weight ..... a kilo of meat.

(السيوط - الفنايم ٢٠٢٣)

a. from                      b. as                      c. than                      d. to

2. Today is ..... hotter than yesterday, so I can't bear these heavy clothes.

(القاهرة - المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)

a. more                      b. bit                      c. much                      d. less





18. Aya is 60 kg. Leila is 60 kg, too. Noha is 59.5 Kg. Aya is ..... Leila.  
 a. far lighter than                      b. almost as heavy as  
 c. slightly heavier than                d. exactly the same weight as



## Special cases

19. When we were young, our mother ..... delicious meals every day.

(الدقهلية - تشرين ٢٠٢٣)

- a. would cook                      b. uses to cook  
c. is used to cooking              d. got used to cook

20. Don't worry! You will soon ..... used to living here.

(الشرمية - غرب الزفازيق ٢٠٢٣)

- a. grow**                      **b. plant**                      **c. became**                      **d. get**

21. He used to be a driver, but now he .....

- a. does      b. doesn't      c. is      d. isn't

22. Leen is tall, but Rokaya is .....

- a. tall**      **b. height**      **c. taller**      **d. taller than**

23. A month ago, I ..... three weddings.

- a. used to attend                      b. got used to attend  
c. was used to attend                d. attended

24. This spray is used ..... mosquitos.

- a. to kill      b. kill      c. to killing      d. killing

25. He ..... used to his first school after only three days.

- a. get                      b. is                      c. became                      d. become

26. .... used to be a large villa here.

- a. Those**      **b. Their**      **c. There's**      **d. There**

27. I ..... to the club every day last week.

- a.** used to going      **b.** didn't use to go  
**c.** went      **d.** had gone

28. I don't smoke ..... more.

- a. too      b. any      c. no      d. not

29. It was ..... habit to stay up late at night.

- a. Ali      b. he      c. his      d. himself

30. .... a fixed habit, I used to visit my grandparents once a week before their death.

- a. As**                      **b. For**                      **c. To**                      **d. By**

31. This bike and that **one** have the same .....

- a. quality      b. good      c. bad      d. b & c

32. Before she got married, she ..... have a lot of free time.

- a. used      b. used to      c. would      d. b & c

33. Cars ..... cost far less money in the past.

- a. would      b. would have      c. used to      d. used to have

34. Whenever I saw her, she ..... be smiling.  
a. used to                      b. was used to                      c. would                      d. would always
35. Youssef is ..... more intelligent than Karim.  
a. very                      b. far                      c. much                      d. b & c
36. Mr Munir ..... smoke and that destroyed his health.  
a. used to                      b. would                      c. a & b                      d. never
37. While I was a secretary, I got used to ..... in my spare time.  
a. wrote                      b. be written                      c. writing                      d. write
38. He ..... eating out as he doesn't enjoy cooking at home.  
a. no longer                      b. is used for                      c. was used                      d. is used to
39. My mother is used to ..... up early every day.  
a. gets                      b. got                      c. getting                      d. get

### 5 Check your understanding

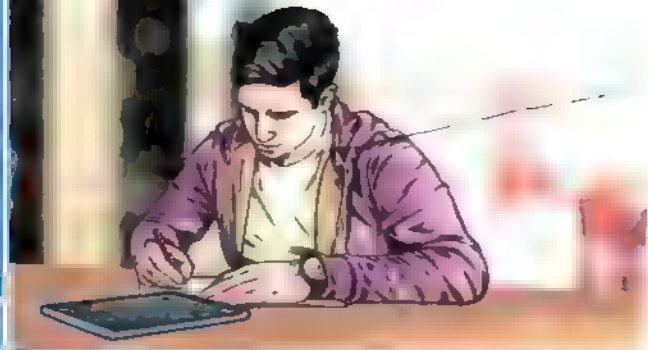
40. He has made a mistake although he ..... mistakes. (السيوط - الفتح ٢٠٢٣)  
a. is not used to making                      b. does not use to make  
c. did not use to making                      d. used to make
41. Mr Helmi no longer smokes. To Mr Helmi, smoking is .....  
a. a habit                      b. a present habit  
c. a past habit                      d. a lifelong habit
42. Omar is no longer kind to me. He .....  
a. used to be kind to me                      b. got used to being kind to me  
c. is getting used to be kind to me                      d. was never kind to me
43. There didn't use to be a bus stop here. This means that .....  
a. there was a bus stop here                      b. there is a bus stop here  
c. a bus stop used to be here                      d. a bus stop never used to be here
44. Sama doesn't hide her father's shoes any longer. What does this mean?  
a. She stopped hiding them.                      b. She didn't stop hiding them.  
c. She doesn't stop hiding them.                      d. She still hides them.

**A week is enough**

مراجعة المنهج

والتمكن منه فى اسبوع واحد فقط





للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأستاذة

صورة

PART 1

## LANGUAGE HINTS

### Linking Words and Expressions: Formal & Informal

استخدام الروابط والتعبيرات في اللغة الرسمية واللغة الدارجة

#### Contrast التناقض

**Formal** → **However** جملة + ومع ذلك / لكن

ex. - I was angry. **However**, I didn't say anything wrong.

**Informal** → **but** جملة + ومع ذلك / لكن

ex. - I was angry **but** I didn't say anything wrong.

#### Result النتيجة

**Formal** → **Consequently** جملة + ولذلك / ونتيجة لذلك

ex. - The flat is in a noisy street. **Consequently**, I won't buy it.

**Informal** → **As a result** جملة + ولذلك / ونتيجة لذلك

ex. - The flat is in a noisy street. **As a result**, I won't buy it.

#### Purpose الغرض

**Formal** → **to – in order to – so as to** inf. ... لكي

- ex. - We get up early **to catch** the school bus.  
- Ahmed will help me **so as to solve** my problems.  
- Sama studies hard **in order to pass** the exam.



**Informal** → **so that - in order that - in the hope that** جملة + لكي/حتى

لاحظ أن الفعل في الجملة بعد (so that - in order that - in the hope that) يكون كالتالي:

١- في المضارع أو المستقبل نستخدم (can / will / may + inf.):

**ex.** - We get up early **so that** we can catch the school bus.

- Ahmed will help me **in order that** I will be able to solve my problems.

٢- في الماضي نستخدم (could / would / might + inf.):

**ex.** - Sama studied hard **in the hope that** she could pass the exam.

**not only ... but also** ليس فقط ... لكن أيضا

١. تأتي (not only) قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد الفعل المساعد في الجملة الأولى:

... (also) الفاعل + but ..., فعل + not only + فاعل

**ex.** - We did **not only** go to the market, **but** we **also** went to the zoo.

٢. يمكن أن تأتي (also) بعد (but) مباشرة:

**ex.** - We did **not only** go to the market, **but also** we went to the zoo.

٣. يمكن استخدام (as well - too) في نهاية الجملة بمعنى أيضاً بدلاً من (also):

**ex.** - She **not only** arrived late, **but** she **also** forgot her books.

= She **not only** arrived late, **but** she forgot her books **as well**.

٤. عند استخدام (Not only) في بداية الجملة لابد أن يُستخدم فعل مساعد قبل الفاعل:

**Not only** + فاعل + فعل مساعد + **but.....** , فعل.....

**ex.** - **Not only** did we go to the market, **but** we **also** went to the zoo.

٥. إذا ربطت (Not only... but also) فاعلين مختلفين فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني من

ناحية المفرد والجمع:

**ex.** - **Not only** Tom **but also** his brothers **are** doctors.

**arise from - come from** ينشأ من

**Formal** → **arise from + n. / (inf. + ing)**

**ex.** - A lot of health problems **arise from** gaining weight.

**Informal** → **come from + n / (inf. + ing)**

**ex.** - A lot of health problems **come from** gaining weight.

**لاحظ :** يمكن أن يأتي المفعول بين **(arise from / come from)** و **(inf. + ing)**

**ex.** - Most social problems **arise from** people not **receiving** a good education.

**يؤدي إلى lead to - result in**

**Formal** → **lead to + n / (inf. + ing)**

**ex.** - Pollution **leads to** suffering from health problems.

**Informal** → **result in + n / (inf. + ing)**

**ex.** - Pollution **results in** suffering from health problems.

**لاحظ :** يمكن أن يأتي المفعول بين **(lead to / result in)** و **(inf. + ing)**

**ex.** - Voluntary work can eventually **lead to** a volunteer **getting** a good job.

### Exercise on Language Hints

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Not only ..... well but he also scored a fantastic goal. (دمياط - الروضة ٢٣ ٢٠٢٠)

a. he played      b. played      c. did he play      d. he did play

2. He doesn't learn from his mistakes. ...., the manager fired him. فصله

a. As a result      b. To      c. In order that      d. Not only

3. He has ..... played well, but he has also scored two goals.

a. as a result      b. to      c. in order that      d. not only

4. He looks for a second job ..... earn more money.

a. as a result      b. to      c. in order that      d. not only

5. He looks for a second job ..... he can earn more money.

a. as a result      b. to      c. in order that      d. not only

6. I offered to reduce the price. ...., the customer refused to buy the jacket.

a. Consequently      b. However      c. So that      d. In order to

7. I offered to reduce the price. .... , the customer agreed to buy the jacket.  
a. Consequently    b. However    c. So that    d. In order to
8. I offered to reduce the price ..... make the customer buy the jacket.  
a. consequently    b. however    c. so that    d. in order to
9. I offered to reduce the price ..... the customer might buy the jacket.  
a. consequently    b. however    c. so that    d. in order to
10. Not only ..... well as a coach, but he is also a good team manager.  
a. he does    b. does he do    c. he doesn't    d. doesn't he do
11. Car accidents usually arise from careless drivers ..... very fast.  
a. drive    b. drives    c. driving    d. to drive
12. Eating too much leads ..... on much weight.  
a. put    b. puts    c. to put    d. to putting



## LANGUAGE SKILLS

### 1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (القليوبية - قليوب ٢٠٢٤)

One of my favourite hobbies is to watch foreign movies, especially the ones that talk about reformers and activists. One day a friend invited me to watch a movie about the famous environmental activist Greta Thunberg. The movie follows the life of the Swedish activist, who, since she was fifteen, has been fighting against climate change. In September 2019, she spoke angrily to politicians in the United Nations. She has travelled all over the world giving talks and encouraging people to change their habits. Greta may be the latest young person to be in the news, but she is not the first or only one.

Before Greta had been heard of, a 12-year-old girl from, Vancouver called Severn Cullis-Suzuki, had spoken at a United Nations conference in 1992. She warned the world about the dangers of rising temperatures and the problems that will arise from not preserving our planet's rich biodiversity. In 2012, Severn was the main character in a film about her protests.

The list of teenage activists who are fighting for the conservation of our planet is very long. There are approximately 3 billion people under the age of 20 living today and all of them have the ability to make changes in their habits in order to make our planet a better place.



1. Greta Thunberg was from ..... .  
a. Scotland                      b. Sudan                      c. Sweden                      d. Norway
2. Teenagers around the world can ..... .  
a. make no difference to make our planet a better place.  
b. make videos on social media to make our planet a better place.  
c. talk to their families to make our planet a better place.  
d. change their habits to make our planet a better place.
3. According to the passage, many teenagers around the world ..... .  
a. have made movies about their lives  
b. are fighting for the conservation of our planet  
c. have appeared in the news  
d. are speaking to politicians
4. The underlined word 'movie' can be replaced by ..... .  
a. film                      b. campaign                      c. episode                      d. series
5. The movie that the writer watched was about..... .  
a. the United Nations conferences  
b. Severn Cullis-Suzuki from Vancouver  
c. an environmental activist called Greta Thunberg  
d. teenagers activists who are fighting for the conservation of our planet
6. .... means the variety of plants and animals in a particular place.  
a. An activist                      b. Biodiversity                      c. A reformer                      d. Conservation
7. According to the passage, encouraging people to change their habits may ..... .  
a. destroy the environmental biodiversity  
b. put an end to life on our planet  
c. sacrifice the safety of our planet  
d. make our planet a better place
8. Severn Cullis-Suzuki tried to make the world ..... of the problems that will arise from not preserving our plant's rich biodiversity.  
a. aware                      b. neglect                      c. astonish                      d. realize

## Essay Writing كتابة المقال

### Model essay

✪ Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY words (180) on :

#### How can volunteers benefit from volunteering

Volunteering is one of the most important duties واجبات that young people can have. The benefits of volunteering can be enormous. Volunteering offers necessary help to people in need. The benefits of volunteering can be even greater for volunteers themselves. So, how can volunteers benefit from volunteering?

One of the best benefits of volunteering is the impact اثر on the community. Unpaid work helps in enhancing services in community. Volunteering allows you to connect to your community and make it a better place. Dedicating تكريس your time as a volunteer helps you make new friends and improve your social skills.

There are a lot of volunteering opportunities you can choose from according to your free time. Other than charity organizations, you can serve in worship places أماكن العبادة such as mosques and churches. Senior centers are always need volunteers to accompany the elders to go for short walks or talk to them.

Volunteering is good for your health at any age. Studies have found that those who volunteer have a lower mortality rate معدل وفيات than those who do not. Volunteering has also been shown to lessen يقلل symptoms أعراض of heart disease.

To conclude, volunteering is a two-way street: It can benefit you and your family as well as the community.

## 3 Writing

✪ Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:

(القاهرة - النزهة ٢٠٢٤)

“The dangers of pollution and how to overcome them”

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 4 Translation الترجمة

### 1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. It's high time to teach our children loyalty and faith to our beloved Egypt which is now in need of more efforts, more sacrifice and more cooperation to restore its position in the area.

(الحبره - ابو حمص ٢٢٤)

- a. لقد حان الوقت لتعليم أطفالنا الولاء والوفاء لبلدنا الحبيبة مصر والتي كانت في حاجة إلى جهود أكثر وتضحية أكثر وتعاون أكثر لاستعادة مكانتها في المنطقة.
- b. لقد حان الوقت لتعليم أطفالنا الولاء والوفاء لبلدنا الحبيبة مصر والتي هي الآن في حاجة إلى جهود أكثر وتضحية أكثر وتعاون أكثر لاستعادة مكانتها في المنطقة.
- c. لقد حان الوقت لتعليم أطفالنا الولاء والوفاء لبلدنا الحبيبة مصر والتي هي الآن في حاجة إلى جهود أكثر وتضحية أكثر وتعاون أكثر لاستعادة وظيفتها في المنطقة.
- d. لقد حان الوقت لتعليم أطفالنا الولاء والوفاء لبلدنا الحبيبة مصر والتي هي الآن في حاجة إلى جهود أكثر وتضحية أكثر وتعاون أكثر لاستعادة مكانتها في المنطقة.

2. Talent is vital to make achievements in sports and it can be enhanced through determination and working hard.

(السرمنه - المرس ٢٠٢٤)

- a. إن الموهبة ضرورية لتحقيق الإنجازات في الرياضيات، ويمكن تعزيزها من خلال العزيمة والعمل الجاد.
- b. إن الموهبة ضرورية لتحقيق الإنجازات في الألعاب الرياضية، ويمكن تعزيزها من خلال العزيمة والعمل الجاد.
- c. إن الموهبة ضرورية لتحقيق الإنجازات في الألعاب الرياضية، ولا يمكن تعزيزها من خلال العزيمة والعمل الجاد.
- d. إن الموهبة ضرورية لتحقيق الإنجازات في الألعاب الرياضية، ويمكن نشرها من خلال العزيمة والعمل الجاد.

### 2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

1. تُعد البحار والمحيطات مصدراً أساسياً للأكسجين الحيوي لحياة الإنسان، والحفاظ على نظافتها يعني إمداداً مستداماً بالأكسجين، وهو أمر ضروري لبقائنا على قيد الحياة.

(السوان - كوم امبو ٢٢٤)

- a. Seas and oceans are a secondary source of oxygen vital for human life; keeping them clean means a sustainable oxygen supply which is necessary for our survey.
- b. Seas and oceans are a primary source of oxygen vital for human life; keeping them cleaning means a sustainable oxygen supply where is necessary for our survival.
- c. Seas and oceans are a primary source of oxygen vital for human life; keeping them clean means a sustainable oxygen supply which is necessary for our survival.
- d. Seas and oceans are primary source of oxygen vital for human life; keeping them cleaning means sustainable oxygen supply which is necessary for our survival.



٢. هل تعتقد أن العولمة يمكن أن تضيق الفجوة بين الثقافات أم أنها عامل من عوامل الصراع بين الحضارات ؟  
(الشرقية - العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٤)

- Do you think that internationality can tighten the gap between cultures or it is a factor in the struggle among civilizations?
- Do you think that association can reduce the hole between cultures? or is a fracture in the struggle among civilizations?
- Do you think that universality can remove the space among cultures? Or it is a worker of struggle among civilizations?
- Do you think globalization can narrow the gap between cultures? Or is it a factor of conflict among civilizations?

ONLY FOR

## JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

للفائقين فقط

### challenge

#### • challenge (n)

تُحدِّي

- Passing the final exam is a real challenge. I must study hard.

#### • challenge(d) (v)

يتحدى

- Don't try to challenge him at chess. He is very intelligent.

#### • challenging (adj)

ينطوي علي تحدي / صعب لكن مثير

- I am sure you will enjoy this challenging job.

#### • unchallenged (adj)

مقبول - متعارف عليه - مُتفق عليه

- He is a wise حكيم person whose opinions are usually unchallenged.

#### • unchallengeable (adj)

مُطلق / راسخ / ثابت / غير قابل للنقاش

- We have unchallengeable love for our homeland.

لاحظ استخدم الصفة (challenged) عند الحديث عن ذوي الإحتياجات الخاصة بمعنى (تو إعاقة):

visually challenged - physically challenged - mentally challenged

- Braille is a special writing for people who are visually challenged.

= Braille is a special writing for blind people.

### conserve

#### • conserve (d) = preserve(d) (v)

يحفظ / يصون / يحمي

- It is very important to conserve the natural environment.

يُزْتَنَد / يَفْتَصِد فِي

• **conserve (d) (v)**

- We must **conserve** water.

مُرَبِّي

• **conserve = jam (n)**

- She had a **conserve** sandwich for breakfast.

حَمَاة أَوْ صِيَانَة (الْبَيْئَة الطَبِيعِيَّة)

• **conservation = preservation (n)**

- The **conservation** of biodiversity is a must. **ضَرُورَة**

لِرَشِيد / تَقْلِيل

• **conservation (n)**

- Energy **conservation** is something important.

وَلَا حَظَّ التَّعْبِيرَاتِ التَّالِيَةِ:

- nature conservation

حَمَاة الطَّبِيعَة

- wildlife conservation

حَمَاة الْحَيَاة الْبَرِيَّة

- conservation groups

جَمَاعَاتُ حَمَاة الطَّبِيعَة

• **conservationist (n)**

شَخْصٌ مُحَافِظٌ عَلَيَّ أَوْ صَدِيقٌ لِلْبَيْئَة

- **Conservationists** are people who work hard to protect the environment.

**species**

• **species (n)**

نوع - أَنْوَاع (يَأْتِي بَعْدَهَا فِعْلٌ مُفْرَدٌ أَوْ جَمْعٌ حَسَبِ الْمَعْنَى الْمَقْصُودِ)

- This **species** of animals is rare.
- These **species** of animals are rare.

وَلَا حَظَّ التَّعْبِيرَاتِ التَّالِيَةِ:

- endangered species

نوع نَادِر (مُهِدِدٌ بِالْانْقِرَاضِ)

- protected species

نوع مُحَمَّى (فِي مُحَمِّية طَبِيعِيَّة)

- extinct species

نوع مُنْقَرَضٌ

**unique**

• **unique (adj)**

فَرِيدٌ مِنْ نَوْعِهِ

- Coral reefs have **unique** beauty.

• **unique (adj)**

مُفْتَرِزٌ / خَاصٌّ

- They spent a **unique** time in the Maldives **جَزُرُ الْمَالْدِيفِ**.

لَا حَظَّ. لَا تُسْتَخْدَمُ الصِّفَةُ (**unique**) فِي صَيَغِ الْمَقَارَنَةِ وَالتَّفْضِيلِ:

- This scene is more **unique** than that one. (X)

لَا حَظَّ التَّعْبِيرِ التَّالِي:

• **be unique to**

يَتَفَرَّدُ بِهِ / لَا يَوْجَدُ إِلَّا فِي

- This type of fish is **unique to** the Red Sea. It exists nowhere else.

## volunteer

- **volunteer (n)** شخص متطوع (يقوم بعمل دون أجر)  
- A team of **volunteers** are helping to keep the natural environment clean.
- **volunteer(ed) (to / for) (v)** يتطوع - يعرض القيام بعمل دون أجر  
- He **volunteered** for looking after the plants in the garden.
- **volunteering (n)** التطوع (للقيام بعمل دون أجر)  
- **Volunteering** benefits both societies and volunteers themselves.
- **voluntary (adj)** تطوعي (دون أجر)  
- Omar did some **voluntary** work for a charity.

### Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
  - Mr Omar ..... his services as a lawyer for the victims.  
a. volunteered      b. arouse      c. lead      d. preserved
  - There are so many ancient tourist sites are unique ..... Luxor and Aswan.  
a. for      b. from      c. to      d. with
  - The deaf, the blind and the dumb are examples of people who are .....  
a. challenge      b. challenged      c. challenging      d. unchallenged
  - The price of this jacket can't go ..... ; it is too expensive.  
a. challenge      b. challenged      c. challenging      d. unchallenged
  - The lion is a/an ..... species of animals. That is, it is about to die out.  
a. dangerous      b. endangered      c. a & b      d. conservative

### Advanced Exercise on Language

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
  - Did he ..... to eating yoghurt?  
a. got used      b. become used      c. use      d. using
  - Roaa used to have short hair, but now, she .....  
a. couldn't      b. wasn't      c. doesn't      d. isn't
  - She no longer ..... glasses, but she used to do that when she was young.  
a. wore      b. is wearing      c. wears      d. wear
  - He is used to playing tennis every weekend, but many years ago he .....  
a. wasn't      b. didn't      c. doesn't      d. isn't
  - She ..... here any more.  
a. doesn't work      b. didn't work  
c. is used to working      d. used to work



# Test on Unit 9

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

الوحدة ٩

• التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب  
• تدريبات الأزهر الشريف في بنك الأسئلة



اختبار الكسوي

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The native ..... who lived in the country made this art. (سوهاج - جهينة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. volunteers      b. inhabitants      c. monitors      d. creatures
2. .... try to preserve the biodiversity of animals and plants.  
a. Conservationists      b. Conservatives  
c. Preservatives      d. Conversation
3. I'm happy to get such a/an ..... job in the New Administrative Capital. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. amazed      b. rewarding      c. interested      d. defective
4. She won a ..... to study in Cambridge University to be a vet.  
a. scholarship      b. reward  
c. prize      d. championship
5. A group of scientists went on a/an ..... to explore the rainforests of Amazon. (القليوبية - شبين القناطر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. biodiversity      b. scholarship      c. expedition      d. monitor
6. Conservationists try to protect the ..... of animals and plants. (دار السلام ٢٠٢٣)  
a. scholarship      b. biodiversity      c. expedition      d. monitor
7. Every nation has the right to ..... its identity and culture. (ساقlette ٢٠٢٣)  
a. damage      b. reserve      c. preserve      d. serve
8. This book is brilliant; it is ..... than the last book he wrote. (سوهاج - طهطا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. slightly worse      b. far better      c. most better      d. not better
9. I think German is ..... than French. (الإسكندرية - شرق الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. difficult      b. as difficult  
c. much difficult      d. much more difficult
10. He is honest and tolerant, just ..... his brother. They come from a respectable family. (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. unlike      b. dislike      c. likely      d. like
11. When my son was young, he ..... enjoy swimming. (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. uses      b. used to      c. got used to      d. was used to
12. My father ..... go to work by car, but now he does. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. used to      b. is used to      c. isn't used to      d. didn't use to
13. Omar used to be a plumber, but now, he ..... (الأقصر - أرميت ٢٠٢٤)  
a. didn't      b. doesn't      c. isn't      d. is

## 2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

(المثوية - الباجور ٢٠٢٤)

Pollution is a major issue that affects the environment and human health. It occurs when harmful substances or chemicals are introduced into the environment. Pollution can come from a variety of sources such as industrial activities, transportation, waste disposal, and agriculture. There are several types of pollution such as air pollution, water pollution, and soil pollution.

Air pollution is caused by the release of harmful chemicals and particles into the air. This can come from factories, vehicles, and other sources. It can cause respiratory problems, allergies, and other health issues, particularly for people with pre-existing conditions such as asthma.

Water pollution is caused by the release of harmful substances into water bodies like rivers and lakes. This can come from factories, sewage systems, and agricultural runoff. Water pollution can harm aquatic life and make water unsafe for human use.

Soil pollution is caused by the introduction of harmful substances into the soil. This can come from pesticides, fertilizers, and waste disposal. Soil pollution can harm plants and animals and make soil unsafe for farming.

The problem of pollution is a global issue that needs to be addressed at all levels, from individuals to governments. It is essential to reduce our contribution to pollution by adopting eco-friendly practices like reducing the use of plastic and other non-biodegradable materials, using public transportation or carpooling, and reducing water usage.

1. What is the main topic of this passage?
  - a. The causes of pollution
  - b. The benefits of pollution
  - c. The advantages of pollution and how to preserve it
  - d. The causes of pollution and its impact on the environment
2. What is the meaning of the word 'harmful'?
  - a. Beneficial.
  - b. Dangerous.
  - c. Useful.
  - d. Beautiful.
3. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?
  - a. Air pollution.
  - b. Water pollution.
  - c. Soil pollution.
  - d. Noise pollution.
4. Which of the following is NOT mentioned as a source of pollution?
  - a. Industrial activity.
  - b. Agriculture.
  - c. Mining.
  - d. Transportation.
5. The harmful effect of water pollution is that it .....
  - a. causes soil erosion
  - b. affects air quality
  - c. harms marine life
  - d. causes wildfires
6. It is important to combat pollution to .....
  - a. increase its levels
  - b. reduce its levels
  - c. benefit industrial activities
  - d. increase agricultural yield





# Revision 3

Based On Units 7, 8 & 9

SB pages 36 : 41 WB pages 20 : 23

## PART I

## VOCABULARY

### 1 Important Vocabulary

beneficial(adj)	مفيد	life-long(adj)	مدي الحياة
complicated(adj)	مُعقّد	locate(d) (v)	يضع / يحدد موضع
eco-systems(n)	الأنظمة البيئية	official(adj)	رسمي
head(ed) (v)	يتوجه	persuade(d) (v)	يُقنع
importance(n)	أهمية	practical(adj)	عملي - تطبيقي
impressive(adj)	مُبهر	teamwork(n)	عمل جماعي
increasingly(adv)	بشكل متزايد	tent(n)	خيمة
incredible(adj)	خُرافي - رائع		

### 2 Extra Vocabulary

activity(n)	نشاط	indeed(adv)	بالفعل
adults(n)	البالغين	interest(n)	اهتمام
castle(n)	قلعة	positive(adj)	إيجابي
currently(adv)	حالياً	protect(ed) (v)	يحمي
cute(adj)	جذاب	Spanish(n)	اللغة الإسبانية
dried(adj)	مُجفّف	teenagers(n)	مراهقين
gain(ed) (v)	يكتسب	temperatures(n)	درجات الحرارة
global(adj)	عالمي	together(adv)	معاً - سوياً
guide(n)	مُرشد		

## PART II

## VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations - متلازمات لفظية

develop	useful skills	يكتسب مهارات مفيدة	get	started	يبدأ
	practical skills	يكتسب مهارات عملية		involved	يشارك
	a life-long interest	يكتسب اهتمام دائم	have	a positive effect on	له أثر إيجابي علي
do	activities	يمارس أنشطة	make	a bandage on	يضع ضمادة علي
gain	useful knowledge	يكتسب معارف مفيدة			

## 2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

at a young age	في سن صغير	in conclusion	الخلاصة
be known for	مشهور بـ	keep up	يساير - يواكب
by the end of	قبل نهاية	move to	ينتقل إلي
continue to rise	يستمر في الارتفاع	persuade ... to	يُقنع ... أن
each other	بعضهم البعض	seem like	يبدو كما لو أن
even less	أقل بكثير	talk to	يتحدث مع
far easier	أسهل بكثير	teach ... about	يُدرس لـ ... عن
far more	أكثر بكثير	teamwork skills	مهارات العمل الجماعي
find it difficult	يعاني - يواجه صعوبة	the country's official language	اللغة الرسمية للدولة
go on a tour	يذهب في جولة	young people	الشباب
head out into	يتوجه إلي داخل		

## PART III

# READING & LISTENING

## 1 Reading Texts

### Costa Rica Expedition: Day 1

(SB page 36)

Hi! My name's Amira. And I'm **currently**<sup>(1)</sup> in Costa Rica where I'm going on a tour for young people. Today is only my second day here, but by the end of my time here, I will have visited every **corner**<sup>(2)</sup> of this **amazing**<sup>(3)</sup> country, seen a lot of its **incredible**<sup>(4)</sup> **biodiversity**<sup>(5)</sup> and spent some time staying with a family of native **inhabitants**<sup>(6)</sup> in the **rainforest**<sup>(7)</sup>. I'm so excited to get started!



- 1) حالها
- 2) ركن
- 3) مُذهِل
- 4) خُرافي - رائع
- 5) التنوع البيولوجي
- 6) السكان المحليين
- 7) غابة مطيرة
- 8) تقع
- 9) مُرتبِد
- 10) يُقَل - يوضِل
- 11) المواصلات العامة
- 12) اللغة الإسبانية
- 13) رسمي

Costa Rica **is located**<sup>(8)</sup> in Central America and I had to fly for about 24 hours to get here. When I arrived at the airport, I was so pleased to see that Emilia, our **guide**<sup>(9)</sup>, had come to **pick me up**<sup>(10)</sup> and take me to the hotel. We travelled by **public transport**<sup>(11)</sup> to the hotel together. Emilia said it would be far quicker than driving because there was so much traffic on the roads. Everyone speaks **Spanish**<sup>(12)</sup> here because it's the country's **official**<sup>(13)</sup> language. I'm finding it a bit difficult

to understand the type of Spanish they speak here because it's different to the Spanish I've learned, but I'm sure I'll **get used to**<sup>(14)</sup> it.

Tomorrow we're going **to head**<sup>(15)</sup> out into the rainforest for the first time. We don't have any **high-tech**<sup>(16)</sup> equipment with us – just our walking boots, **tents**<sup>(17)</sup> and sleeping bags and, of course, water bottles and **dried**<sup>(18)</sup> food. Costa Rica isn't a country that tourists come to in order to see **impressive**<sup>(19)</sup> **castles**<sup>(20)</sup> or ancient pyramids. **Instead**<sup>(21)</sup>, it's known for its **exotic**<sup>(22)</sup> birds and it's almost as famous for the **cute**<sup>(23)</sup> monkeys that sometimes come to see what the tourists on the beach are doing!

(14) يعتاد على

(15) ياتوجه

(16) ذو تقنية عالية

(17) خيام

(18) مجفف

(19) مبهر

(20) قلاع

(21) بدلاً من ذلك

(22) لادر - مذهل

(23) جذاب

### Letters to an online problem page from young people:

(58 page 38)

**A**

I'm really **struggling**<sup>(1)</sup> to understand everything in our maths lessons at the moment. I didn't use to have any problems, but for the last few weeks we've been doing far more **complicated**<sup>(2)</sup> things



(1) يكافح - ياضل

(2) معقد

(3) يساير - يواكب

(4) يلتفل إلى

(5) بعضهم البعض

(6) مهتم بـ

and I can't **keep up**<sup>(3)</sup>. Everyone else in the class seems to understand everything the teacher says, so I feel like I'm the only one who's finding it difficult. I know that telling my teacher about the problem would help, but there never seems to be enough time to ask questions at the end of the lesson, because we all have to leave quickly to get to our next lesson in time. Can you help me?

**B**

I **moved to**<sup>(4)</sup> a new town three months ago and I'm finding it really hard to make new friends. When I'm at school, it seems like everyone already knows **each other**<sup>(5)</sup> and nobody is **interested in**<sup>(6)</sup> making new friends. I have started going swimming in the evenings because I hoped



that I would meet other people, but nobody wants to talk to me there **either**<sup>(7)</sup>. I used to have lots of friends in the town where I used to live and I would go to see them almost every day after school, but now I spend most of my time at home. What can I do to make new friends?

(7) أيضاً

**'Schools should spend more time teaching students about conservation.' – Do you agree or disagree?**

(SB page 39)

In my opinion, schools should spend more time teaching students about the **importance**<sup>(1)</sup> of **conservation**<sup>(2)</sup>. It is far easier to **persuade**<sup>(3)</sup> people to get **involved in**<sup>(4)</sup> new projects when they are children and **teenagers**<sup>(5)</sup> than when they are **adults**<sup>(6)</sup>.

Learning about conservation at a young age may **lead to**<sup>(7)</sup> a **life-long**<sup>(8)</sup> **interest**<sup>(9)</sup> in it which will be very **beneficial**<sup>(10)</sup> for the environment.

A **further**<sup>(11)</sup> important **benefit**<sup>(12)</sup> of spending a **significant**<sup>(13)</sup> amount of time on the topic conservation in schools is that it shows students that their teachers and their school see conservation as an important **activity**<sup>(14)</sup>. **Indeed**<sup>(15)</sup>, conservation will become **increasingly**<sup>(16)</sup> important in the future as **global**<sup>(17)</sup> **temperatures**<sup>(18)</sup> continue to rise and there is even less of the **rainforest**<sup>(19)</sup> left on Earth.

The third and final benefit of teaching students about conservation is that they can **develop**<sup>(20)</sup> useful skills and **gain**<sup>(21)</sup> useful **knowledge**<sup>(22)</sup> while they are doing this. They can not only learn about the **biology**<sup>(23)</sup> of **eco-systems**<sup>(24)</sup>, for example, but they can also develop **practical**<sup>(25)</sup> skills for growing fruit and vegetables in an **environmentally-friendly**<sup>(26)</sup> way and **teamwork**<sup>(27)</sup> skills by doing these activities **together**<sup>(28)</sup>.

In **conclusion**<sup>(29)</sup>, it is clear that teaching students about conservation can have a very **positive effect**<sup>(30)</sup> on them. However, as I **explained**<sup>(31)</sup> above, the most important benefit is that it will help students to develop a life-long interest in conservation and give them the skills to **protect**<sup>(32)</sup> the environment.

(1) أهمية

(2) حفاظ - صيانة

(3) إقناع

(4) يشارك في

(5) مراهقين

(6) البالغين

(7) يؤدي إلى

(8) مدى الحياة

(9) اهتمام

(10) مفيد

(11) أكثر

(12) فائدة

(13) هام - مؤثر

(14) نشاط

(15) بالفعل

(16) بشكل متزايد

(17) عالمي

(18) درجات الحرارة

(19) الغابات المطيرة

(20) يكتسب - بطور

(21) يكتسب

(22) معرفة

(23) علم الأحياء

(24) الأنظمة البيئية

(25) عملي - تطبيقي

(26) صديق للبيئة

(27) عمل جماعي

(28) معاً - سوياً

(29) خلاصة - حاتمة

(30) أثر إيجابي

(31) يوضح

(32) يحمي

## 2 Listening Text

**Friend :** So, you've just **got married**<sup>(1)</sup> and now you're living away from home in a different city. How are you enjoying your new life so far ? (5B page 37)

**Ali :** Well, the first week was far more difficult than I expected ...



- (1) يتزوج
- (2) يرتب / يظم
- (3) يلاحظ
- (4) موطن
- (5) شبكة
- (6) متطور جدًا
- (7) فحبر / فريك
- (8) يلجول
- (9) كلية / معهد

**Friend :** Why do you think that was?

**Ali :** I don't know. When I was living at home, my parents used to wash my clothes, cook my meals and **tidy up**<sup>(2)</sup> after me. But now, my wife and I have to do all the housework ourselves!

**Friend :** Those are things that are useful to learn how to do though, aren't they?

**Ali :** Definitely. Sometimes we struggle to do all the housework and we often order a pizza because we don't want to cook. But, all in all, I've got better at doing the housework since I left home. I think living away from home is really good because it teaches you how to be independent.



**Friend :** So, you used to live in a small town and now you're living in a big city. What's the biggest difference that you've **noticed**<sup>(3)</sup> ?

**Ali :** Probably, how people travel around. When I lived in my **hometown**<sup>(4)</sup>, I would ride my bike to school and back every day. There wasn't very much traffic on the roads, so it was fine. But here, there are far more cars on the road and I don't feel safe riding my bike, so I take public transport instead. There's a **network**<sup>(5)</sup> of local trains and it's very **high-tech**<sup>(6)</sup>. I found it a bit **confusing**<sup>(7)</sup> at first, but now I can **get around**<sup>(8)</sup> OK.

**Friend :** Sounds like you're really getting used to life in the big city now! Have you and your wife found it easy to make friends?

**Ali :** Well, we've only been here for a few weeks. I don't think we really talked to any new people for the first week that we were here, but then I met a couple of nice people who are doing the same **college**<sup>(9)</sup> course as me. Now we spend time together at the weekend; go out to a café or play video games together. It's great to meet new people.

**Friend :** Great! Well, let me wish you and your wife the best of luck with living away from home. It sounds like you're doing well.

**Ali :** Thank you.

# General Exercises Units 7, 8 & 9

Collected from SB & WB

تدريبات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Young children are not very ..... and need a lot of help and support.  
a. independent      b. well-know      c. deceived      d. ruined
2. Hi, Mum, the bus is late, could you ..... me up from the park ?  
a. take      b. put      c. give      d. pick
3. People in Scotland speak English, but you might ..... to understand them sometimes as their English sounds different.  
a. defend      b. struggle      c. resist      d. insist
4. There has been a big ..... in the number of people using mobile phones in recent years.  
a. determination      b. extension      c. expansion      d. decrease
5. The new hotel has lots of modern ..... , including a gym and swimming pool.  
a. facilities      b. inventors      c. discoverers      d. innovators
6. Seoul in South Korea has one of the longest underground rail ..... in the world.  
a. paths      b. nets      c. works      d. networks
7. My grandmother often puts fruit in jars with lots of sugar to ..... them.  
a. reserve      b. preserve      c. deserve      d. serve
8. Judy hopes to get a ..... so that she can study at a really good university.  
a. scholarship      b. money      c. help      d. price
9. The train ..... at six o'clock, so we'd better go to the station now.  
a. left      b. leaves      c. has left      d. will have left
10. When Tarek was younger, he ..... that he lived in a house by the sea !  
a. uses to wish      b. wishes      c. will wish      d. used to wish
11. .... in a bank when he was younger ?  
a. Is he working      b. Did he use to work  
c. Has he worked      d. Is he used to working
12. Dina's sister is ..... the same height as her !  
a. very      b. far      c. exactly      d. more
13. When the next season starts, we expect a thousand tourists ..... the museum !  
a. will have visited      b. will be visited  
c. are going to visit      d. will visit
14. My brother .... when I do my homework and it makes me angry !  
a. is always singing      b. always sang  
c. is singing      d. used to sing



# UNIT 10

SB pages 42 : 61

WB pages 24 : 29

## The news



### Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- **Reading** : Online news stories
- **Writing** : A news report
- **Listening** : News stories
- **Speaking** : Presenting news stories
- **Language** : Past perfect and past perfect passive

- **Life skills** : Critical thinking: recognising facts and opinions ; Self-management: weighing up situations and taking the appropriate actions



PART 1

# VOCABULARY

## 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

broadcast -	يذيع - إذاعة	journalist(n)	صحفي
broadcast (v - n)		matter(ed) (v)	يهم - يُحدث تأثيراً
channel(n)	قناة - قناة	news channel	قناة إخبارية
correspondent(n)	مراسل	newsreader(n)	قارئ الأخبار
deliberately (adv)	عمداً / عن قصد	photographer(n)	مصور فوتوغرافي
digital nomad(n)	رحالة رقمي	programme(n)	برنامج
editor(n)	رئيس التحرير	question(ed) (v)	يتشكك في - يلحق
fact checker(n)	مُلقضي حقائق		من مصداقية
foreign	مراسل أجنبي	reporter(n)	مراسل - صحفي
correspondent		scene(n)	مشهد - مكان
headline(n)	عنوان رئيسي (مانشيت)	search engine	مُحرك البحث
interview(ed) (v)	يُحاور - يُجري مقابلة	source (n)	مصدر - منشأ
investigator(n)	مُحقق		

## 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

accurate(adj)	دقيق	on board (adj - adv)	على متن
admit(ted) (v)	يقر - يعترف بأن	origin(n)	أصل - منشأ
alarm(n)	الذار - تنبيه	originally(adv)	أصلاً - في الأساس
bomb(n)	قنبلة	perfect(adj)	تام - نموذجي
clear(adj)	واضح	photography(n)	التصوير الفوتوغرافي
confirm(ed) (v)	يؤكد / يثبت / يبرهن	point of view	وجهة نظر
crash(ed) (v)	يصطدم	politician(n)	شخص سياسي
digital(adj)	رقمي	press conference (n)	مؤتمر صحفي
disaster(n)	كارثة	print(ed) (v)	يطبع
discovery(n)	اكتشاف	printing press(n)	الصحافة المطبوعة
fake(adj)	مُزيف - كاذب	professional(adj)	مُحترف
fear(ed) (v - n)	يخشى / يخاف - الخوف	properly(adj)	بشكل مناسب
find(n)	اكتشاف	range(n)	سلسلة - مدى
firefighter(n)	رجل مطافي	record(ed) (v - n)	يُسجّل - يسجل
fix(ed) (v)	يُصلح - يثبت	responsible(adj)	مسئول
flame(n)	اللهب	select(ed) (v)	يختار - ينتقي
frequently(adv)	كثيراً	serious(adj)	خطير - جاد
hold - held (v)	يُلبّي - يؤمن بـ	story(n)	خبر - قصة
identity (n)	هوية - شخصية	talent(n)	موهبة

income(n)	دخل	traditional(adj)	تقليدي
inform(ed) (v)	يبلغ - يُعلم	trust(ed) (v - n)	يثق بـ - الثقة
injury(n)	إصابة	truth(n)	الحقيقة - الصدق
Lebanese(adj)	لبناني	unclear(adj)	غير واضح
meteorite(n)	نيزك	unreliable(adj)	غير موثوق به
news stories	موضوعات الأخبار	zoom(ed) in (v)	يُكَبِّر الصورة

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>broadcast (v)</b> يذيع	to send out a programme on TV or radio
<b>digital nomad</b> رحالة رقمي	a person who uses telecommunication technologies to earn a living يحقق دخلاً
<b>editor(n)</b> رئيس التحرير	a person who is in charge of مسئول عن a newspaper or magazine
<b>foreign correspondent</b> مراسل أجنبي	a person who finds a news story in a different country
<b>headline(n)</b> عنوان رئيسي	the titles عناوين of news stories
<b>interview (v)</b> يُحاور - يُجري مقابلة	to ask someone questions
<b>investigator(n)</b> مُحقق	a person who tries to discover the facts of what happened
<b>journalist(n)</b> صحفي	a person who finds a news story and tells the public
<b>news channel</b> قناة إخبارية	a television station محطة تلفزيونية where you can see news programmes
<b>newsreader(n)</b> قارئ الأخبار	someone who reads reports on a TV news programme
<b>photographer(n)</b> مصور فوتوغرافي	a person who takes photographs, as a job or hobby
<b>reporter(n)</b> مراسل	a person who collects and tells the news for newspapers, radio or TV
<b>scene(n)</b> مشهد - مكان	a place where something has happened, perhaps a crime جريمة
<b>search engine</b> محرك البحث	a computer programme that searches the internet for information
<b>sense(n)</b> معنى - فغزى	something that people can understand
<b>source (n)</b> مصدر	the place something comes from or starts at



## Exercises On Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

### 1 Definitions

1. A person who tries to know the facts of what happened is a/an .....  
(السيوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٤)   
a. traitor      b. enemy      c. investigator      d. guilty
2. A/An ..... is a person who is in charge of a newspaper.  
(الإسكندرية - المنزه ٢٠٢٤)   
a. newsreader      b. editor      c. investigator      d. reporter
3. A/An ..... is a person who covers and tells the news to newspapers radio or TV.  
(سوهاج - طهطا ٢٠٢٤)   
a. newsreader      b. reporter      c. editor      d. interviewer
4. A/An ..... is a person who makes sure that information is true.  
(الإسكندرية - شرق الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)   
a. newsreader      b. editor      c. fact checker      d. reporter
5. The place something comes from or starts at is the .....  
a. interview      b. source      c. broadcast      d. report
6. A ..... is a computer programme that searches the internet for information.  
a. search engine      b. news channel  
c. foreign correspondent      d. digital nomad
7. A ..... is the titles of a news story.  
a. stage      b. scene      c. headline      d. drum
8. To ..... is to send out a programme on TV or radio.  
a. broadcast      b. creep up      c. interview      d. edit

### 2 Key Vocabulary

9. The police have clues that the fire was started ..... , so they are looking for the criminal.  
(الدقهلية - طلكا ٢٠٢٤)   
a. deliberately      b. accidentally      c. aimlessly      d. purposelessly
10. My brother is a/an ..... for a local newspaper. He likes his work so much.  
(الدقهلية - طلكا ٢٠٢٤)   
a. reader      b. journalist      c. buyer      d. interviewer
11. A clever ..... is trying to discover who caused the accident.  
(بورسعيد - جنوب بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤)   
a. correspondent      b. journalist      c. investigator      d. architect
12. The ..... checks everything published in his or her newspaper.  
(كفر الشيخ - شؤه ٢٠٢٤)   
a. editor      b. correspondent  
c. edition      d. investigator

13. The show of the new band will be ..... over the internet. (المنوفية - الباجور ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. investigated    b. arranged    c. broadcast    d. accepted
14. If you want to find some information on the internet, use a good ..... engine. (سوهاج - طهطا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. channel    b. search    c. petrol    d. electric
15. News channels have many ..... all over the world. (سوهاج - جرجا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. editors    b. papers    c. correspondents    d. headlines
16. As a professional ....., he knows all about modern digital cameras. (البحيرة - بلدر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. journalist    b. judge    c. photographer    d. digital nomad
17. An ambulance soon arrived at the ..... of the accident. (المنيا - العدوة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. scene    b. view    c. scenery    d. profile
18. I'm not very keen on reading newspapers. I only read the ..... . (الفيوم - يوسف الصديق ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. headlights    b. headquarters    c. headlines    d. headphones
19. My brother is a/an ..... . He collects and tells the news for newspapers, radio or TV. (السيوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. newsreader    b. photographer    c. reporter    d. editor
20. I trust Mr Ashraf, so I don't ..... his advice. (سوهاج - جهيبة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. tempt    b. question    c. bury    d. erect
21. Newspapers have a fact ..... to examine the facts in the articles and reports. (الدقهلية - اجا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. check    b. correction    c. checker    d. maker
22. At my first school in Assuit, I studied English as the first ..... language.  
 a. native    b. foreign    c. national    d. local
23. Mr Mohammed intends to launch his own educational ..... on YouTube.  
 a. correspondent    b. investigator    c. journalism    d. channel
24. A: Does it ..... if you stay up late tonight? B: No. Tomorrow is a holiday.  
 a. correspond    b. edit    c. broadcast    d. matter
25. He is a qualified and skilled ..... . He is fluent as a speaker, and accurate as a reader.  
 a. newsreader    b. edition    c. investigator    d. matter
26. A ..... can do different jobs from anywhere in the world.  
 a. journalist    b. judge    c. photographer    d. digital nomad



## Important Vocabulary

27. This website is reliable. It never spreads rumours or ..... news.  
(البحيرة - كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. deliberate      b. confirmed      c. damaged      d. fake
28. Hearing about his graduation was great .....  
(الجيرة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. accident      b. idea      c. disaster      d. news
29. The expert at the gallery pointed out that none of the paintings is .....; they are all copied cleverly.  
(الاقصر - أرمنت ٢٠٢٤)  
a. fake      b. stolen      c. original      d. normal
30. Always try to avoid ..... sources of news.  
(الجيرة - أبو النمرس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. trusted      b. unreliable      c. reliable      d. accurate
31. The secretary ..... the file to the company's website as soon as she had finished it.  
(سوهاج - ساقلته ٢٠٢٤)  
a. uploaded      b. downloaded      c. made      d. set
32. Strong people might cry but never ..... defeat.  
(اسوان - بصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. admit      b. omit      c. dismiss      d. insist
33. We should be honest, especially with people who ..... us.  
(الشرقية - القرن ٢٠٢٤)  
a. damage      b. survive      c. trust      d. trick
34. The workers escaped just as the factory was on ..... and saved their lives.  
(المنيا - أبو قرقاص ٢٠٢٤)  
a. races      b. flames      c. fire      d. waves
35. An editor is a person who is in ..... of a newspaper.  
(البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. duty      b. responsible  
c. charge      d. irresponsibility
36. Astronauts used digital cameras and ..... in to discover a meteorite.  
a. roomed      b. loomed      c. zoomed      d. doomed
37. Hala has a ..... for music; she will be a great musician.  
a. planet      b. talent      c. visual      d. version
38. The doctor asked the patient to do some tests to ..... the diagnosis.  
a. confirm      b. create      c. select      d. fear
39. The player asked for a substitution as he suffered from a leg .....  
a. practice      b. breath      c. boredom      d. injury
40. Earthquakes and volcanoes are the most dangerous natural .....  
a. disasters      b. reserves      c. beauty      d. views
41. This COVID-19 vaccine مصل is one of the most important ..... in the last ten years.  
a. finds      b. programmes      c. search engines      d. necropolis



42. It is said that the satellite was destroyed when a ..... hit it.  
a. tone                      b. meteorite                      c. speed                      d. spacewalk
43. Every footballer dreams of being ..... for the national team.  
a. tempted                      b. created                      c. selected                      d. feared
44. The word "Algebra" is Arabic in .....  
a. remains                      b. barrier                      c. origin                      d. sense
45. Many well-known doctors attended the medical .....  
a. spacewalk                      b. conference                      c. permission                      d. point of view
46. Titles of news ..... are written in a way that attracts readers' attention.  
a. routes                      b. addresses                      c. stories                      d. conferences
47. It is polite to respect other people's .....  
a. spacewalk                      b. conference                      c. permission                      d. points of view
48. My sister always ..... the same opinions as me.  
a. launches                      b. zooms                      c. holds                      d. matters
49. I ..... that I might not have enough time to help you.  
a. sorry                      b. create                      c. select                      d. fear

## VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations - متلازمات لفظية

<b>check</b>	the facts	يؤكد الحقائق	<b>make</b>	a discovery	يكتشف
<b>come</b>	true	يتحقق	<b>make</b>	a video	يُعد فيديو
<b>create</b>	a search engine	يُصمم محرك بحث	<b>offer</b>	the chance	يُمنح الفرصة
	a news website	يُنشئ موقعاً إخبارياً	<b>present</b>	a news report	يُقدم تقرير إخباري
<b>have</b>	a special talent	لديه موهبة خاصة	<b>produce</b>	a news report	يُعد تقرير إخباري
	the chance	لديه الفرصة	<b>share</b>	opinions	يتفق في الرأي
<b>hold</b>	an opinion / a point of view	يُبنى وجهة نظر			

### 2 Synonyms - مترادفات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
confirm	يؤكد / يثبت / يبرهن
confirm	يعترف
deliberately	عمداً / عن قصد
foreign	أجنبي
foreign	غير معروف - غير مألوف
foreign	غير ملائم
investigate	يُحقق - يتقصي
question	يتشكك - يتحقق من مصداقية
	verify, authenticate
	assert
	intentionally, on purpose, purposefully
	alien, non-native
	unfamiliar, unknown, strange
	irrelevant, inappropriate
	look into, detect
	doubt, raise doubts about, suspect

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
deliberately عمدًا / عن قصد	by mistake, accidentally بالصدفة
confirm يؤكد / يثبت / يبرهن	refute, rebut يدحض
confirm يعترف	deny, refute, rebut, disprove يُنكر - يدحض
foreign أجنبي	domestic, local محلي
foreign غير معروف - غير مألوف	familiar مألوف - معروف
foreign غير ملائم	relevant ملائم
frequently غالبا	rarely, scarcely, seldom نادرا
zoom in يُكَبِّرُ الصورة	zoom out يُصَغِّرُ الصورة

broadcast	
broadcast (v) يذيع	- The match is <b>broadcast</b> on this channel.
broadcast (n) إذاعة	- There's a live <b>broadcast</b> of the conference.
broadcaster (n) مذيع	- He is a well-known radio <b>broadcaster</b> .
broadcasting (n) المجال الإذاعي	- My brother has a job in <b>broadcasting</b> .
correspondent	
correspond (v) يُراسِل	- We <b>correspond</b> regularly.
correspondent (n) مراسِل	- She works as a <b>correspondent</b> for a news channel.
correspondence (n) المراسلة - التناغم	- <b>Correspondence</b> is one of the secretary's duties.
editor	
edit (v) يُعَدِّل - يحرر	- I had to <b>edit</b> the essay.
edition (n) طبعة - نسخة	- The second <b>edition</b> of the book has come out today.
editor (n) رئيس التحرير	- The <b>editor</b> refused to publish my article.
find	
find (v) يجد	- I <b>found</b> a good clothes shop in the city centre.
find (n) اكتشاف	- This medicine for virus C is a <b>find</b> .
findings (n) نتائج	- The <b>findings</b> of the research surprised us.
interview	
interview (v) يُحاور - يُجْزِي مقابلة	- The HR is <b>interviewing</b> some applicants tomorrow.
interview (n) مقابلة - حوار	- I have a job <b>interview</b> today.
interviewee (n) المُحاور - الضيف	- The <b>interviewee</b> didn't expect to get the job.

**interviewer (n)**

مُحَاوِر - مُجْرِي المَقَابِلَة

- The **interviewer** liked my CV.**investigator****investigate (v)** يُحَقِّق - يَسْتَجِيب- The police are **investigating** the crime.**investigation (n)** تَحْقِيق - تَقْضِي- The **investigations** have continued for two weeks.**investigator (n)** مُحَقِّق- The **investigators** have found important evidence. أدلة**journalist****journal (n)** صَحِيفَة - مَفْكَرَة يَوْمِيَّات- He is a reporter for a famous **journal**.**journalism (n)** الصَّحَافَة- He works in **journalism**.**journalist (n)** صَحْفِي- He is a **journalist**.**5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات**

a dream start  
a wider range of  
be chosen for  
for the day  
gaming record  
in charge of  
main income  
national team

بداية رائعة  
مجال أوسع من  
يتم اختياره لـ  
لمدة يوم واحد - اليوم  
يسجل الألعاب  
مسئول عن  
الدخل الرئيسي  
المنتخب الوطني

NASA = National Aeronautics and  
Space Administration وكالة الفضاء الأمريكية  
press conference مؤتمر صحفي  
question what we read نتحقق من مصداقية ما نقرأ  
suffer an injury يشكو من إصابة  
top scorer هذاف

**6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر**

accept ... as  
care about  
crash into  
hear of/about  
look for  
look into  
play for

يقبل بـ ... كـ  
يهتم بـ  
يصطدم بـ  
يسمع عن - يعرف  
يبحث عن  
يُحقق في  
يلعب لـ

send ... out ينسعث منه ... - يطلق ...  
share ... with يحكي عن ... لـ - يشارك ... مع  
stay up يسهر  
turn to يتحول إلي - يغيّر إلي  
upload ... to يرفع ... علي  
zoom in يُكَبِّر الصورة

**7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق****channel - canal****• channel (n)**

قناة (تليفزيونية)

- There is an exciting film being shown on **channel 2** now.**• canal / channel (n)**

قناة (مجري مائي)

- The Suez **Canal** is very important to both Egypt and the whole world.- This irrigation **channel** carries water to our fields.لاحظ أن تعني (**canal**) قناة صناعية يحفرها الإنسان بينما (**channel**) تعني قناة مائية طبيعية.



### nomad - digital nomad

- **nomad (n)** بدوي (ينتمي لقبيلة من البدو الرحل الذين يتنقلون من مكان لآخر لرعي حيواناتهم)  
- In the past, most Arab tribes were **nomads**.
- **digital nomad (n)** رحالة رقمي (شخص يعمل من منزله لجهات مختلفة على الإنترنت)  
- He earns a lot of money as a **digital nomad**.

### headline - title - address

- **headline (n)** عنوان رئيسي (لتقرير إخباري أو موضوع في صحيفة)  
- Salah's news always makes the **headlines**.
- **title (n)** عنوان (كتاب - مسرحية - رواية / مقال ...)  
- I nearly know all the **titles** of Naguib Mahfouz's works.
- **title (n)** لقب (شخص)  
- 'Sir', 'Mr', 'Dr' and 'Professor' are all **titles**.
- **title (n)** فسخي الوظيفة  
- The **title** of a person who examines patients is 'Dr'.
- **address (n)** عنوان (مكان المعيشة / العمل)  
- I don't know your new **address**.
- **address (n)** عنوان (إلكتروني)  
- I sent him the **address** of my new website.

### photographer - painter

- **photographer (n)** مصور فوتوغرافي (يلتقط صور بالكاميرا)  
- As a **photographer**, you need a high-tech digital camera.
- **painter = artist (n)** رسام / فنان - نقاش  
- I want to become a famous **painter**.

## Exercises On Vocabulary Study

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

- "Passengers complain that trains are frequently cancelled." The antonym of 'frequently' is .....  
a. generally      b. often      c. seldom      d. daily  
(الأمير - ارملت ٢٠٢٤)
- Police officers are looking ..... the disappearance of two children yesterday.  
a. for      b. into      c. up      d. forward  
(البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)
- ..... of difficult crimes may continue for years.  
a. Investigations      b. Investments  
c. Doing      d. Regulations
- The Judge was sure that Ali killed his neighbour deliberately, not ....., so he was sentenced to death.  
a. purposely      b. by design      c. intentionally      d. accidentally  
(العاهرة - المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)

5. The ..... of the writer's first novel is "The Storm".

(بنی سويف - الواسطي ٢٠٢٣)

- a. address      b. title      c. line      d. rank

6. Can you give me your email ....., please?

(اسوان - دراو ٢٣)

- a. title      b. dress      c. address      d. headline

7. To 'investigate' is a synonym of to '.....'.

- a. navigate      b. innovate      c. admit      d. look into

8. To 'confirm' is antonymous with to '.....'.

- a. deny      b. verify      c. authenticate      d. assert

9. When you question something, this means you ..... it.

- a. verify      b. doubt      c. ask      d. certify

10. I haven't heard ..... this player before. What club does he play for ?

- a. from      b. of      c. about      d. b & c

11. Ayman and I ..... the same opinions.

- a. have      b. share      c. play      d. a & b

12. I hope that all my hopes will ..... true one day.

- a. have      b. share      c. play      d. come

13. "I need to do some tests to confirm my diagnosis التشخيص." In this context, the verb 'confirm' can be replaced by .....

- a. refuse      b. refute      c. verify      d. a & b

14. "Egypt encourages foreign investment, especially that from Arab countries." The adjective 'foreign' in this utterance is an antonym of .....

- a. domestic      b. familiar      c. alien      d. unfamiliar

15. This car has crashed ..... a tree.

- a. into      b. for      c. out      d. with

16. When you stay ....., you don't get enough sleep.

- a. in late      b. in early      c. up early      d. up late

17. Each ..... hopes to give a good impression in order to get the job.

- a. interviewee      b. interviewer  
c. interview      d. interviews

18. He works in a factory. His job ..... is 'Engineer'.

- a. headline      b. address      c. title      d. entitle



## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

#### News stories

(SB page 42)

A - Where do you get your news from?

It seems that today less than 50% of us get our news<sup>(١)</sup> from traditional<sup>(٢)</sup> sources<sup>(٣)</sup> like newspapers and television.

(١) خبر - أخبار

(٢) تقليدي

(٣) مصادر

Everyone is turning to the internet and **social media**<sup>(4)</sup> for news, and some **experts**<sup>(5)</sup> **fear**<sup>(6)</sup> that we might **accept**<sup>(7)</sup> some **unreliable**<sup>(8)</sup> **news stories**<sup>(9)</sup> as fact because we read social media **sites**<sup>(10)</sup> which **share**<sup>(11)</sup> our opinions. But is this true? **Search engines**<sup>(12)</sup> **lead**<sup>(13)</sup> us to a wider **range**<sup>(14)</sup> of sources which means we can read the news from many different places. However, we should always **question**<sup>(15)</sup> what we read and never just accept it as true.



- وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
- خبراء
- يخشى
- يقبل
- غير موثوق به
- موضوعات الأخبار
- مواقع
- يتشارك
- محرركات البحث
- يقود - يؤدي
- سلسلة
- يتشكك - يتحقق من مصداقية

## B - School Report

Secondary school students in the **UK**<sup>(1)</sup> have had the **chance**<sup>(2)</sup> to become news **reporters**<sup>(3)</sup> for the day. Students **created**<sup>(4)</sup> a news website and **produced**<sup>(5)</sup> a news **report**<sup>(6)</sup>. They **selected**<sup>(7)</sup> students to be reporters and **photographers**<sup>(8)</sup> who went out to look for interesting news in their **community**<sup>(9)</sup>. When they had **interviewed**<sup>(10)</sup> people and had written their stories, the reporters gave their work to the **newsreaders**<sup>(11)</sup> who then **recorded**<sup>(12)</sup> the news. The videos were **uploaded**<sup>(13)</sup> to the news website and some were **broadcast**<sup>(14)</sup> on local television.



(SB page 43)

- المملكة المتحدة
- فرصة
- مراسلين
- ينشئ
- ينتج
- تقرير
- يختار - ينتقي
- مصور فوتوغرافي
- المجتمع
- مخاوير
- قارئ الأخبار
- يسجل
- يرفع على الانترنت
- يذيع

## C - Facts - do they matter?

Saeed Yousuf is a **fact checker**<sup>(1)</sup>.

He **checks**<sup>(2)</sup> the facts in reports before they are sent to the **editor**<sup>(3)</sup>. Saeed explains that news stories can use both facts and opinions, but it must be **clear**<sup>(4)</sup> which is which. Facts can be checked, but opinions are the **points of view**<sup>(5)</sup> **held**<sup>(6)</sup> by the writer. He believes that it's very important for the **public**<sup>(7)</sup> to **trust**<sup>(8)</sup> the information in



(SB page 43)

- متفحص حقائق
- يلحق من
- زئيس التحرير
- واضح
- وجهات نظر
- يتبنى - يؤمن بـ
- الجمهور - العامة
- يثق بـ



the story<sup>(9)</sup>, but some newspapers, he **admits**<sup>(10)</sup> are better at checking facts than others. It can cause **serious**<sup>(11)</sup> problems if newspapers **print**<sup>(12)</sup> stories without checking the information carefully first.

(9) خبر

(10) يُقر - يعترف بأن

(11) خطير

(12) يطبع

**Dalia** : Hi there Hoda. How are you ?

(WB page 24)

**Hoda** : I'm tired! I stayed up late to watch a programme about Steve Sherwood, that businessman who's been in the news recently. The problem is that it was broadcast really late on Channel 6.



**Dalia** : Ah yes, I heard about that story. He created a search engine which kept all the personal information of the people who used it, didn't he? A lot of people have complained about this.

**Hoda** : Yes, but the reporter who was chosen to interview the man hadn't checked out his sources properly and seemed to have a lot of wrong information.

### A fake news story!

(WB page 24)

#### A gaming record !

Astronauts have made yet another amazing **discovery**<sup>(1)</sup> in **space**<sup>(2)</sup>. During a **recent**<sup>(3)</sup> **space walk**<sup>(4)</sup> to **fix**<sup>(5)</sup> part of a **satellite**<sup>(6)</sup>, which had been damaged after a **meteorite**<sup>(7)</sup>



had hit it, they saw an **unexpected**<sup>(8)</sup> **shape**<sup>(9)</sup> on the moon. Using their **onboard**<sup>(10)</sup> **digital**<sup>(11)</sup> cameras, they **zoomed in**<sup>(12)</sup> to **discover**<sup>(13)</sup> what appeared to be a plane, which used to carry **bombs**<sup>(14)</sup> during **World War II**<sup>(15)</sup> and had **crashed**<sup>(16)</sup> into the moon. After reporting **the find**<sup>(17)</sup>, **NASA**<sup>(18)</sup> **confirmed**<sup>(19)</sup> that there are still 124 planes which were lost during the Second World War, and they believe this may be one of them.

(1) اكتشاف

(2) الفضاء

(3) حديث

(4) سير في الفضاء

(5) يُصلح

(6) قمر صناعي

(7) نيزك

(8) غير متوقع

(9) شكل - شيء

(10) على قنن

(11) رقمي

(12) يُكَبِّر الصورة

(13) يكتشف

(14) قنابل

(15) الحرب العالمية الثانية

(16) يصطدم

(17) اكتشاف

(18) وكالة الفضاء الأمريكية

(19) يؤكد

## Young footballer achieves his dream

(WR page 25)

Last night, 19-year-old Amir Hamdi finally **achieved**<sup>(1)</sup> a dream he had had since the age of 6 - to play for his national team. It was a **dream start**<sup>(2)</sup> to his **international**<sup>(3)</sup> **career**<sup>(4)</sup>, as he **scored**<sup>(5)</sup> the first goal after just 15 minutes. He was chosen for the team after Ahmed Sobhi, top **scorer**<sup>(6)</sup>, had **suffered**<sup>(7)</sup> an **injury**<sup>(8)</sup> in **training**<sup>(9)</sup>.



- (1) يحقق
- (2) بداية رائعة
- (3) دولي
- (4) مهنة
- (5) يُحرل
- (6) هُذاف
- (7) يعالي
- (8) إصابة
- (9) التدريب
- (10) يتحقق
- (11) غالباً
- (12) موهبة خاصة
- (13) مُحترف

He said after the match that it was a **dream come true**<sup>(10)</sup>. Although at school, when he was a student, his teachers **frequently**<sup>(11)</sup> had told him that he had a special **talent**<sup>(12)</sup>, but he had never believed he could be a **professional**<sup>(13)</sup> footballer.

## 2 Listening Text

### News stories

(5B page 44)

Good morning. Here are today's **headlines**<sup>(1)</sup> on Monday, 5<sup>th</sup> October.

A fire started in a supermarket late last night and 20 firefighters are still at the scene. Investigators say it is **unclear**<sup>(2)</sup> how the fire began, but police think it had been started **deliberately**<sup>(3)</sup>. The police and fire services had been called earlier in the evening, but they left when everything appeared to be Ok. At the time they believed it was yet another **false alarm**<sup>(4)</sup>.



At **midnight**<sup>(5)</sup>, a woman phoned again and said she had seen **flames**<sup>(6)</sup> at the back of the supermarket, and by the time the firefighters arrived the fire had moved to the front of the shop.

A **Lebanese**<sup>(7)</sup> **photographer**<sup>(8)</sup> has won a top **photography competition**<sup>(9)</sup> for his



- (1) عناوين رئيسية
- (2) غير واضح
- (3) عمدًا
- (4) انذار مزيف
- (5) منتصف الليل
- (6) ألسنة اللهب
- (7) لبناني
- (8) مصور
- (9) مسابقة تصوير

photo of a desert **sunrise**<sup>(10)</sup>. Twenty-two-year old, Marwan Hamed told journalists that he had used an old digital camera to take his photo and was surprised that it had looked so good. Marwan entered his first photo competition when he was only eight years old after he had been given a book about photography by his uncle. He didn't win that time, but he has continued to take photos and is now working as a **professional**<sup>(11)</sup> photographer for a news channel. Antigua and Barbuda is the latest country to offer digital nomads, people who can work anywhere in the world on their computer, the **opportunity**<sup>(12)</sup> to live and work there for two years.



- (10) شروق الشمس  
(11) محترف  
(12) فرصة  
(13) الدخل الرئيسي  
(14) سياحة  
(15) جزر البحر الكاريبي  
(16) مثالي / رائع

Until Covid-19 arrived, the country's **main income**<sup>(13)</sup> had been **tourism**<sup>(14)</sup>, but now with people having fewer holidays, the government has offered digital nomads a fantastic opportunity to enjoy life on their **Caribbean islands**<sup>(15)</sup>. Our Caribbean correspondent, Melody Smith, told us if you want relaxing place to work, then this is **perfect**<sup>(16)</sup>.

## PART IV LANGUAGE

### 1

### Past Perfect Simple : Active & Passive

الماضي التام البسيط : النشط والمجهول

#### Affirmation & Negation

الإثبات والنفي

#### Yes / No Q.

السؤال بـ (هل)

#### Wh-, Q.

السؤال بأداة استفهام

#### Passive

المبني للمجهول

**Subj. الفاعل + had / hadn't + p.p. ...**

- He **had done** the shopping before returning home.
- Mum **hadn't prepared** lunch by midday.

**Had + subj. + p.p. ... ?**

- **Had he done** the shopping before returning home ?

**Q.W. + had + subj. + p.p. ... ?**

- What **had he done** before returning home ?

**Obj. المفعول + had + been + p.p. ... ?**

- I **had done** the shopping before I went home. (معلوم)
- The shopping **had been done** (by me) before I went home. (مجهول)
- After she **had cooked** lunch, she took a rest. (معلوم)
- After lunch **had been cooked** (by her), she took a rest. (مجهول)



## Usage

١ يُستخدم الماضي التام البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم قبل وقت مُعين في الماضي، ويدل على ذلك تعبيرات مثل :

تعبير زمني دال على وقت مُعين في الماضي + **by / before / this time**

ex. - **By midnight, I had written** two articles.

- Ahmed **had arrived home before** lunchtime yesterday.

٢ يُستخدم الماضي التام البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم قبل وقوع حدث آخر في الماضي.

ex. - First, I **sent** 20 invitations. Then, I **left** the office.

= I **had sent** 20 invitations before I **left** the office.

٣ يُستخدم الماضي التام البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم وكان له أثر على حدث آخر في الماضي (الأثر نالغ عن احتمال الحدث الأول).

ex. - He **had eaten** too much food, so he **didn't eat** any dessert.

= He **didn't eat** any dessert because he **had eaten** too much food.

## Time Clauses العبارات الزمنية

١ لاحظ استخدام الروابط الزمنية مع أزمنة الماضي :

Time connector <small>الرابطة الزمنية</small>	Time clause <small>العبرة الزمنية</small>	Main clause <small>الجملة الرئيسية</small>
By the time / في الوقت الذي / When / عندما / Before / قبل	ماضي بسيط + (حدث ثان)	ماضي تام بسيط + (حدث أول)
After / بمجرد أن / As soon as Once / بمجرد أن / The moment عندما / When / في اللحظة التي	ماضي تام بسيط + (حدث أول)	ماضي بسيط + (حدث ثان)
- It was only when / فقط عندما - It wasn't until / بعد	ماضي تام + (حدث أول)	+ that ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) +

ex. - Before I **arrived home**, it **had rained** for two hours.

- After she **had worked** in the company for 15 years, she **became** the manager.

- It was only when I **had taken** a rest that I **began** to write the report.

٢ لاحظ استخدام (until - till) :

ماضي تام past perfect + حتى / لغاية until / till + ماضي بسيط (منفي غالباً) past simple

ex. - I **didn't watch** TV until / till I **had done** the housework.

٣ يُستخدم (inf. + ing) بعد كل من (after / before) في حال عدم وجود فاعل :

ex. - After **having lunch**, I went back to my office.

- Before **going back** to my office, I **had had** lunch.

٤ لاحظ استخدام (Having) :

**Having + p.p. .... + , + past simple** (معلوم). ماضى بسيط

**ex.** - Having slept for eight hours, I started to feel energetic.

**Having + been + p.p. ... + past simple.** (مجهول)

**ex.** - Having been punished, he didn't come late again.

٥ لاحظ استخدام الماضى التام مع الظروف التالية بمعنى (لم يكـد ..... حتى) :

**Subj. + had + no sooner + p.p. .... + than + past simple** ماضى بسيط

**Subj. + had + hardly / scarcely / barely + p.p. .... + when / before + past simple** ماضى بسيط

**ex.** - I had no sooner finished the report than I gave it to the secretary.  
- I had scarcely finished the report when / before I gave it to the secretary.

**No sooner + had + subj. + p.p. .... + than + past simple** ماضى بسيط

**Hardly / Scarcely / Barely + had + subj. + p.p. .... + when / before + past simple** ماضى بسيط

**ex.** - No sooner had I finished the report than I gave it to the secretary.  
- Hardly had I finished the report when / before I gave it to the secretary.

٦ لاحظ استخدام (inf. + ing) فى بداية الجملة بدلاً من (Because + فاعل + فعل) :

**ex.** - Having his own car, it was easy for him to travel a long way to work every day.

= Because he had his own car, ...

٧ عند ذكر توقيت محدد لوقوع الحدث فإن الماضى البسيط يمكن أن يحل محل الماضى التام

(after / before) (كلاهما صحيح) خاصة مع

**ex.** - She did (had done) the shopping at nine yesterday before she returned home at ten.

## 2

## Past Simple Tense : Active and Passive

الماضي البسيط : النشط والمجهول

في الجزء التالي سيتم تذكير الطالب بتكوين واستخدامات الماضي البسيط، وذلك لارتباطه بزمان الماضي التام في الشرح والتدريبات

**تلميح**

<b>Affirmation</b> الإثبات	<b>Subj. + the 2nd s.c. + the verb</b> - Omar <b>played</b> tennis yesterday. - Sama <b>ate</b> two apples for lunch.
<b>Negation</b> النفي	<b>Subj. + did not (didn't) + inf. ... ?</b> - Omar <b>didn't</b> play squash yesterday. - Sama <b>didn't</b> eat two apples for lunch.
<b>Passive</b> المبني للمجهول	<b>Obj. + was / were + p.p. ... ?</b> - Omar <b>played</b> tennis yesterday. (معلوم) - Tennis <b>was</b> played (by Omar) yesterday. (مجهول) - Sama <b>ate</b> two apples for lunch. (معلوم) - Two apples <b>were</b> eaten (by Sama) for lunch. (مجهول)

### Uses الاستخدامات

استخدم الماضي البسيط في الحالات التالية:

١ التعبير عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي :

ex. - I **ate** fish for lunch yesterday.

٢ سرد مواقف أو قصص وقعت في الماضي :

ex. - I **returned** home at two. I **had** a shower. Then, I **had** my lunch with my family. After that, I **went** to bed.

٣ بعد (if) في الحالة الشرطية الثانية :

ex. - If I **earned** enough money, I'd buy a modern car.

٤ لاحظ :

أ جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (I wish) تعبر عن تمنى في المضارع :

ex. - I **wish** my father **earned** more money.

(والذي لا يحصل علي مال كاف و أتمنى العكس !)

ب جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (I would rather) تعبر عن عدم رضا أو رفض (لشيء في المضارع):

ex. - I'd rather you **didn't** ask me to lend you money.

(يعني ذلك أنني لا أريد أن أقرضك أي نقود !)

ج جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (It is time) تعبر عن تذكير أو لوم :

ex. - It **is** time you **returned** the book to the library. (المتحدث هنا يلوم أو يذكّر)

### Future Simple Tense : Active and Passive

١. لابد من استخدام فعل مساعد قبل الفاعل عند بدء الجملة بظروف التكرار التي تحمل معنى اللهي مثل

(never / rarely / seldom / little ....) :

ex. - She **rarely** got up late. (Rarely ...)

- Rarely did she get up late.

٢. في حالة وجود تعبير زمني يدل علي الماضي بعد (I wish / I'd rather / It's time) استخدم بعدهم الماضي التام (had + p.p.) وليس الماضي البسيط :

ex. - I'd rather you **had** finished the report **last** Friday.



## Exercises On Language

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

✚ Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. After I left him a message, he ..... me immediately. (سوهاج - طما ٢٤)  
 a. has phoned      b. had phoned      c. was phoning      d. phoned
2. Before I ..... my homework, I had studied the lesson well.  
 a. have done      b. did      c. being done      d. do
3. As soon as he had finished his homework, he ..... to bed. (الاسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٤)  
 a. had gone      b. went      c. goes      d. go
4. I ..... my own computer for three years before anything went wrong with it. (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٤)  
 a. had      b. had had      c. have had      d. had been having
5. After the house ..... painted, we furnished it. (سوهاج - ساملته ٢٤)  
 a. had been      b. has      c. had      d. is
6. Before travelling to Italy, Salma ..... on a quick visit to Spain. (الاسكندرية - ساحل سليم ٢٤)  
 a. had been      b. is being      c. has been      d. will be
7. The people in the city felt safer after the wild animal ..... by the police. (بورسعيد - بورفؤاد ٢٤)  
 a. caught      b. has caught      c. had caught      d. had been caught
8. When I got home, I ..... that somebody had broken into my flat. (الاسكندرية - ابوصوير ٢٤)  
 a. discover      b. had discovered      c. have discovered      d. discovered
9. The report wasn't published ..... the facts had been accurately checked. (البحيرة - كوم حماده ٢٤)  
 a. because      b. until      c. before      d. so
10. Before he bought a car, he ..... to his office. (الاسكندرية - وسط الاسكندرية ٢٤)  
 a. have always walked      b. always walks      c. was walking      d. had always walked
11. I ..... sleep last night until I had finished the lesson. (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٤)  
 a. don't      b. didn't      c. won't      d. can
12. He ..... awarded Nobel Prize until he had written 10 novels. (الاسكندرية - المنتزه ٢٤)  
 a. didn't      b. hadn't      c. doesn't      d. wasn't
13. Exams ..... taken until we had already finished all lessons. (المنوفية - الشهداء ٢٤)  
 a. hadn't been      b. was      c. weren't      d. didn't

14. I was very angry because when I arrived at the station, the train .....  
 (السوان - دراو ٢٤ ٢) a. had left b. has left c. is leaving d. leaves
15. When I reached office, I discovered that the computer .....  
 (المنيا - العدو ٢٤ ٢) a. stealing b. had been stolen c. had stolen d. stole
16. As soon as my father went to bed, I ..... on the TV to watch the film.  
 (السرقية - القرين ٢٤ ٢) a. had turned b. turned c. will turn d. turning
17. We went to see a film, and after that we ..... a meal in a restaurant.  
 (الحيرة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٤ ٢) a. had b. had had c. have d. are having
18. Before ..... my homework, I had had my lunch.  
 (المنيا - العدو ٢٤ ٢) a. did b. doing c. had done d. do
19. After ..... my car looked wonderful.  
 (السوان - بدر سويف ٢٤ ٢) a. repainted b. be repainted c. being repainted d. been repainted
20. After ....., the criminals were sent to prison.  
 (تبر السبح - علس ٢٤ ٢) a. arresting b. had arrested c. being arrested d. arrested
21. Finally, I finished the task you ..... me to carry out.  
 (سوهاج - نصر ٢٤ ٢) a. ask b. had asked c. will ask d. had been asked
22. My friend had ..... bought a new car than it crashed into a tree.  
 (الحيرة - أوسيم ٢٤ ٢) a. after b. before c. since d. no sooner
23. I had hardly returned home ..... met my close friends for lunch.  
 (السرمية - الإبراهيمية ٢٤ ٢) a. than I b. when I had c. when I d. before I had
24. Hardly had he found a good job ..... he told his parents.  
 (سوهاج - ساملنه ٢٤ ٢) a. that b. when c. then d. than
25. It was only ..... Ola had passed her exam that she travelled abroad.  
 (البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٤ ٢) a. before b. after c. as soon as d. when
26. Hardly had they ..... to the airport by buses when they started checking out.  
 (سوهاج - جرجا ٢٤ ٢) a. take b. taken c. been taken d. being taken
27. Scarcely ..... the accident when I called the police.  
 (المنوفية - صوف ٢٤ ٢) a. had seen b. saw c. I had seen d. did I see

28. .... been arrested, the thief was sent to prison. (سوهاج - طهطا ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Having                      b. After                      c. Hardly                      d. Before

29. Having ..... by the teacher, he didn't come late again.

(البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)

- a. punish                      b. punishing                      c. been punished                      d. punished

30. It wasn't until last week that she ..... the car she had lost.

- a. had restored                      b. was restored  
c. restored                      d. will restore

31. I'd rather you ..... my wedding last week.

(المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٤)

- a. attend                      b. attended  
c. had attended                      d. was attending



### Check your understanding

32. Which of these structures is correct?

(المنيا - منوف ٢٠٢٤)

- a. No sooner had they prepared for the journey then they set off.  
b. No sooner they had prepared for the journey than they set off.  
c. They had no sooner prepared for the journey than they set off.  
d. Hardly had they prepared for the journey than they set off.

33. "As soon as I arrived at the station, the train came." This means that the train came .....

- a. first, then I reached the station                      b. immediately after my arrival  
c. and left before my arrival                      d. Both b and c



**EL-MOASSER** الآن بالمكتبات

احرص على إقتناء  
كتب المحاضر  
في اللغة الإنجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق





## PART 1 VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

barrier(n)	حاجز	teenage(adj)	مُراهِق
erect(ed) (v)	يُشِـد - يَـبْنِي	tone(n)	أَسْلُوب / طابع - نبرة الصوت
necropolis(n)	جَنَازَة / مَدِينَة المَوْت	witness(ed) (n - v)	شَاهد عَيان - يَشْهَد / يَـرِي

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات العامة

adult(n)	شَخْص بالغ / رَاشِد	objects(n)	أَشْيَاء - مَقْتَنِيَات
brilliant(adj)	رَائع - مُتَأَلِّق	on board	عَلَى مَتْن سَفِينَة أَوْ طَائِرَة
bury(ied) (v)	يَدْفِن	overhead(adj)	عَلَوِي
cave(n)	كَهْف	permission(n)	إِذْن - تَصْرِيح
coastal(adj)	سَاحِلِي	pronunciation(n)	الْطَّلَق
connector(n)	رَابط	proud(adj)	فَخُور
create(d) (v)	يَنْشِئ - يُوْجِد - يَخْلُق	recent(adj)	حَدِيث
creation(n)	إِبْدَاع - خَلْق / إِيجَاد	remains(n)	بَقَايَا
emergency(n)	مَوْقِف طَارِئ	remarkable(adj)	هَام - بَارِز
exploration(n)	اِسْتِكْشَاف	report(ed) (n - v)	تَقْرِير - يَكْتُب تَقْرِير - يُبَلِّغ
explore(d) (v)	يَسْتِكْشِف	route(n)	مَسَار - خُط سِير
grateful(adj)	مَمْتَن - شَاكِر	sculpture(n)	فَن النَحْت - تَمثال
historian(n)	مُؤَرِّخ	spacewalk(n)	سِير فِي الفِضَاء
incident(n)	حَادِثَة - مَنَاسِبَة	speed(n)	السَّرْعَة
keen(adj)	مَلْهَمَس - مَيَال	spill(n)	تَسَرُّب - لُضْج
launch(ed) (v)	يَطْلُق - يَنْشِئ	spokesperson(n)	مُتَحَدِّث
location(n)	مَوْقِع	stick - stuck(v)	يَلْصِق - يَغْلِق / يَلْحِشِر
monument(n)	أَثَر / قِطْعَة أَثَرِيَة	teenager(n)	شَخْص مُرَاهِق
		uninjured(adj)	غَيْر مَصَاب

### Exercises On Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Key Vocabulary

1. The ..... is a place for burying the dead.

a. monument

b. tower

c. barrier

d. necropolis

(المنوَّمَة - الشَّهَادَة ٢٤ ٢٤)

2. Our family house was ..... eighty years ago. (البخيرة - سدر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. buried                      b. tempted                      c. erected                      d. questioned
3. All ..... said that the rash driver hit the old woman.  
 a. barriers                      b. witnesses                      c. teenagers                      d. necropolis
4. There are no ..... between my father and me; I discuss everything with him.  
 a. barriers                      b. necropolis                      c. witness                      d. teenagers
5. Being a/an ....., my son still needs guidance.  
 a. infant                      b. teenage                      c. adult                      d. parent
6. His angry ..... shows that he doesn't like the way I behaved.  
 a. tone                      b. tune                      c. teen                      d. tonne
7. The recent years have ..... a rapid growth in online marketing.  
 a. buried                      b. objected                      c. erected                      d. witnessed

## 2 Important Vocabulary

8. We rowed ashore, then ..... the island on foot for the rest of the day. (الشرفية - غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. explored                      b. invented                      c. realized                      d. discovered
9. The company ..... a huge advertising campaign. (المنيا - العدوة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. shot                      b. launched                      c. erupted                      d. revolted
10. Winning the cup was a ..... achievement for our national team. (السيوط - صدفا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. fearful                      b. remarkable                      c. horrible                      d. strict
11. We all feel ..... when our children achieve their goals in life. (السيوط - صدفا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. ashamed                      b. guilty                      c. proud                      d. shy
12. We sat on the ..... of the river watching boats and relaxing. (الجسكدرية - المتزه ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. bank                      b. beach                      c. coast                      d. harbour
13. While I was on ..... a ship, I saw a school of dolphins. (اسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. broad                      b. board                      c. bored                      d. abroad
14. Talaat Harb is the name of the ..... which stands in the middle of a square of the same name.  
 a. scene                      b. invention                      c. sculpture                      d. exploration
15. Building at the site was banned after ancient ..... were unearthed earlier this month.  
 a. maintains                      b. remains                      c. bargains                      d. mountains

16. My daughter was rescued safely, and I was very ..... to the fireman.  
 (بنات سويف - بيا ٢٤-٢٠)  
 a. grateful      b. hateful      c. resentful      d. reproachable
17. There is an oil ..... on the spot where the two cars crashed.  
 a. spill      b. well      c. tanker      d. company
18. The ..... of new jobs requires يتطلب starting new businesses.  
 a. speed      b. route      c. creation      d. incident
19. People who are older than teenagers are called .....  
 a. spokespeople      b. checkers      c. disasters      d. adults
20. They found this statue ..... in sand.  
 a. buried      b. tempted      c. questioned      d. erected
21. The road is closed because of a serious .....  
 a. speed      b. route      c. incident      d. creation
22. The ..... of this desert area is an adventure.  
 a. council      b. sculpture      c. spacewalk      d. exploration
23. Teamwork is necessary to ..... a good news website.  
 a. confirm      b. create      c. question      d. fear
24. Mustafa is one of the most ..... students I have ever taught.  
 a. overhead      b. coastal      c. brilliant      d. uninjured
25. What is the best ..... to the city centre ?  
 a. speed      b. route      c. incident      d. creation
26. I need to get my father's ..... before I can make this decision.  
 a. spacewalk      b. conference      c. emergency      d. permission
27. A ..... is supposed to be fluent يتحدث جيد and he or she should be good-looking.  
 a. spokesperson      b. checker      c. disaster      d. foreigner
28. Don't drive at this breakneck .....  
 a. route      b. speed      c. incident      d. creation

## VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

achieve	a dream	يحقق حلم	keep	safe	يبقى بأمان
come	close to	يدنو من	launch	a website	يبدأ موقع
cover	important information	يغطي المعلومات الهامة	make	history	يصنع التاريخ
earn/make	a living	يحقق دخلاً - يكسب رزقه	play	a musical instrument	يعزف على آلة موسيقية
give	permission	يعطي إذن	tell	the story	يحكي القصة - يقرأ الخبر



## 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
erect	يُشيد - يبني build, construct, put up
necropolis	جبانة / مدفن - مدينة الموتى cemetery
nonsense	لغو - هراء rubbish
opinion	رأي point of view
prisoner	سجين captive
remarkable	هام / استثنائي / بارز extraordinary, exceptional, amazing, phenomenal
teenage	فراهِق adolescent, teenaged
tone	اسلوب / طابع mood, style, attitude, spirit, feel
witness	يشهد / يرى see, observe, be a witness to

## 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
erect	يُهدم demolish, deteriorate
nonsense	عقلانية - حكمة sense, wisdom
remarkable	عادي - شائع ordinary, commonplace

## 4 Expressions &amp; Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

be happy about	سعيد بـ	make no sense	لا معنى له
be involved in	متورط / مشارك في	19-year-old	ذو الـ ١٩ عام
be keen on	ميال إلى - متحمس لـ	oil spill	تسرب بترول
be proud to / of	فخور بأن / بـ	safety barrier	حاجز الأمان
call for help	يتصل لطلب المساعدة	see ... differently to ...	يري ... بشكل مختلف عن ....
close to	قريب من	spokesperson for	المتحدث باسم
find out more about	يكتشف المزيد عن	That's nonsense.	هذا كلام فارغ
for some unknown reason	لسبب ما غير معروف	the same ... as me	نفس ... مثل
in a different way	بطريقة مختلفة	what makes it different is that	ما يجعله مختلفاً هو أن
in the hope of	لكي		

## 5 Verb + Preposition عمل + حرف جر

creep up	يتسلق	punish ... for	يعاقب ... علي
find out (about)	يكتشف / يعرف (عن)	read ... out	يقرأ بصوت عال
get off	ينزل من	take out	يُخرج
go out	يخرج		

### Exercises On Vocabulary Study

☛ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

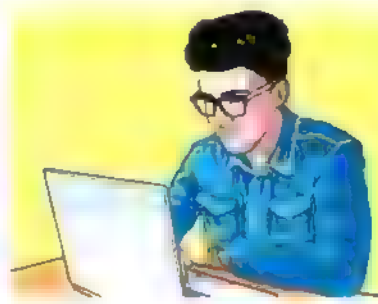
- I am proud ..... be an assistant to such a clever teacher.  
(سوهاج - المشاة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. of                      b. off                      c. for                      d. to
- Yesterday, I watched a movie about a ten-..... -old girl who got lost in a jungle.  
(السيوط - صدف ٢٠٢٤)  
a. years                      b. year's                      c. years'                      d. year
- Smoking makes our health .....  
(دمياط - ابو غالب ٢٠٢٤)  
a. improve                      b. deteriorate                      c. boost                      d. correct
- I work long hours every day to ..... a living.  
a. earn                      b. make                      c. hold                      d. a & b
- "This temple was erected by the pharaohs." Which of the following replaces the verb 'erected' in this utterance?  
a. deteriorated                      b. collapsed                      c. built                      d. demolished
- Something that is 'remarkable' is not .....  
a. commonplace                      b. a common place  
c. amazing                      d. extraordinary
- The guitar is one of the musical instruments Ammar could .....  
a. give                      b. score                      c. play                      d. come
- Mohammed Salah is really ..... history with Liverpool.  
a. earning                      b. making                      c. holding                      d. telling
- I want to ..... you the story of my success.  
a. tell                      b. launch                      c. keep                      d. check
- I can't understand what you say. It does not ..... sense.  
a. do                      b. take                      c. make                      d. look
- My father punished us ..... playing football in the living room.  
a. into                      b. for                      c. out                      d. with
- He changed his opinion ..... some unknown reasons.  
a. for                      b. of                      c. to                      d. at
- I asked Rokaya to read her essay ..... to the class.  
a. into                      b. for                      c. out                      d. with

## 1 Reading Texts

A teenage<sup>(1)</sup> world !

(SB page 46)

A new website has just been **launched**<sup>(2)</sup> by **teenagers**<sup>(3)</sup> for teenagers. Our World is **the creation**<sup>(4)</sup> of Jake and Amy Hope who wanted a news website that other teenagers would enjoy. 'Adults think teenagers are only interested in music and sport,' explained Amy, 'but that isn't true!'



- (1) مُراهق
- (2) يُطلق - يُنشر
- (3) المراهقين
- (4) إبداع - ابتكار
- (5) تعليم
- (6) رائع - مثالي

Our World has news, technology, **education**<sup>(5)</sup>, music and sport, but what makes it different is that all the reporters are teenagers.

'Teenagers sometimes see the world differently to adults,' Jake told us and it seems he's right. '**It's brilliant**<sup>(6)</sup>,' said 13-year-old Henry, 'it's much more interesting than most websites.' His sister agrees, 'I really like the fact that all the reports are by teenagers who are keen on the same things as me.'

Successful exploration<sup>1</sup>

(WB page 26)

Two days ago **historian**<sup>(2)</sup>, José Galán and his team discovered the ancient **remains**<sup>(3)</sup> of a 15 or 16-year-old girl who had been **buried**<sup>(4)</sup> for 3,600 years. José was part of a team of Spanish and Egyptian experts, who had been given **permission**<sup>(5)</sup> to **explore**<sup>(6)</sup> a **necropolis**<sup>(7)</sup> (an area of land where people are buried) on Luxor's **West Bank**<sup>(8)</sup>, in the hope of **finding out**<sup>(9)</sup> more about the history of the area. What makes the discovery so amazing, is that the teenager had been buried with lots of interesting **objects**<sup>(10)</sup>.

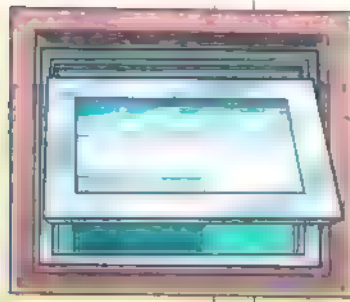


- (1) استكشاف
- (2) مؤرخ
- (3) بقايا
- (4) يدفن
- (5) إذن - تصريح
- (6) يستكشف
- (7) مقبرة - مدبرة الموتى
- (8) الضفة الغربية
- (9) يكتشف
- (10) أشياء - مقتنيات
- (11) هام - بارز
- (12) مُنحَدَث

The Egyptian government was very happy about the new discovery. The government said it was one of the most **remarkable**<sup>(11)</sup> discoveries in recent years. 'We plan to show the objects in a museum very soon for everyone to see,' a **spokesperson**<sup>(12)</sup> for the government said.



## 2 Listening Texts



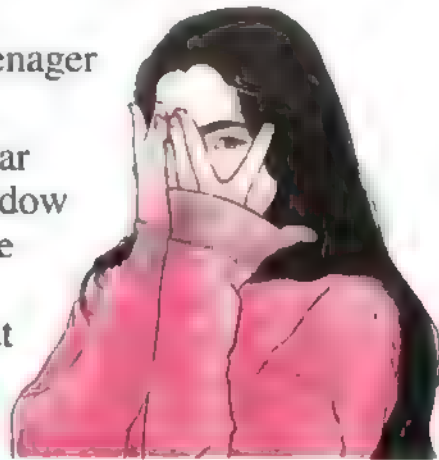
(SB page 47)

١. منزله / متجول
- (2) هروب
- (3) قرية ساحلية
- (4) مطر شديد
٥. يهب
٦. طريق للمشاة
٧. مقدمة البحر
٨. شهود
٩. منتصف الطريق
١٠. موجة ضخمة
١١. يوقع .. ارضا
١٢. محبوس في
١٣. يظهر من / يبرر من
١٤. يطلق سراح / يحرر

**Man:** [serious tone] Two **Walkers**<sup>(1)</sup> had a lucky **escape**<sup>(2)</sup> last night after a storm hit the small **coastal village**<sup>(3)</sup> of Largs in Scotland. **Heavy rain**<sup>(4)</sup> started at 5 p.m., and by 6 p.m. strong winds had **blown**<sup>(5)</sup> a lot of water onto the **footpath**<sup>(6)</sup> on the **sea front**<sup>(7)</sup>. **Witnesses**<sup>(8)</sup> say that the walkers were **halfway**<sup>(9)</sup> along the path when a **huge wave**<sup>(10)</sup> **knocked them over**<sup>(11)</sup>. Police believe that the walkers were two local women but no names have been given and the women had returned safe and well to their families.

**Man:** [light hearted tone] Police were called to a house in Beedon yesterday to help a teenager **stuck in**<sup>(12)</sup> a bathroom window.

Neighbours saw the legs and feet of 13 year old Leila Tahar **sticking out of**<sup>(13)</sup> the window and thought it was a thief. When the police managed to **free**<sup>(14)</sup> the teenager, they discovered that Leila lived at the house but had forgotten her keys! She said, "The only window open was the bathroom one, but it was a bit small!"



(WB page 27)

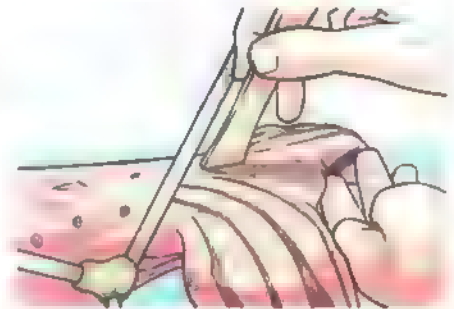
**Newsreader :** Welcome to the Rotterdam local news. [surprised and quite lively but not excessively so] Today we have an amazing story of how a sea animal saved the lives of many adults and children by stopping a train ten metres in the air in the middle of a city. Yes, you heard me correctly.



The plastic **sculpture**<sup>(1)</sup> of a **whale's tail**<sup>(2)</sup>, which had been created twenty years earlier by a local **artist**<sup>(3)</sup>, had been **erected**<sup>(4)</sup> by the local Council at the end of an **overground railway line**<sup>(5)</sup>.



Little did they expect the work of **art**<sup>(6)</sup> to **save lives**<sup>(7)</sup>. However, last week when, for some **unknown reason**<sup>(8)</sup>, the train could not stop at the final station on its **route**<sup>(9)</sup>, and it crashed through the **safety barriers**<sup>(10)</sup>. The sculpture at the end of the railway line was able to catch the **runaway train**<sup>(11)</sup> and **prevent it from**<sup>(12)</sup> falling into a park below where parents with their children were playing happily. Luckily, the train had been **emptied**<sup>(13)</sup> just moments before so the only person **onboard**<sup>(14)</sup> was the train driver. As he got off the train **uninjured**<sup>(15)</sup>, he said he was glad that nobody had been hurt and was very **grateful to**<sup>(16)</sup> the artist who had created the tail. So, it just goes to show you; art can save lives! In other news ... [fade out].



- (1) تمثال منحوت
- (2) ذيل الحوت
- (3) فنان / رسام
- (4) بنشيد / يقيم
- (5) خط سلك حديدية فوق الأرض
- (6) فن
- (7) ينقذ حياة
- (8) سبب غير معروف
- (9) طريق
- (10) حواجز الأمان
- (11) قطار ملطلق / خارج عن السيطرة
- (12) يمنع ... من
- (13) يفرغ - يخلّ
- (14) على متن (القطار)
- (15) غير مصاب
- (16) شاكر لـ

## ACT IV

## LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني

تلميح

### Exercises On Language

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Before ..... a car, my brother learnt how to drive well. (الفاخرة - المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. bought      b. had bought      c. buying      d. buy

2. After she ..... her housework, she watched TV.  
 a. was doing      b. had done      c. doing      d. was done (القاهرة - حلوان ٢٠٢٣)
3. .... seeing the fierce dog, I was very afraid.  
 a. Before      b. As soon as      c. On      d. During (القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)
4. After ..... his homework, Amr went to bed.  
 a. does      b. doing      c. had done      d. has been doing (القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)
5. When he was on holiday, Omar ..... his grandpa every day.  
 a. was visiting      b. visited      c. had visited      d. visits (الدقهلية - اجا ٢٠٢٣)
6. Hamdy ..... back home until he had finished all the tasks at the office.  
 a. didn't      b. wouldn't      c. wasn't      d. doesn't (الدقهلية - اجا ٢٠٢٣)
7. As the fire brigade ..... immediately, the fire was put out.  
 a. called      b. had called  
 c. had been calling      d. had been called
8. .... I left the office; I had written 5 reports.  
 a. After      b. By the time      c. As soon as      d. Until
9. Having set his alarm o'clock, he ..... to bed.  
 a. had gone      b. went      c. was going      d. has gone ((الشرفية - العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)
10. Leen looked over the moon as she ..... her final exam.  
 a. was passing      b. was passed  
 c. had passed      d. had been passing
11. He didn't answer my call as he ..... taken out a bad tooth at the dentist's.  
 a. has just      b. was being      c. had just      d. had just been
12. He didn't answer my call as a bad tooth ..... taken out of his mouth at the dentist's.  
 a. has just      b. was being      c. had just      d. had just been
13. As soon as the teacher ..... the lesson, the students started to ask their questions.  
 a. finishes      b. has finished  
 c. had finished      d. had been finished
14. As soon as the lesson ..... , the students started to ask their questions.  
 a. finishes      b. has finished  
 c. have finished      d. had been finished
15. By the time I arrived at school, the bell .....  
 a. didn't ring      b. had been rung  
 c. had already rung      d. b & c
16. I didn't see Esraa. When I arrived at her house, she ..... out.  
 a. had gone      b. had been going      c. went      d. goes
17. She started cleaning when the guests .....  
 a. were left      b. have left  
 c. had been leaving      d. had left



18. By the age of ten, I ..... to swim.  
 a. have learnt      b. was learning      c. had learnt      d. had been learnt
19. She was tired because she ..... late to bed the night before.  
 a. is      b. was being      c. had been      d. has been
20. It was only ..... Esraa had passed her exam that she travelled abroad.  
 a. before      b. after      c. until      d. when
21. Sara couldn't buy a new mobile ..... the shop had shut.  
 a. until      b. as      c. no sooner      d. hardly
22. When we got to the show, all the seats .....  
 a. had taken      b. had been taken  
 c. had been taking      d. have taken
23. I couldn't believe it. I ..... chosen to play for the National Team.  
 a. had      b. have been      c. had been      d. will be
24. As soon as I met him, I knew I ..... him somewhere before.  
 a. was seeing      b. see      c. have seen      d. had seen

## 2 Special cases

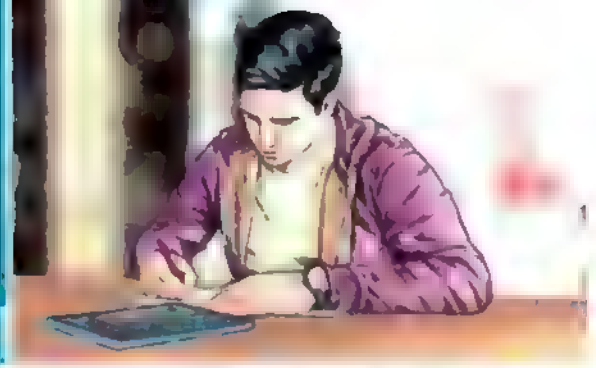
25. We arrived at the station at 8 a.m. yesterday. By then, the train .....  
 (السوان - ادفو ٢٣-٢٠)  
 a. leave      b. leaves      c. had left      d. was left
26. .... typed the report, the secretary handed it to the manager.  
 a. Having      b. While      c. When      d. After
27. When he returned home, he found that his mobile phone ..... disappeared.  
 a. had been      b. was      c. has been      d. had
28. It was only when I ..... studying that I went to bed.  
 a. has finished      b. have finished      c. was finishing      d. had finished
29. No sooner ..... I started watching TV than the telephone rang.  
 a. have      b. had      c. did      d. was
30. No sooner ..... I start watching TV than the telephone rang.  
 a. have      b. had      c. did      d. was
31. Having ....., the present surprised me.  
 a. opens      b. opened      c. been opened      d. opening
32. By the time she finished writing her report, she ..... six cups of tea.  
 a. had been drinking      b. was drinking  
 c. had drunk      d. had been drunk
33. .... had we furnished the house when we moved into it.  
 a. Hardly      b. Before      c. After      d. No sooner

34. Scarcely had the thief seen the policeman before he .....  
 a. escape                      b. had escaped                      c. escaping                      d. escaped
35. They ..... a great time when they were in Fayoum.  
 a. had had                      b. had been                      c. have had                      d. were having



### Check your understanding

36. .... before she went to bed.  
 a. Homework had done                      b. Homework had been done  
 c. She had been done                      d. She had done
37. "Having bought grandpa's newspaper, I went home." What does this mean ?  
 a. After I had gone home, I bought the papers for my grandpa.  
 b. Before I went home, I had bought the papers for my grandpa.  
 c. Soon after going home, I bought the papers for my grandpa.  
 d. On going home, I bought the papers for my grandpa.
38. "She had scarcely typed the email when she left." This means that .....  
 a. she left just before typing the email  
 b. she left while typing the email  
 c. she left just after typing the email  
 d. she didn't write the email until she left
39. "First, I did my homework. Then, I went to bed." What does this mean ?  
 a. Having been done, my homework went to bed.  
 b. Having done, I went to bed.  
 c. Before doing my homework, I went to bed.  
 d. Doing my homework, I went to bed.
40. "After I had planted the tree, I watered it." This means .....  
 a. Having planted a tree, it was watered  
 b. Having been planted, the tree was watered  
 c. Having been planted, I have watered the tree  
 d. a & b
41. "I had breakfast and went out." Which of the following sentences gives the same meaning ?  
 a. Breakfast was eaten before going out.  
 b. Having been fed, I went out.  
 c. Having had my breakfast, I went out.  
 d. I went out until I had breakfast.



للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة

تدريب

PART 3

## LANGUAGE HINTS

أي منهما / which is which ...

لاحظ استخدام هذا التعبير عند الحديث عن التمييز بين شخصين أو شيئين متشابهين جداً، لاحظ الحمل التالية وترجمتها:

1. Saeed explains that news stories can use both facts and opinions, but it must be clear **which is which**.

يوضح "سعيد" أن موضوعات الأخبار يمكن أن تتضمن الحقائق ووجهات النظر، لكن ينبغي أن يكون من الواضح أيهما خبر حقيقة وأيها خبر وهمية نظر.

2. The twins look so much alike that I'm surprised if anyone can tell **which is which**.

يبدو التوأمين متشابهين جداً لدرجة أنني أتعجب عندما يتمكن أي شخص أن يميز أيهما عن الآخر.

### space

1. كلمة (space) بمعنى (المضاء الكوني) لا تأخذ أداة التعريف (the) أو أدوات التنكير (a - an).
  - Astronauts travel to **the space**. (X)
  - Astronauts travel to **a space**. (X)
  - Astronauts travel to **space**. (✓)

2. كلمة (space) بمعنى (مكان فارغ / مسافة) يمكن أن تأخذ أداة التعريف (the) أو أدوات التنكير (a - an) حسب السياق وقواعد استخدام كل منهما:

- ex. - There's **an eight-metre-space** between the front door and the wall of the garden. **The space** is enough to plant some trees.

### Once

- **Once = at some time in the past** في وقت ما في الماضي / ذات مرة  
ex. - **Once**, people were hunters. Their food came from animals.
- **Once = as soon as** بمجرد أن  
ex. - **Once** I get home, I'll go to bed.
- **Once = one time** مرة واحدة  
ex. - We go to Alexandria **once a year**.

### news

- **news (of / on / about) (n)** خبر - أخبار (اسم لا يُعد)  
- The **news** of the exam results **is** promising. (Not: The news ... are ...)  
- **This news** is not true. (Not: These news ...)

لاحظ الفرق بين :

- **... on the news** يظهر في الأخبار / هناك تقرير عنه في الأخبار  
- The Minister of Health was **on the nine o'clock news**.



### • ... in the news

- Covid-19 has been in the news for two years now.

يتم مناقشته في الأخبار

- the latest news

- a piece / a bit of news (مفرد) خبر

- welcome news

- the good news is ...

- the bad news is ...

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

أحدث الأخبار

- pieces / bits of news (جمع) أخبار

أخبار سعيدة

والجيد في الأمر هو أن ...

والسيئ في الأمر هو أن ..

## Exercise on Language Hints

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. There're millions of stars in ..... space.

a. a                      b. an                      c. the                      d. no article

2. .... space between these two cars is enough for you to park your car in.

a. A                      b. An                      c. The                      d. no article

3. "This bottle is to be used only once." In this sentence, 'once' means

a. as soon as                      b. one time                      c. in the past                      d. before

4. .... she had arrived home, she started to prepare lunch.

a. As soon as                      b. One time                      c. Once                      d. a & c

5. .... news is not confidential.

a. This                      b. These                      c. A                      d. a & b

6. .... pieces of news are not confidential.

a. This                      b. These                      c. A                      d. a & b

7. Little ..... any free time over the last two weeks.

a. I have had                      b. I haven't had                      c. had I had                      d. have I had

## Part II

## LANGUAGE SKILLS

### 1. Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (اقرأ النص، ثم اجب على الأسئلة)

Advertisement is a means to make people aware of any product or service using commercial methods. It is a sort of publicity that is designed to endorse a specific interest of a person intended for product sale.

Though advertising has got a few disadvantages, the impact that it has on the launch and promotion of a product outweighs them.

Advertising has become a very specialised activity in modern times. In the business world of today, supply is usually greater than demand. There is great competition between the different manufacturers of the same kind of product to persuade customers to buy their own particular make. They always have to remind the customer of the name and the quality of their product. They do this through advertising. The manufacturer

advertises in the newspapers and on posters. They sometimes pay for songs to be sung about their product on commercial radio programmes. They employ attractive salesgirls to **distribute** samples of it. They organise competitions with prizes for the winners. They often advertise on the screens of local cinemas. The most important of all is through television. They have advertisements put into the programmes whenever this is possible. Manufacturers often spend large sums of money on advertisements.

We buy a particular product because we think that it is the best. We usually think so because the advertisements say so. Some people never pause to ask themselves if the advertisements are telling the truth.

1. Advertisements persuade us to buy things even if .....
  - a. the product is good
  - b. supply is greater than demand
  - c. we don't need them
  - d. we need them
2. Which one of the following isn't mentioned and it is a way of advertising?
  - a. Cinema
  - b. Trains
  - c. Newspaper and TV
  - d. Posters
3. The underlined pronoun 'it' refers to .....
  - a. the advertisements
  - b. the product
  - c. the factory
  - d. goods
4. The best title to this text is ".....".
  - a. Way of Advertising
  - b. Competition
  - c. A Specialised Activity
  - d. Manufacturers
5. To persuade customers to buy their own particular make, manufacturers .....
  - a. spend so much money on advertising
  - b. send emails with the aim of convincing them
  - c. give present to them
  - d. visit customers at their workplace
6. According to the passage, advertising has .....
  - a. only advantages
  - b. only disadvantages
  - c. advantages and disadvantages
  - d. no demerits
7. The synonym of the word '**distribute**' is .....
  - a. announce
  - b. divide
  - c. spread
  - d. give out
8. Advertisements make people .....
  - a. aware of the disadvantages of the product
  - b. pay more than the product value
  - c. unhappy with the company and leave the product
  - d. aware of the companies that supply the product

## 2 Writing a news report كتابة تقرير الأخبار

- ✪ Write a news report of about (180) words on an incident that happened recently :

### Discovery of an ancient monument

Welcome to the evening news. We have a story that interests all people all over the world, especially those who are interested in ancient Egyptian history. Our story took place in the south of Egypt, in Aswan Governorate.

The hero of our story is a fifteen-year-old boy called Ahmed. A few days ago, he was playing hide and seek with his friends in an open space in the countryside. The boys were hiding and Ahmed was looking for them.

Ahmed searched for the boys here and there but he could not find them. Suddenly, he found a dark cave. Ahmed entered it looking for his friends.

To his surprise, he discovered an ancient monument from the Pharaohs era عصر. Ahmed called out for his friends who forgot about the game and hurried to where Ahmed was.

The boys were all surprised. At first, they did not know what to do. When they calmed down, Ahmed suggested reporting monuments' officials in the governorate.

Soon, Ahmed's discovery was in the news. Reporters and correspondents wanted to talk to Ahmed. His videos were broadcast on local and foreign channels. His photograph was in the newspapers.

Ahmed is now famous. He is very proud of himself because he has helped his country.

## 3 Translation الترجمة

### 1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. As a result of the great change in the means of reporting the news, it has become important for every journalist to develop their sources and the way they write the news.

(السوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. نتيجة للتغير الكبير في وسائل نقل الأخبار، أصبح من الأهمية بمكان لكل صحفي أن يطور مصادره وطريقة صياغته للأخبار.
- b. نتيجة للتغير الكبير في وسائل الحصول على الأخبار، أصبح من الأهمية بمكان لكل صحفي أن يطور مصادره وطريقة صياغته للأخبار.
- c. نتيجة للتغير الكبير في وسائل نقل الأخبار، أصبح من الأهمية بمكان لكل صحفي أن يحمي مصادره وطريقة صياغته للأخبار.
- d. نتيجة للتغير الكبير في وسائل نقل الأخبار، أصبح من الأهمية بمكان لكل صحفي أن يطور مصادره وطريقة اختراعه للأخبار.



2. If a person is always chained to their office, they will grow physically and mentally weak. If such a person has a hobby, his daily work will no longer be tiring.

(الشرقية - العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٤)

- a. إذا كان المرء مقبلاً في مكتبه طوال الوقت فإنه سيضعف بدنياً وجسدياً، أما لو كان لهذا الشخص هواية فإن عمله اليومي لن يكون مُرهقاً.
- b. إذا انشغل المرء طوال الوقت بالعمل فإنه سيضعف بدنياً وفكرياً، أما لو كان لهذا الشخص هواية فإن عمله اليومي لن يكون مملاً.
- c. إذا كان المرء حبيس مكتبه طوال الوقت فإنه سيضعف بدنياً وذهنياً، أما لو كان لهذا الشخص هواية فإن عمله اليومي لن يكون مُرهقاً.
- d. إذا كان المرء دائماً مربوط في مكتبه فإنه سيزداد ضعفاً بدنياً وعصبياً، أما لو كان لهذا الشخص هواية فإن عمله اليومي لن يكون مُرهقاً كل يوم.

**2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

يعاني ضحايا التنمر من مشاكل نفسية وسلوكية على المدى الطويل كالاكتئاب والشعور بالوحدة والانعطوائية والقلق.  
(الفيوم - طامية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Victims of bullying suffer from short-term physiological and behavioural problems such as depression, loneliness, withdrawnness, and anxiety.
- b. Victims of bullying suffer from long-term psychological and behavioural problems such as depression, alone, introversion, and anxiety.
- c. Victims of bullying suffer from long-term psychological and behavioural problems such as depression, loneliness, withdrawnness, and anxiety.
- d. Victims of murdering suffer from long-term psychological and behavioural problems such as depression, loneliness, withdrawnness, and anxiety.

لن يقدم لك أحد النجاح على طبق من فضة، فإذا أردت النجاح عليك أن تفعل ذلك بنفسك، كما ينبغي عليك أن تتحلى بالشجاعة والصبر والإرادة والطموح والثقة بالنفس.  
(الحبيرة - أبو حمص ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Nobody will hand you success on a silver plate, so if you want success, you will have to make it on your own. You should also have courage, patience, willingness, ambition and self-sacrifice.
- b. Nobody will hand you success on a silver plate, so if you want success, you will have to make it on your own. You should also have courage, patience, willingness, ambition and self-confidence.
- c. Nobody will hand you success on a silver plate, so if you want success, you will have to make it on your own. You should also have courage, impatience, willingness, ambition and self-confidence.
- d. Nobody will hand you success on a silver plate, so if you want success, you will have to make it on yourself. You should also have courage, patience, willingness, ambition and self-confidence.

## broadcast

- **broadcast (n)** برنامج / بث (إذاعي / تلفزيوني)  
- I am not interested in that political news **broadcast**.
- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:  
- a radio / television broadcast برنامج إذاعي / تلفزيوني  
- a news broadcast برنامج إخباري  
- a live broadcast برنامج مباشر / بث مباشر  
- make / do / give broadcast يقدم برنامج / يتحدث من خلال برنامج
- **broadcast - broadcast - broadcast (v)** يذيع / يبث (عبر الراديو أو التلفزيون)  
- The match was **broadcast** live on the sports channel
- **broadcast - broadcast - broadcast (v)** ينشر - يعلن  
- She **broadcast** that her husband lost a lot of money.

## editor

- **edit (v)** يُلَقِّح - يَعدِّل (يقوم بعمل المونتاج)  
- This news website **edit** news reports before publishing them.
- **edit (v)** يرأس تحرير مجلة / جريدة  
- This writer **edit** Al-Ahram newspaper for three years.
- **edit ... out = cut (phr. v)** يقطع / يجتزئ - يحذف جزء (من مقال أو فيلم)  
- I was very angry when I knew that some parts of my article were **edit** out.
- **editor (n)** مُحَرِّر - رئيس تحرير (مجلة / جريدة)  
- This writer was an **editor** of Al-Ahram newspaper for three years.
- **editor (n)** مُراجِع - مُلَقِّح (كتاب / مقال / فيلم / برنامج)  
- An **editor** prepares a book to be published, for example by checking and correcting the text, making improvement, etc.
- **editor (n)** برنامج حاسوبي أو تطبيق يقوم بتعديل النصوص أو الصور أو الأفلام  
- I have paid a lot of money for this high-tech video **editor**.
- **edition (n)** نسخة - طبعة  
- The news about the accident appeared in the second **edition**.

## investigate

- **investigate = look into (v)** يُحقِّق في - يبحث (جريمة - حادث - مسألة علمية)  
- The police are **investigating** the crime.

- **investigate (v)** يتحرى عن - يحقق مع (شخص)  
- The bank manager was **investigated** for corruption. الفساد
- **investigation (of / into) (n)** تحقيق - تحري  
- Sometimes **investigations** of difficult crimes continue for years.
- **investigator (n)** مُحقق  
- A clever **investigator** is working on the crime.

### judge

- **judge (v)** يُقدّر - يُقيم  
- It is easy to **judge** how long the flight will take.
  - **judge (v)** يقضي بـ / يصدر حكماً على  
- The court **judged** him guilty and he was sent to prison. فُدينب المحكمة
  - **judge (by / from) (v)** يُعطي حكماً أو رأياً في الأشخاص والأشياء (بعد تفكير عميق)  
- My father told me not to **judge** people only by what they say.
- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
- It is not for + **us** + to **judge** ... ليس ... أهلاً للحكم على / ليس ... من يقرر ...
  - It is not for us to **judge** if he needs an operation or not. We are not doctors.
  - Don't **judge** a book by its cover. لا تنخدع بالمظاهر
- **judge (n)** قاضي - مُحكّم  
- This **judge** is honest and fair.
  - **judgement = judgment (n)** حكم - رأي - قدرة على اتخاذ القرار  
- He has enough experience to make a **judgement** about people by their behaviour.
  - **judgement = judgment (n)** حُكم قضائي  
- He won a **judgement** of two million dollars.

### nonsense

- **nonsense (n)** سلوك سيء (اسم مفرد لا يُعد)  
- Tell your son to stop that **nonsense**.
  - **nonsense = rubbish (n)** لغو- هُزاء (اسم مفرد لا يُعد)  
- It is **nonsense** to say that you never make mistakes.  
- Don't believe that **nonsense** about healthy food on that channel.
- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
- **make (a) nonsense of** يُفرّغ ... من مضمونه - يُفشل  
- Smoking **makes nonsense** of the treatment.
  - **be (a) nonsense** كلام فارغ  
- This article is a **nonsense**. I can't understand what it is about.



- ... not + stand / put up with / take + any nonsense يرفض السلوك السيء
- Mr Ashraf won't stand any nonsense.
- complete / utter / absolute / total nonsense مُحزذ هراء
- talk nonsense يلعو - يقول كلام فارغ

## report

- **report (v)** يُبلِّغ (يكتب أو يجمع أخبار لصحيفة أو برنامج تليفزيوني)
- We sent a correspondent to Dubai to report on the conference.
- **report (v)** يُبلِّغ الشرطة أو الجهات المسئولة (عن جريمة أو شيء مخالف للقانون)
- An old man reported a theft. عملية سرقة.
- **report (v)** يُذكر - يُصرِّح بـ - يُعلن بشكل رسمي
- Doctors reported that there is 25% decrease in the number of COVID-19 patients.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- **report ... missing / injured / killed...** يُبلِّغ عن مفقدان / إصابة / مقتل ...
- The shop owner reported ten thousand dollars missing.
- The reporter reported three soldiers killed.
- **report sick ...** يُبلغ عن مرضه (يحذر رئيسه في العمل أنه لن يأتي للعمل لمرضه)
- Mr Emad has reported sick since last July.

لاحظ ما يأتي بعد (report):

يكتب تقارير أو موضوعات عن

- **report on + noun**
- This journalist always reports on football matches.
- **report that + جملة**
- Our correspondent reported that there was an explosion اسفجار.

- **report + (inf. + ing)** يُبلغ عن
- This man reported seeing this car hit the old man.

- **report (on / of / about) (n)** تقرير
- I have to make a report about the students' progress تُخسُن.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- write / make / give / prepare a report يكتب / يُعد تقرير
- submit a report يُسلِّم تقرير
- confirm a report يُؤكِّد تقرير
- a report says / states (that)... يذكر التقرير (أن) ...
- an official / formal report تقرير رسمي
- an unofficial report تقرير غير رسمي
- a misleading report تقرير مُضلل

- **reporter (n)** مراسل - / مُبلِّغ / مُقرِّر / مُخاطِب
- I got a job as a news reporter for a TV channel.

**Advanced Exercise** on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The investigation ..... the robbery proved that the night watchman was involved.  
a. of                      b. into                      c. a & b                      d. with
- This is not the complete interview. Some of the questions and replies have been .....  
a. corresponded      b. crept up                      c. edited out                      d. interviewed
- I wish you didn't ..... that I am bankrupt. مفلس  
a. tempt                      b. interview                      c. recognise                      d. broadcast
- That tailor is a real ..... He has made me the best clothes I have ever worn.  
a. find                      b. checker                      c. editor                      d. range
- Will it ..... if I am half an hour late tomorrow?  
a. launch                      b. zoom                      c. hold                      d. matter

**Advanced Exercise** on Language

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Rodayna ..... a good film last night.  
a. was watched                      b. had been watched  
c. had watched                      d. watched
- What I'd done was wrong and I ..... ashamed of myself.  
a. was being                      b. was                      c. had been                      d. has been
- This time yesterday, I ..... all the sandwiches in my lunchbox already.  
a. had been eating                      b. had eaten  
c. was eaten                      d. have eaten
- ..... some old wood, my father made a nice cupboard.  
a. Using                      b. Used                      c. Being used                      d. Be used
- ..... , my shoes looked almost new.  
a. Polishing                      b. Having polished  
c. Having been polished                      d. To be polished

# Test on Unit 10

● Create

الوحدة

• التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب  
• تدريبات الأزهر الشريف في بنك الأسئلة



البنك الإلكتروني

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A/An ..... is a person who makes sure the information is true.  
(سوهاج - المراجعة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. fact checker                      b. fact checking  
c. interviewer                      d. newspaper seller
2. "He made this mistake deliberately." This means he behaved in a way that .....  
(كفر الشيخ - فليس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. isn't planned nor intended                      b. is planned and intended  
c. is unarranged and unorganised                      d. is unwanted and undesired
3. The play's opening ..... takes place in the court yard.  
(المنيا - ٢٠٢٤)  
a. view                      b. seen                      c. scenery                      d. scene
4. He has joined a professional teaching ..... as he intends to change his career direction.  
a. programme                      b. investigation                      c. broadcast                      d. journalism
5. A new website has just been ..... by teenagers for teenagers.  
(المنيا - ٢٠٢٤)  
a. spoken                      b. told                      c. said                      d. launched
6. I look forward to crossing the English ..... to break the record.  
(ادماط ٢٠٢٣)  
a. channel                      b. canal                      c. canon                      d. cart
7. The intelligent ..... managed to make the thief admit stealing the money from the bank.  
(المطرية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. respondent                      b. prisoner                      c. editor                      d. investigator
8. What ..... before going out?  
(المنيا - ٢٠٢٤)  
a. she is doing                      b. she has done  
c. had she done                      d. have she done
9. My car ..... until I had taken it to the mechanic.  
(المنيا - ٢٠٢٤)  
a. repaired                      b. didn't repair  
c. wasn't repaired                      d. doesn't repair
10. Grandma took the medicine before ..... to bed.  
(المنيا - ٢٠٢٤)  
a. went                      b. had gone                      c. going                      d. gone
11. After ..... this article, I summarized it.  
(المنيا - ٢٠٢٤)  
a. has read                      b. had read                      c. read                      d. reading
12. Having ..... my friend's telephone number, I contacted him.  
(الاسكندرية - وسط الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. find                      b. found                      c. to find                      d. been found
13. No sooner ..... taken the medicine than I felt better.  
a. I had                      b. had I                      c. I was                      d. was I



## 2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (دمبط - مسرور ٢٢)

Newspapers remain an important source of news for several reasons. The first of these is that the older generation still prefers to read their news this way, which is because they have traditionally bought a newspaper over the years and so do not want to change or simply do not know how to do so online in some cases. In addition to this, a newspaper also comes with other supplements, such as magazines and television guides, and sources of entertainment, such as crosswords. This makes it more attractive for some than going online.

However, though newspapers may not disappear completely, the internet is likely to become the more **dominant** source of news over time. It is common at the present time to see people getting updates on the latest news from the internet rather than the traditional method of reading a newspaper. This is primarily because younger people tend to read the news online and prefer not to pay for it, so those reading newspapers, the older generations, will gradually decline. This links in with the second reason, which is that as media companies start to see a drop in income from newspapers, printing them will become unprofitable and they will be forced to find ways to make money from news online.

In conclusion, although newspapers remain popular today, they will gradually be replaced by the desire to read the news through electronic sources. This may be a sad loss given their history, but unfortunately, it is an unavoidable development.

- Older generations still prefer to read their news through .....  
a. newspapers    b. the internet    c. the radio    d. the computer
- To some people, newspapers are more attractive than online as they .....  
a. provide sources of entertainment    b. come with other additions  
c. are cheaper    d. a & b
- One of the following words is the synonym of the underlined word '**dominant**': .....  
a. influential    b. minor    c. follower    d. weak
- Media companies will find out that printing newspapers is .....  
a. beneficial    b. unprofitable    c. popular    d. profitable
- According to the passage, ..... is/are going to be the main source of news over time.  
a. the radio    b. newspapers    c. the internet    d. magazines
- The older people have become the ..... people who read the newspapers.  
a. many    b. more    c. fewer    d. best
- According to the passage, newspapers will ..... in the future.  
a. disappear completely    b. be read by young people  
c. be a dominant source of news    d. read only by the rich

8. What do you think will replace printing newspapers in the coming days?
- The computer.
  - The radio.
  - Magazines.
  - Electronic sources.

**3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:**

Our society needs more individuals that possess good moral values in order to grow and develop the right way. Morals are really the best sign of a civilised society.

(البخيرة - كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)

- ا. تحتاج بيتنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يتحلون بقيم أخلاقية حميدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة، فالأخلاق هي حقاً أفضل سمة للمجتمع المتحضر.
- ب. يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى بعض الأفراد الذين يتحلون بقيم أخلاقية حميدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة، فالأخلاق هي حقاً أفضل لافتة للمجتمع المتحضر.
- ج. يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يتحلون بقيم أخلاقية حميدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة التقليدية، فالأخلاق هي حقاً أفضل إشارة للمجتمع المتحضر.
- د. يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يتحلون بقيم أخلاقية حميدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة، فالأخلاق هي حقاً أفضل سمة للمجتمع المتحضر.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

يري البعض أن زيادة الاتصال التجاري والثقافي بين الدول أمر إيجابي، ويرى البعض الآخر أنه يؤدي إلى اختفاء الهوية الوطنية.

(الشرقية - القرن ٢٠٢٤)

- Some people think that the decreasing business and cultural connect between nations is positive. Others think it leads to the disappearance of the national identity.
- Some people think that the decreasing business and cultural connect between nations is negative. Others think it leads to the disappearance of the national identity.
- Some people think that the increasing business and agricultural contact between nations is positive. Others think it leads to the disappearance of the international identity.
- Some people think that the increasing business and cultural contact between nations is positive. Others think it leads to the disappearance of the national identity.

**4. Answer the following questions :**

1. Why do you think Edgar says that King Lear is talking both “sense and nonsense”?

(الملفوظة - ملوف ٢٠٢٤)

2. How do you feel about the death of Oswald ? Why do you feel like this ?

3. “Please put on some better clothes, Kent”. Was it necessary for Kent to be in bad clothes? Why/Why not ?

(الفيوم - طامبة ٢٠٢٤)

**5. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :**

(المليوية - بها ٢٠٢٤)

**“Peace leads to construction but war leads to destruction”**

# What a performance!

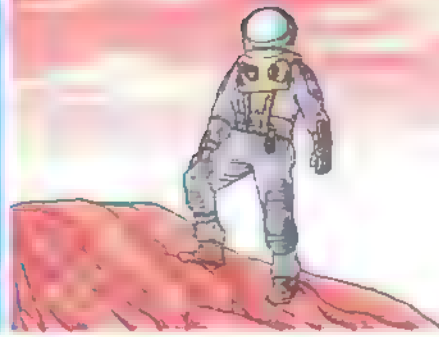


**Objectives :** \_\_\_\_\_ الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- 🕒 **Reading** : Online film reviews
- 🕒 **Writing** : Two film reviews
- 🕒 **Listening** : Interview with a film critic ;  
Intonation
- 🕒 **Speaking** : Explain how a film affects you

- 🕒 **Language** : Tag questions; Adjectives and adverbs
- 🕒 **Life skills** : Communication : listening to others' opinions ; Respect for others : recognising differences in opinions





PART 1

# VOCABULARY

## 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

action (n)	الحركة - حَذْث	historical (adj)	تاريخي
action films(n)	أفلام الحركة (الصراع)	historical films(n)	أفلام تاريخية
animation(n)	الرسوم المتحركة - تحريك - الحيوية	horror (n)	الرعب
animated(adj)	ملي بالحياة - متحرك	horror films(n)	أفلام الرعب
bestselling(adj)	الأكثر مبيعاً	hostile(adj)	عدواني
comedy(n)	فيلم كوميدي - كوميديا / الفكاهة	mate(n)	رفيق - زميل
constantly(adv)	باستمرار - بانتظام	musical(n)	مسرحية / ميلم غنائي
crew(n)	طاقم العمل	romantic(adj)	رومانسي - حالم - خيالي
harness(ed) (v)	نستخدم - نُسخر	sci-fi = science fiction(n)	الخيال العلمي
		visuals(n)	المؤثرات البصرية

## 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

a bit(adv)	قليلاً	Martian (n - adj)	المريخي - من المريخ
acting(n)	الاداء التمثيلي	marvellous(adj)	رائع
adapt (ed) (v)	يقتبس - يتكيف / يتأقلم	mathematician(n)	عالم رياضيات
approve (d) (v)	يؤيد - يستحسن	meanwhile(adv)	في تلك الأثناء
brilliant(adj)	رائع	mission(n)	مهمة
cartoon(n)	أفلام رسوم متحركة	mixed(adj)	مختلط
certain(adj)	مؤكد - متأكد	neighbourhood(n)	الحي - الجيرة
choice(n)	اختيار	performance(n)	أداء
colleague(n)	زميل (عمل)	pity(n)	الشفقة - الحسرة
critic(n)	ناقد	quite(adv)	إلى حد ما
cruel(adj)	قاسي	recommend(ed) (v)	ينصح بـ - يوصي بـ
demonstrate (d) (v)	يوضح - يبرز	remake(n)	إعادة إنتاج
director(n)	مخرج (برنامج / فيلم / ...)	rescue (d) (n - v)	إنقاذ - يُنقذ
documentary(n)	فيلم وثائقي	review(n)	عرض نقدي - مراجعة نقدية
energy(n)	حيوية - طاقة	scared(adj)	خائف - مفزوع
enjoyable(adj)	ممتع	script(n)	نص مكتوب - سيناريو
escape(d) (v)	يهرب / يفر	soundtrack(n)	ملف صوتي
extremely(adv)	للاغاية / جداً	special effects	تأثيرات خاصة

fan(n)	مُعْجَب - مُشْجَع	storyline(n)	الأحداث - العُقْدة
film (ed) (v)	يصور فيلم	style(n)	أسلوب - نَمَط
genuine(adj)	أصلي	survive (d) (v)	ينجو - يبقى حياً
incredibly(adv)	بشكل هائل	talent(n)	موهبة
intonation(n)	نبرة الصوت - تنغيم الصوت	talented(adj)	موهوب
lack (ed) (v - n)	ينقصه - نُقْص / غُجْز	totally(adv)	كلياً / تماماً
location(n)	موقع	version(n)	نسخة
Mars(n)	كوكب المريخ	warmth(n)	خِمْيَمَة - دِفْء

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

#### Memorise

##### action film(n)

أفلام الحركة / القتال

##### animation(n)

الرسوم المتحركة

##### comedy(n)

فيلم كوميدي

##### constantly(adv)

باستمرار - دائماً

##### historical(adj)

تاريخي

##### horror(n)

الرعب

##### incredibly(adv)

بشكل خُرَافِي - بشكل غير معقول

##### Martian(n. - adj.)

مخلوق خيالي من المريخ

##### musical(n)

مسرحية / فيلم غنائي

##### romantic(adj)

رومانسي

##### sci-fi = science fiction(n)

الخيال العلمي

##### storyline(n)

الأحداث - العُقْدة

#### Understand

a film that has a lot of exciting scenes in it, in which people fight, chase, and kill each other

a film, television programme, computer game, etc. that has pictures, clay models, etc. that seem to be really moving

a play, film, or television programme that is intended to make people laugh

all the time

describing or based on events in the past

a strong feeling of shock and fear

in a way that is difficult to believe

an imaginary creature from the planet Mars

a play or a film that includes singing and dancing

relating to feelings of love or a loving relationship

stories about events in the future which are affected by imaginary developments in science

the main set of related events in a story

**surprisingly(adv)** in an unexpected way

بشكل مذهل

**talented(adj)** موهوب very good at doing something

**unkind(adj)** غير ودود not friendly

## Exercises on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

### 1 Definitions

1. A/An ..... is a play or a film that includes singing and dancing.  
(البهرة - كوم حماده ٢٠٢٤)  
a. musical      b. comedy      c. animation      d. action
2. An ..... film has pictures, clay, models, etc. that seem to be really moving.  
(الجيزة - أوسيم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. intention      b. animation      c. amusement      d. action
3. .... means all the time.  
a. Incredibly      b. Constantly      c. Historically      d. Surprisingly
4. .... means very good at doing something.  
a. Talented      b. Unkind      c. Romantic      d. Historical
5. .... stories are about events in the future which are affected by imaginary developments in science.  
a. Horror      b. Martian      c. Storyline      d. Science fiction
6. .... are plays, films, or television programmes that are intended to make people laugh.  
a. Actions      b. Animations      c. Comedies      d. Musicals

### 2 Key Vocabulary

7. Why don't you give me flowers? I wish you'd be more .....  
(أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. historic      b. romantic      c. comic      d. tragic
8. Most companies..... technology to provide better service to their customers.  
(الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٠٢٤)  
a. contain      b. waste      c. consume      d. harness
9. In this ..... film, some persons are fighting after a destructive volcano.  
(دمياط - الروضة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. action      b. musical      c. comedy      d. romantic
10. Children like ..... films. They are attracted by moving drawings.  
(كفر السبخ - فوه ٢٠٢٤)  
a. animation      b. horror      c. romantic      d. visuals
11. Many ..... films should be banned as they contain terrifying scenes which have a bad effect on children.  
a. comedy      b. animation      c. horror      d. visual



12. In this ..... film, the heroine does not look like the image in my mind about Cleopatra.  
a. action                      b. historical                      c. musical                      d. animation
13. We would like to thank all the medical ..... at hospitals for their great efforts.  
(سوهاج - أخميم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. crews                      b. casts                      c. staffs                      d. stuff
14. I am keen on high-tech gadgets and the future. I love watching ..... films.  
(القليوبية - ملبوب ٢٠٢٤)  
a. action                      b. horror                      c. science fiction                      d. historical
15. The engineers are working ..... to set up the new bridge. They work around the clock.  
(اسوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. specially                      b. constantly                      c. totally                      d. friendly
16. It's strange that you like ..... films most; there are lots of frightening scenes.  
(الشرقية - الإبراهيمية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. horror                      b. musical                      c. comedy                      d. romantic
17. The children in our street are ..... . They make lots of problems.  
(الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. romantic                      b. friendly                      c. nice                      d. hostile
18. Try to be kind to your school .....  
a. work                      b. animations                      c. musicals                      d. mates
19. When it first came out, it was the ..... novel for two months.  
a. bestselling                      b. musical                      c. comic                      d. romantic

### 3 Important Vocabulary

20. What we ..... in our house is space to store things.  
(سوهاج - سامليه ٢٠٢٤)  
a. leak                      b. lock                      c. lack                      d. lick
21. There must be special schools for ..... students to make them benefit the society.  
(كفر الشيخ - قلين ٢٠٢٤)  
a. talented                      b. hostile                      c. hilarious                      d. horrible
22. The ..... of this film is not as interesting as the original one.  
(الشرقية - القويس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. events                      b. remark                      c. make                      d. remake
23. My favourite team's ..... is disappointing this season.  
(الموصلية - السادات ٢٠٢٤)  
a. performance                      b. reforms                      c. operation                      d. research
24. Famous stars have their ..... all over the world.  
(الإسكندرية - المنزه ٢٠٢٤)  
a. fins                      b. fans                      c. fines                      d. finals
25. This story was ..... . I couldn't stop laughing when they fell in the water.  
(بورسعيد - جنوب بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤)  
a. funny                      b. awful                      c. depressing                      d. boring
26. He gained power in some parts of the country, but he wanted to ..... over all of it.  
(بورسعيد - بورفؤاد ٢٠٢٤)  
a. interrupt                      b. lose                      c. rule                      d. break

27. The film "Jurassic Park" is ..... from a Michael Crichton novel of the same name. (البحيرة - ادكو ٢٣ ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. attributed      b. adapted      c. applied      d. inhibited
28. The 2019 ..... of The Lion King lacks the warmth and energy of the original cartoon film. (القاهرة - دار السلام ٢٣ ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. vision      b. version      c. question      d. session
29. National Geographic is an exciting channel which shows only ..... (البريد - بشارت نور محمد ٢٣ ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. correspondences      b. documentaries  
 c. copies      d. competition
30. Don't be ..... to people like that. This is unkind. (دعنا - دينا ابو عيسى ٢٣ ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. good      b. sociable      c. cruel      d. communicative
31. Research has ..... that babies can recognize their mothers' voice very soon after birth. (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٣ ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. activated      b. participated      c. demonstrated      d. advocated
32. They were sent in a ..... mission to look for survivors under the ruins. (السيوط - البداري ٢٣ ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. funny      b. comedy      c. rescue      d. curious
33. When I am abroad, I miss family .....  
 a. performance      b. script      c. soundtrack      d. warmth
34. Salah showed a ... ..... for football at a very young age.  
 a. documentary      b. talent      c. version      d. scenery
35. We had a/an ..... time on the beach.  
 a. historical      b. hostile      c. marvellous      d. original
36. The ..... is the main set of related events in a novel or a play.  
 a. mate      b. review      c. storyline      d. visuals
37. Would you agree to go on a/an ..... to the moon?  
 a. cartoon      b. acting      c. mission      d. remake
38. This film is absolutely ..... Both viewers and critics like it.  
 a. brilliant      b. upset      c. brave      d. awful
39. We are going to ..... a documentary about Old Cairo.  
 a. escape      b. film      c. scare      d. affect
40. There is a mall in our .....  
 a. performance      b. neighbourhood  
 c. soundtrack      d. warmth
41. Are you interested in reading the ..... about the films you watch?  
 a. reviews      b. mates      c. storylines      d. visuals
42. Finally, his parents ..... of his marriage. They had been completely against it.  
 a. escaped      b. filmed      c. rescued      d. approved
43. It is a ..... to leave your job before getting another one.  
 a. pity      b. script      c. performance      d. style

# VOCABULARY STUDY

## 1 Verbal Collocations مترادفات لفظية

become	lost	يتوه / يضل الطريق	lack	the warmth	تنقصه الحميمية
build	a windmill	يبنى طاحونة هوائية	make	a film	يصنع فيلم
get	lost	يتوه / يضل الطريق	recognise	differences in opinion	يدرك الاختلاف في وجهات النظر
harness	the wind	يستغل الرياح	win	races	يفوز بسباقات

## 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
a bit قليلاً	a little
animate حي - متحرك	living
animation الحيوية	liveliness
brilliant رائع / ممتاز	very good, excellent, marvellous, great, terrific
brilliant ذكي - موهوب	gifted, talented, genius, intelligent
comedy كوميديا - الفكاهة	humour, fun, farce
constantly باستمرار - بانتظام	continually, continuously
enjoyable ممتع	fun, entertaining, amusing
harness يستخدم - يُسخر	exploit, utilize, make use of
hostile غداؤاني	aggressive, unfriendly, cruel
romantic رومانسي	intimate, passionate
romantic حالم - خيالي	idealistic, unrealistic

## 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
a bit قليلاً	a lot, much, far, even كثيراً
animate حي - متحرك	inanimate ميت - بلا حراك
brilliant ذكي - موهوب	stupid, untalented غبي - غير موهوب
brilliant رائع / ممتاز	bad سيء
comedy كوميديا - الطرافة - الفكاهة	tragedy تراجيديا - مأساة
hostile غداؤاني - كره	friendly, mild, favourable ودود - معتدل - مقرب
romantic رومانسي	unromantic غير عاطفي
romantic حالم - خيالي	realistic, factual واقعي



## animation

animate (v) ينعش / ينشط · يحيي

animation (n)

(أفلام) الرسوم المتحركة · تحريك · الحيوية

animate (adj)

حي · متحرك

animated (adj)

ملئ بالحيوية · متحرك

- Happiness **animates** our faces.- Computer **animation** is used in this cartoon.- This channel shows 3-D **animations**.- She was talking with **animation**.- People, animals and insects are examples of **animate** beings. كائنات- We had an **animated** debate about the advantages of smart technology.

## comedy

comedian (n) ممثل كوميدي

comedy (n) عمل كوميدي · كوميديا

comic/ comical (adj)

فكاهي / مُضحك

- Ismael Yassen was a great **comedian**.- El-Zaeem is a **comedy** by Adel Imam.- I like watching **comic** films.

## constantly

constancy (n) الثبات · الولاء

constant (adj) مستمر · منتظم

constantly (adv) باستمرار · بانتظام

- The **constancy** of prices is something positive.- Your **constant** mistakes are what makes you lose jobs.- She **constantly** talks about her children.

## horror

horrify (v) يزعج · يصدم

horror (n) الرعب

horrifying / horrific (adj)

مُرعب · صادم

- The last scene **horrified** me.- I was filled with **horror** by the last scene.- The last scene was **horrifying**.

## musical

music (n) الموسيقى

musical (n) فيلم غنائي

musician (n) عازف

musical (adj) موسيقي

- She is interested in folk **music**.- I watched a **musical** by Abdulhalim Hafez.- Omar was a talented **musician**.- He plays some **musical** instruments.

## romantic

romance (n) الرومانسية · قصة رومانسية

romantic (adj) رومانسي · خيالي

- She enjoys reading **romances**.- She enjoys reading **romantic** novels.

## 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a bestselling book	الكتاب الأكثر مبيعاً	leave ... using	يغادر ... عن طريق
animated film	فيلم رسوم متحركة	not yet	ليس بعد
back on Earth	بالعودة إلى الأرض	of the same name	له نفس الاسم
bring ... home	يُعيد - يستعيد	on a farm	في مزرعة
die in a storm	يموت في عاصفة	others' opinions	آراء الآخرين
far from	بعيد عن	romantic story	قصة رومانسية
fight scenes	مشاهد عنف	similar to	مشابه لـ ...
film reviews	عروض نقدية للأفلام	true life	الحياة الواقعية
five-year-old	ذو الخمسة أعوام	waste of money	إهدار للمال

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

adapt ... from	يقتبس .. من	rule over	يحكم - يسيطر نفوذه على
climb onto	يصعد على	shout at	يصرخ في
escape from	يهرب من	steal (...) from	يسرق (...) من
go back	يعود - يرجع	take off	تُقلع الطائرة - يخلع ملابس
leave ... behind	يغادر تاركاً ... خلفه	take off from	ينطلق من - يغادر

## 7 Clear the confusion كحل الغموض

### adapt ... from – adapt ... for

- ... **adapt ... from** يقتبس ... من - يأخذ ... عن  
- They **adapted** this film **from** a novel by Charles Dickens.
- ... **adapt ... for** يُكيف ... مع - يُعدّ ... ليصبح  
- They **adapted** a novel by Charles Dickens **for** a film.

### historic - historical

- **historic (adj)** تاريخي / قديم (تصف الأماكن والمباني)  
- The Pyramids are **historic** buildings.  
- Egypt has the most **historic** sites in the world.
- **historic (adj)** تاريخي (تصف حدث أو وقت هام سيسجل في التاريخ)  
- The two leaders had a **historic** meeting.  
- Landing on the moon was a **historic** moment.
- **historical (adj)** تاريخي (متعلق بالماضي)  
- The pyramids are buildings of **historical** interest.
- **historical (adj)** تاريخي (متعلق بدراسة التاريخ)  
- I have done a lot of **historical** research.
- **historical (adj)** تاريخي (عن التاريخ)  
- I have read a lot of **historical** novels.
- **historic = historical (adj)** تاريخي (وقع في الماضي أو كان موجوداً في الماضي)  
- Alexandria witnessed **historic** / **historical** battles.

## Exercises On Vocabulary Study

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "A good actor is able to harness his talent to amuse his audience."  
The synonym of the word 'harness' is ..... . (سوهاج - حرجا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. defeat                      b. make use of                      c. misuse                      d. quit
2. This famous actor is a good ..... . (الجيظة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. comedian                      b. comic                      c. comical                      d. comedy
3. When he began his ..... career, Marcus King played only for black audiences. (الملوفية - شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. a music                      b. musicians                      c. musical                      d. musically
4. The director has created an ..... cartoon which looks incredibly real. (القاهرة - القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. animate                      b. inanimate                      c. animal                      d. animation
5. This film is ..... a bestselling novel of the same name. (المصومنه - الشهداء ٢٠٢٤)  
a. adapted from                      b. adapted to                      c. adopted by                      d. adopted as
6. The research centers demonstrate the link between poverty and illness.  
The verb "demonstrate" can be replaced by ..... .  
a. improve                      b. reveal                      c. dismiss                      d. ignore
7. The company has ..... some measures to solve the financial problem.  
a. referred                      b. made                      c. worked                      d. taken
8. The antonym of "unkind" is ..... . (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. unfriendly                      b. friendly                      c. hard-hearted                      d. cruel
9. I can't adapt ..... in this crowded city. (البحيره - البواريه ٢٠٢٣)  
a. for living                      b. to live                      c. to living                      d. with living
10. His behaviour with the neighbours didn't show any kind of peace with them. It was ..... .  
a. hostile                      b. friendly                      c. aggressive                      d. a & c
11. It is possible to ..... lost when you visit a city for the first time.  
a. come                      b. get                      c. make                      d. do
12. "He has romantic ideas about the perfect society." The adjective 'romantic' in this context is the antonym of ..... .  
a. amorous                      b. idealistic                      c. unromantic                      d. realistic
13. "Rodayna is a brilliant student." In this sentence, the synonym of 'brilliant' is ..... .  
a. stupid                      b. gifted                      c. talented                      d. b & c
14. "I am a bit tired today." The adverb 'a bit' here is the synonym of ..... .  
a. a lot                      b. far                      c. a & b                      d. a little
15. "What I love most about her is her animation." Which of the following gives a similar meaning to the noun 'animation'?  
a. Liveliness                      b. Romance                      c. Inanimate                      d. a & b
16. Tragedy is to ..... as brilliant is to bad.  
a. comedy                      b. romance                      c. animation                      d. animated



17. For a long time in the past, Arab kings ruled ..... a large area of the world.  
a. from                      b. for                      c. over                      d. under
18. This film is based on a novel ..... the same name.  
a. of                      b. to                      c. like                      d. up
19. The bus driver had to drive back because we had left one of the passengers ..... in the cafeteria.  
a. ahead                      b. behind                      c. for                      d. to
20. "Do you want me to believe that the baby is safe with his sister who is ..... by a cricket صرصار?  
a. horrifying                      b. horrific                      c. horrified                      d. horror

## PART III

## READING &amp; LISTENING

## 1 Reading Texts

## The Martian

(SB page 54)

Clever, exciting, and surprisingly<sup>(1)</sup> funny, The Martian<sup>(2)</sup> is a brilliant<sup>(3)</sup> film, adapted from<sup>(4)</sup> the bestselling<sup>(5)</sup> book of the same name, and demonstrates<sup>(6)</sup> the talents<sup>(7)</sup> of the actor Matt Damon and the director<sup>(8)</sup> Ridley Scott.



When astronauts<sup>(9)</sup> take off<sup>(10)</sup> from the planet Mars<sup>(12)</sup>, they leave behind<sup>(13)</sup> Mark Watney (Damon), who they believe had died in a storm<sup>(14)</sup>. Watney is left with little food or water and has to find a way to survive<sup>(15)</sup> on the empty<sup>(16)</sup> planet. Meanwhile<sup>(17)</sup>, back on Earth, NASA and a team of international<sup>(18)</sup> scientists<sup>(19)</sup> work constantly<sup>(20)</sup> to bring him home<sup>(21)</sup>. At the same time his crew<sup>(22)</sup> mates<sup>(23)</sup> plan a brave<sup>(24)</sup> rescue<sup>(25)</sup> mission<sup>(26)</sup>.

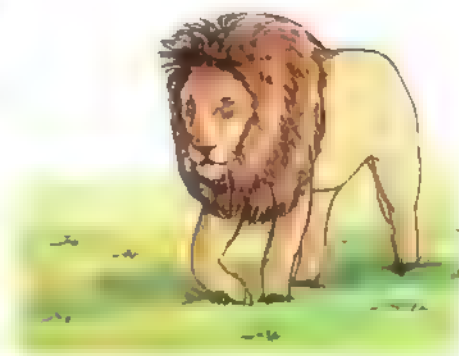
Unlike<sup>(27)</sup> most sci-fi<sup>(28)</sup> films, The Martian has no fight scenes<sup>(29)</sup>. Instead<sup>(30)</sup>, it is a clever and powerful<sup>(31)</sup> film and perhaps the best science fiction<sup>(32)</sup> film that I've seen in a long time.

1. بشكل مُدهل
2. المزيح
3. رائع
4. مُقتبس من
5. الأكثر مبيعا
6. يوضح - يبرز
7. مواهب
8. المخرج
9. رواد الفضاء
10. يتطلق
11. كوكب
12. المريخ
13. يترك وراءه
14. عاصفة
15. ينحو - يبقى حياً
16. فارغ
17. في تلك الأثناء
18. دولي
19. علماء
20. باستمرار - بانتظام
21. تعيده لموطنه
22. طاقم العمل
23. رفقاء
24. شجاع
25. إنقاذ
26. مهمة
27. على عكس
28. الخيال العلمي
29. مشاهد عنف
30. بدلا من ذلك
31. قوي
32. الخيال العلمي

## The Lion King

(SB page 54)

Although the **visuals**<sup>(1)</sup> in the 2019 **version**<sup>(2)</sup> of The Lion King are quite brilliant, this **remake**<sup>(3)</sup> **lacks**<sup>(4)</sup> the **warmth**<sup>(5)</sup> and **energy**<sup>(6)</sup> of the **original**<sup>(7)</sup> **cartoon**<sup>(8)</sup> film. This is even more surprising when you look at the list of **talented**<sup>(9)</sup> actors **involved**<sup>(10)</sup>. The **storyline**<sup>(11)</sup> is the same and the music and songs are great, but it just isn't as much fun and it's difficult to know why.



- (1) المؤثرات البصرية
- (2) نسخة
- (3) إعادة إنتاج
- (4) يفتقره
- (5) دافئة - دافئ
- (6) حيوية
- (7) أصلي
- (8) أفلام رسوم متحركة
- (9) موهوب
- (10) مشارك
- (11) الأحداث - القصة
- (12) مثل
- (13) قاسي
- (14) يقتل
- (15) يتكرر
- (16) الرسوم المتحركة
- (17) يبدو
- (18) بشكل هائل
- (19) حقيقي
- (20) ربما
- (21) يبدو مثل
- (22) الحياة البرية
- (23) فيلم وثائقي

**Like**<sup>(12)</sup> the 1994 film, the story is about the young lion Simba, his **unkind**<sup>(13)</sup> uncle who **kills**<sup>(14)</sup> Simba's father, and Simba's life in the desert with his new friends Timon and Pumbaa.

The director Jon Favreau has **created**<sup>(15)</sup> an **animation**<sup>(16)</sup> which **looks**<sup>(17)</sup> **incredibly**<sup>(18)</sup> **real**<sup>(19)</sup> and **maybe**<sup>(20)</sup> that's the problem – it doesn't **look like**<sup>(21)</sup> an enjoyable film, more like a **wildlife**<sup>(22)</sup> **documentary**<sup>(23)</sup>!

## A film review

(WB page 31)

I don't expect to like films about children who **get lost**<sup>(1)</sup>, but the film Lion was surprisingly good. It's about a family in India who are constantly trying to find enough work to live well. One day, five-year-old Saroo goes to a town with his older brother, but when his brother doesn't return from a job, Saroo climbs onto a train and becomes lost. The story is about the brave boy as he tries to live in a city where the people are often **hostile**<sup>(2)</sup> and **unfriendly**<sup>(3)</sup>. I found the second half of the film less **enjoyable**<sup>(4)</sup>, although it is still good. Saroo is now a talented student of 25. He has a good life with a kind family who took him to Australia, but he wants to find out what happened to his brother and family in India.

The story is very brilliant and I'll always remember it. The **acting**<sup>(5)</sup> was totally powerful and I **definitely**<sup>(6)</sup> **recommend**<sup>(7)</sup> it.

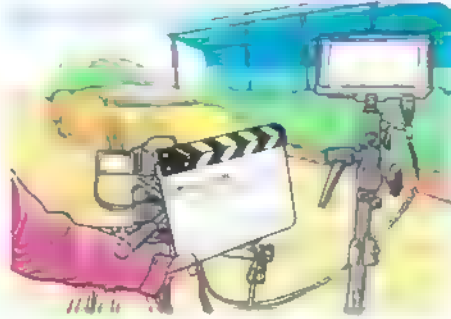
- (1) يضل الطريق - يتوه
- (2) عدواني
- (3) غير ودود - قس
- (4) ممتع
- (5) الأداء التمثيلي
- (6) بالتأكيد - قطعاً
- (7) ينصح - يوصي

## 2 Listening Texts

**Adel** : Tonight I'm talking to **film critic**<sup>(1)</sup> Seleem about the films he's seen recently.  
Seleem, welcome.

**Seleem** : Hi Adel.

**Adel** : You've been a film critic for many years, so I guess you love watching films, don't you ?



**Seleem** : I do and there are some great ones out there. You're a fan of action films, aren't you ?

**Adel** : Yes, have you seen any good ones recently ?

**Seleem** : Black Panther. I really enjoyed it, but it's had **mixed**<sup>(2)</sup> reviews. The **special effects**<sup>(3)</sup> were great and so were the **fight scenes**<sup>(4)</sup>, but the dialogue was difficult to follow at times, which was **a pity**<sup>(5)</sup>. The best film I've seen lately was the **award-winning**<sup>(6)</sup> Hidden Figures. I don't often watch historical films but this one is **brilliant**<sup>(7)</sup>. It's the true story of black female **mathematicians**<sup>(8)</sup> working at NASA in the 1960s and how hard they had to work to prove themselves.

**Adel** : They both sound good. Any others ?

**Seleem** : A Beautiful Day in the Neighbourhood. This is another true story. It's about Fred Rogers, an American children's TV presenter and a journalist. It's a story of **kindness**<sup>(9)</sup> and has a wonderfully positive message.

**Adel** : Tom Hanks was in that, wasn't he ?

**Seleem** : Yes, and as you know, I'm a big Tom Hanks **fan**<sup>(10)</sup>. He's a **marvellous**<sup>(11)</sup> actor and his films are so different. He's done comedy, animation, action – you name it, he's done it.

**Adel** : Very true. So, when you're not working, what kind of film would you choose to watch ?

**Seleem** : Well, believe it or not I love musicals. You thought I'd say action or science fiction, didn't you ?

**Adel** : I did yes, but why not. I mean I love horror films !

**Seleem** : [Sound surprised] Really ?

(58 page 53)

- (1) ناقد سينمائي
- (2) مختلط - محير
- (3) مؤثرات خاصة
- (4) مشاهد العراك
- (5) شفقة / عطف
- (6) حائز على جائزة
- (7) لامع / متالق
- (8) متخصصون في الرياضيات
- (9) طيبة / عطف
- (10) معجب
- (11) رائع



**Narrator : 1**

(SB page 53)

**Speaker 1 :** You don't want to see this film, do you ? [falling intonation]

**Narrator : 2**

**Speaker 2 :** Your test won't be difficult, will it ? [rising intonation]

**Narrator : 3**

**Speaker 1 :** His parents aren't coming, are they ? [falling intonation]

**Narrator : 4**

**Speaker 2 :** They played well, didn't they ? [falling intonation]

**Narrator : 5**

**Speaker 1 :** You were scared, weren't you ? [rising intonation]

(WB page 30)

**Fares :** That was an amazing film, wasn't it ?

**Munir :** I disagree. The story wasn't very easy to believe, was it ?

**Fares :** That's not true. You read that report about the film online, didn't you ?

**Munir :** Yes. The review said the film used scientific facts, but you can't really go back in time, can you ?

**Fares :** Not yet, but it's easy to imagine what it would be like, isn't it ?

**Munir :** Perhaps you're right. You've always liked films like that more than me, haven't you ?

**Fares :** That's true. OK, next time, you can choose the film !

PART IV

## LANGUAGE

نظرًا لطول القاعدة فقد تم تقسيمها إلى أجزاء ووضع تدريبات كافية بعد كل جزء بنظام التقويم البنائي، وذلك لتسهيل تقسيم شرح القاعدة واستذكارها والتدريب عليها

تدريب

1

Tag Question

تدريب

### النقاط الأساسية Basics

١ السؤال المذهل هو سؤال قصير يوضع في نهاية الجملة الخبرية، ومعناه دائما :  
"أليس كذلك؟" أو "هل أنا على صواب؟"

? ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد / ناقص ، جملة خبرية

↓	↓	↓
ex. - Fish is my favourite food,	isn't	it ?
- The boys didn't go to bed,	did	they ?

٢ الجملة المثبتة يتبعها سؤال مُذْثِل منفي :

- ex. - Omar will arrive at 12 o'clock, **won't** he ?  
- Sama can speak two languages, **can't** she ?

٣ الجملة المنفية يتبعها سؤال مُذْثِل مثبت :

- ex. - Omar won't arrive at 11 o'clock, **will** he ?  
- Sama can't speak three languages, **can** she ?

٤ في السؤال المُذْثِل نستخدم دائما ضمير فاعل (وليس الفاعل) :

- ex. - Ahmed isn't careful, is **Ahmed** ? (X)  
- Ahmed isn't careful, is **he** ? (✓)

٥ يبقى ضمير الفاعل (I - we) كما هما في السؤال المُذْثِل ولا يتحولان إلى (you) :

- ex. - I took the medicine, didn't **you** ? (X) - I took the medicine, didn't **I** ? (✓)  
- **We** are late, aren't **you** ? (X) - **We** are late, aren't **we** ? (✓)

٦ في السؤال المُذْثِل يكون النفي بالصيغة المختصرة للفعل المساعد أو الناقص :

- ex. - He works in a secondary school, **does not** he ? (X)  
- He works in a secondary school, **doesn't** he ? (✓)

### Mini Test 1

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- This action film is exciting, ..... it?  
a. hasn't                      b. wasn't                      c. doesn't                      d. isn't  
(المعركة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)
- Lions aren't tame animals, .....?  
a. aren't they                      b. isn't it                      c. don't they                      d. are they  
(أسوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٤)
- Rana is a talented student, isn't .....?  
a. her                      b. she                      c. Rana                      d. hers  
(نورسعيد - يوم مؤاد ٢٠٢٤)
- She can speak two languages, ..... she?  
a. doesn't                      b. isn't                      c. can't                      d. hasn't  
(الإسكندرية - المبرة ٢٠٢٤)
- The exam won't be difficult, ..... it?  
a. doesn't                      b. didn't                      c. will                      d. isn't  
(الماطرة - السادس ٢٠٢٣)
- My brother isn't here, ..... ?  
a. does he                      b. is he                      c. is my brother                      d. isn't he  
(القاهرة - حلوان ٢٠٢٣)
- He's never late for school, ..... he?  
a. isn't                      b. is                      c. hasn't                      d. has  
(أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٣)
- My sister ..... hard, doesn't she ?  
a. work                      b. works                      c. worked                      d. didn't work
- My sister ..... hard, does she ?  
a. work                      b. works                      c. worked                      d. doesn't work

10. Ali has bought a new digital camera, ..... he?  
 a. has                      b. has not                      c. hasn't                      d. b & c
11. I did not arrive late, did ..... ?  
 a. you                      b. I                      c. we                      d. my

2

## Determining the correct auxiliary

تحديد الفعل المساعد / الناقص الصحيح

يتم تحديد الفعل المساعد أو الناقص في السؤال المُذيل حسب زمن الجملة :

١ في الجمل المبنية تستخدم الصيغة المثبتة من الفعل المساعد أو الناقص الموجود بالجملة في السؤال المُذيل :

- ex.** - Nada **didn't** prepare lunch, **did** she ?  
 - Tarek **can't** swim, **can** he ?  
 - They **aren't** naughty, **are** they ?  
 - We **don't** have a car, **do** we ?  
 - You **shouldn't** go to bed late, **should** you ?

### present simple

٢ إذا كان فعل الجملة في المصدر نستخدم (**don't**) في السؤال المُذيل .

- ex.** - I **help** you with the housework, **don't** I ?  
 - You **work** in a hotel, **don't** you ?

٣ إذا كان فعل الجملة في المصدر مضافاً له (s /es /ies) نستخدم (**doesn't**) في السؤال المُذيل :

- ex.** - Areej **helps** me with the housework, **doesn't** she ?  
 - Ramy **works** in a hotel, **doesn't** he ?

### past simple

٤ إذا كان فعل الجملة تصريف ثا (ماضي بسيط) نستخدم (**didn't**) في السؤال المُذيل :

- ex.** - I **helped** you with the housework, **didn't** I ?  
 - You **worked** in a hotel, **didn't** you ?

### am – is – are – was – were

٥ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي أو المساعد (**is – are – was – were**) فيتم نفيه في السؤال المُذيل :

- ex.** - They **are** doing homework, **aren't** they ?  
 - I **was** in the office when you left, **wasn't** I ?

٦ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي أو المساعد (**am**) فيتم تحويله إلى (**aren't**) في السؤال المُذيل :

- ex.** - I **am** waiting for the bus, **aren't** I ?

٧ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي أو المساعد (**am not / am never / am rarely**) فيتم تحويله إلى (**am**) في السؤال المُذيل :

- ex.** - I **am not** late for school, **am** I ?  
 - I **am never** late for school, **am** I ?  
 - I **am rarely** late for school, **am** I ?



**has**

٨ إذا كان فعل الجملة (has + p.p.) فيتم استخدام (hasn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - Aya **has been busy**, **hasn't** she ?

٩ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي (has) فيتم استخدام (doesn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - Aya **has** a lot of friends, **doesn't** she ?

**has to – has got to** يجب

١٠ إذا كان فعل الجملة المساعد (has to) فيتم استخدام (does / doesn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - Rodayna **has to be** at school in time, **doesn't** she ?

١١ إذا كان فعل الجملة المساعد (has got to) فيتم استخدام (has / hasn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - Rodayna **has got to be** at school in time, **hasn't** she ?

**have**

١٢ إذا كان فعل الجملة (have + p.p.) فيتم استخدام (haven't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - The boys **have watched** the match, **haven't** they ?

١٣ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي (have) فيتم استخدام (don't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - They **have** lunch at three, **don't** they ?

**have to – have got to** يجب

١٤ إذا كان فعل الجملة المساعد (have to) فيتم استخدام (do / don't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - We **have to finish** the report today, **don't** we ?

١٥ إذا كان فعل الجملة المساعد (have got to) فيتم استخدام (have / haven't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - We **have got to finish** the report today, **haven't** we ?

**had**

١٦ إذا كان فعل الجملة (had + p.p.) فيتم استخدام (hadn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - Before lunchtime, Mai **had returned** home, **hadn't** she ?

١٧ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي (had) فيتم استخدام (didn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - They **had** lunch at three, **didn't** they ?

١٨ إذا كان فعل الجملة المساعد (had to) فيتم استخدام (didn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - We **had to finish** the report yesterday, **didn't** we ?

**need – needs – needed**

١٩ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي (need / need to) نستخدم (don't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - They **need to take** a rest, **don't** they ?

- We **need some money**, **don't** we ?

٢٠ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي (needs / needs to) فيتم استخدام (doesn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - Amr **needs to follow** a diet, **doesn't** he ?

٢١ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي (needed) فيتم استخدام (didn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - Walaa needed to go shopping, didn't she ?

٢٢ إذا كان فعل الجملة المساعد (needn't) فيتم استخدام (need) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - You needn't drive so fast, need you ?

's

٢٣ إذا كان في الجملة الأصلية ('s) فإنها يمكن أن تكون (is) أو (has) - (لاحظ أنه لا توجد قاعدة حاسمة للاختيار بين (is) و (has) لكن يتم التحديد حسب المعنى) :

ex. - He's at home, isn't he ? (= He is ...)

- He's a headache, doesn't he ? (= He has ...)

- She's waiting for us, isn't she ? (= She is ...)

- She's boring friends, doesn't she ? (= She has ...)

- He's punished for making mistakes, isn't he ? (= He is punished...)

- He's punished me for making mistakes, hasn't he ? (= He has punished ...)

'd = would / had

٢٤ إذا كان هناك ('d + inf.) في الجملة الأصلية فإنها تكون اختصار (would). ونستخدم (would / wouldn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - He'd prefer to have fish, wouldn't he ?

- She'd never shout at her, would he ?

٢٥ إذا كان هناك ('d + p.p.) في الجملة الأصلية فإنها تكون اختصار لـ (had + p.p.) ، ونستخدم (had / hadn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - He'd bought a new car, hadn't he ?

٢٦ إذا لم يكن هناك فعل في المصدر أو (p.p.) بعد ('d) فإنها تكون (had) كفعل أساسي، ونستخدم (didn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - He'd lunch in a restaurant, didn't he ?

٢٧ إذا كان هناك ('d rather) في الجملة الأصلية نستخدم (would / wouldn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - He'd rather go out, wouldn't he ?

- She'd rather not do the shopping, wouldn't she ?

## Mini test 2

⊛ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You've worked as an investigator for many years now, ..... you?

a. didn't                      b. weren't                      c. haven't                      d. have

2. This action film is incredibly exciting, ..... it? (بوتسفيد - بورهواد ٢٠٢٤)

a. hasn't                      b. wasn't                      c. doesn't                      d. isn't

3. You like horror films, ..... you? (الديسكدرية - سرق الديسكدرية ٢٠٢٤)

a. aren't                      b. don't                      c. weren't                      d. haven't

4. Unfortunately, she ..... late for the exam, hasn't she?  
(الشرفية - الإبراهيمية ٢٠٢٤) a. 'd come b. 's coming c. 'll come d. 's come
5. He always forgets his homework, .....?  
(سوهاج - ص ٢٤ ٢٤) a. never he b. don't you c. doesn't he d. did he
6. My parents no longer have any free time, ..... they?  
(سوهاج - حرجا ٢٤ ٢٤) a. have b. haven't c. do d. don't
7. You'd better come early, .....?  
(المنصورة - وادي دجلة، المنصورة ٢٤ ٢٤) a. wouldn't you b. hadn't you c. you wouldn't d. had you
8. You went to school yesterday, ..... you?  
(قاهرة - شرق القاهرة ٢٤ ٢٤) a. don't b. did c. didn't d. do
9. Ramy has a sister, ..... he?  
(بنى سويف - بيا ٢٣ ٢٣) a. isn't b. haven't c. has not d. doesn't
10. It's been a long time since you've seen him, .....?  
(بورسعيد - شمال بورسعيد ٢٣ ٢٣) a. haven't you b. isn't it c. is it d. hasn't it
11. You hadn't met this man before the conference was held, .....?  
(الدقهلية - شربين ٢٣ ٢٣) a. had it b. had it c. were you d. had you
12. Munir hardly buys a newspaper, .....?  
(البحيرة - سوهاج ٢٣ ٢٣) a. does he b. isn't he c. has he d. doesn't he
13. We ..... a break between lessons, have we?  
(المنصورة - سوهاج ٢٣ ٢٣) a. have b. don't have c. haven't had d. a & c
14. He's no time to carry out all the tasks, ..... he?  
(الدقهلية - دقا ٢٣ ٢٣) a. is b. doesn't c. hasn't d. does
15. The girl ate fish for lunch, ..... she?  
a. did b. didn't c. was d. wasn't
16. Ibrahim ..... in the office, wasn't he?  
a. is b. isn't c. was d. wasn't
17. I am very late, ..... ?  
a. am I b. am not I c. aren't you d. aren't I
18. I am not very late, ..... ?  
a. am I b. am not I c. are I d. aren't I
19. Maha has gone back home, ..... she?  
a. has b. hasn't c. does d. doesn't
20. Omar has breakfast before leaving home, ..... he?  
a. has b. has not c. doesn't d. b & c
21. Samar ..... a drink during the break, doesn't she?  
a. has b. doesn't have c. has had d. hasn't had
22. Samar ..... a drink during the break, does she?  
a. has b. doesn't have c. has had d. hasn't had
23. Samar ..... a drink during the break, hasn't she?  
a. hasn't b. doesn't have c. has had d. hasn't had
24. Samar ..... a drink during the break, has she?  
a. has b. doesn't have c. has had d. hasn't had



25. She has to wear the school uniform, ..... she ?  
 a. has                      b. does                      c. hasn't                      d. doesn't
26. She has got to wear the school uniform, ..... she ?  
 a. has                      b. does                      c. hasn't                      d. doesn't
27. We have to arrive at work in time, ..... we ?  
 a. don't                      b. haven't                      c. do                      d. have
28. We have got to arrive at work in time, ..... we ?  
 a. don't                      b. haven't                      c. do                      d. have
29. You had a meal with some friends, ..... you ?  
 a. had                      b. had not                      c. did                      d. didn't
30. You didn't have a meal with some friends, ..... you ?  
 a. had                      b. hadn't                      c. did                      d. didn't
31. You had had a meal with some friends before going back home, ..... you ?  
 a. had                      b. hadn't                      c. did                      d. didn't
32. You hadn't had a meal with some friends before going back home, ..... you ?  
 a. had                      b. hadn't                      c. did                      d. didn't
33. She ..... help with her homework, does she ?  
 a. needs                      b. doesn't need                      c. needed                      d. needn't
34. I ..... help my daughter with her homework, need I ?  
 a. needs                      b. doesn't need                      c. needed                      d. needn't
35. She ..... someone to help with her homework, doesn't she ?  
 a. needs                      b. doesn't need                      c. needed                      d. needn't
36. She ..... help with her homework, didn't she ?  
 a. needs                      b. doesn't need                      c. needed                      d. needn't
37. She's watering the flowers, ..... she ?  
 a. is                      b. isn't                      c. doesn't                      d. hasn't
38. She's never late for work, ..... she ?  
 a. is                      b. isn't                      c. doesn't                      d. hasn't
39. She's always late for work, ..... she ?  
 a. is                      b. isn't                      c. doesn't                      d. hasn't
40. She's enough free time, ..... she ?  
 a. is                      b. isn't                      c. doesn't                      d. b & c
41. She's interesting jobs to do at home, ..... she ?  
 a. is                      b. isn't                      c. doesn't                      d. has not
42. She'd rather stay at home to relax, ..... she ?  
 a. had                      b. hadn't                      c. would                      d. wouldn't
43. She'd rather not go out, ..... she ?  
 a. had                      b. hadn't                      c. would                      d. wouldn't
44. She'd a tiring day, ..... she ?  
 a. had                      b. did                      c. didn't                      d. wouldn't
45. She'd had a tiring day before she finally went home, ..... she ?  
 a. had                      b. hadn't                      c. didn't                      d. wouldn't

## 3

## Determining the correct pronoun

حدد الضمير الصحيح في السؤال المُدَّيِّل

١ كما ذكرنا من قبل، يُستخدم دائماً ضمير فاعل (وليس الإسم) في السؤال المُدَّيِّل :

- ex. - Reem was angry, wasn't Reem ? (X)  
 - Reem was angry, wasn't she ? (✓)

٢ إذا كان الفاعل مفرد مذكر عاقل يُستخدم ضمير الفاعل (he) في السؤال المُدَّيِّل :

- ex. - Omar bought a car, didn't Omar ? (X)  
 - Omar bought a car, didn't he ? (✓)

٣ إذا كان الفاعل مفرد مؤنث عاقل يُستخدم ضمير الفاعل (she) في السؤال المُدَّيِّل :

- ex. - Malak likes ice cream, doesn't Malak ? (X)  
 - Malak likes ice cream, doesn't she ? (✓)

٤ إذا كان الفاعل مفرد غير عاقل يُستخدم ضمير الفاعل (it) في السؤال المُدَّيِّل :

- ex. - A dog chased Yumna, didn't a dog ? (X)  
 - A dog chased Yumna, didn't it ? (✓)

٥ إذا كان الفاعل جمع عاقل أو غير عاقل يُستخدم ضمير الفاعل (they) في السؤال المُدَّيِّل :

- ex. - Nada and Sama are your best friends, aren't they ?  
 - The rabbits ate all the carrots in the garden, didn't they ?

٦ هناك أسماء يُحتفل أن تكون مذكر أو مؤنث مثل :

- person - student - child - doctor- teacher - engineer - farmer...

إذا كان واضحاً أن الكلام عن مذكر أو مؤنث، فإننا نستخدم الضمير (he / she) في السؤال المُدَّيِّل حسب السياق :

- ex. - A person in a white blouse found my keys, didn't she ?  
 - A doctor with a white moustache has examined me, hasn't he ?

إذا لم يكن واضحاً من السياق أن الكلام عن مذكر أو مؤنث، فإننا نستخدم الضمير (they) في السؤال المُدَّيِّل للإشارة إلى هذه الأسماء حتى عندما تكون في صيغة مفرد :

- ex. - A teacher has told you to improve your handwriting, haven't they ?  
 - A student gave this mobile to the head teacher, didn't they ?

٧ نستخدم (they) كضمير في السؤال المُدَّيِّل إذا كان الفاعل أحد الكلمات التالية :

- someone / somebody / anyone / anybody / everyone / everybody /  
 no one/ nobody

- ex. - Someone has called you, haven't they ?  
 - Everyone is at home, aren't they ?

٨ نستخدم (it) كضمير في السؤال المُدَّيِّل إذا كان الفاعل أحد الكلمات التالية :

- something / anything / everything / nothing  
 ex. - Something has happened, hasn't it ?  
 - Everything is OK, isn't it ?

٩ إذا كان الفاعل (this / that) يعود على غير عاقل يكون الضمير في السؤال المذيل (it) :  
ex. - That is your pen, isn't it ?

١٠ إذا كان الفاعل (this / that) يعود على عاقل يكون الضمير في السؤال المذيل (he / she) :  
ex. - That is my son Ahmed, isn't he ?

- That girl is my daughter, isn't she ?

١١ إذا كان الفاعل (these / those) يكون الضمير في السؤال المذيل (they) :  
ex. - These are our friends, aren't they ?

١٢ إذا كان الفاعل (there) تبقي كما هي في السؤال المُذيل :  
ex. - There's something wrong, isn't there ?  
- There weren't any problems, were there ?

### Mini test 3

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- There is a little we can do about it, .....?  
a. isn't it      b. isn't there      c. is there      d. is it  
(البحر - البحر)
- Nobody should pollute our environment, ..... ?  
a. shouldn't they      b. should we      c. should they      d. shouldn't we  
(البيئة - البيئة)
- Someone has called you, ..... they?  
a. have      b. haven't      c. do      d. don't  
(البحر - البحر)
- Everyone has a book, .....?  
a. does he      b. doesn't he      c. do they      d. don't they  
(البحيرة - البحيرة)
- There are hardly any mistakes in this exam, ..... ?  
a. are there      b. aren't there      c. are they      d. aren't they  
(الخطأ - الخطأ)
- Nothing can make me laugh, ..... ?  
a. can't it      b. can it      c. can't they      d. can they  
(الضحك - الضحك)
- He is not good at math, .....?  
a. do I      b. is he      c. isn't he      d. don't I  
(الرياضة - الرياضة)
- Everyone's here, ..... ?  
a. aren't they      b. don't they      c. isn't he      d. isn't she  
(الجميع - الجميع)
- Nobody in the family believes Carl, ..... ?  
a. do they      b. don't they      c. doesn't he      d. does he  
(الجميع - الجميع)
- This mobile phone cost you a lot of money, ..... ?  
a. doesn't it      b. does it      c. didn't it      d. don't you  
(الجميع - الجميع)
- Some boys broke the window, didn't ..... ?  
a. some boys      b. he      c. they      d. them  
(الجميع - الجميع)
- A bird has built its nest here, hasn't ..... ?  
a. it      b. he      c. she      d. they  
(الجميع - الجميع)



13. Two birds have built their nest here, haven't ..... ?  
a. it                      b. he                      c. she                      d. they
14. A child is crying next door, ..... ?  
a. isn't he                      b. isn't she                      c. aren't they                      d. isn't it
15. Someone brought you a present, ..... ?  
a. weren't you                      b. weren't they                      c. didn't they                      d. haven't you
16. A typical Egyptian farmer with traditional earrings is working on a farm, ..... ?  
a. isn't she                      b. is he                      c. aren't they                      d. are they
17. Somebody has stolen my mobile, ..... ?  
a. hasn't he                      b. hasn't she                      c. have they                      d. haven't they
18. Something went wrong with my car, ..... ?  
a. did it                      b. didn't it                      c. did they                      d. didn't they
19. This is my sister Sama, ..... ?  
a. isn't this                      b. isn't she                      c. isn't it                      d. is she
20. That is my old motorbike, ..... ?  
a. isn't this                      b. isn't she                      c. isn't it                      d. is she
21. These are the pens you want, ..... ?  
a. aren't they                      b. aren't these                      c. isn't it                      d. is it

## 4

## Tag questions with Compound and Complex Sentences

١ لاحظ تكوين الجمل التي تحتوي على روابط :

أداة ربط	+	جملة ثانوية	+	جملة رئيسية
↓		↓		↓
ex. - If		she works hard,		she will succeed in life and work.
- When		I arrived home,		Nada was asleep in bed.

٢ الجملة التي تأتي بعد الرابطة مباشرة ليست جملة رئيسية ولا تُستخدم في تكوين السؤال المُذيل :

- ex. - If she works hard, she will succeed in life and work, won't she ?  
= She will succeed in life and work if she works hard, won't she ?  
- When I arrived home, Nada was asleep in bed, wasn't she ?  
= Nada was asleep in bed when I arrived home, wasn't she ?

لاحظ أن الجملة الثانوية لا تؤثر على السؤال المُذيل من ناحية النفي والإثبات :

- ex. - If Omar doesn't have enough time, Aya will help me, won't she ?

❧ لاحظ السؤال المُذيل في الصيغة التالية :

I / We + think / believe / say / expect / ... + جملة رئيسية + سؤال مزيل على الجملة الرئيسية

ex. - I think Omnia is late, isn't she? (Not: don't I)

- We believe that he works in a bank, doesn't he? (Not: don't we)

لاحظ أن عبارة (I think / believe ...) تؤثر على السؤال المُذيل من ناحية النفي والإثبات :

ex. - I believe he can win the race, can't he?

- I don't believe he can win the race, can he?

❧ لاحظ السؤال المُذيل في الصيغة التالية :

He / she / it / you / they + think / believe / say / expect / ... + جملة رئيسية + سؤال مزيل على الجملة think / believe ...

ex. - Omar thinks that he is right, doesn't he?

- They believe that life in the countryside is simple, don't they?

### Mini test 4

❧ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- You don't think I will pass the exam, .....?  
a. won't I      b. don't you      c. will I      d. do you  
(الاستدراج - الجواب: لا)
- It's a must that we should finish work soon, .....?  
a. should we      b. shouldn't we      c. mustn't it      d. isn't it  
(الضرورة - الجواب: لا)
- I don't believe he is a liar, .....?  
a. do I      b. don't I      c. isn't he      d. is he  
(المبوضحة - الجواب: لا)
- Noha called me as soon as dad had got out of hospital, .....?  
a. did she      b. didn't she      c. had he      d. hadn't he
- If they were rich, they would donate money for charities, ..... they?  
a. were      b. weren't      c. would      d. wouldn't
- We don't think that the English test was difficult, .....?  
a. was it      b. do we      c. don't we      d. wasn't it  
(الافتراض - الجواب: لا)
- I think everyone's here, .....?  
a. isn't he      b. don't I      c. aren't they      d. don't they  
(السؤال - الجواب: لا)
- I think Zamzam will come first, .....?  
a. do I      b. don't I      c. will she      d. won't she
- I don't think Zamzam will come first, .....?  
a. do I      b. don't I      c. will she      d. won't she
- I think Zamzam won't come first, .....?  
a. do I      b. don't I      c. will she      d. won't she
- Khalid believes I am rich, .....?  
a. doesn't he      b. does he      c. am I      d. aren't I

١ بعد جمل الأمر الملبث (افعل) يمكن أن نستخدم الصيغ التالية في السؤال المُذَيَّل :

- ..., will you? ..., would you? ..., can you? ..., could you?

ex. - Give me a hand, will you?

- Wait here for a minute, would you?

- Get me something to drink, can you?

كما يمكن استخدام (can't you – won't you) في السؤال المُذَيَّل لإعطاء جمل الأمر الملبث مزيد من التأكيد والحزم :

ex. - Keep silence, can't you?

- Return to your desk, won't you?

٢ بعد جمل الأمر المنفي (لا تفعل) نستخدم (will you) في السؤال المُذَيَّل :

ex. - Don't lie to me again, will you?

٣ لا نستخدم حرف الجر في (ought to) في السؤال :

ex. - You ought to be here in time, oughtn't you? (Not: oughtn't you to?)

٤ نستخدم السؤال المُذَيَّل الملبث بعد الجمل التي تحتوي على ظروف وكلمات تعطي معنى اللبي مثل :

- never - no - nobody - hardly - scarcely نادراً - seldom نادراً - rarely نادراً

- little قلما ...

ex. - You never tell lies, do you? (Not: don't you?)

- It's no use trying to fix this mobile, is it? (Not: isn't it?)

- It's hardly been cloudy at all this summer, has it? (Not: hasn't it?)

- There's little we can do to help her, is there? (Not: isn't there?)

- Nobody arrived, did they? (Not: didn't they?)

٥ الصيغة (too + adj. + to) تُعطي معنى اللبي لكن السؤال المُذَيَّل يكون منفي :

ex. - She is too young to get married, is she? (Not: is she?)

٦ إذا بدأت الجملة بـ (Let's) يكون السؤال المُذَيَّل (shall we) :

ex. - Let's go fishing, shall we?

٧ يرتفع الصوت في السؤال المُذَيَّل إذا كان المقصود سؤال حقيقي (المتحدث يريد أن يعرف شيئاً) :

ex. - The train arrives at seven, doesn't it?

٨ ينخفض الصوت في السؤال المُذَيَّل إذا كان المتحدث متأكد أن ما يقوله صحيح :

ex. - It is a good idea, isn't it?



٩ إذا جاءت الصفة منفردة نستخدم كما في المحادثات (isn't it) :

ex. - Fantastic, isn't it? - Horrible, isn't it?

١٠ لاحظ انه في الصيغة التالية يكون السؤال المذيل علي الجزء الأول من الجملة :

- It + be + adj. جملة + صفة + sentence

ex. - It's very important that we eat healthy food, isn't it?

### Mini test 5

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Don't come late again, ..... you?  
a. don't      b. will      c. aren't      d. shall  
(اسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)
2. Let's visit the Egyptian Museum, ..... ?  
a. will you      b. shall you      c. shall we      d. can you  
(سيوهاج - البليتا ٢٠٢٣)
3. Nobody has arrived yet, ..... ?  
a. has he      b. hasn't he      c. have they      d. haven't they  
(السيوط - أبوب ٢٠٢٣)
4. She hardly goes anywhere alone, ..... ?  
a. is she      b. does she      c. doesn't she      d. hasn't she  
(البحيرة - أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)
5. No one read the story well, ..... ?  
a. did he      b. do they      c. did they      d. don't they  
(الغاهرة - الرينون ٢٠٢٣)
6. My brother can hardly speak Spanish, ..... he?  
a. can      b. can't      c. does      d. doesn't  
(السيوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٣)
7. She seldom has lunch outdoors, ..... she?  
a. hasn't      b. doesn't      c. does      d. has  
(السيوط - المنج ٢٠٢٣)
8. Don't eat the whole chicken, ..... ?  
a. will I      b. won't you      c. will you      d. won't I
9. Help me with the housework, ..... you?  
a. will      b. would      c. can      d. a, b & c
10. Don't shout at your sister, ..... you?  
a. will      b. would      c. can      d. a, b & c
11. They ought to help their neighbours, ..... they?  
a. ought to      b. oughtn't to      c. oughtn't      d. ought
12. Ayman never wastes his time, ..... he?  
a. does      b. doesn't      c. does not      d. b & c
13. He's too fat to play football, ..... ?  
a. has he      b. hasn't he      c. is he      d. isn't he



## VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

amazing(adj)	مذهل	hilarious(adj)	مُضحك جداً
annoying(adj)	مُزعج	powerful(adj)	قوي
awful(adj)	شنيع - فظيع	stupid(adj)	غبى
cheerful(adj)	مبتهج - بشوش - مبهج	upset(adj)	منزعج

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

affect(ed) (v)	يؤثر في	partner(n)	شريك
astronaut(n)	رائد الفضاء	personally(adv)	شخصياً
brave(adj)	شجاع	planet(n)	كوكب
burning(adj)	مُحترق - مشتعل	popular(n)	شعبي - محبوب
choice(n)	اختيار	prefer(red) (v)	يُفضل
empty(adj)	فارغ	right (n - adj)	حق - مُجق / على صواب
ending(n)	نهاية	scenery(n)	مناظر طبيعية
equal(adj)	متساوي	silly(adj)	سخيف - تافه
equipment(n)	مُعدات - تجهيزات	starve(d) (v)	يعاني الجوع - يموت جوعاً
mention (ed) (v)	يذكر - يقول	suffer(ed) (v)	يعاني
officer(n)	ضابط	surprising(adj)	مُدهش
original(adj)	أصلي	surprisingly(adv)	بشكل مُدهل - من المُدهش
owner(n)	صاحب - مالك	windmill(n)	طاحونة هوائية

### Exercises On Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Key Vocabulary

- "My brother is always using my phone." It's so .....  
a. annoying      b. amazing      c. hilarious      d. cheerful
- Losing the final match is a/an ..... experience I don't like to remember.  
a. brilliant      b. upset      c. brave      d. awful
- His ..... jokes made us laugh hysterically.  
a. equal      b. hilarious      c. Martian      d. bestselling

4. His smile never disappears from his face. He is a/an ..... person.

- a. cheerful      b. cheerless      c. stupid      d. upset

5. This van has a/an ..... engine.

- a. hilarious      b. powerful      c. cheerful      d. upset



### Important Vocabulary

6. Mr Ali's exam was ..... easy.

(سوهاج - المنشأة ٢٤ ٢٢)

- a. surprisingly      b. surprising      c. surprise      d. surprised

7. We went for a drive to enjoy the ..... of the forest near our town.

(كفر السبح - بلد ٢٣ ٢٢)

- a. sense      b. flavour      c. scenery      d. scent

8. ...., I think that comedy films always make people feel good.

(القاهرة - المرح ٢٣ ٢٢)

- a. Personality      b. Personally      c. Personal      d. Person

9. Your opinion won't ..... my decision about travelling abroad.

(السيوط - ديروط ٢٣ ٢٢)

- a. affect      b. effect      c. infect      d. defect

10. In Third-World countries, most people ..... from poverty.

- a. starve      b. affect      c. suffer      d. prefer

11. Keeping birds in ..... is something cruel. Birds have the right to their freedom.

- a. cartoons      b. mates      c. talents      d. cages

12. You should be honest, especially with people who ..... you.

- a. trust      b. invade      c. survive      d. lack

13. Egypt is a peace-loving country that never ..... or attacks other countries.

- a. trusts      b. invades      c. survives      d. lacks

14. The ..... painting لوحة is now in the Egyptian Museum.

- a. hilarious      b. hostile      c. powerful      d. original

15. Such a historical decision needed a/an ..... leader to take.

- a. brilliant      b. upset      c. brave      d. awful

16. I didn't hear him ..... the place where he had left the keys.

- a. mention      b. recommend      c. lack      d. suffer

17. You have the ..... to object, but in a polite way.

- a. true      b. false      c. wrong      d. right

18. I haven't eaten anything all day. I am .....

- a. starving      b. affecting      c. rescuing      d. preferring



## Part II

## VOCABULARY STUDY

## 1 Verbal Collocations عبارات لفظية

feel	sorry for	يشعر بالأسف علي	make	people feel good	يجعل الناس يشعرون شعوراً طيباً
get	married	يتزوج	share	opinions with	يتفق في الرأي مع
	the right to	لديه الحق في	take	control of	يتحكم في
	a powerful message	له رسالة قوية	take/ win	power	يستولي على السلطة
have	a happy ending	ينتهي لهابة سعيدة	tell	a story	يحكي قصة
make	mistakes	يخطئ			

## 2 Synonyms مرادفات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
amazing	فذهل
astonishing, very surprising, very good	
annoying	مزعج
irritating, displeasing	
awful	شنيع - فظيع
terrible, very bad	
cheerful	مبتهج - مبتهوش
pleasant, happy, jolly, joyful, joyous	
hilarious	فضحك جداً - هزلي
very funny, extremely amusing	
powerful	قوي - مؤثر
strong, intense, influential	
stupid	غبى
silly, unintelligent	
upset	مزعج
distressed, troubled, worried, bothered, saddened	

## 3 Antonyms العكاسات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
amazing	فذهل
everyday - ordinary	عادي
annoying	مزعج
pleasant, agreeable	ساز - مقبول
awful	شنيع - فظيع
lovely, wonderful, excellent	رائع - ممتاز
cheerful	مبتهج - مبتهوش
sad, cheerless	حزين - كليل
hilarious	فضحك جداً - هزلي
sad, serious	حزين - جاد
powerful	قوي - مؤثر
powerless, weak, ineffective	ضعيف - غير مؤثر
stupid	غبى
intelligent, clever	دكي - ماهر

#### 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary المشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

##### cage

cage (v)	يحبس في قفص	- It is not fair to cage this bird.
cage (n)	قفص	- It is not fair to put this bird in a cage.
caged (adj)	محبوس في قفص	- It is not fair to keep this bird caged.

#### 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a surprising end to the film	نهاية مذهشة للفيلم	not really	ليس صحيحاً
all the time	طوال الوقت	on the island	على الجزيرة
at all	على الإطلاق	positive thinking	لتفكير الايجابي
be all the same	جميعها متشابهة	rescue mission	مهمة إنقاذ
be hostile to	يكون عدوانياً تجاه	scientific facts	حقائق علمية
be terrible at	سيء جداً في	surprisingly funny	ممتع بشكل مدهش
go into battle	يدخل معركة	the problem with	المشكلة في
have a right to	لديه حق في	true story	قصة حقيقية
		young man	شاب

#### 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

give up	يستسلم - يفلح عن	look like	يشبه - يبدو مثل
learn ... from	يتعلم من	share ... with	يتفق في مع

#### 7 Clear the confusion مَحْظُ التَّوْخُّفِ

##### be right to - have a / the right to

- **be right to + inf.** محق في
  - We are right to ask for better working conditions ظروف.
- **have a / the right to + inf. / n.** له الحق في
  - We have the right to ask for better working conditions.
  - = We have the right to better working conditions.

##### go / get + adj. = become + adj.

- **go / become** (dark / تظلم / mad / يفقد صوابه / blind / يفقد بصره / deaf / يفقد سمعه / dumb / يفقد النطق / wrong / يسوء / missing / يوه etc.)
- If anything goes wrong, just call me.
- = If anything becomes wrong, just call me.

- **get / become** (tired يتعب / bored يسام / **angry** يغضب / **dressed** يرتدي ملابس / **interested** يهتم / **cold** يبرد / **hot** يسخن / **burnt** يحترق.... etc.)  
 - He easily **gets angry** and shouts at his children.  
 = He easily **becomes angry** and shouts at his children.

### Exercises On Vocabulary Study

❶ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "You're amazing, Nora." This means Nora is .....

(الفليوسه - بسين القناطر ٢٠٢٤)

a. everyday      b. normal      c. ordinary      d. astonishing

2. My mother's words ..... me feel good.

a. lacked      b. made      c. shared      d. won

3. Influential is to ..... as hostile is to cruel.

a. powerless      b. powerful      c. enjoyable      d. fun

4. The problem ..... action films is that they teach children violence.

a. at      b. with      c. for      d. on

5. There was a surprising end ..... the film.

a. from      b. with      c. by      d. to

6. To me, romantic films are ..... the same. A boy and a girl meet and one of the two families refuse their marriage.

a. at      b. some      c. all      d. as

7. My uncle is very happy because he has given ..... smoking since last October.

a. back      b. down      c. for      d. up

8. The crown Prince ولي العهد will take ..... only when the King dies.

a. part      b. place      c. power      d. turns

9. He is ..... the trumpet.

a. playing      b. doing      c. telling      d. having

10. Something that is awful is not .....

a. lovely      b. excellent      c. serious      d. a & b

11. When we say someone is cheerful, we mean they are .....

a. saddened      b. distressed      c. intense      d. happy

12. "That's annoying." The adjective 'annoying' in this utterance is the antonym of .....

a. irritating      b. displeasing      c. pleasant      d. amazed



13. She has ..... to accept or refuse the suggestion.

- a. right                      b. the right                      c. a right                      d. b & c

14. She is ..... to accept or refuse the suggestion.

- a. a right                      b. the right                      c. a & b                      d. right

## PART III

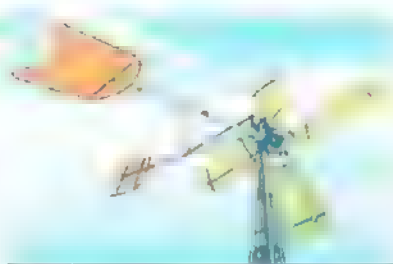
# READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

#### Two Films I have watched

(SB page 57)

I saw a great film last night. It was called "The Boy who **Harnessed**<sup>(1)</sup> the Wind". It was about a boy in Malawi who built a **windmill**<sup>(2)</sup> and helped his village get water. I thought it had a really powerful **message**<sup>(3)</sup> about **positive**<sup>(4)</sup> **thinking**<sup>(5)</sup> and **never giving up**<sup>(6)</sup>.



- (1) يستخدم - يسخر  
(2) طاحونة هو بيه  
(3) رساله  
(4) ايجابي  
(5) تفكير  
(6) الاستسلام  
(7) قصة لعبة  
(8) فيلم صور متحركة  
(9) شخصيه  
(10) نهاية

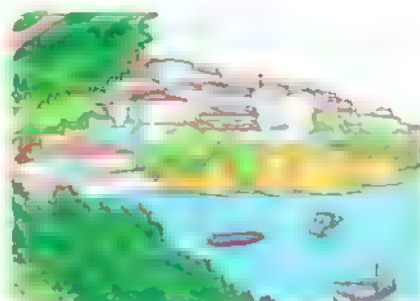
I also saw 'Toy Story<sup>(7)</sup> 4', which was great fun. It's a brilliant **animated film**<sup>(8)</sup>, and **personally**<sup>(9)</sup>, I think that these kinds of films always make people feel good. They're not too long and the stories always have a happy **ending**<sup>(10)</sup>.

#### Two Film reviews

(WB page 33)

##### We met in Greece

If you like **musicals**<sup>(1)</sup>, then you'll love the film We met in Greece. It's about a man who travels to a **Greek**<sup>(2)</sup> island and meets the daughter of a hotel **owner**<sup>(3)</sup>.



- (1) افلام غنائيه  
(2) يوناني  
(3) صاحب - مالك  
(4) يسمح - يترك  
(5) رومانسي

At first, the hotel owner is very hostile to the man, but when he realises he's both kind and talented, he **lets**<sup>(4)</sup> his daughter marry him. Then it also becomes a **romantic**<sup>(5)</sup> story!

The music is brilliant and the **scenery**<sup>(6)</sup> on the island is beautiful. I would definitely recommend this film.

Some **comedies**<sup>(7)</sup> are **hilarious**<sup>(8)</sup>, but I didn't think that visit to a farm was funny at all. It's about a young man from the city who goes to help on his uncle's farm one summer.

The young man is **terrible**<sup>(9)</sup> at **farming**<sup>(10)</sup>, and makes lots of mistakes all the time. I'm not sure why this was supposed to be funny. Personally, I thought the man was **annoying**<sup>(11)</sup>!

The farmer is a kind man and some of the acting was quite good, but most of the film was too **stupid**<sup>(12)</sup> to enjoy. I would not recommend this film.

(6) مناظر طبيعية

(7) أفلام كوميدية

(8) مضحك جدا

(9) سيء - فطبع

(10) الزراعة

(11) مزعج

(12) غبي

## 2 Listening Texts

### People giving their opinions on films

(SB page 56)

**Ramy** : What kinds of film do you like watching Dareen ?  
Romantic ones, like Mum ?

**Dareen** : Not really, most of them are a bit silly. I love comedies, especially the old ones they make me laugh. I always feel happy afterwards. What about you, Tamer ?



**Tamer** : My favourite films are action films. They're really exciting and I love all the car chases and gun fights !

**Dareen** : Really ? I think most of them are really boring and they don't usually have a good story either.



**Tamer** : True, but I don't mind that. It's all about the action for me. You like action films too, don't you Ramy ?

**Ramy** : Some, but I agree with Dareen that they're generally not very interesting. I don't mind some science fiction films, but I enjoy horror films best.



**Dareen** : Aren't you scared ?

**Ramy** : Yes, but that's what I like about them.

**Injy :** What kinds of books do you like reading, Lina ? Science fiction ?

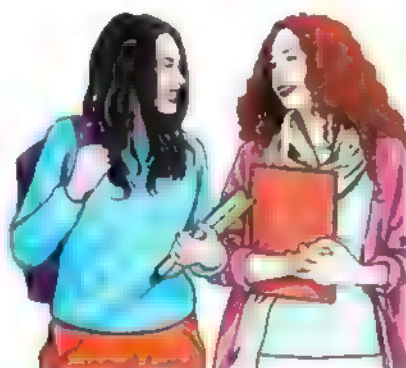
**Lina:** Not really. Stories about space are boring. Personally, I like historical stories, because they teach you about the past. What do you prefer, Injy ?

**Injy :** My favourite stories are horror stories. They're really exciting and I love frightening films !

**Lina:** I disagree. I hate feeling scared. You like romantic stories as well, don't you ?

**Injy :** I used to like them, but they're all the same : a boy meets a girl and they get married !  
You like romantic stories too, don't you Lina ?

**Lina:** Some, but I agree with you. They're all the same !



## PART IV

## LANGUAGE

### Adjectives and Adverbs

### الصفات والظروف

#### 1 Adjectives الصفات

١ الصفة هي كلمة تصف اسم و تأتي غالبا قبله :

**ex.** - He bought an **expensive** mobile yesterday.

- I saw a **frightening** animal in the fields.

٢ يمكن أن تأتي الصفة و بعدها الموصوف أو بدون الموصوف بعد:

- **be** - **look** يبدو - **seem** يبدو - **appear** يبدو - **sound** يبدو - **taste** يعطي مذاق  
- **feel** يعطي رائحة - **smell** يعطي شعورا أو ملمس

**ex.** - Leen felt cold. - Ahmed looks happy. - Mum's food smells delicious.

٣ الصفات التالية لا تستخدم قبل الاسم مطلقا :

- **afraid** خائف - **awake** مستيقظ - **asleep** نائم - **alone** وحيد - **alight** مضاء - **alive** حي

**ex.** - Roaa feels afraid when she is left **alone**.

- We were happy that he was **alive**.

٤ تأتي الصفة بعد الكلمات التالية وليس قبلها :

→ **someone** - **somebody** - **something** - **somewhere** - **noone** - **nobody** -  
**nothing** - **nowhere** - **anyone** - **anybody** - **anything** - **anywhere** - **everyone** -  
**everybody** - **everything** - **everywhere**

**ex.** - I met **somebody** important.

- He needs to buy **everything** necessary.



## Mini Test 1

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mariam is a .....  
 a. tall                      b. girl tall                      c. tall girl                      d. tall girls
2. Mariam is .....  
 a. tall                      b. girl tall                      c. tall girl                      d. tall girls
3. Amr looked very ..... after losing the match.  
 a. anger                      b. angry                      c. angrily                      d. b & c
4. This flower smells .....  
 a. a well                      b. a good                      c. well                      d. good
5. I saw ..... in front of my shop.  
 a. an afraid boy                      b. boy afraid  
 c. a boy who was afraid                      d. a & c
6. I enjoy looking at .....  
 a. babies asleep                      b. asleep babies  
 c. a & b                      d. babies that are asleep
7. There's ..... with my stomach.  
 a. something wrong                      b. wrong something  
 c. something who is wrong                      d. a & c

### A Comparative adjectives صفات المقارنة

١ تقارن صفة المقارنة بين طرفين في صفة معينة :

- ex. - Arabic is **easier than** English.  
 - A lion is **more dangerous than** a fox.  
 - Chicken is **less expensive than** meat.

٢ في الصفات القصيرة تتحول الصفة العادية إلى صفة مقارنة بإضافة (er / r / ier) للنهاية الصفة :

- ex. - fast – **faster**                      - old - **older**  
 - large – **larger**                      - close – **closer**  
 - easy – **easier**                      - happy – **happier**

٣ يُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير من الصفة القصيرة إذا كان مسبقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (er) للنهاية الصفة القصيرة :

- ex. - big – **bigger**                      - thin – **thinner**

٤ تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة المقارنة كالتالي :

- **more** أكثر / **less + adj.** صفة

- ex. - beautiful – **more** beautiful / **less** beautiful

## COMPARISON

- ١ يمكن أن نستخدم (less) قبل الصفات القصيرة (ولا يمكن استخدام (more) ) :
- ex. - Ahmed is stronger than Ali. - Ali is less strong than Ahmed.
- ٢ يمكن استخدام الظروف التالية قبل صفات المقارنة لتقوية أو إضعاف الصفة:
- slightly طفيفة - a bit قليلاً - a little قليلاً - even كثيراً - much كثيراً  
- a lot كثيراً - far كثيراً - .....
- ex. - Travelling by train is much slower than travelling by plane.  
- The weather today is a little colder than yesterday.
- ٣ لاحظ شكل الضمير بعد (than) : (يُفضل استخدام ضمير فاعل إذا كان بعده فعل و يُفضل استخدام ضمير مفعول في حالة عدم وجود فعل):
- ex. - He is taller than I am. = He is taller than me.  
- We earn more money than they do. = We earn more money than them.
- ٤ يمكن استخدام (the) مع صفات المقارنة إذا كان بعدها (of) وكانت تشير إلى طرفين :
- ex. - Hadeer is the taller of the two sisters.
- ٥ لاحظ استخدام الصيغة التالية بمعنى (كلما ..... كلما ..... ):
- The + فعل + فاعل + صفة مقارنة + the ، فعل + فاعل + صفة مقارنة + The
- ex. - The taller you are, the faster you run.  
- The more you eat, the less fit you are.
- ٦ نستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن التساوي:
- as + adj. الصفة + as
- ex. - Aya is as old as Nada. They are both 17.  
- Drinking fresh juice is nearly as useful as eating fresh fruit.
- ٧ في حالة النفي نستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن عدم التساوي:
- not + as / so + adj. الصفة + as
- ex. - I am not as old as Omar. = I am not so old as Omar.

### Mini Test 2

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My mother is ..... of my parents. (الأسرع ، العاشر من ردها ٢٣ )  
a. kind                      b. kinder                      c. the kindest                      d. the kinder
2. Adel bought a new car for 50000 pounds and sold his old one for 20000. This means that Adel's new car is ..... his old one.  
a. slightly more expensive than                      b. even more expensive than  
c. almost as expensive as                      d. is exactly as expensive as

3. Having water in the desert is far ..... having money although they are both useful.  
(حفر السبخ - بئلا ٢٣ ١٢)  
a. as important as                      b. more important than  
c. important than                      d. important as
4. Rosa's hair is ..... Malak's.  
a. long                      b. longer                      c. longer than                      d. the longest
5. Malak's hair is long, but Rosa's is .....  
a. long                      b. longer                      c. longer than                      d. the longest
6. .... you exercise, the fitter you get.  
a. The more                      b. More                      c. The most                      d. Most
7. Sama is 1.65. She is ..... than Ahmed who is 1.72.  
a. less taller                      b. shorter                      c. less tall                      d. b & c
8. A ship is ..... than a plane.  
a. slow                      b. more slow                      c. much slower                      d. as slow
9. Ahmed drives a car better than .....  
a. me do                      b. I do                      c. me to do                      d. a & b
10. Omar is ..... of the two brothers.  
a. the older                      b. the oldest                      c. older                      d. a & c

### B Superlative adjectives      صفات التفضيل

١ تُمَيِّز صفة التفضيل بين فرد ومجموعة (أكثر من طرفين) :

- ex. - French is **the easiest** subject.  
- The lion is **the most dangerous** animal.  
- The rabbit is **the least dangerous** animal.

٢ تتحول الصفة العادية إلى صفات تفضيل بإضافة (**the**) قبل الصفة وإضافة (est / st / iest) لنهاية الصفة :

- ex. - fast – **the fastest**                      - old – **the oldest**  
- large – **the largest**                      - close – **the closest**  
- easy – **the easiest**                      - happy – **the happiest**

٣ يُضَاعَف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضَاف (the ...+ est) إلى الصفة القصيرة :

- ex. - big – **the biggest**                      - thin – **the thinnest**

٤ تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي :

- **the most** الأكثر / **the least** الأقل + adj. صفة

- ex. - beautiful – **the most beautiful** / **the least beautiful**

### ملاحظات عامة على صفات التفضيل

١ لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل بدون (**the**) بعد الأعداد الترتيبية

(**first / second / third / fourth...etc.**) :

- ex. - Cairo is **first largest** city in Africa.



❖ لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل عندما يسبقها صفة ملكية أو (’s) الملكية:

- my - his - her - your - our - their - its - .....’s

ex. - Naguib Mahfouz is Egypt’s best novelist.

- Is Ahmed your youngest brother?

❖ لاحظ استخدام حروف الجر (in - of) بعد صفات التفضيل :

(أ) تستخدم (in) قبل الأسماء المفردة :

ex. - He is the best player in the team.

- Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

(ب) تستخدم (of) قبل الأسماء الجمع :

ex. - Sama is the cleverest of her sisters.

(ج) يُفضل استخدام (of) قبل السنوات :

ex. - The death of my uncle is the worst event of 2016.

### Mini Test 3

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This is ..... picture I have ever seen.

a. nice                      b. nicer                      c. nicest                      d. the nicest

2. I remember my graduation day. It was ..... wonderful day I have ever had.

a. more                      b. most                      c. the more                      d. the most

(الدقهلية - شربين ٢٣ ٢٢)

3. He is the team’s ..... player.

a. the best                      b. best                      c. the better                      d. better

(السيوط - أبوب ٢٣ ٢٢)

4. Water is the ..... expensive of all liquids.

a. most                      b. least                      c. less                      d. more

5. This is my first ..... successful book.

a. more                      b. most                      c. the most                      d. the least

### 2 Adverbs

مقدمة عن أنواع الظروف

1. Manner ظروف الكيفية	- تستخدم ظروف الكيفية لوصف كيفية حدوث الفعل، غالبًا يوضع ظرف الكيفية في نهاية الجملة أو بعد الفعل أو قبل الصفة : ex. - I dressed quickly. - She is beautifully dressed.
2. Place ظروف المكان	- غالبًا يأتي ظرف المكان في نهاية الجملة وقد يأتي في بدايتها : here – there – inside – outside – upstairs – downstairs ... ex. - Can you sit over there. - Outside, there was a small pond.
3. Time ظروف الزمان	- غالبًا يأتي ظرف الزمان في نهاية الجملة وقد يأتي في بدايتها للتركيز على معنى الظرف : now – then – yesterday – tomorrow – today ... ex. - I’m going to the cinema tomorrow. - Today, we’re seeing our cousins.

<p><b>4. Frequency</b> ظروف التكرار</p>	<p>· غالباً يأتي ظرف التكرار قبل الفعل أو بعد تصريفات (be) والأفعال المساعدة : <b>always – often – usually – sometimes – rarely – scarcely – seldom – occasionally – never ...</b> <b>ex.</b> - They <b>often</b> have homework. - My dad <b>usually</b> goes to the cinema on Saturday. - She <b>never</b> eats meat. - He is <b>rarely</b> later for school.</p>
<p><b>5. Adverbs of degree</b> ظروف الدرجة</p>	<p>· يأتي قبل الصفة ويحدد قوتها أو ضعفها مثل : <b>very, quite, rather, even, a lot, a bit ...</b> <b>ex.</b> - She is <b>very</b> tall. - The weather is <b>quite</b> hot.</p>

### **A** كيفية تكوين ظروف الكيفية **How to form adverbs of manner**

<p>ظرف الكيفية : وهو يصف كيفية حدوث الفعل و يجيب عن السؤال بـ (How) :</p> <p><b>ex.</b> - <b>A:</b> <b>How</b> does Aya speak? - <b>A:</b> <b>How</b> do you drive a car?</p>	<p><b>B:</b> She <b>speaks clearly</b>. <b>B:</b> I <b>drive carefully</b>. - يأتي ظرف الكيفية بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول:</p>
<p><b>ex.</b> - She <b>walks slowly</b>. - The teacher <b>called</b> our names <b>loudly</b>.</p>	<p>· يتكون ظرف الكيفية غالباً بإضافة (y / ly / ily) إلى الصفة: (أ) بصفة عامة يتم تكوين ظرف الكيفية بإضافة (ly) إلى الصفة • slow - <b>slowly</b> • quick - <b>quickly</b> • safe - <b>safely</b> • strong - <b>strongly</b> (ب) وتُضاف (ly) حتى وإن كانت الصفة منتهية بحرف (l) • careful - <b>carefully</b> • beautiful - <b>beautifully</b> • useful - <b>usefully</b> • cheerful - <b>cheerfully</b> (ج) الصفة المنتهية بـ (le) يتم حذف حرف (e) وإضافة (y) • possible - <b>possibly</b> • probable - <b>probably</b> • terrible - <b>terribly</b> • sensible - <b>sensibly</b> (د) الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن تتحول إلى (ily) • easy - <b>easily</b> • happy - <b>happily</b> • lazy - <b>lazily</b> • crazy - <b>crazily</b> (هـ) غالباً الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) تتحول إلى ظرف باستخدام (in a ..... way / manner) • friendly - <b>in a friendly way</b> • cowardly - <b>in a cowardly manner</b> (و) هناك ظروف غير منتظمة مثل: • good - <b>well</b> • fast - <b>fast</b> • hard - <b>hard</b> • late - <b>late</b> • early - <b>early</b></p>

## Mini Test 4

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The footballer played ..... today. He scored three goals! (اللاعب - الأداء ٢٠٢٣)  
a. brilliantly      b. brilliant      c. badly      d. lovely
2. We were ..... exhausted after a three-day journey without sleeping. (المتعبون - متعبون ٢٠٢٣)  
a. very      b. completely      c. quiet      d. quite
3. Mohamed Salah is a/an ..... famous footballer. (اللاعب - شهرة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. local      b. national      c. international      d. globally
4. He can ..... see anything without his glasses. (العمى - رؤية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. nearly      b. hardly      c. wrong      d. hard
5. I phoned my brother and told him it was raining ..... . (موسم - شمال نورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. heavily      b. heavy      c. heavier      d. heaviest
6. Everybody at the party was ..... dressed.  
a. colourful      b. colourfully  
c. quite a colourful      d. a quite colourfully
7. Father was ..... respected by those who worked with him.  
a. great      b. greatness      c. greatly      d. greatest
8. Amir is a quick runner. He .....  
a. quick runs      b. runs quick      c. quickly run      d. runs quickly
9. Unit 11 is quite easy. I can .....  
a. easily it study      b. it study easily  
c. study it easily      d. study easily it
10. He played the match very ....., so he lost it.  
a. bad      b. badly      c. well      d. good
11. This girl behaves in a ..... way.  
a. friends      b. friendship      c. friendly      d. pen friends
12. It is raining .....  
a. heavy      b. heavily      c. heaviness      d. heavenly
13. Ali is a very ..... driver. He makes a lot of accidents.  
a. good      b. well      c. bad      d. badly
14. He answered nearly all the questions ..... . He got low marks.  
a. well      b. bad      c. right      d. wrong
15. You should climb the stairs .....  
a. careful      b. care      c. carefully      d. carelessly
16. Now, my secretary does the office work more ..... than before.  
a. friendly      b. efficiently      c. lately      d. well



## 8 Using adverbs of degree with adjectives استخدام ظروف الدرجة مع الصفات

No.	Type النوع	Notes ملاحظات
1	<b>Ordinary adjectives</b> الصفات العادية	١. الصفات العادية هي صفات ذات معنى عادي مثل : - hot, tired, cold, angry, old, dirty ..... ٢. تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات العادية: - really - جداً very - إلى حد ما rather/quite - قليلاً little/a bit - extremely للغاية ex. - The water is very hot. - I'm extremely tired. ٣. يمكن أن تُستخدم الصفات العادية في المقارنة والتفضيل: ex. - Ahmed is older than Sama. - Omar is the tallest student at school.
		١. هي صفات ذات معنى قوي مثل : - gigantic عتيق/قديم جداً - furious ساخط - ancient - brilliant مُضطك جداً - hilarious رالع ٢. تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات القوية: - absolutely بشكل مُطلق - utterly/entirely كُلياً completely - really بشدة awfully - كلياً / تمامًا totally - تمامًا ex. - This engine is absolutely excellent. - The temple is utterly ancient. ٣. في الغالب لا تُستخدم الصفات القوية في المقارنة والتفضيل: ex. - Alexandria is more ancient than Cairo. (X) - This is the most boiling water. (X)
		١. هي صفات ذات معنى مُطلق ، بمعنى أنها موجودة أو غير موجودة مثل : - impossible مستحيل - نهائي final - أساسي main - ميت dead ٢. لا تُستخدم أي ظروف درجة قبل الصفات المُطلقة: ex. - He is extremely dead. (X) - That is very final. (X) ٣. لا يمكن أن تُستخدم الصفات المُطلقة في المقارنة والتفضيل: ex. - My grandfather is deader than my grandmother. (X) - My grandfather is the deadest in the family. (X)

## Mini Test 5



❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Sama didn't come to school today because she had a/an ..... bad headache.  
a. very                      b. absolutely              c. completely              d. utterly
2. Mr Mohammed is an ..... amazing teacher. We all love him.  
a. absolute                  b. absolutely              c. absent-minded      d. absently
3. Ali said that he was ..... sorry to be late for the meeting.  
a. easily                      b. awfully                  c. slightly                  d. hardly
4. He couldn't buy the suit because it was ..... expensive.  
a. rather                      b. quiet                      c. never                      d. hardly
5. We used to live in a very ..... house in the countryside.  
a. huge                      b. enormous              c. big                      d. gigantic
6. We like our English teacher. He is ..... a good person.  
a. quite                      b. rather                      c. never                      d. hardly
7. The weather is ..... hot today.  
a. completely              b. absolutely              c. entirely                  d. very
8. He has no money at all. He is ..... poor.  
a. rather                      b. fairly                      c. quiet                      d. extremely

## C Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1 verb فعل + adverb ظرف = adjective صفة + noun

- ex. - He is a good swimmer. = He swims well.  
- He runs quickly. = He is a quick runner.

2 verb فعل + adverb ظرف = adjective صفة + in/at ... + (inf. + ing)

- ex. - Mum cooks well. = Mum is good at cooking.  
- Mai is slow when walking. = Mai walks slowly.

3 An extreme adjective صفة قوية = extremely/very + ordinary adjective صفة عادية

- ex. - He is starving. = He is very hungry.  
- This water is extremely hot. = This water is boiling.

4 adverb ظرف = in + adj. صفة + way/manner.

- ex. - His talk was friendly. = He talked in a friendly way.  
- He behaves in a simple manner. = He behaves simply.

**5** It is + adj. صفة = **adverb** ظرف

- ex.** - It is surprising that he has come first.  
 = Surprisingly, he has come first.  
 - Interestingly, he can speak four languages.  
 = It is interesting that he can speak four languages.

**6** be + **adverb** ظرف + **adj.** صفة = **have** + **adj.** صفة + **noun** .....

- ex.** - She was seriously/severely ill.  
 = She had a serious/severe illness.  
 - My sister is clearly intelligent.  
 = My sister has clear intelligence.

**7** Subject + **never/rarely/hardly/no sooner** .... + **verb** .....

= **Never / Rarely / Hardly / No sooner** .... + **فعل مساعد/ناقص** + **subject + verb** ....

- ex.** - We have never seen such bad manners.  
 = Never have we seen such bad manners.  
 - My mum rarely left the house.  
 = Rarely did my mum leave the house.

**Mini Test 6**

Apply

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- How ..... do you run?  
 a. quick                      b. quickly                      c. quickness                      d. quickest
- How ..... are you at running?  
 a. quick                      b. quickly                      c. quickness                      d. quickest
- She was ..... intelligent.  
 a. clear                      b. clearly                      c. a clearly                      d. more clearly
- She had ..... intelligence.  
 a. clear                      b. clearly                      c. a clearly                      d. more clearly
- After the training, I feel ..... exhausted.  
 a. quite                      b. very                      c. real                      d. extremely
- You have to work very ..... with the other members of your team.  
 a. wonderful                      b. excellent                      c. hard                      d. gorgeous
- To work with others, train yourself to be .....  
 a. intolerance                      b. tolerance                      c. tolerantly                      d. tolerant



8. Hassan Shehata was the coach of the National Team from 2006 to 2011. He was ..... at coaching.

- a. brilliantly absolutely                      b. absolutely brilliantly  
c. brilliant absolutely                         d. absolutely brilliant

## Exercises on Language

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started : check what you have learnt

1. Mahmoud doesn't take risks when he's driving. He drives .....

(الاستماع - بوعويش ٢٠٢٤)

- a. care                      b. careful                      c. too careful                      d. carefully

2. Don't shout at me so .....

(السؤال - دراو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. angry                      b. happily                      c. angrily                      d. happy

3. The teacher explained the lesson so ..... that we all understood it.

(المصنف - السعداء ٢٠٢٤)

- a. easily                      b. easy                      c. easiness                      d. easier

4. We had to wait a long time, but we didn't complain. We waited .....

(البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. patient                      b. impatient                      c. patiently                      d. impatiently

5. Mona speaks English . . . . . although she makes a lot of mistake.

(السؤال - ادمو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. fluency                      b. fluent                      c. fluently                      d. at fluency

6. We apologize for the ..... arrival of this train.

(النميا - العدوه ٢٠٢٤)

- a. lateness                      b. later                      c. late                      d. lately

7. That was a/an ..... film; what a waste of money!

(بورسعيد - بومؤد ٢٠٢٤)

- a. bored                      b. boring                      c. interesting                      d. interested

8. Open the door ..... The children are asleep.

(بورسعيد - جنوب بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤)

- a. quietly                      b. quiet                      c. quite                      d. quit

9. When I visited Cairo, it was ..... less crowded than usual.

(الاسكندرية - وسط الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. slightly                      b. more                      c. so                      d. as

10. Students try ..... to get the best results.

(أحمد السيد - موه ٢٠٢٤)

- a. hardly                      b. harden                      c. hardness                      d. hard

11. She is in need to see a doctor. She is ..... burned.

(السيوف - الإبراهيمية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. bad                      b. badly                      c. worse                      d. well

12. He apologized because he talked ..... to his elder brother.  
(سوءفاح - صهف ٢٤)
- a. angry      b. angrily      c. an angry way      d. anger
13. Don't talk loudly because the children are ..... asleep.  
(انسوان - راف ٢٤)
- a. often      b. still      c. first      d. not
14. He studies English as ..... as he studies Arabic.  
(انسوان - سر صوف ٢٤)
- a. hardly      b. hard      c. harder      d. the hardest
15. She dreamt of a/an ..... awful monster.  
(سوءفد - طلفا ٢٤)
- a. completely      b. very      c. lot      d. extremely
16. The wedding party was ..... organized. It was fantastic.  
(بورسعيد - سمال بورسعيد ٢٤)
- a. good      b. better      c. well      d. best
17. "Marwa can speak English ..... her friend Amany does."  
(كرم التبخ - فلف ٢٤)
- a. as good as      b. as better as      c. the same good      d. as well as
18. ...., she agreed to marry a man who was as old as her father.  
(السرمة - القرف ٢٤)
- a. Strangely      b. Strange      c. Stranger      d. Surprising
19. The film is ..... hilarious. We all loved it.  
(الففا - فلف ٢٤)
- a. very      b. fairly      c. absolutely      d. terribly
20. Magdy is never late for the English course. This means he ..... on time.  
(الففا - فلف مزار ٢٤)
- a. always is      b. is always      c. is rarely      d. rarely is



### Check your understanding

21. "Ali is swimming fast in the swimming pool." 'Fast' in this sentence is a/an .....  
(الحفة - منشاء القناطر ٢٤)
- a. adverb      b. adjective      c. noun      d. verb
22. Which of the following is **correctly structured**?  
(سوءفح - ساملف ٢٤)
- a. He looked happily last week.  
b. He looked happy last week.  
c. He looked happy at the children.  
d. He looked happiness at the children.
23. Which sentence has the **correct structure**?  
(سوءفاح - حرفا ٢٤)
- a. She bought extreme expensive a car.  
b. She bought an expensive extremely car.  
c. She bought an extremely expensive car.  
d. She bought expensive car extremely.

24. I have never seen such an intelligent young man. This exactly means ...
- This young man is very intelligent.
  - This is the first time I have ever seen such an intelligent man.
  - I have never seen intelligent young men before.
  - I haven't ever seen intelligent young men before.
25. If you go on eating a lot of rice, you will put on even more weight.  
This means .....
- the more rice you eat, the less weight you put on.
  - the more rice you eat, the more weight you put on.
  - the less rice you eat, the more weight you put on.
  - the more rice you eat, the more weight you lose.
26. Naglaa is clever, but Esraa is cleverer. This means .....
- Esraa is less clever than Naglaa.
  - Naglaa is much cleverer than Esraa.
  - Naglaa isn't as clever as Esraa.
  - Naglaa is as clever as Esraa.
27. Rokaya has the same cleverness as Leen. This exactly means .....
- both rokaya and leen are clever.
  - neither rokaya nor leen is clever.
  - Rokaya isn't so clever as Leen.
  - Rokaya is as clever as Leen.
28. "He is exhausted." What does this mean?
- He is tired.
  - He is very tired.
  - He is very exhausted.
  - He is quite exhausted.
29. "The scene was extremely surprising." This means .....
- it was absolutely astonishing.
  - it was very astonishing.
  - it was astonishing.
  - it was not astonishing.
30. "My elder brother was furious." What does this mean?
- He was angry.
  - He was annoyed.
  - He was quite annoyed.
  - He felt too much anger.
31. "We were lucky to meet him." What does this mean?
- Luckily, we meet him.
  - Luckily, we never meet him.
  - Luckily, we met him.
  - Luckily, we never met him.



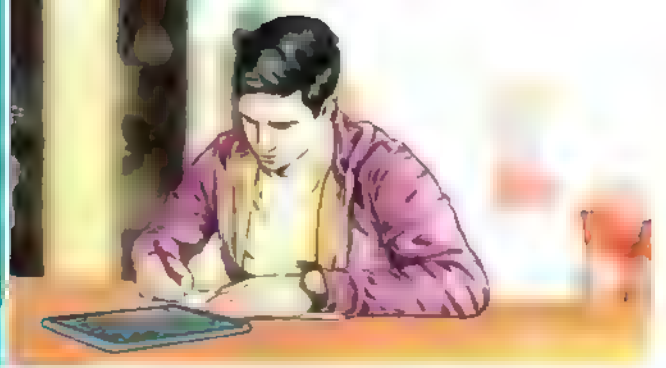
32. "Surprisingly, she agreed to marry him." This means ..... .  
a. she was surprised to marry him  
b. she was a surprise to marry him  
c. it was surprised that she agreed to marry him  
d. it was surprising that she agreed to marry him
33. "He is a coward." This means ..... .  
a. he is a cowardly  
b. he behaves cowardly  
c. he behaves in a cowardly way  
d. he shows no cowardice
34. "He is a good teacher." This is equal in meaning to ..... .  
a. he teaches well  
b. he teaches good  
c. he teaches goodly  
d. he teaches badly
35. "He types perfectly on the computer." This means ..... .  
a. he is perfectly at typing on the computer  
b. he is perfect at typing on the computer  
c. he types perfect at typing on the computer  
d. he is not perfect at typing on the computer

**A week is enough**

مراجعة المنهج

والتمكن منه في اسبوع واحد فقط





للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة

كوبه

PART 7

## LANGUAGE HINTS

### The police الشرطة

١. كلمة (police) جمع دائماً وتأخذ فعل جمع (are – were – have – don't) :

- ex. - The police were looking for the thieves. (Not: The police was ...)  
- The police keep the whole society safe. (Not: The police keeps ...)

٢. كلمة (police) يعود عليها ضمير جمع (they – them – their – theirs...) :

- ex. - We are grateful for the police because they keep us safe.

٣. كلمة (police) لا تأخذ أدوات التكثير (an - a) :

- ex. - The police arrested some criminals. (Not: A police ...)

٤. عند التحدث عن رجال الشرطة بشكل مستقل يمكن أن نقول :

- a police officer / police officers ضابط / ضباط الشرطة
- a policeman / policemen رجل / رجال الشرطة

### better / best / the best

لاحظ الصيغة التالية مع بعض أفعال المشاعر:

- like / love / admire / enjoy ... + obj. مفعول + better / best / the best

- ex. - I like action films, but I like romantic films better.  
- Marwa likes all kinds of food, but she likes kebabs best / the best.

- like / love / admire / enjoy ... + obj. مفعول + more / most / the most

- ex. - I sometimes play handball, but I enjoy football more.  
- I sometimes play handball or tennis, but I enjoy football most / the most.

### Like / Unlike

- like على عكس X مثل

- تُستخدم (like / unlike) كحروف جر بمعنى (مثل – على عكس) :

- ex. - Like his father, Ahmed is hardworking. They are similar.  
- Unlike her mother, Rody is tall. They are different.

بنفس الكم أو الدرجة as much

quite as much = the same quantity / amount of نفس الكم / المبلغ

**ex.** - Organic farming doesn't make quite as much money as inorganic farming.

= Organic farming doesn't make the same amount of money as inorganic farming.

public

كلمة (public) عندما تستخدم كصفة بمعنى عام تأتي قبل الاسم دائماً :

**ex.** - It is better if we use transport which is public. (X)

- It is better if we use public transport. (✓)

## Exercise On Language Hints

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I don't mind comedies, but I like musicals .....

- a. better      b. best      c. the best      d. b & c

2. I don't mind comedies or romantic movies, but I like musicals .....

- a. better      b. best      c. the best      d. b & c

3. .... her father, Leen has a serious character. They both work hard.

- a. Once      b. As      c. Unlike      d. Like

4. .... her mother, Aya has long hair. Her mother's is short.

- a. Once      b. As      c. Unlike      d. Like

5. The remake looks marvellous, but it just isn't ..... fun and it's difficult to know why.

- a. as much      b. like much      c. as many      d. like many

6. .... police chased some terrorists.

- a. A      b. An      c. The      d. a & c

7. .... policeman chased some terrorists.

- a. A      b. An      c. The      d. a & c

8. The police ..... citizens from criminals.

- a. protect      b. protects      c. are protected      d. is protecting



## 1 Reading

- ★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

(كفر السيخ - فؤه ٢٠٢٤)

Everybody likes to feel that she or he is special. Sadly, many of us grow up believing that we're not special at all. We wish that we could be more attractive or better at sports. We wish we had more money or more beautiful clothes. Like the Tin Man, the Scarecrow, or the Cowardly Lion from The Wizard of Oz, we think we're not good enough just as we are. In the film, The Tin Man wishes he had a heart. The Scarecrow wishes that he had a brain, and the Lion wants courage. Eventually, each of them realizes that they already have what they want.

Nearly all parents want us to be the best we can be. They occasionally attempt to encourage us to do better by comparing us to others. They mean well, but the message we usually get is that we're not good enough. We start to believe that the only way we can be special is by being better than somebody else, but we are frequently **disappointed**. There will always be somebody out there that is better than we are at something. There are a lot of people around who may not be as intelligent as we are, but who are better at sports. Or they may not be as handsome, but they have more money. It is unthinkable for us to be better than everybody else all the time. Like the Tin Man, the Scarecrow, and the Cowardly Lion, we all need what we believe will make us better people. Our parents often forget to tell us that we are special, that we are good enough just as we are. Either way, it's up to us to remind **them** sometimes that each of us, in our own way, is special.

- The writer wrote this text to ..... .
  - explain the importance of being yourself
  - suggest how people can change their way of life
  - talk about your family problems
  - describe how intelligent we are
- This passage was most likely written by a ..... .
  - parent
  - teacher
  - coach
  - young person
- What does the writer say about our parents?
  - They frequently forget to tell us that we are special.
  - They always tell us that we are good enough.
  - They always tell us that we are special.
  - They never forget to tell us that we are special.

4. The writer of this essay believes that ..... .  
 a. the richer you are, the better you are  
 b. not everyone can be special  
 c. intelligent people are more special than others  
 d. we are all good enough just the way we are
5. Tin man wishes to ..... .  
 a. have more money                      b. be better at sports  
 c. be more beautiful                      d. have a heart
6. The underlined word '**disappointed**' is a synonym to ..... .  
 a. pleased              b. dissatisfied              c. ashamed              d. excited
7. The underlined word '**them**' refers to ..... .  
 a. teachers              b. parents              c. youth              d. coaches
8. The best title for this essay could be ..... .  
 a. Being special    b. Selfishness              c. Comparisons    d. Being a parent

## 2

## Review Writing

## كتابة المروض النقدية

- ✶ Write a review of about (180) about a film you have recently watched. It can be a film you liked very much or didn't like at all.

### The Blue Elephant

The Blue Elephant (Arabic: Al Fil Al Azraq) is an Egyptian horror and mystery film which was produced and directed by Marwan Hamed in 2014. The story was adapted from an Arabic novel written by the famous Egyptian writer Ahmed Mourad.

The film was starred by the Egyptian actors: Karim Abdel Aziz, Khaled El-Sawy and Nelly Karim. It talks about a man called Yehia, who unwillingly comes out of isolation الغربة after five years, to resume يستأنف his work in El-Abbaseya Psychiatric نفسي Hospital. Yehia is in charge of evaluating تقييم the mental العقلية health of the insane مجنون criminals.

Between 2018 and 2019, there has been a sequel named The Blue Elephant 2. According to Ahmed Mourad, the writer of the original Arabic novel, the book and the film hold two different endings. The director changed the closing scene of the movie to allow the film to satisfy a large number of viewers.

The Blue Elephant received mixed reviews but performed well in the Egyptian market during Eid time. The film did not follow the formula of the recent slew of Egyptian comedies, yet it managed to win over audiences across the Arab region. I really recommend this film.

### 3 مهارة التحدث Speaking skill

عندما تشارك أرائك مع الآخرين، استمع جيدًا لما يقولون، وقل لهم هل تتفق معهم أم لا، وإذا كنت لا تتفق أخبرهم بأدب واذكر أسبابك، واطرح عليهم أسئلة لمعرفة المزيد عن آرائهم، ويمكنك استخدام تعبيرات مثل:

Why do you think ...?

لماذا تظن أن ...؟

What do you prefer?

ماذا تفضل؟

I agree with you.

إنني أتفق معك.

I disagree, because ...

إنني لا أتفق معك أن ...

I'm not sure.

لست على يقين.

Personally, I like ...

شخصياً، أفضّل ...

- ✪ Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:

(الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٤)

“How to restore our missing morals”

.....

.....

.....

### 4 الترجمة Translation

- 1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Egypt has always been the lighthouse of science and civilization since the dawn of history. It has a strong cultural background. Some of the greatest Arab writers, musicians and craftsmen are Egyptians.

(الاسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. لقد كانت مصر منارة العلم والحضارة منذ أسفل التاريخ، ولديها خلفية ثقافية قوية، وبعض أعظم الكُتّاب والموسيقيين والحرفيين العرب مصريون.
- b. لطالما كانت مصر منارة العلم والحضارة منذ فجر التاريخ، ولديها خلفية ثقافية قوية، وبعض أعظم الكُتّاب والموسيقيين والحرفيين المصريين عرب.
- c. لقد كانت مصر منارة العلم والحضارة منذ فجر التاريخ، ولديها خلفية ثقافية غريبة، وبعض أعظم الكُتّاب والموسيقيين والحرفيين العرب مصريون.
- d. لطالما كانت مصر منارة العلم والحضارة منذ فجر التاريخ، ولديها خلفية ثقافية قوية، وبعض أعظم الكُتّاب والموسيقيين والحرفيين العرب مصريون.

- 2 Providing employment opportunities to those who are unemployed is very important as lack of employments can lead to great economic and social disturbances.

(اسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. إن تقديم فرص عمل لأولئك العاطلين عن العمل مهم جداً، فنقص الوظائف قد يؤدي إلى ثورات اقتصادية واجتماعية كبيرة.



- b. إن توفير فرص عمل لأولئك العاطلين عن العمل مهم جداً. معدوم وجود الوظائف قد يؤدي إلى اضطرابات اقتصادية واجتماعية كبيرة
- c. إن توفير فرص عمل لأولئك العاطلين عن العمل مهم جداً. منقص الوظائف قد يؤدي إلى اضطرابات اقتصادية واجتماعية كبيرة.
- d. إن توفير فرص عمل لأولئك الموظفين مهم جداً. منقص الوظائف قد يؤدي إلى اضطرابات اقتصادية واجتماعية كبيرة

## 2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

١. يجب أن نعلّم الأجيال الجديدة قيمة العمل والانتماء و بولاء والانحلاص والتفكير الابداعي لكي يكونوا قادرين على بناء بلدهم.  
(الوسط - صدفا ٢٠٢٤)

- a. We have to teach new generations the value of work, loyal, belonging, sincerity and create thinking to be able to build their country.
- b. We have to learn young generations the value of job, loyalty, belonging, sincere and creating thinking to be able to build their country.
- c. We will have to teach new generations the value of work, loyalty, belonging, sincerity and creator thinking to be able to build their country.
- d. We have to teach younger generations the value of work, loyalty, belonging, sincerity and creative thinking to be able to build their country.

٢. لقد أصبحت التكنولوجيا شئنا أساسيا في حياتنا، فلقد قدمت التكنولوجيا الحديثة لنا الكثير من المعجزات الطبية، ومنها أشياء كان يظن البعض أنها خيال علمي يصعب الوصول اليه  
(البحر - سدر حمر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Technology has become a secondary part in our lives. Modern technology has provided us with many medical miracles, including things that some thought were easy-to-reach science fiction.
- b. Technology has become an essential part in our lives. Modern technology has provided us with many medical miracles, including things that some thought were hard-to-reach science fiction.
- c. Technology has become an essential part in our habits. Modern technology has provided us with many physical miracles, including things that some thought were hard-to-reach science fiction.
- d. Technology has become an essential part in our lives. Modern technology has proved us with many medical miracles, especially things that some thought were hard-to-reach science fiction.

## animation

- **animate = living (adj)** حي - لا يبيض بالحياة inanimate ≠ جامد لا حياة فيه
    - Man is an **animate** being. كائن حي.
    - Rock is an **inanimate** object. شيء جامد لا يتحرك.
  - **animate(d) (v)** يملأ بالحيوية - ينعش
    - Laughter **animates** your face. الضحك ينعش وجهك.
  - **animate(d) (v)** يحرك (الرسوم أو الصور في أفلام الكرتون)
    - In recent cartoons, pictures are **animated** by the computer.
  - **animated (adj)** مفعم بالحيوية والطاقة
    - The match was followed by an **animated** discussion among the fans.
- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
- animated cartoon / film فيلم رسوم متحركة
  - animated discussion / conversation نقاش / حوار ساخن
  - **animation (n)** أفلام أو برامج الرسوم المتحركة (اسم معدود)
    - Children are attracted by **animations**.
  - **animation (n)** الحيوية (اسم غير معدود)
    - The students were talking with **animation** about the school trip.
  - **animation (n)** تحريك الرسوم (اسم غير معدود)
    - The **animation** in the film is made with the help of the computer.

## comedy

- **comedy (n)** الكوميديا - عمل أدبي أو فني مضحك
  - Comedy becomes better when it has a message.
  - Adel Imam was the hero in a lot of **comedies**.
- **comedian(n)** ممثل كوميدي
  - Ahmed Helmy is my favourite **comedian**.
- **comic(adj)** كوميدي / فكاهي
  - I enjoy watching **comic** plays because they make me laugh a lot.

• **comical = funny (adj)**

مضحك / هزلي / مثار للسخرية

- I enjoy watching **comical** plays because they make me laugh a lot.

• **comic (comics) (n)**

مجلات (فكاهية) قصص

- When he was younger, he used to write for **comics**.

**horror**

• **horror (n)**

الرعب - الدُعر

- My sister screamed in **horror** when she saw a mouse in the kitchen.

• **horrors (n)**

أهوال (غالباً جمع)

- Syrian people have suffered the **horrors** of war for years.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- have a horror of

يخاف بشدة من

- give someone the horrors

يخيف شخص بشدة

• **horrify(ied) (v)**

يُرعب - يُصيب بالذعر - يصدّم

- The details of the crime **horrified** many people.

• **horrific = horrifying (adj)**

سيء جداً - مُرعب

- I saw a **horrific (=horrifying)** car accident on my way home.

**musicals**

• **music (n)**

الموسيقى

- I heard loud **music** coming from a neighbouring villa.

• **music (n)**

النوتة الموسيقية

- I can play the guitar, but I can't read **music**.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- play music

يعزف علي آلة موسيقية

- write / compose music

يؤلف موسيقي

- make music = play / compose music

يعزف أو يؤلف موسيقي

- the music business / industry

النشاط الاقتصادي المتعلق بالموسيقى

- a piece of music

مقطوعة موسيقية

- classical music

موسيقى كلاسيكية

• **musical (n)**

فيلم غنائي أو استعراضية / مسرحية استعراضية

- Some famous singers are usually the heroes of **musicals**.

• **musical (adj)**

مُوسِيقِيّ - مُتعلّق بالموسيقى (صفة تُستخدم قبل الاسم فقط)

- The piano is my favourite **musical** instrument.

• **musical (adj)**

مُحب / مهتم بالعزف أو الغناء

- Girls, by nature, are more **musical** than boys.

• **musical (adj)**

ذو صوت جميل

- Sama has a **musical** voice.

• **musician (n)**

عازف موسيقي

- My brother is a talented **musician**.



## remake

- **remake - remade (v)** يعيد إنتاج (فيلم / أغنية)  
- I think it is not usually a good idea to **remake** old films.
- **remake - remade (v)** يعيد تصميم أو بناء  
- I will **remake** my wedding dress فستان الرفاف to fit my sister.
- **remake (n)** إعادة إنتاج (إنتاج جديد لعمل قديم)  
- The **remake** of Lion King wasn't as successful as the original one.

## bestselling

- **bestselling (adj)** الأكثر مبيعاً  
- This film is adapted from a **bestselling** book by Mahfouz.
- **bestseller (n)** ال ... الأكثر مبيعاً  
- This book has been a **bestseller** for the last six months.

### Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. In the tourist season, tourists ..... the historical sites of Luxor and Aswan.  
a. animate      b. starve      c. adapt      d. demonstrate
2. Not everybody that plays a musical instrument can ..... music.  
a. read      b. write      c. a & b      d. hear
3. The sudden appearance of the snake ..... me the horrors.  
a. had      b. gave      c. made      d. saw
4. Children like reading .....  
a. comic      b. comical      c. comedian      d. comics
5. This play is ..... hilarious.  
a. utterly      b. very      c. a bit      d. quite

### Advanced Exercise on Language

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Nobody has arrived yet, ..... ?  
a. has he      b. hasn't he      c. have they      d. haven't they
2. A person with a false beard was arrested, ..... ?  
a. wasn't she      b. wasn't he      c. weren't they      d. were they
3. There are some apples in the basket, ..... ?  
a. hasn't it      b. isn't it      c. are there      d. aren't there
4. She seldom has lunch outdoors, ..... ?  
a. is she      b. hasn't she      c. does she      d. a & c
5. Look at my sister's baby. Cute, ..... ?  
a. will you      b. would you      c. is it      d. isn't it



## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Solar panels enable us to ..... the power of the sun to generate electricity.  
a. discover      b. explore      c. harness      d. expire (المقصر - ارميت ٢٠٢٤)
2. Good teachers usually use ..... aids in the classrooms such as flash cards and maps.  
a. first      b. invisible      c. visual      d. healthy (القليوبية - قها ٢٠٢٤)
3. Some people prefer ..... to tragedy; they think it is better to smile.  
a. sci-fi      b. action      c. comedy      d. horror
4. This ..... has too much dancing and singing. It is starred by dancers and singers.  
a. action      b. historical      c. musical      d. animation
5. My cousin is very ..... . He is a good doctor who can write poetry and prose.  
a. historical      b. hostile      c. disastrous      d. talented (المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٤)
6. There are a lot of environments, but the desert is one of the most ..... ones. Living there is very difficult.  
a. host      b. hospitable      c. hostile      d. hostility (رشد ٢٠٢٣)
7. .... means an intense distressed feeling of fear.  
a. Amusement      b. Horror      c. Silence      d. Violence (السخنة ٢٠٢٣)
8. He'd rather leave now, ..... he?  
a. hadn't      b. didn't      c. wouldn't      d. had (السيوط - صدفا ٢٠٢٤)
9. They never go on holiday, ..... they?  
a. don't      b. never do      c. are      d. do (المنيا - نو عرقاص ٢٠٢٤)
10. Everyone has a smart phone and an email address these days, .....?  
a. do they      b. have they      c. don't they      d. hasn't he (البحيرة - أبو حمص ٢٠٢٤)
11. There's only a small difference. This phone is ..... bigger than that one.  
a. as      b. far      c. slightly      d. more (بورسعيد - جنوب بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤)
12. This food tastes .....; you can share the meal with me.  
a. delicious      b. bad      c. badly      d. deliciously (سيوهج - بمرارة ٢٠٢٤)
13. My father has been working all day. He is ..... exhausted.  
a. complete      b. completely      c. quite      d. fairly (أكرم السيد - قس ٢٠٢٤)

## 2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I've been writing music for video games for nearly 15 years now. People outside the video game industry are often surprised to learn that such a job actually exists. But with video games becoming increasingly

popular, having a successful career as a video game music composer is now a realistic ambition for many young people. Being a composer is not easy though **determination** is essential if you want to do well in this job.

I got into this career by accident. One day, my teacher offered me some work playing music on a recording she was making. I did the work and didn't think any more about it. A few months later, my sister was playing a video game at home when I suddenly recognised the music and saw my name on the screen. I knew then that this could be a career! From that point on, I tried to learn as much as possible about all kinds of music and I would recommend anyone considering becoming a composer to do the same. I also realised how **beneficial** it was to attend video game conferences to have plenty of self-confidence because representatives from all the major video game companies are there.

People think the job is just about having fun, but it's not always the case. You spend a lot of time working alone, so motivation is a key aspect of this career. If you're not the sort of person who can accept criticism, then perhaps this isn't the job for you.

1. The main idea of the passage is .....  
a. the history of music                      b. how I became a music composer  
c. how to play video games                d. when to play music
2. The writer got into this career .....  
a. by force                      b. accidentally                      c. on purpose                      d. luckily
3. .... is the synonym of the underlined word **determination**.  
a. Prevention                      b. Persistence                      c. Hesitation                      d. Happiness
4. The antonym of the underlined word '**beneficial**' is .....  
a. harmful                      b. helpful                      c. useful                      d. careful
5. The writer would recommend for anyone considering becoming a composer to .....  
a. play video games                      b. listen to music  
c. look at the screen                      d. learn about all kinds of music
6. According to the text, having a successful career as a video game music composer is .....  
a. a hard effort for young people  
b. an interesting thing for old people  
c. a realistic ambition for many young people  
d. unnecessary work for young people
7. If you're not the sort of person who can accept criticism, .....  
a. then perhaps this isn't the job for you  
b. I think I probably have the best job in the world  
c. your first or second piece of music won't necessarily be successful  
d. it can also be frustrating



8. One of the following is **NOT** mentioned in the passage: “.....”.

- a. It's beneficial to attend video games conferences.
- b. It's useful to create your own website.
- c. It's vital to have plenty of self-confidence.
- d. Motivation is a key aspect of this career.

**3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:**

In truth, everyone has the potential to do amazing things if they work hard to overcome their problems.

(السيوط - صدف ٢٠٢٤)

- a. في الحقيقة، لدى الجميع القدرة على القيام بأشياء مذهلة إذا ما عملوا بجد للتغلب على مشكلاتهم.
- b. في الحقيقة، لدى كل فرد القدرة على القيام بأشياء مذهلة إذا ما عملوا بصعوبة للتغلب على مشكلاتهم.
- c. في الحقيقة، لدى الجميع القدرة على القيام بأشياء مذهلة إذا ما تعلموا صعوبة التغلب على مشكلاتهم.
- d. في الحقيقة، لدى الجميع القدرة على القيام بأشياء معقولة إذا ما عملوا بجد للتغلب على مشكلاتهم.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

من الخطأ أن تعتقد أن المال هو المصدر الأساسي للسعادة في الحياة، فقيمة المرء لا تُقاس بمقدار المال الذي يملكه، بل بخس أخلاقه وتأثيره الإيجابي والخدمات التي يقدمها للمجتمع الذي يعيش فيه.

(خمر الشيخ - قليل ٢٠٢٤)

- a. It is wrong to think that money is the main source of happiness in life as the value of the person isn't measured by the amount of money they have but by their good manners, positive affect and the services they render to the society they live in.
- b. It is wrong to think that money is the main source of happiness in life as the value of a person isn't measured by the amount of money they have but by their good manners, positive effect and the services they render to the society they live in.
- c. It is wrong to think that money is the main source of happiness in life as the value of the person isn't measured by the amount of money they have but by their good manners, positive effect and the services they render to the society they live in.
- d. It is wrong to think that money is the main source of happy in life as the value of the person isn't measured by the amount of money they have but by their good manners, positive effect and the services they render to the society they live in.

**4. Answer the following questions :**

1. Why do you think that Lear kneels before Cordelia ?

.....

2. Do you think Albany trusts Edmund ? Why ?

(دمياط - الرزما ٢٠٢٤)

.....

3. What does “This” refer to when Edgar says “This is a bitter pill to swallow ?

.....

- **5. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :**

(القليوبية - غرب شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٤)

**“The youth”**

## Achievements and goals



**Objectives :** \_\_\_\_\_ الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- **Reading** : An article about a young entrepreneur
- **Writing** : A report about an experience
- **Listening** : A talk about SMART goals
- **Speaking** : Discussing goals and how to achieve them

- **Language** : Defining and non-defining relative clauses
- **Life skills** : Self-management ; Decision-making ; Collaboration



## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

achievable(adj)	مُفَكِّن إنجازة	recipe(n)	وصفة طهي
entrepreneur(n)	رائد أعمال	relevant (adj)	ملائم
goal /aim (n)	هدف	relevant (adj)	خاص بـ / مُتَّصِل بـ / مُتَّعَلِّق بـ
honey(n)	عسل	set (a goal)	يحدد (هدفاً)
honeybee(n)	نحلة العسل	smart (adj)	ذكي - أليق
measurable (adj)	قابل للقياس - ملحوظ	specific (adj)	تفصيلي / دقيق - مُحدَّد
objective(n)	هدف	time-bound (adj)	موقوت - له خطة زمنية
profit(ed) (n - v)	فائدة - يستفيد		

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات العامة

adapt(ed) (v)	يقبّس - ينقل عن	magnificent (adj)	رائع
architecture(n)	هندسة معمارية	manage(d) (v)	يتمكن - يدير
business(n)	شركة - نشاط تجاري	multi-national(adj)	متعدد الجنسيات
coach(n)	مدرب	non-essential(adj)	غير ضروري
definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد	passion(n)	شغف
detailed(adj)	تفصيلي	passionate(adj)	متحمس
donate(d) (v)	يتبرع بـ	possession (n)	ملكية - امتلاك
drop(ped) (v)	يسقط - يخرج (من)	practise(d) (v)	يمارس - يتدرب على
	تشكيل الفريق	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي
educate(d) (v)	يعلم	profession (n)	مهنة
end date(n)	تاريخ انتهاء	progress(ed) (n - v)	التقدم - يتقدم
essential(adj)	ضروري - جوهري	qualify(ied) (v)	يتأهل
experience(d) (v)	يواجه - يعايش	react(ed) (v)	يتصرف بناء على
failure (n)	فشل	related(adj)	مرتبط - ذو صلة
fear (n)	الخوف	sensible(adj)	عقلاني - حكيم
final (n - adj)	نهائي	series(n)	سلسلة - مسلسل
finalists(n)	المتأهلون للنهائيات	short-term (adj)	قصير المدى - قصير الأمد
fit (ted) in (phr. v)	يتكيف - يكيف - يجد وقتاً لـ ...	stand for (phr. v)	يمثل - ينوب عن
forever (adv)	للأبد	tutorial (n)	درس خصوصي - مقرر تعليمي
highlight (ed) (v)	يلقى الضوء - يبرز		



individual (n - adj)	فرد - فردي	unlikely (adj)	من غير المحتمل
locally (adv)	محليا	vague (adj)	غامض
long-term (adj)	بعيد المدى - طويل الأمد	whenever (adv. - conj.)	عندما / كلما
		winner (n)	فائز

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>achievable (adj)</b> ممكّن إنجازة	describes a goal that can be reached, especially by making an effort جهد for a long time
<b>entrepreneur(n)</b> رائد أعمال	someone who starts a new business or arranges business deals صفقات in order to make money, often in a way that involves financial risks مخاطرات مالية
<b>honeybee(n)</b> نحلة العسل	a bee that makes honey
<b>measurable (adj)</b> قابل للقياس	able to be measured
<b>profit(ed) (n)</b> فائدة - ربح	money that you gain by selling things or doing business, after your costs have been paid
<b>recipe(n)</b> وصفة طهي	a set مجموعة of instructions تعليمات for cooking a particular محدد type of food
<b>relevant (adj)</b> ملائم - متعلق	directly relating to the subject or problem being discussed or considered
<b>specific (adj)</b> محدد	detailed and exact
<b>time-bound (adj)</b> موقوف - له خطة زمنية	requiring completion by a specified محدد deadline موعّد بهاي or within a specified period of time

### Exercises on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Definitions

- To be ..... means detailed and exact.  
a. specific      b. relevant      c. sensible      d. passionate (بوريسعيد - بورمؤاد ٢٠٢٤)
- ..... is the amount of money you gain when you sell something for more than you paid for it.  
a. Salary      b. Profit      c. Loss      d. Debit (بوريسعيد - جنوب بوريسعيد ٢٠٢٤)
- To be ..... means directly relating to the subject or problem being discussed or considered.  
a. relevant      b. measurable      c. sensible      d. passionate
- ..... means requiring completion by a specified deadline or within a specified period of time.  
a. Measurable      b. Time-bound      c. Relevant      d. Specific

5. A/An ..... is a set of instructions for cooking a particular type of food.  
a. recipe                      b. range                      c. profit                      d. outfit
6. A/An ..... is someone who starts a new business or arranges business deals in order to make money, often in a way that involves financial risks.  
a. accessories                      b. honeybee                      c. profit                      d. entrepreneur
7. The adjective ..... describes a goal that can be reached, especially by making an effort for a long time.  
a. measurable                      b. achievable                      c. relevant                      d. specific

## 2 Key Vocabulary

8. .... are very important to nature because they help plants to produce seeds. (أسوان - نصر اللوبة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. Honeybees                      b. Fleas                      c. Honey                      d. Mosquitoes
9. You should make sure that your goals are ..... (قنا - أبو تشت ٢٠٢٤)  
a. measure                      b. measures                      c. measurable                      d. measles
10. To succeed in life, it's important to have ..... aims or goals. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. long                      b. specific                      c. a specific                      d. public
11. It is often a good idea to start with smaller, easily ..... goals. (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. impossible                      b. achievable                      c. forgettable                      d. probable
12. Smart goals are specific, measurable and time-..... (الفيوم - إيشواي ٢٠٢٤)  
a. consuming                      b. special                      c. logic                      d. bound
13. Our company is a great success; it has achieved a lot of ..... (القليوبية - قها ٢٠٢٤)  
a. profits                      b. decline                      c. losses                      d. disasters
14. The job market is badly in need of aspiring ..... looking for never-to-stop success.  
a. fact checkers                      b. editors                      c. entrepreneurs                      d. correspondents
15. I don't think what you say is ..... to this discussion. It has nothing to do with it.  
a. measurable                      b. achievable                      c. relevant                      d. time-bound
16. Exams are not ..... in themselves. They are means to measure the progress one has achieved.  
a. goals                      b. aims                      c. objectives                      d. a, b & c
17. In order to succeed in your life, you must ..... specific goals.  
a. profit                      b. set                      c. aim                      d. give up



## Important vocabulary

18. Mr Ayman said he couldn't ..... that day as he had been very busy.  
a. stand me for      b. fit me in      c. experience me      d. share me on
19. The coach ..... Salah from the match as he was badly injured.  
a. dropped      b. highlighted      c. qualified      d. reacted
20. Fear of ..... may lead to it. Trust yourself and learn from your mistakes.  
a. presentation      b. possession      c. failure      d. tutorial
21. He is ..... about where he is, so the police suspect him يشك فيه.  
a. multi-national      b. magnificent  
c. sensible      d. vague
22. He is ..... after the operation. He is much better now.  
a. relating      b. mentioning      c. progressing      d. recording
23. It is kind of you to ..... blood to save the injured man.  
a. consider      b. donate      c. create      d. expand
24. It is ..... to have a time plan to achieve your goals.  
a. governmental      b. non-essential  
c. essential      d. non-governmental
25. In the Tokyo 2021, Ferial Abdelaziz was a/an ..... in Karate.  
a. finalist      b. organiser      c. president      d. inhabitant
26. This team failed to ..... to the quarter-final.  
a. drop      b. highlight      c. qualify      d. react
27. Small group ..... help students learn and get ready for their exams.  
a. individuals      b. possessions      c. failures      d. tutorials
28. Sama looked ..... in her long dress. She looked like a princess.  
a. multi-national      b. magnificent      c. short-term      d. vague
29. He ..... a successful business in manufacturing. He is a successful businessman.  
a. manages      b. mentions      c. progresses      d. stands
30. Most famous novels have been ..... for the cinema.  
a. resigned      b. tricked      c. crawled      d. adapted
31. The players were ..... about winning the final match, so they scored a KO goal in the last few minutes.  
a. passion      b. passionate      c. matching      d. match
32. Sama ..... angrily to her friends negative comment.  
a. dropped      b. highlighted      c. qualified      d. reacted
33. He made a great ..... in the conference.  
a. presentation      b. possession      c. failure      d. tutorial
34. We all support this ..... decision  
a. multi-national      b. lucky      c. sensible      d. vague





# VOCABULARY STUDY

## 1 Verbal Collocations - متلازمات لفظية

achieve	goals	يحقق أهداف	meet	an objective / a goal يتوافق مع هدف - يحقق هدف
feel	nervous	يشعر بالتوتر	play	a song يعزف أغنية the guitar يعزف على الجيتار
get	hard	يصبح أصعب	reach	a goal / an objective يحقق هدف
give	a presentation	يقدم عرضاً توضيحياً	set	goals for ourselves = ourselves goals نضع لأنفسنا أهداف
	a time limit	له حد زمني	speak	in public يتحدث على الملأ
have	my first sight	أرى للمرة الأولى	start	a charity يلشئ جمعية خيرية
	smart goals	لديه أهداف ذكية	take	too long to complete يستغرق وقت طويل ليكتمل

## 2 Synonyms - مترادفات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
achievable	فمجن إنجازة
essential	رئيسي - جوهري
get over	يتغلب علي
measurable	ملحوظ
measurable	قابل للقياس
objective	هدف
profitable	مفيد - مربح
relevant	ملائم - متعلق
specific	محدد
specific	تفصيلي / دقيق
attainable, possible	
fundamental	
overcome	
noticeable, significant	
quantifiable, computable	
goal, aim	
beneficial, fruitful, useful	
related, appropriate	
particular, specified, definite	
exact, accurate, precise	

## 3 Antonyms - المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
achievable	unachievable, unattainable بعيد المنال - متعذر
essential	non-essential غير ضروري
measurable	immeasurable غير قابل للقياس
measurable	negligible زهيد / ضئيل / طفيف
profitable	unprofitable, profitless غير مفيد
relevant	irrelevant غير ملائم
smart	stupid, dull غبى
specific	non-specific, general غير محدد - عام
specific	non-specific, vague مبهم - غير دقيق

achievable		
achieve (v)	يُحقّق / يَنجِز	- This goal is easy to <b>achieve</b> .
achievement (n)	إنجاز - تحقّق	- The <b>achievement</b> of this goal is easy.
achievable (adj)	مُفكّن إنجازة	- This goal is <b>achievable</b> .
entrepreneur		
entrepreneur (n)	رالد أعمال	- He is an <b>entrepreneur</b> .
entrepreneurship (n)	ريادة الأعمال - المجازفة الاقتصادية	- He has a sense of <b>entrepreneurship</b> .
entrepreneurial (adj)	ريادي - يُلطوي على مجازفة	- He has <b>entrepreneurial</b> thinking.
measurable		
measure (v)	يقيس	- It will take time to <b>measure</b> this road.
measurement (n)	القياس	- The <b>measurement</b> of this road will take time.
measurable (adj)	قابل للقياس - ملحوظ	- This road is <b>measurable</b> , but it will take time.
objective		
objective (n)	هدف	- I have an <b>objective</b> to achieve.
objective (adj)	موضوعي	- I learn from <b>objective</b> criticism.
profit		
profit (v)	يستفيد	- Children <b>profit</b> from reading this book.
profit (n)	فائدة	- There are <b>profits</b> for children who read this book.
profitable (adj)	مفيد - مُربح	- Reading this book is <b>profitable</b> .
relevant		
relevance (n)	ارتباط - علاقة	- This book is of great <b>relevance</b> to children.
relevant (adj)	ملائم - خاص بـ / مُتصل بـ / مُتعلّق بـ	- This book is <b>relevant</b> to children.
specific		
specifics (n)	تفاصيل - مُتعلقات	- I am not ready to talk about the <b>specifics</b> of the situation now.
specific (adj)	تفصيلي / دقيق - مُحدّد	- He gave us <b>specific</b> orders.

## 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

a passion for	شغف بـ	ever since	منذ (ذلك الحين)
a wide range of	مجال واسع من	get over my fear	أتغلب على خوفي
as possible	قدر الإمكان	in front of	أمام
be passionate about	متحمس بشأن	in public	علي الملأ - في العلن
be related to	مرتبط بـ	live in my memory	تظل في ذاكرتي
be relevant to	ملائم لـ	once a week	مرة واحدة في الأسبوع
be unlikely to	ليس من الوارد أن	start your own business	تبدأ مشروعك الخاص
by this time next month	في مثل هذا الوقت من الشهر القادم	time limit	الحد الزمني
depending on	علي حسب		

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

depend on	يعتمد علي	give up	يتخلى عن - يتوقف عن
donate ... to	يتبرع بـ ... لـ	look after	يرعى
fit in	يشارك في - يجزب	record ... on	يُسجل ... علي
get over	يتغلب علي	talk to	يتحدث إلي / مع

## 7 Clear the confusion لمُحظ الفهم

### entrepreneur - organisation man / woman

- **entrepreneur (n)** رائد أعمال (شخص مجازف مبدع يأتي بأفكار جديدة ويفذها)  
- The success of the company depends on **entrepreneurs**.
- **organisation man / woman (n)** شخص تنفيذي (مطيع وينفذ الأوامر والتكليفات فقط)  
- The success of the company needs entrepreneurs as well as **organisation men**.

## Exercise on Vocabulary Study

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Successful people can get ..... their problems easily.

(الحل: - منيئة الماطر ٢٤ ٢٤)

- a. in                      b. over                      c. back                      d. up

2. Scientists who made great ..... should be honoured. (الحيرة - أوسيم ٢٤ ٢٤)

- a. measurement      b. targets                      c. goals                      d. achievements

3. A good teacher usually supports students to ..... more success.

(الجيزة - أبو النمرس ٢٤ ٢٤)

- a. miss                      b. approve                      c. achieve                      d. complain

4. "Poodles are said to be smart dogs." The antonym of "smart" is .....

- a. clever                      b. dull                      c. untalented                      d. intelligent



5. One is very happy when they ..... their objectives.  
a. meet                      b. set                      c. achieve                      d. a & c
6. I was playing a/an ..... when you called me.  
a. invention                      b. song                      c. objective                      d. charity
7. This plan has .....  
a. ourselves goals                      b. an invention                      c. the guitar                      d. smart goals
8. "Be specific in the instructions you give to your staff." In this sentence, the adjective 'specific' is an antonym of .....  
a. non-specific                      b. accurate                      c. exact                      d. clear
9. It is impossible to ..... your goals without patience and great will.  
a. score                      b. lose                      c. sit                      d. reach
10. Mr Ayman ..... a good presentation yesterday.  
a. gave                      b. broke                      c. set                      d. spoke
11. He travelled to the USA in 2017. I haven't seen him ..... since.  
a. ever                      b. never                      c. ago                      d. before
12. One of my dreams is to give ..... smoking.  
a. of                      b. out                      c. up                      d. by
13. It is not right to punish children ..... public.  
a. to                      b. about                      c. at                      d. in
14. He told us about the ..... of his new plan.  
a. profit                      b. profitable                      c. specific                      d. specifics
15. What she said has no clear ..... to the topic in hand.  
a. relevance                      b. relevant                      c. entrepreneur                      d. entrepreneurial

## PART III

## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading-Texts

#### Setting goals for success

To **succeed**<sup>(1)</sup> in life, it's important to have **specific**<sup>(2)</sup> **aims**<sup>(3)</sup> or **goals**<sup>(4)</sup>. How often have you started something and then **given up**<sup>(5)</sup> because it was **either**<sup>(6)</sup> too difficult or **took**<sup>(7)</sup> too long to complete? It's very easy to give up when things get hard, so how can we make sure we **achieve**<sup>(8)</sup> the goals we **set**<sup>(9)</sup> ourselves? One way, often **mentioned**<sup>(10)</sup> by managers, is to have **SMART goals**<sup>(11)</sup>. These are five different things you need to **consider**<sup>(12)</sup> if you want to meet your goal.



Set page no. /

- (1) ينجح  
(2) محدد  
(3) أهداف  
(4) أهداف  
(5) يستسلم  
(6) إما  
(7) يستغرق  
(8) يحقق / ينجح  
(9) يحدد - يعد  
(10) يذكر  
(11) أهداف ذكية  
(12) يفكر في

**Whenever**<sup>(13)</sup> you plan to set a goal, you need to ask yourself these questions: Is my goal specific? Is it **measurable**<sup>(14)</sup>? Is it **achievable**<sup>(15)</sup>? Is it **relevant**<sup>(16)</sup>? and finally Is it **time-bound**<sup>(17)</sup>? If you answer 'no' to any of these questions, then you are **unlikely**<sup>(18)</sup> to **reach**<sup>(19)</sup> your goal.

- (13) عندما / كلما  
(14) قابل للقياس  
(15) ممكن إنجازه  
(16) ملائم  
(17) موقوت - له خطة زمنية  
(18) من غير المحتمل  
(19) يحقق - يصل لـ

## My goal!

(WB page 36)

### Tarek

Ever since I saw my cousin **playing**<sup>(1)</sup> the guitar last year, I've wanted to learn too. This year I have some more time, and so I'm going to do it!



- (1) يعزف  
(2) حصص - دروس  
(3) مرة واحدة  
(4) يحدد - يعد  
(5) يمارس - يتدرب على  
(6) يسترخي

I bought a guitar last month and I'm going to **classes**<sup>(2)</sup> **once**<sup>(3)</sup> a week. I've **set**<sup>(4)</sup> myself one goal which is to be able to play one song by next month. My father says he's sure I can do it. I **practise**<sup>(5)</sup> the song every day for twenty minutes, and this also helps me **relax**<sup>(6)</sup> after studying and revising for all my exams.

### Salma

(WB page 36)

I want to be a **newsreader**<sup>(1)</sup> when I'm older, so I know I have to **get over**<sup>(2)</sup> my **fear**<sup>(3)</sup> of speaking **in public**<sup>(4)</sup>. The **presentations**<sup>(5)</sup> I have to give at school are useful, but they still make me very **nervous**<sup>(6)</sup>. I've been talking in front of the **mirror**<sup>(7)</sup> and **recording**<sup>(8)</sup> myself on video talking in front of the camera. I then watch myself and correct the things I don't like. By doing this once a week,



- (1) قارئ الأخبار  
(2) يتغلب على  
(3) الخوف  
(4) على الملأ  
(5) عرض تقديمي  
(6) متوتر - عصبي  
(7) مرآة  
(8) يسجل - يصور  
(9) الحظ

I hope that by this time next month I won't feel nervous when I have to give a presentation in school about the future of the internet.

Wish me **luck**<sup>(9)</sup>!

## A passion<sup>(1)</sup> for apples

(SB page 64)

Andy Robson, who is **still**<sup>(2)</sup> a teenager, is the **president**<sup>(3)</sup> of Green and Red, which is a small, but successful apple juice **business**<sup>(4)</sup> in Maine. What is **incredible**<sup>(5)</sup> is that Andy was only eight years old when he started selling apple juice outside his home in Auburn, where he still lives with his family.



Andy **adapted**<sup>(6)</sup> a 1920s **recipe**<sup>(7)</sup> that he got from his grandmother, but he added **honey**<sup>(8)</sup> to the juice to make it a little different from his grandmother's. The **reason**<sup>(9)</sup> he decided to add honey was because he is **passionate**<sup>(10)</sup> about helping **bees**<sup>(11)</sup> and wants to help **protect**<sup>(12)</sup> them. His company now **donates**<sup>(13)</sup> 15% of its **profits**<sup>(14)</sup> to bee **conservation**<sup>(15)</sup> groups who are **fighting**<sup>(16)</sup> to save the **honeybee**<sup>(17)</sup>.

Andy, whose picture is on every bottle of apple juice, has become very **well-known**<sup>(18)</sup> in Maine. And Green and Red apple juice, which has been sold in a **range**<sup>(19)</sup> of shops **across**<sup>(20)</sup> Maine for years, is now **selling**<sup>(21)</sup>

in some restaurants and is very **popular**<sup>(22)</sup>.

But that's not all. Andy has started his own **charity**<sup>(23)</sup> with Jessica Webb, whom he met at school. Jessica keeps her own bees and is also a young **entrepreneur**<sup>(24)</sup> – she sells her own honey **locally**<sup>(25)</sup>. The two teenagers want to teach children about how to look after bees and about how to become an entrepreneur. They plan to go into schools and share their experiences as well as **educating**<sup>(26)</sup> the children about the **importance**<sup>(27)</sup> of bees and why we need to look after them.

- (1) شغف
- (2) لا يزال
- (3) رئيس
- (4) شركة - نشاط تجاري
- (5) مذهل - غير معقول
- (6) يفتبس - ينقل عن
- (7) وصفة
- (8) عسل
- (9) سبب
- (10) منحمس
- (11) النحل
- (12) يحمي
- (13) يتبرع بـ
- (14) فوائد - منافع
- (15) صيانة - حماية
- (16) يناضل - يقاتل
- (17) نحلة العسل
- (18) معروف
- (19) سلسلة
- (20) عبر
- (21) يحقق مبيعات
- (22) ذو شعبية - معروف
- (23) جمعية خيرية
- (24) رائد أعمال
- (25) محليا
- (26) يعلم
- (27) أهمية



## 2 Listening Texts

## Cairo from a visitor's view

(WB page 37)

Cairo, which is the **capital**<sup>(1)</sup> city of Egypt, is a place which **offers**<sup>(2)</sup> the visitor a wide **range**<sup>(3)</sup> of **experiences**<sup>(4)</sup>. **Therefore**<sup>(5)</sup>, **depending on**<sup>(6)</sup> who you talk to, they will give you a very different picture of the city.



Last year was a time when I decided to **fit in**<sup>(7)</sup> as many different experiences **as possible**<sup>(8)</sup> and so

I visited Cairo. I was lucky enough to be invited by a friend whose family lived there and wanted to show me everything the city had to offer. My friend Fares, with whom I had **shared**<sup>(9)</sup> a flat in my first year at university, travelled with me by train to the city. It was at the Ramses **Railway station**<sup>(10)</sup> where I had my first **sight**<sup>(11)</sup> of the **magnificent**<sup>(12)</sup> **architecture**<sup>(13)</sup> the city has to offer. However, this was not the only surprise which the city had for me. In my next **blog post**<sup>(14)</sup> I will tell you about all the wonderful people who I will never forget and the places which will **forever**<sup>(15)</sup> live in my **memory**<sup>(16)</sup>.

- (1) عاصمة
- (2) يقدم - يعرض
- (3) مجال - سلسلة
- (4) تجارب
- (5) بناء على ذلك
- (6) على حسب
- (7) يتكيف مع
- (8) قدر الإمكان
- (9) يتشارك في
- (10) محطة سكة حديدية
- (11) منظر - مشهد
- (12) رائع
- (13) هندسة معمارية
- (14) منشور مدونة
- (15) للأبد
- (16) ذاكرة

## SMART goals

(SB page 63)

**Speaker :** Now, let's look at these SMART goals one at a time and check what each one actually means. If you are serious about achieving your goals, you need to make sure they are **sensible**<sup>(1)</sup> and definitely something you can do, even if they are a little bit difficult. But your goals mustn't be too **general**<sup>(2)</sup> or you'll never reach them. So, if your goal is to **get fit**<sup>(3)</sup> by next month, it's too **vague**<sup>(4)</sup>.



- (1) عاقل / حكيم
- (2) عام
- (3) يصبح لائق بدنيا
- (4) غير واضح / غامض

Your goal needs to be much more specific such as, I want to be able to run ten kilometres without stopping in six months' time.

Next, you need to make sure that your goal is measurable. To make sure you keep working towards your final goal, you need to have smaller, **short-term goals**<sup>(5)</sup> along the way.

(5) أهداف قصيرة المدى

Instead of saying I want to run ten kilometres, start with 1 kilometre. Then, when you can do that, aim for three kilometres and so on until you reach ten. By having smaller **targets**<sup>(6)</sup>, you will find that it is easier to achieve your final goal. So, the "A" in SMART means "achievable", and your goal should never be too easy, but it should always be possible. Now, let's look at the two letters "R" and "T". The "R" stands for relevant. This is about making goals that are important to you, not your family or friends. If you don't really care about last goal, then you're unlikely to succeed. And finally, T is for time-bound, in other words there is a final time when your goal has to be reached. There's no point-saying, "I'm going to run 10 kilometres one day", because you won't. You need to plan it and write down a time when you want to finally be able to achieve this.

(6) أهداف

(7) سلسلة

So, if you want to achieve your goals, you need to ask yourself a **series**<sup>(7)</sup> of SMART questions.

## PART 3V

## LANGUAGE

### Relative Clauses عبارات الوصل

#### 1 الذى / التى / الذين / اللتى / who / which / whom / that

١ تُشير (who / that) الى فاعل عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فعل وفى هذه الحالة لا يمكن حذفها:

ex. - I met my pen friend who / that lives in London.

- Teachers are people who / that work at schools.

٢ تُشير (who / whom / that) الى مفعول عاقل في حالة المبني للمعلوم ويأتي بعدهم فاعل ويمكن حذفها:

ex. - The man who / whom / that you met with me yesterday is my uncle.  
= The man you met with me yesterday is my uncle.

٣ تُشير (which / that) الى فاعل غير عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فعل وفى هذه الحالة لا يمكن حذفها:

ex. - The dog which / that chased me belongs to my neighbours.

٤ تُشير (which / that) الى مفعول غير عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فاعل ويمكن حذفهما:

ex. - The car which / that I bought has a problem with the engine.  
= The car I bought has a problem with the engine.

٥ لا تستخدم (**that**) كضمير وصل في الجمل الاعتراضية - أي في بداية عبارة موصولة بين (,....):

- ex.** - Aswan, **which** is in the south of Egypt, is very hot. (**Not: that is....**)  
 - Ismail Yassen, **who** is still a famous actor, died in the 1970s.  
 (**Not: that is....**)

٦ بالنسبة لحروف الجر مع (**who / whom / that / which**):

أ. لا تأتي حروف الجر قبل كل من (**who / that**) بل تأتي بعدهما في نهاية عبارة الوصل:

- ex.** - This is my friend **who** I play tennis with. (**Not: with who....**)  
 - This is the motorbike **that** I go to school on. (**Not: on that....**)

ب. يمكن أن تأتي حروف الجر قبل أو بعد كل من (**whom / which**):

- ex.** - This is my friend **whom** I play tennis **with**.  
 = This is my friend **with whom** I play tennis.  
 - This is the motorbike **which** I go to school **on**.  
 = This is the motorbike **on which** I go to school.

## 2 حيث / حينما / المكان الذي where

١ تعود (**where**) على المكان ولا يأتي بعدها فعل:

- ex.** - This is the room **where** I sleep.  
 - She went to **Cairo University where** she studied Arabic literature.

٢ لاحظ أن:

- **where** = (**which** + حرف جر مناسب للمكان) / (**which** + ... للمكان)

- ex.** - This is the room **in which** I sleep.  
 - This is the room **which** I sleep **in**.

٢ يمكن أن تستخدم (**which**) مع المكان بدون حروف جر عندما يكون المكان مفعول لجملة الوصل  
 • لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين:

- ex.** - This is the house **where** we live. (المنزل مكان يعيش فيه)  
 - This is the house **which** we built. (المنزل مفعول، فهو الشيء الذي تم بنائه)

٤ لا تستخدم حروف الجر تعود على المكان قبل أو بعد (**where**):

- ex.** - I went to the room **in which** I sleep. (**Not: the room in where ....**)  
 - I went to the room **which** I sleep **in**. (**Not: the room where .... in**)

## 3 حين / حينما / عندما / الوقت when

١ تشير إلى الوقت أو الزمن ولا يأتي بعدها فعل:

- ex.** - 2012 is the year **when** Rodayna was born.  
 - Friday is the day **when** we don't go to school.  
 - Two o'clock is the time **when** I return home from school.



• when = (حرف مناسب للتعبير الزمني ... which) / (which + حرف مناسب للتعبير الزمني)

ex. - 2012 is the year in which Rodayna was born.

= 2012 is the year which Rodayna was born in.

- Friday is the day on which we don't go to school.

= Friday is the day which we don't go to school on.

- Two o'clock is the time at which I get up.

= Two o'clock is the time which I get up at.

٢ يمكن أن تستخدم (which / that) مع الوقت عندما يكون الوقت مفعول لجملته الوصل

— لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين:

ex. - August is the month when we go to Alexandria.

= We go to Alexandria in August.

- August is the month which we spend in Alexandria.

= We spend August in Alexandria.

٣ لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على التعبير الزمني قبل أو بعد (when) :

ex. - Friday is the day on which my son was born. (Not: the day on when ....)

- Friday is the day which my son was born on. (Not: the day when .... on)

4

whose (Nouns + 's) / my his her its our your their

تدل على الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم (أي لا يأتي بعدها فعل):

ex. - I saw an old man whose son was kidnapped.

- She lives in a house whose roof is high.

- انتبه عند استخدام (whose) لبعض الكلمات التي تُستخدم كفعل واسم مثل :

- يستورد / واردات imports - يدفع / راتب pay - يزور / زيارة visit - يقيم / إقامة stay  
- يكره / الأشياء غير المحببة dislikes - يحب / الأشياء المحببة likes - يُصدر / صادرات exports  
- etc. ... يصمم / تصميم design - يسبب / سبب cause

ex. - He is an architect whose designs are fantastic.

- China is a country whose exports are more than its imports.

لاحظ أن :

• who / which / that + have / has = whose + noun اسم = with + (صفة) + noun اسم

ex. - The boy who has blue eyes is Spanish.

- The boy whose eyes are blue is Spanish.

- The boy with blue eyes is Spanish.

• لا يتم ذكر ضمير يعود على نفس الاسم الذي يشير إليه ضمير الوصل:

- This is my friend who I go to school with him. (X)
- This is my friend who I go to school with. (✓)
- I go to a secondary school where I am a student there. (X)
- I go to a secondary school where I am a student. (✓)
- This is the villa which my uncle bought it. (X)
- This is the villa which my uncle bought. (✓)

هناك نوعان من جمل الوصل :

أ. تحدد جملة الوصل الاسم الذي تعود عليه وفي هذا النوع لا نستخدم (.) :

**ex.** - The man who/that lives next door works in a bank.

ب. لا تحدد جملة الوصل الاسم الذي تعود عليه بل تعطي معلومة شائعة أو إضافية وفي هذا النوع نستخدم (,) :

**ex.** - Aswan, which is in the south of Egypt, is where I was born.

١ يمكن حذف كل من (who – which - that) في الحالات التالية :

أ. يتم حذف كل من (who – which – whom) عندما يطلون محل مفعول (أي إذا جاء بعدهم فاعل):

**ex.** - This is the woman who I helped. = This is the woman I helped.

ب. إذا جاء بعدهم فعل مبني للمعلوم وفي هذه الحالة يتم حذف الضمير (be) ويتبقى (inf.+ing) :

**ex.** - The boy who is wearing a red shirt is my son.

= The boy wearing a red shirt is my son.

ج. إذا جاء بعدهم فعل مبني للمجهول وهنا نحذف أيضا الضمير (be) ويبقى التصريف الثالث للفعل:

**ex.** - The criminal who was arrested yesterday is very dangerous.

- The criminal arrested yesterday is very dangerous.

٢ يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) بدلا من عبارة الوصل إذا كان ضمير الوصل في الجملة يحل محل

الفاعل مع كلمات مثل :

The first / the second ..... / the last / the only.....

**ex.** - I was the first person who left the ship.

= I was the first person to leave the ship.

٣ يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) بدلا من عبارة الوصل للدلالة على الغرض مثل:

**ex.** - He has some books that he wants to read.

= He has some books to read.

٤ يمكن أن يأتي فعل بعد (whom) إذا جاء قبلها أحد التعبيرات الآتية :

all of, most of, none of, both of, neither of, either of, any of, one of, some of, many of .....

**ex.** - The house was full of boys, ten of whom are my cousins.

## Exercises On Language

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

📌 Getting started : check what you have learnt

1. That is the man ..... helped me when I fell down. (البحيرة - فسيحة القنطرة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. when                      b. whose                      c. where                      d. who
2. We made a cake from a recipe ..... we found online. (السيوان - دراجو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. that                      b. who                      c. what                      d. whom
3. The house ..... I was born is now for sale. (السيوط - صداما ٢٠٢٤)  
a. which                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. where
4. Talia, ..... wants to marry a millionaire, is a super beautiful girl. (الفيومية - السهداء ٢٠٢٤)  
a. that                      b. who                      c. who or that                      d. what
5. The club is the place ..... we play in. (السوهاج - طما ٢٠٢٤)  
a. where                      b. what                      c. which                      d. whose
6. Cairo, ..... is the capital of Egypt, attracts tourists from all over the world. (بورسعيد - بورفؤاد ٢٠٢٤)  
a. where                      b. whose                      c. which                      d. what
7. Our flat, ..... is on the fifth floor, overlooks the Nile. (السيوان - ادمو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. which                      b. that                      c. where                      d. whose
8. The school ..... will be provided with the latest technology. (البحيرة - كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. where I learn                      b. which I learn                      c. I learn                      d. which learns
9. The man ..... son won the race was happy. (البحيرة - أبو البريس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. that                      b. who                      c. whose                      d. whom
10. I appreciate the person ..... hopes look real and practical. (كفر الشيخ - قلنس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. that                      b. whom                      c. who                      d. whose
11. My uncle is an architect ..... designs are fantastic. (الفيومية - النحور ٢٠٢٤)  
a. who                      b. whose                      c. which                      d. where
12. Ramadan is the month ..... Muslims fast in. (السوهاج - سامنه ٢٠٢٤)  
a. when                      b. at which                      c. whom                      d. which
13. The friends with ..... I study my lessons, are helpful.  
a. who                      b. that                      c. whose                      d. whom
14. The road ..... the two villages is very narrow. (المنيا - أبو مرقاض ٢٠٢٤)  
a. join                      b. joining                      c. which is joined                      d. is joining
15. I found him sitting at a table ..... with papers. (المنيا - الجدوه ٢٠٢٤)  
a. who covered                      b. covered                      c. covering                      d. is covering
16. I'm hoping to study science at university, ..... I'd like to work as a research assistant. (الشرقية - الإبراهيمية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. after which                      b. whose                      c. after what                      d. which





## PART 1 VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

accessories(n)	ملحقات إضافية	local(adj)	محلي
come across (phr. v)	يصادف	minor(adj)	ثانوي
crawl(ed) (v)	يزحف - يخبو	outfit(n)	طقم (ملابس)
global(adj)	عالمي	range(n)	مجال - سلسلة

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

accessible(adj)	سهل المئال - متاح	major(adj)	أساسي / رئيسي
afford(ed) (v)	يتحمل تكلفة	matching(adj)	متوافق
amongst(adv)	بين	motivated(adj)	متحفز
attach(ed) (v)	يربط - يوصل	neighbourhood(n)	حي - منطقة سكنية
benefit(ed) (v)	يفيد	non-governmental(adj)	غير حكومي
bleeding(n)	النزيف	operation(n)	عملية جراحية
boil(ed) (v)	يغلي	option(n)	خيار - أحد بدائل
breakthrough(n)	طفرة / إنجاز	organisation(n)	مؤسسة - عملية التنظيم
collection(n)	مجموعة	organise(d) (v)	ينظم
competition(n)	مسابقة	organisers(n)	المنظمون
corn cob(n)	كوز الذرة	organised=arranged(adj)	منظم
deaths(n)	الوفيات	outline(ed) (v)	يلخص - يوجز
display(ed) (v)	يعرض	overall(adv)	في الفجمل - ككل
dried(adj)	مجفّف	pedal-powered(adj)	تعمل بالدواسة
effort(n)	جهد - مجهود	percentage(n)	نسبة مئوية
ensure(d) (v)	يؤكد - يضمن	pharmaceutical(adj)	دوائي
entry(n)	ذخلة - دخول	present(ed) (v)	يُعرض - يُقدّم
everyday (adj)	يومي	purpose(n)	غرض - هدف
expand(ed) (v)	يتوسع - يمتد	reduce(d) (v)	يقلل
fast(n)	الصيام	remove(d) (v)	يزيل
filter(ed) (n - v)	فرشّح - يُنقى	sell - sold (v)	يحقق مبيعات - يبيع
governmental(adj)	حكومي	selling point	عامل جذب للسلعة
improvements(n)	تحسينات	sleepsuit(n)	بدلة نوم
innovation	الابتكار	solution(n)	حل
=creativity(n)		sort(ed) out (phr. v)	يفرز - يُعيد
interest(n)	اهتمام	unique(adj)	فريد - مميز
joint (adj)	مشترك - مرتبط	venue(n)	قاعة مناسبات
life-changing(adj)	مُغيّر للحياة	vote(d) (v)	يُصوّت (في الانتخابات)
liquid (n - adj)	سائل	well-organised(adj)	حسن التنظيم
loss(n)	فقدان - خسارة		

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>accessories(n)</b> مُلَخَقَات إضافية	bags, hats and shoes which match with clothes . تتماشي مع
<b>come across (phr. v)</b> يصادف	to discover something usually by accident بالصدفة
<b>crawl(ed) (v)</b> يزحف	to walk on your hands and knees
<b>outfit(n)</b> طقم (ملابس)	a set of clothes worn together, especially for a special occasion مجموعة مناسبة
<b>range(n)</b> تنوع - سلسلة - مجال	a synonym for 'variety' مرادف

### Exercises ON Vocabulary

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Definitions

- ..... means bags, hats and shoes which match with clothes.  
a. Accessories    b. Honeybees    c. Profits    d. Entrepreneurs
- To ..... is to walk on your hands and knees.  
a. introduce    b. crawl    c. come across    d. include
- To ..... is to discover something usually by accident.  
a. introduce    b. crawl    c. come across    d. include
- A/An ..... is a set of clothes worn together, especially for a special occasion.  
a. recipe    b. range    c. profit    d. outfit
- The noun '.....' is a synonym for 'variety'.  
a. recipe    b. range    c. profit    d. outfit

#### 2 Key Vocabulary

- I have bought a mobile with lots of .....  
a. accessories    b. accents    c. access    d. lashes  
(استخوان - ادمو ٢٠٢٣)
- Pollution is a/an ..... issue. The whole world is involved.  
a. achievable    b. global  
c. relevant    d. non-governmental
- I've bought a great new ..... to wear for Sham El-Nassim.  
a. recipe    b. range    c. accessories    d. outfit
- When I was looking for my club ID, I ..... a black and white photo of my great grandfather.  
a. came across    b. got over    c. invented    d. sorted out

10. The baby lazily ..... out of bed.  
 a. resigned      b. tricked      c. crawled      d. adapted
11. This clothes shop has a wide ..... of fashionable summer clothes.  
 a. recipe      b. range      c. accessories      d. outfit
12. The ..... hospital lacks a lot of services, so I had to go to the central one.  
 a. local      b. global      c. measurable      d. achievable
13. This is a/an ..... problem; let's look into major ones.  
 a. main      b. essential      c. important      d. minor

### 3 Important Vocabulary

14. The documents aren't ..... to the public as they are secret.  
 (المنيا - ابو قرقاص ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. accessible      b. avoidable      c. stressful      d. unreliable
15. Athletes use ..... sports equipment to strengthen their leg muscles.  
 (الشرقية - الجبراهيمية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. pedal-powering      b. paddle-powering  
 c. panatela-powered      d. pedal-powered
16. It is a national duty واجب وطني to ..... in the elections الانتخابات.  
 a. recycle      b. ensure      c. sort out      d. vote
17. Low price is a good .....  
 a. venue      b. fast      c. selling point      d. death
18. The ..... of the final match made all the fans angry.  
 a. law      b. trick      c. treason      d. loss
19. I bought a green ..... for my little sister.  
 a. stretcher      b. honeybee      c. corn cob      d. sleepsuit
20. Charities are ..... organisations that depend on donations.  
 a. non-governmental      b. achievable  
 c. non-essential      d. measurable
21. The bridegroom العريس booked a ..... by the Nile.  
 a. venue      b. fast      c. selling point      d. death
22. There has been a/an ..... in the treatment of C virus.  
 a. access      b. neighbourhood  
 c. breakthrough      d. outline
23. It is safe to drink ..... water. It is pure.  
 a. filter      b. filtered      c. experience      d. experienced
24. When metals are heated, they .....  
 a. donate      b. consider      c. create      d. expand



25. The two friends wore ..... outfits for the party.  
a. passion      b. non-essential      c. matching      d. pedal powered
26. I ate some dates to break my .....  
a. fast      b. venue      c. selling point      d. death
27. The second section provides a/an ..... of the history of the pharaohs.  
a. access      b. neighbourhood  
c. breakthrough      d. outline
28. While I was walking by the Nile, I saw a man selling corn .....  
a. stretchers      b. honeybees      c. cobs      d. sleepsuits ✓
29. The ..... of the festival did their best to make it as perfect as possible.  
a. finalists      b. organisers      c. presidents      d. inhabitants
30. Controlling COVID-19 pandemic جائحة needed ..... effort between governmental and non-governmental organisations.  
a. age      b. aged      c. join      d. joint
31. The good news is that there are no ..... in the accident.  
a. venues      b. fasts      c. selling points      d. deaths
32. I've ..... the things that will be thrown away.  
a. attended      b. sorted out      c. benefited      d. voted

## PART II

## VOCABULARY STUDY

1

### Verbal Collocations مفردات لفظية

be	a great success ينجح نجاحاً باهراً	gain	access to قادر علي الوصول إلي
break	fast يفطر (بعد الصيام)	have	specific aims لديه أهداف محددة
build	a machine يصنع آلة	lose	blood ينزف دم
	electricity يؤلد كهرباء		a difference to يُحسن
create	an invention يخترع	make	a simple device يصنع جهاز بسيط
	real solutions يوجد حلول حقيقية		recommendations يوصي به - يُرَكي
display	an invention يعرض اختراع		a wide range of experiences يتيح مجال واسع من التجارب
enter	a competition يدخل مسابقة	offer	
experience	a problem يمر بمشكلة		practical solutions يقدم حلول عملية

## 2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a solution for/to	حل لـ	get lots of interest in	يجد اهتمام كبير بـ
a synonym for	مرادف لـ	have experience with	لديه خبرة بـ
aged between ... and ...	يتراوح عمره بين ... و ...	joint effort	جهد مشترك
be available to / for	متاح لـ	on the side of	على جانب
be guilty of	مُذنب بـ / مُدان بـ	the second most common cause of	ثاني أكثر أسباب ... شيوعاً
by accident	بالصدفة	unique selling point	عامل جذب فريد للسلعة
dairy products	منتجات البان	well-organised	خُسن التنظيم
due to	بسبب	with the help of	بمساعدة
everyday problems	المشكلات اليومية		
fruity dessert	حلوي من الفاكهة		

## 3 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

afford to	يتحمّل تكلفة أن	organise for	يُرتب لـ
aim at	يهدف إلى	prove ... to	يُثبت ... لـ
arrest ... for	يقبض على ... بسبب	punish ... for	يعاقب ... بسبب
attach ... to	يربط ... بـ - يُلحق ... بـ	sort out	يفرز - يُنظّم
carry out	يُنفذ	stop ... from	يمنع ... من
crawl around	يزحف حول	succeed in	ينجح في
die from	يموت بسبب	trick ... into	يخدع ... ليقوم بـ
educate ... about	يُعلم ... عن	vote for	يُصوّت لصالح
match with	يناسب - يلائم		

## 4 Clear the confusion أظهِر الفرق

### accessory - access

- **accessory (n)** اكسسوار - ملحقات - مستلزمات  
- This shop sells car **accessories**.
- **access (to) (n)** صلاحية (حق الدخول إلى مكان أو استخدام شيء أو رؤية شخص ... إلخ)  
- As the secretary of the manager, she has **access** to all files on his laptop.
- **access (to) (n)** ممر / مدخل  
- **Access** to the kitchen of the restaurant is through the back door.
- **have access to (a car / a mobile / a computer, etc.)** لديه (سيارة / موبايل / كمبيوتر... إلخ) يمكنه استخدامه  
- He has **access** to the computer network of the bank.

### organisation

- **organisation (n)** منظمة / مؤسسة (اسم معدود)  
- Some non-governmental **organisations** help the poor.
- **organisation (n)** عملية التنظيم / الترتيب (اسم غير معدود)  
- This meeting lacks good **organisation**.

## 5 Add to your knowledge أضف إلى معلوماتك

عندما تقرأ (SMART goals) تدرك على الفور أن معناها (الأهداف الذكية) وذلك صحيح بالطبع، لكن لاحظ ما ترمز إليه حروف كلمة (SMART) والتي تمثل أيضا الخصائص الخمسة للأهداف الذكية:

### الأهداف الذكية SMART goals



## Exercises On Vocabulary Study

- ⚙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A synonym for 'innovation' is .....

(الجزء - أبو النعيرس ٢٤-٢٣)

- a. invitation      b. creativity      c. collection      d. timetable



2. "I don't like going on organized tours." The synonym for 'organized' is .....  
(سوهاج - طما ٢٠٢٤)  
a. drawn up      b. arranged      c. disordered      d. reminded
3. I am looking forward ..... you again soon.  
(البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. to see      b. to seeing      c. seeing      d. too seeing
4. A good team member ..... practical solutions to the problems the team face.  
a. offers      b. creates      c. experiences      d. a & b
5. He managed to make .....  
a. blood      b. an advice      c. different      d. a difference
6. This product will be available ..... us to buy soon.  
a. in      b. at      c. on      d. to
7. I ate some dates to ..... a 15-hour fast.  
a. give      b. break      c. set      d. have
8. She thought carefully before she ..... a wonderful recommendation.  
a. took      b. experienced      c. felt      d. made
9. When you ..... a problem, you should keep calm and think carefully.  
a. offer      b. experience      c. gain      d. make
10. The high-pixel camera and the powerful processor are the unique ..... points of this tablet.  
a. sells      b. sold      c. selling      d. to sell
11. Not all people can afford ..... their children to international schools.  
a. sending      b. send      c. to sending      d. to send
12. The dishonest seller tricked me ..... paying more money for the shirt than it really deserves.  
a. into      b. onto      c. in      d. for
13. Students join secondary school after prep three, ..... between 15 and 16.  
a. aging      b. aged      c. at age      d. in age
14. Don't expect such an ..... to change the routine. He only does what he is asked to do.  
a. organisation      b. organisations  
c. organisation man      d. entrepreneur
15. The party needs too much .....  
a. organisation      b. organisations  
c. organisation man      d. entrepreneur

## 1 Reading Texts

### Young entrepreneurs

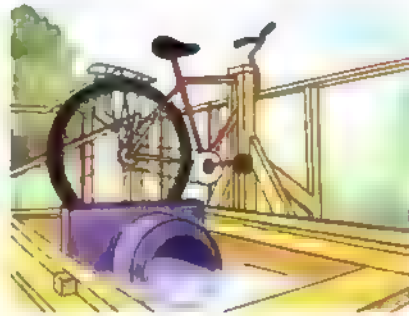
(56 page 56)

#### Pedal-powered washing machine

A 14-year girl from India has **created**<sup>(1)</sup> her first own **invention**<sup>(2)</sup>.

When her mother became ill, Remya had to wash the clothes for the family. She thought that washing everything by hand took too much time, so she **recycled**<sup>(3)</sup> some bicycle parts and built a **pedal-powered**<sup>(4)</sup> **washing machine**<sup>(5)</sup> which **saves**<sup>(6)</sup> time and keeps you **fit**<sup>(7)</sup>! Her invention will help families whose homes don't have **electricity**<sup>(8)</sup>.

Her next goal is to make a simple **device**<sup>(9)</sup> that can create electricity to use at home.



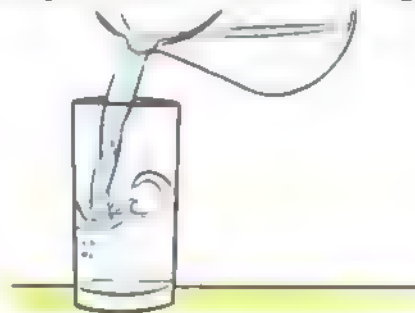
- (1) ابتكر
- (2) اختراع
- (3) يعيد تدوير
- (4) تعمل بالدواسة
- (5) غسالة
- (6) يوفر
- (7) لائق بدنيا
- (8) كهرباء
- (9) جهاز

#### Corn cob water filter

(58 page 66)

11-year-old Lalita knew that many families in her village in Odisha, India couldn't get clean water and they couldn't **afford**<sup>(1)</sup> to buy expensive **filters**<sup>(2)</sup>.

In Odisha, farmers grow a lot of corn, but they only sell part of the plant. The **rest**<sup>(3)</sup> of the **corn cob**<sup>(4)</sup> isn't used.



- (1) يتحمل تكلفة
- (2) مرشح
- (3) بقية
- (4) كوز الذرة
- (5) مجفف
- (6) يتسائل
- (7) يزيل
- (8) يغلي
- (9) رخيص

When she saw all the **dried**<sup>(5)</sup> corn cobs on the side of the road, she **wondered**<sup>(6)</sup> if they could help filter water. Her corn-cob filter **removes**<sup>(7)</sup> 80% of all pollution in the water. The water can then be **boiled**<sup>(8)</sup> to make it safe to drink.

Her goal is to sell the **cheap**<sup>(9)</sup> device to farmers so they can stay healthy.

## Real solutions to local problems

We all know the importance of new inventions to make life easier. However, not all **inventors**<sup>(1)</sup> have been successful in finding good **solutions**<sup>(2)</sup> to **everyday**<sup>(3)</sup> problems. Some of the **craziest**<sup>(4)</sup> ideas **include**<sup>(5)</sup> **mini**<sup>(6)</sup> umbrellas to **attach**<sup>(7)</sup> to your shoes or even a **sleepsuit**<sup>(8)</sup> made for babies to clean the floor as they **crawl**<sup>(9)</sup> around the house! However, **luckily**<sup>(10)</sup> enough there are also young people today who are creating and selling real solutions for problems their local community **experiences**<sup>(11)</sup>.



Several<sup>(12)</sup> teenagers from Aswan have been **trained**<sup>(13)</sup> to produce and sell their ideas in order to help those that live in their area. The inventions include a **range**<sup>(14)</sup> of useful solutions. One of the **tastiest**<sup>(15)</sup> **options**<sup>(16)</sup> by Azhar is a **fruity**<sup>(17)</sup> **dessert**<sup>(18)</sup> for those who are **breaking fast**<sup>(19)</sup> and don't want to eat **dairy products**<sup>(20)</sup>.

Eman has created a **collection**<sup>(21)</sup> of clothes with a complete range of **matching**<sup>(22)</sup> **accessories**<sup>(23)</sup> so those in her **neighbourhood**<sup>(24)</sup> do not have to go to several different shops to get the **perfect**<sup>(25)</sup> **outfit**<sup>(26)</sup>. The **unique**<sup>(27)</sup> **selling point**<sup>(28)</sup> of these ideas is that they are offering **practical**<sup>(29)</sup> solutions to real problems, and also help to **reduce**<sup>(30)</sup> pollution, as their **customers**<sup>(31)</sup> do not need to use cars or buses to travel outside their neighbourhoods.

The training project, which a **joint effort**<sup>(32)</sup> between **governmental**<sup>(33)</sup> and **non-governmental organizations**<sup>(34)</sup>, has been a great **success**<sup>(35)</sup> **amongst**<sup>(36)</sup> both boys and girls. The hope is that it will produce more entrepreneurs who will create real solutions for those **common**<sup>(37)</sup> problems we **come across**<sup>(38)</sup> every day.

(WB page 38)

- (1) مخترعين
- (2) حل
- (3) يومي
- (4) الأكثر حونا
- (5) يشتمل على
- (6) مصغر
- (7) يربط - يوصل
- (8) بدلة نوم (سلوبيت)
- (9) يزحف
- (10) لحسن الحظ
- (11) يواجه - يعايش
- (12) عديد - كثير
- (13) يتدرب
- (14) سلسلة
- (15) اللذيذ
- (16) خيارات - بدائل
- (17) بنكهة الفاكهة
- (18) الحلوى
- (19) الإفطار (بعد الصيام)
- (20) منتجات ألبان
- (21) مجموعة
- (22) متوافق
- (23) ملحقات إضافية
- (24) حي - منطقة سكنية
- (25) مكتمل
- (26) طقم (ملاسل)
- (27) فريد - مميز
- (28) عامل جذب
- (29) عملي - تطبيقي
- (30) يقلل
- (31) عملاء
- (32) جهود مشتركة
- (33) حكومي
- (34) غير حكومي
- (35) مؤسسات
- (36) نجاح
- (37) بين
- (38) شائع - منتشر
- (39) يصادف



## Report on the Young Inventor's Competition

(SB page 67)

### Introduction<sup>(1)</sup>

The **purpose**<sup>(2)</sup> of this report is to describe my experience at the Young Inventor's **competition**<sup>(3)</sup> and **recommend**<sup>(4)</sup> any changes that could **improve**<sup>(5)</sup> how it worked.

### The organisation<sup>(6)</sup>

I live in Montreal in Canada, and the competition **finalists**<sup>(7)</sup> were invited to go to Toronto to **present**<sup>(8)</sup> their inventions. The competition **organisers**<sup>(9)</sup> were very good at sending me information and helping me to **sort out**<sup>(10)</sup> travel arrangements. They also **organised**<sup>(11)</sup> for my invention to be sent to the competition **venue**<sup>(12)</sup>.

### The competition

The competition was very **well organised**<sup>(13)</sup> and there was **plenty of**<sup>(14)</sup> time for the finalists to **display**<sup>(15)</sup> and talk about their inventions. Lots of companies were invited to **attend**<sup>(16)</sup>, so I was **lucky**<sup>(17)</sup> to get lots of **interest**<sup>(18)</sup> in my invention.

**Suggested improvements**<sup>(19)</sup> Although it was great to meet so many other young inventors from my country, I think that the competition should

be **expanded**<sup>(20)</sup> to include teenagers from other countries too.

### Conclusion<sup>(21)</sup>

**Overall**<sup>(22)</sup>, I had a really positive experience and I would really recommend entering the competition.

(1) مقدمة

(2) غرض - هدف

(3) مسابقة

(4) يوصي - يوصي بـ

(5) يحسن

(6) التنظيم

(7) المتأهلون للمسابقات

(8) يعرض - يقدم

(9) منظمين

(10) يصنف - ينظم

(11) ينظم

(12) محل - مكان - موضع

(13) حسن التنظيم

(14) كثير من

(15) يعرض

(16) يحضر

(17) محظوظ

(18) اهتمام

(19) تحسينات مقترحة

(20) يتوسع - يمتد

(21) الخلاصة

(22) في المجمال - ككل

## 2 Listening Text

### Science report about an invention

(WB page 39)

**Radio announcer** : Welcome to New World, the programme that brings you **detailed information**<sup>(1)</sup> about the latest inventions which aim at improving lives. Today, we hear the story of an invention which is set to save millions of people around the world.

(1) معلومات مفصلة

(2) حل

**Radio announcer** : At the age of 15, when she heard that losing blood was the second most common cause of deaths in hospitals, Deena Mousa decided to work on finding a **solution**<sup>(2)</sup> to this life and death problem.

It all started at the age of 5 when Deena, whose parents are Egyptian, **carried out**<sup>(3)</sup> her first experiment on plants. Since that moment, she has not stopped her search for solutions to real problems. Her **objective**<sup>(4)</sup> has always been to find answers to the **everyday issues**<sup>(5)</sup> we all **face**<sup>(6)</sup>.



At fifteen, and with the help of the father, who works in a lab, Deena **gained access**<sup>(7)</sup> to the necessary equipment to start her research. Twelve years later she had invented Hemostat V-Seal **liquid drops**<sup>(8)</sup>. Before she had made the **breakthrough**<sup>(9)</sup>, the usual time it took for medicines to stop **bleeding**<sup>(10)</sup> in patients was up to 12 minutes. This, Deena says, shocked her into finding a better solution. Her **chemical invention**<sup>(11)</sup> can stop bleeding in as little [adding emphasis] as 10 seconds. This major **innovation**<sup>(12)</sup> means the difference between a patient losing **millilitres**<sup>(13)</sup> or **litres**<sup>(14)</sup> of blood.

Knowing that 35% of people who suffer a serious injury die from uncontrolled loss of blood before they get to hospital means that Deena's

invention can save a huge number of lives in a **wide range**<sup>(15)</sup> of **contexts**<sup>(16)</sup>. While this is clearly good news for soldiers in the army, surgeons in hospitals are also looking forward to being able to use the liquid **in the case of**<sup>(17)</sup> **unexpected**<sup>(18)</sup> problems during **operations**<sup>(19)</sup> and save more lives.

Deena is now working on the business plan to **ensure**<sup>(20)</sup> her solution reaches as many people as possible at an **affordable price**<sup>(21)</sup>, which is why she is in discussions with **pharmaceutical companies**<sup>(22)</sup>. She hopes it will only cost a few cents to make sure it is **widely accessible**<sup>(23)</sup>.

In a recent interview, Deena said she was very happy to be able to provide a solution for others which has always been her goal in life and that she hopes her discovery will **inspire**<sup>(24)</sup> others to follow their dreams no matter how young or old they are.

- (3) يُنفَّذ
- (4) هدف
- (5) مشاكل يومية
- (6) يواجه
- (7) يحصل على إمكانية الدخول
- (8) نقاط سائلة
- (9) إنجاز وسبق علمي
- (10) نزيف
- (11) اختراع كيميائي
- (12) ابتكار
- (13) مليلتر
- (14) لتر
- (15) مدى واسع
- (16) سياق / البيئة المحيطة
- (17) في حالة
- (18) غير متوقع
- (19) عمليات جراحية
- (20) يؤكد / يؤمن
- (21) سعر معقول
- (22) شركات أدوية
- (23) يمدد الوصول إليها على نطاق واسع
- (24) يلهم / يوحى

## Exercises on Language

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. This is the shop owner ..... wants to marry my sister.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. that                      d. a & c
2. My father welcomed my friends ..... I invited to my birthday.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. that                      d. a, b & c
3. I respect the employer for ..... I work.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. that                      d. a & c
4. I respect the employer ..... I work for.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. that                      d. a, b & c
5. The car ..... I bought for my wife is small in size.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. a & b                      d. whom
6. The car in ..... I go to school is modern.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. a & b                      d. whom
7. El-Shennawy, ..... is the captain of the team, raised the cup.  
a. that                      b. who                      c. which                      d. a & b
8. The gold medal, ..... is given to the winner, has the championship logo on it.  
a. that                      b. who                      c. which                      d. a & c
9. I like the village ..... I live.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. a & b                      d. where
10. I like the village ..... I visit every summer.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. a & b                      d. where
11. I like the village ..... has a fantastic scenery.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. a & b                      d. where
12. The school, ..... students learn, is very important.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. a & b                      d. where
13. The school, ..... my children attend, is near our house.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. a & b                      d. where
14. The house ..... I was brought up was made from mud bricks.  
a. where                      b. in which                      c. a & b                      d. which
15. The house in ..... I was brought up was made from mud bricks.  
a. where                      b. which                      c. a & b                      d. that
16. The house ..... I was brought up in was made from mud bricks.  
a. that                      b. which                      c. a & b                      d. where
17. Nine o'clock is the time' ..... my children go to bed at.  
a. when                      b. which                      c. where                      d. b & c
18. Nine o'clock is the time at ..... my children go to bed.  
a. when                      b. which                      c. where                      d. b & c

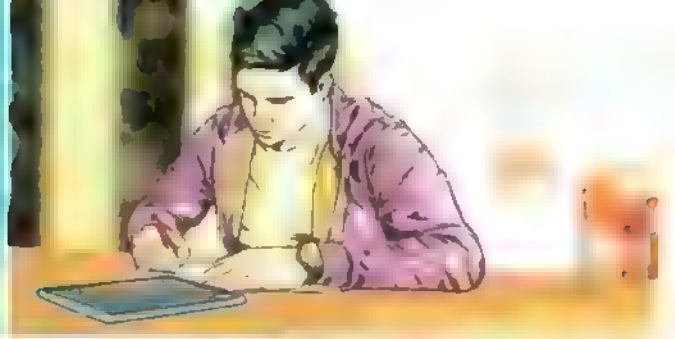


19. Nine o'clock is the time ..... my children go to bed.  
 a. when                      b. at which                      c. at that                      d. a & b
20. Spring is the season ..... is full of green colour and flowers.  
 a. when                      b. in which                      c. which                      d. where
21. The house ..... door is black belongs to my uncle.  
 a. where                      b. in which                      c. whose                      d. who's
22. The old man ..... hands shake is my grandfather.  
 a. whose                      b. who's                      c. that's                      d. with
23. The old man ..... the shaking hands is my grandfather  
 a. whose                      b. who's                      c. that's                      d. with
24. The engineer ..... designs are ecofriendly has become very popular.  
 a. who                      b. whose                      c. that                      d. a & c
25. The engineer ..... designs ecofriendly factories has become very popular.  
 a. who                      b. whose                      c. that                      d. a & c
26. This is the man whose flat .....  
 a. bought                      b. I bought                      c. I bought it                      d. buying
27. This is the girl ..... my brother wants to marry.  
 a. who                      b. that                      c. no pronoun                      d. a, b & c
28. The man ..... a black bag is my new neighbour.  
 a. is carrying                      b. carrying  
 c. who he is carrying                      d. carried
29. The bridge ..... across the Nile is very important.  
 a. built                      b. building                      c. is built                      d. is building
30. Sama was the third student ..... the class.  
 a. to enter                      b. that entered                      c. a & b                      d. was entered
31. I have a lot of goals .....  
 a. which I want to achieve                      b. which I want to achieve them  
 c. to achieve                      d. a & c
32. I have three cousins, two of ..... are pilots.  
 a. whom                      b. whose                      c. who                      d. that



### Check your understanding

33. "August is the month when I go to Alexandria." This means .....  
 a. August is the month which I go to Alexandria.  
 b. August is the month at which I go to Alexandria.  
 c. August is the month which I go to Alexandria in.  
 d. August is the month on which I go to Alexandria.
34. "My car is the one with the silver colour." This means .....  
 a. I have another silver car.  
 b. There is only one silver-coloured car that we can see right now.  
 c. There's only one car we can see.                      d. I have more than one car.
35. "Old people need our help." This means .....  
 a. It is old people that need our help.                      b. We need old people who can help us.  
 c. Old people never need our help.                      d. It is us who need old people's help.



للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة

مكتبة

part 1

## LANGUAGE HINTS

### sell

• **sell – sold (v)**

يبيع

ex. - This shop **sells** high-quality food products.

• **sell – sold (v)**

يحقق مبيعات

ex. - Korean cars **sell** well in Egypt.

### make + obj. + inf. / adj.

• **make + مفعول + inf.**

يجعل / يجبر

ex. - My father **made** me **water** the trees in the garden.

• **make + مفعول + adj.**

يجعل

ex. - Good news **makes** us **happy**.

### well-known

• **well-known to + شخص**

معروف لدى

ex. - Mohammed Salah is **well-known to** all Egyptians.

• **well-known for + (inf. + ing) / n.**

مشهور بـ

ex. - My father is **well-known for** his kind heart.

- My daughter is **well-known for** giving good speeches.

• **well-known as + n.**

مشهور كـ

ex. - Mohammed Salah is **well-known as** a footballer.

### The reason

• **the reason for + noun/(inf. + ing) = the reason (why) + جملة**

السبب من

ex. - Do you know the **reason for** his anger?

- Do you know the **reason (why)** he is angry?

• **The reason ..... be that + جملة**

السبب من ...

ex. - The **reason for** his sadness is **that** he failed the driving test.

- The **reason why** she arrived late was **that** she had missed the tram.

### What ... be that ما ... هو ان

ex. - **What made** us happy was **that** he came first.

- **What attracted** my attention is **that** he had red hair.

- **What is incredible** is **that** Andy was only eight years old when he started selling apple juice outside his home in Auburn.

**but**

يمكن استخدام (**but**) لربط صفتين أو ظرفين متناقضين:

**ex.** - She is intelligent **but** lazy. - She spoke **quickly but clearly**.

**help**

**help + (obj.) + inf. / to + inf.**

**ex.** - My mother **helps me to do** my homework.

= My mother **helps me do** my homework.

- This device can **help filter** the water.

**everyday – every day**

• **everyday (adj)**

يومي (صفة تأتي قبل الاسم)

**ex.** - Going to the club is one of my **everyday** habits.

• **every day (adv)**

كل يوم (ظرف زمان يأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة)

**ex.** - I go to the club **every day**.

**Exercise on Language Hints**

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Your good exam results ..... me feel proud. (الحيرة - مسأه المضطر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. make                      b. get                      c. find                      d. attract
- Can you tell me the reason ..... breaking the school rules ? (الحيرة - اوسيم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. for                      b. of                      c. why                      d. at
- The reason ..... he is angry is that I have broken his glasses.  
a. for                      b. in                      c. why                      d. from
- ..... annoys me is that he always shouts unnecessarily.  
a. For                      b. In                      c. Why                      d. What
- The way you talked to Yara made her .....  
a. upset                      b. is upset                      c. feel upset                      d. a & c
- Mr Youssef is well-known ..... a good teacher.  
a. to                      b. as                      c. for                      d. at
- Mr Youssef is well-known ..... his good teaching skills.  
a. to                      b. as                      c. for                      d. at
- Mr Youssef is well-known ..... all secondary school students in this area.  
a. to                      b. as                      c. for                      d. at
- Rodayna is young ..... wise.  
a. and                      b. but                      c. so                      d. although
- Sea food ..... well in coastal towns and cities.  
a. is sold                      b. sells                      c. a & b                      d. be sold
- Sometimes, one gets tired of their ..... routine.  
a. today                      b. tonight                      c. every day                      d. everyday



## 1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (سوان - بصر البوثة ٢٠٢٤)

Setting goals is the most important thing you can do in your life. Without goals, you are going to have no direction, no ambition to be successful. Achieving any goal requires steady attention to our actions and determination for wanting to achieve something big. In order to achieve your goal in life, you need to deeply desire the goal that you want. Weak desires bring weak results. You need to have the strong desire to achieve the goal. Start to think about what these goals mean to you. Take time to think why you are setting the goal you have chosen. Your goal must be clear and well defined. Generalized goals are unhelpful because they don't provide sufficient direction.

Once you set your goal, you need to start getting more specific. It moves from a dream into reality. Make a plan; it must move from your mind to a piece of paper. Write down the things that you need to do. What you want to achieve. What your life will be like when you achieve your goal. Things that you want to learn more. Qualities that you admire in others. Improve the qualities you have. Habits that you want to stop and habits that you want to improve. Remember that goals are the way to success, and the real success is to achieve your goals.

- The main idea of the passage is how to ..... .  
 a. arrange personal ideas      b. be active and hard working  
 c. achieve your ambitions      d. decide your opinions
- Weak desires bring weak results. This means that you should ..... .  
 a. want very much to achieve your goals  
 b. depend on other people  
 c. not make an organized plan      d. not have any dreams
- When your goals moves from a dream to reality, this means that ..... .  
 a. you aren't a successful person  
 b. this is an important step to achieve your goal  
 c. you are a desirable person  
 d. dreams can't be achievable
- Your goals that you want to achieve must be ..... .  
 a. complicated      b. clear      c. long      d. difficult
- Generalized goals are unhelpful because they ..... .  
 a. help making decisions      b. don't provide sufficient direction  
 c. provide useful information      d. make real objectives
- The qualities that you admire in others qualify you to be ..... person.  
 a. a weak      b. a determined and ambitious  
 c. a lucky      d. not a creative

- ## 2 Essay Writing

✪ Write an essay of about (180) words on “What makes a successful person”.

Finally and most importantly, do not care about negative criticism  
التقدیر الهدام. Give your ear to only positive criticism. Have faith in Allah and  
trust yourself. Be sure that your dreams will come true only when you want  
and do your best to achieve them.

### 3 Writing

- (القلوبية - الخُصوص ٢٠٢٤)

.....

.....

.....

## 4 الترجمة Translation

### 1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Problems are a normal part of life. It is always helpful to discuss the pros and cons of possible solutions with friends or family members.

(بورسعيد - شمال بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤)

- a. إن المشاكل جزء طبيعي من الحياة، ومن غير المفيد دائماً أن تناقش مزايا وعيوب الحلول المحتملة مع الأصدقاء وأفراد العائلة.  
b. إن المشاكل جزء طبيعي من الحياة، ومن المفيد دائماً أن تناقش مزايا وعيوب الحلول المحتملة مع الأصدقاء وأفراد العائلة.  
c. إن المشاكل جزء طبيعي من الحياة، ومن المفيد دائماً أن تناقش مزايا وعيوب الحلول المحتملة مع أصدقاء العمل وأفراد العائلة.  
d. إن المشاكل جزء طبيعي من الحياة، ومن المفيد دائماً أن تناقش مزايا وعيوب الحلول المستحيلة مع الأصدقاء وأفراد العائلة.

- 2 Modernizing the educational system is the cornerstone on which development and social stability are based.

(السوان - ادمو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. يُعَدُّ تحديث النظام التعليمي حجر الزاوية الذي تقوم عليه التنمية والاستقرار الاجتماعي.  
b. يُعَدُّ تحديث النظام التعليمي حجر الزاوية الذي يقوم ببناء التنمية والاستقرار الاجتماعي.  
c. يُعَدُّ تجسيد النظام التعليمي حجر الزاوية الذي تقوم عليه التنمية والاستقرار الاجتماعي.  
d. يُعَدُّ تحديث النظام التعليمي الضربة الركنية التي تقوم عليها التنمية والاستقرار الاجتماعي.

### 2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

من أبرز مساوئ التكنولوجيا الحديثة هو أننا لم نعد نزور بعضنا البعض، ويكتفي معظم الناس

بالتواصل مع أقاربهم ومعارفهم عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي فقط. (بورسعيد - جنوب بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤)

- a. One of the most prominent advantages of modern technology is that we usually visit each other. Most people are satisfied with communicating with their relatives and acquaintances through social media only.  
b. One of the most prominent disadvantages of modern technology is that we no longer visit each other. Most people are satisfied with communicating with their relatives and acquaintances through social media only.  
c. One of the most prominent disadvantages of modern technology is that we no longer visit each other. Most people are satisfied with communicating with their relatives and acquaintances through social media as well.  
d. One of the most recent disadvantages of modern technology is that we no longer visit each other. Most people are satisfied with communicating with their relatives and acquaintances through social media only.

عليك أن تتذكر دوماً أن التخطيط الجيد والعزيمة هما مفاتيح النجاح لكي تحقق طموحك المستقبلي

(السيوط - صدفا ٢٠٢٤)

- a. You should always remember that good plans and determination is the keys to success to achieve your future ambition.  
b. You should always remember that good planning and determination are the keys to success to achieve your future ambition.  
c. You should always remember that good planning and determination is the keys to success to achieve your future ambition.  
d. You should always remembers that good planning and determination are the keys to success to achieve your future ambition.



## achieve

• **achieve(d) (v)**

يحقق - يلجز

- Sama **achieved** great success learning new language skills.

• **achievement (n)**

إنجاز - نجاح - تحصيل

- This exam measures your **achievements** in maths.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- crowning / supreme achievement

أعظم إنجاز

- outstanding / remarkable achievement

إنجاز بارز

- underachievement إنجاز دون المستوى

≠ overachievement إنجاز يفوق التوقعات

• **achiever (n)**

منجز - لاجع

- A teacher should help his students become **achievers**.

- underachiever متفوق مفسر - دون المستوى

≠ overachiever

• **achievable (adj)**

ممکن إنجازه

- A good goal is **achievable**, not imaginary.

## come across

- **come across = encounter (phr. v)** يصادف (يقابل أو يجد أو يكتشف بالصدفة دون ترتيب)

- While I was in Paris, I **came across** an old schoolmate.

- Rokaya **came across** an old photo album in her desk.

- **come across = come over (phr. v)**

يبدو كأنه / يوحى بأنه - يظهر بمظهر طيب

- Omar **comes across** as a very intelligent gentleman.

- She **came across** very well in the interview.

## measure

• **measure (in) (v)**

يقيس (حجم - طول - كمية)

- Try to **measure** the amount of petrol we need for the journey.

- We **measure** long distances in kilometres or miles.

• **measure (d) (v)**

يبلغ مقاسه

- This villa **measures** 35 × 43.

• **measure = step (n)**

إجراء - خطوة تنفيذية

- We have to take the right **measures** to face the traffic problem.

• **measurement (n)**

مقاس (طول - حجم - مقدار) (اسم معدود)

- What is the **measurement** of your feet ?

- The tailor **took my measurements**.

• **measurement (n)**

عملية القياس (اسم غير معدود)

- The **measurement** of body temperature is necessary every three hours.

• **measurable = noticeable (adj)**

ملحوظ - بارز - هام

- The new law has had a **measurable** effect on traffic flow.

• **measurable (adj) ≠ immeasurable**

- Suffering is not **measurable**. = Suffering is **immeasurable**.

## relevant

- **relevant (to) (adj)** غير مرتبط ب **irrelevant** ≠ خاص ب / متصل ب / متعلق ب  
 - Some laws which were made long ago are not **relevant** to modern societies.
- **relevance (n)** عدم الملاءمة - انعدام الصلة **irrelevance** ≠ ملاءمة / ارتباط  
 - What you say has no **relevance** to the problem we are discussing.

## specific

- **specific (adj)** غير محدد **non-specific** ≠ محدد  
 - The students understand better when you give **specific** examples.
- **specific (adj)** غير دقيق - مبهم **non-specific / vague** ≠ تفصيلي / دقيق - واضح  
 - The **specific** operation instructions are written on the box.
- **specific to (adj)** خاص ب  
 - This disease is **specific to** old people.
- **specifics (n)** التفاصيل  
 - I have told you the general idea, Now, let's move to the **specifics**.

### Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
  1. The earthquake ..... 7.2 on the Richter scale.  
 a. measured      b. calculated      c. sized      d. sorted
  2. I asked the student to be ..... about the problems he faces.  
 a. non-specific      b. specific      c. measurable      d. immeasurable
  3. The conference wasn't a success due to poor .....  
 a. treason      b. finalists      c. solution      d. organisation
  4. A villa with a direct ..... to the sea is my dream house.  
 a. access      b. objective      c. range      d. corn cob
  5. The energy in food is measured ..... calories.  
 a. on      b. in      c. to      d. from

### Advanced Exercise on Language

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
  1. The student ..... is my brother.  
 a. who got full marks      b. , who got the full marks,  
 c. , that got the full marks,      d. whose full marks
  2. This is the house ..... into last night.  
 a. breaking      b. broken  
 c. which was breaking      d. which it was broken
  3. Do you see the man ..... ? He is a politician.  
 a. who is talking      b. , who is talking,  
 c. , that is talking,      d. , which was talking,
  4. My mother ..... is the best person in the world.  
 a. , that I love,      b. , who I love,      c. that I love      d. whose I love
  5. My name was the second winner .....  
 a. announce      b. announcing      c. announced      d. announces

# Test on Unit 12

• Create



• التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب  
• تدريبات الأزهر الشريف في بنك الأسئلة



اختبار الكبروي

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This project is ..... , so we only have two weeks to complete it.

(الحرية - عرب المحلة ٢٤)

a. relevant      b. achieving      c. curable      d. time-bound

2. My answer to the question was not ..... I wrote about the wrong topic.

(كفر الشيخ - قلين ٢٤)

a. measurable      b. achievable      c. relevant      d. time-bound

3. I'm sure you can get what you want. It's ..... if you keep working hard.

(السويس - جنوب السويس ٢٤)

a. achievable      b. measurable      c. relevant      d. specific

4. His company donates to bee conservation because he is ..... about bees.

(المنوفية - الشهداء ٢٤)

a. sensible      b. relevant      c. specific      d. passionate

5. The native inhabitants always support the ..... economy.

(المنوفية - الحصص ٢٤)

a. international      b. local      c. livestock      d. exotic

6. It is known that ..... live in very organised groups.

a. stretchers      b. honeybees      c. corn cobs      d. sleepsuits

7. The ..... efforts of the engineers and the workers played an important role in the success of the project.

a. joint      b. pedal-powered      c. profitless      d. irrelevant

8. Port Said is the city ..... I was born in.

(بورسعيد - بورهؤاد ٢٤)

a. where      b. which      c. when      d. whom

9. The footballer ..... face is often on TV, scored three goals today.

(سوهاج - طهطا ٢٤)

a. that      b. who      c. whose      d. whom

10. Most of the people ..... lives were rescued by the army were young people.

(سوهاج - العيساه ٢٤)

a. who      b. whom      c. whose      d. that

11. The man ..... next door, is very kind.

(المنوفية - جنوب ٢٤)

a. living      b. who living      c. that living      d. whom living

12. Woman's Day, ..... marks an important event in 1919, is on March 16.

(السويس - غرب الإقازيق ٢٤)

a. when      b. that      c. where      d. which

13. I played a very difficult match with my friend, ..... made me tired.

(البحيرة - أويسم ٢٤)

a. where      b. who      c. when      d. which



**2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Imagine walking up every morning with a clear sense of purpose, driven by the excitement of perusing our dreams. Setting goals can transform your life in ways you never thought possible. Goals are mere abstract desires but the foundation upon which personal and professional development is built. Without clear goals, an individual may wander aimlessly, lacking direction and motivation. Goals act as guiding stars, shaping our actions, decisions and priorities. They give us a sense of purpose and light our passion to achieve remarkable achievements. Setting and achieving goals is essential for personal growth. Setting goals in academic pursuits is essential. Goals provide students with a clear vision of what they want to accomplish. Guiding their efforts and directing their focus towards a specific outcome. Setting academic goals not only enhances students' educational journey but also plays an important role in their personal development and future career. By setting academic goals, students continuously learn expanding their knowledge and developing critical thinking skills. This mental growth prepares them for the challenges they may face in their careers and provides them with the ability to make intelligent decisions. By setting and achieving academic goals, students develop discipline, time-management and skill. These qualities are highly valued professionally and serve as a solid foundation for future success.

- The main idea of the passage is ..... .  
a. life goals                      b. walking in the morning  
c. individual wandering        d. aimless life
- Setting goals can ..... .  
a. make your life sad             b. make your life cheap  
c. change your life               d. destroy your life
- Personal and professional development is built upon ..... .  
a. directions                  b. mails                      c. purpose                  d. thoughts
- Goals act as guiding ..... .  
a. planets                      b. moons                    c. suns                      d. stars
- Goals shape our ..... .  
a. actions only                      b. actions and decisions  
c. decisions only                    d. none of them
- The underlined pronoun 'they' refers to ..... .  
a. students                      b. features                    c. goals                      d. aims

7. Another meaning for the underlined word 'continuously' is .....  
 a. sometimes      b. occasionally      c. regularly      d. without stop

8. Through mental growth, students will be able to .....  
 a. go to school      b. make intelligent decisions  
 c. do homework      d. play tennis

**3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:**

Artificial intelligence is one of the most important factors that will decrease the number of people working in different fields. (السيوط - ص ٢٤)

- a. يُعَدّ الذكاء الاصطناعي من أهم العوامل التي ستضاعف من العاملين في المجالات المختلفة.  
 b. يُعَدّ الذكاء الاصطناعي من أهم النتائج التي ستزيد من العاملين في المجالات المختلفة.  
 c. يُعَدّ الذكاء الاصطناعي من أهم العوامل التي ستقلل من العاملين في المجالات المختلفة.  
 d. يُعَدّ الذكاء الاصطناعي من أهم النتائج التي ستقلل من العاملين في المجالات المختلفة.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:**

على الرغم من فوائدها الكثيرة فإن مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي أحياناً تتسبب في نشر الشائعات وخلق الفوضى في المجتمع، لذلك يؤيد الكثيرون فرض الرقابة الحكومية عليها. (الساينس ٢٣)

- a. Despite the many types of profits, social media sometimes spreads rumours and creates chaos in society. So many supports government protection on it.  
 b. Despite its many benefits, social networking sites sometimes spread rumours and create chaos in society. Therefore, many support the imposition of government censorship on it.  
 c. Despite their great benefits, social networking sites sometimes cause the spread of rumours and create chaos in society. That's why, many people approve of imposing governmental observation on them.  
 d. Despite their great benefits, social networking sites sometimes cause the spread of rumours and create mess in society. That's why, many people approve of imposing governmental conservation on it.

**4. Answer the following questions :**

1. Did you expect Regan and Goneril to die ? Why ? (القاهرة - الريبون ٢٤)

2. Who was your favourite character in the play ? Give reasons.

3. What is the moral lesson in King Lear in your opinion ?

**5. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:**

'The most important discovery or invention'

(القاهرة - وسط القاهرة ٢٤)

### READING

#### Reading Texts

#### The world of News

(SB page 72)

(1) حالياً

(2) موضوعات إخبارية

(3) مُدُونَات

(4) مُحترفين

(5) مشاركون

(6) يكتشف

Nowadays<sup>(1)</sup>, so many people write 'news' stories<sup>(2)</sup> and blogs<sup>(3)</sup>. We decided to interview three professionals<sup>(4)</sup> involved<sup>(5)</sup> in the world of news to find out<sup>(6)</sup> what they think about the stories.

#### Anya :

I'm a news reporter<sup>(1)</sup> for a national<sup>(2)</sup> television channel and my job is really interesting, but it can also be difficult to find real<sup>(3)</sup> stories. I believe that it is very important to have good sources<sup>(4)</sup> which you can trust<sup>(5)</sup>. Nowadays there is so much news on the internet. It's difficult to know which facts<sup>(6)</sup> are true<sup>(7)</sup>, and which are not true, which is why all facts must be checked<sup>(8)</sup> carefully.



(1) مراسل صحفي

(2) قومي / وطني

(3) حقيقي

(4) مصادر

(5) يثق بـ

(6) حقائق

(7) صحيح

(8) يتحقق من

#### Haruki :

As the editor<sup>(1)</sup> of a local newspaper, it is essential<sup>(2)</sup> that all my journalists<sup>(3)</sup> write stories that interest<sup>(4)</sup> our readers<sup>(5)</sup>. The national newspapers have stories which are about the whole<sup>(6)</sup> country, but we like to focus<sup>(7)</sup> on happier news happening in our area<sup>(8)</sup>.



(1) رئيس التحرير

(2) ضروري - جوهري

(3) صحفيين

(4) يجذب اهتمام

(5) قراء

(6) بالكامل

(7) يركز

(8) منطقة



## Nashwa :

(SB page 72)

I'm a **photographer**<sup>(1)</sup> and I work with a reporter who writes about **crime**<sup>(2)</sup>. We usually travel **together**<sup>(3)</sup> so I can take photos and he can talk to the police and people who saw anything.



- (1) مصور فوتوغرافي
- (2) جريمة
- (3) معاً • سوياً
- (4) مقال
- (5) عنوان رئيسي

When he finishes his **article**<sup>(4)</sup>, he sends it to the newspaper with my pictures which go under the **headline**<sup>(5)</sup>.

## Square eyes; Are we watching too much TV; Is TV good or bad ?

Nowadays, many parents are worried about the **amount**<sup>(1)</sup> of time their children **spend**<sup>(2)</sup> watching television, but in fact the amount of time children **actually**<sup>(3)</sup> sit in front of the TV is less than it used to be. A **recent**<sup>(4)</sup> **survey**<sup>(5)</sup> in the UK found that children watch TV for about thirteen hours a week. However, they spend more than fifteen hours a week on the internet, and this is increasing. It seems that most children **connect**<sup>(6)</sup> to the **media**<sup>(7)</sup> from their tablets and phones, which is where they get their **entertainment**<sup>(8)</sup>, news and music.



(SB page 74)

- (1) كمية
- (2) يقضي وقت
- (3) في الحقيقة
- (4) حديث
- (5) دراسة استطلاعية
- (6) يتصل بـ
- (7) وسائل التواصل
- (8) الترفيه
- (9) إيجابي
- (10) مُعتاد
- (11) افلام كوميدية
- (12) مسلسلات
- (13) الواقع
- (14) عروض / برامج
- (15) محبوب / منتشر
- (16) عادي
- (17) الحياة الواقعية
- (18) ينتشر

However, sitting watching television together can be a very **positive**<sup>(9)</sup> way of spending time with your family. There are a lot of channels on TV nowadays, so there are plenty of different kinds of programmes to choose from.

As well as the **usual**<sup>(10)</sup> programmes, such as **comedies**<sup>(11)</sup> and **dramas**<sup>(12)</sup>, there are a huge number of **reality**<sup>(13)</sup> **shows**<sup>(14)</sup>, which have become very **popular**<sup>(15)</sup>. These are shows where **ordinary**<sup>(16)</sup> people appear in **real-life**<sup>(17)</sup> or everyday situations, or in situations or competitions which the programme makers have **created**<sup>(18)</sup>.

Television also **offers**<sup>(19)</sup> people the **opportunity**<sup>(20)</sup> to learn new things, not just about the news, but about the world around them.

**Documentaries**<sup>(21)</sup> about animals, the environment, history or culture are an excellent way to teach both children and **adults**<sup>(22)</sup> things they may not have learnt at school. And if everyone is finding out new information together, it's a great way to **discuss**<sup>(23)</sup> new ideas and **share**<sup>(24)</sup> opinions.

(19) يطلع - يعرض

(20) الفرصة

(21) الأفلام الوثائقية

(22) الكبار

(23) يناقش

(24) يشارك

## Green World

(58 page 75)

Green World is a new television **series**<sup>(1)</sup> about some of the most amazing and beautiful places around the world. I loved the first programme, which was about the Kalahari desert in **southern**<sup>(2)</sup> Africa and



the people and animals that live there. The programme was **introduced**<sup>(3)</sup> by Marcus Thompson, a journalist who had lived in the Kalahari for years, and it was **obvious**<sup>(4)</sup> that he loves the place. I'm **glad**<sup>(5)</sup> they used someone who really knew about the place and not a famous **celebrity**<sup>(6)</sup>. The **photography**<sup>(7)</sup> was **outstanding**<sup>(8)</sup> with **brilliant**<sup>(9)</sup> photos of the desert, which were taken during **the day**<sup>(10)</sup> and at night.

I watched the programme with my two children, and we all learnt a lot of things we hadn't known about the Kalahari desert. We also enjoyed discussing the programme **afterwards**<sup>(11)</sup>, and my son **looked up**<sup>(12)</sup> more information on the internet. I'm **pleased**<sup>(13)</sup> that there are going to be some magazines to **go with**<sup>(14)</sup> the series too. I'd certainly **recommend**<sup>(15)</sup> this series to anyone interested in the natural world.

The next programme is about the Rocky Mountains in Canada, and I hope it's as good as the first one.

(1) سلسلة - مسلسل

(2) جنوبي

(3) يُقدِّم

(4) واضح

(5) سعيد

(6) شخصية مشهورة

(7) - بحم

(8) التصوير

(9) بارز - هام

(10) رائع

(11) اللهاج

(12) فيما بعد

(13) يتحقق من

(14) مسرور

(15) يُصاحب

(16) يوصي بـ - يَرْجى

# Monthly assessments

التقييمات الشهرية

## 1. February test

اختبار فبراير

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- 1. To try very hard to achieve something that is very difficult means to .....  
a. struggle      b. suspect      c. respect      d. follow
- 2. The government plans to ..... a new train line to connect all the cities around the country.  
a. destroy      b. travel      c. commute      d. build
- 3. We went down a secret passage. Another word for "secret" is .....  
a. tidy      b. hidden      c. long      d. wide
- 4. Hany got a reward from his father because his exam results were .....  
a. boring      b. satisfactory      c. dishonesty      d. impolite
- 5. I often ..... notes during my English lecture.  
a. spell      b. speak      c. make      d. see
- 6. You don't need a ..... camera in order to take good photos; you just need lots of practice.  
a. high-tech      b. native      c. public      d. biodiversity
- 7. Hi Ali, can you ..... me up from the stations, please?  
a. pick      b. get      c. grow      d. bring
- 8. In three days' time, we ..... our flat.  
a. will have painted      b. will be painted  
c. will be painting      d. will have painting
- 9. What ..... now?  
a. you are doing      b. doing you are      c. are you doing      d. are doing you
- 10. By next Friday, the dressmaker ..... my sister's wedding dress.  
a. will be made      b. will have made  
c. is making      d. is going to make
- 11. You can't talk to Hamza now. He .....  
a. isn't sleeping      b. slept      c. is sleeping      d. was sleeping
- 12. My lunch ..... before I go home.  
a. will have cook      b. will have cooked  
c. will be cooking      d. will have been cooked
- 13. My friend's brother ..... to London tomorrow. He has got his ticket.  
a. is flying      b. is going to flying  
c. flies      d. will fly



2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A lot of people like to keep a pet. However, those pets sometimes put their owners in embarrassing situations. That's what exactly happened to us.

Our dog, Rex, is a nice little one, which we have had for almost five years. He has soft and white hair, which is so smooth that every one of the family enjoys moving his hand on him. Rex is now convinced that he is actually a member of the family, and so has equal rights. It is his rights that Rex insists on but duties he has none. One day we were expecting some guests for dinner. Mother woke up early to prepare food before the guests arrived. Rex followed her and started barking asking for some food. Mother dismissed him from the kitchen, closed the door and carried on her cooking in peace. The guests arrived; took their seats around the table and started eating. All of a sudden Rex jumped in front of one of the guests. The lady was so frightened that she screamed loudly. In spite of Rex's strong resistance, my sister took him away. He kept shouting when he was locked up in a room. Finally, my mother gave him something to eat. One of the good things about Rex is that he forgets our little cruelties to him. Anyhow, he looked up at my mother gratefully, and ate with great appetite.

1. Rex jumped in front of the lady to ..... .  
a. welcome her                      b. show her that he had equal rights  
c. make her scream                d. take food from her plate
2. One of the good things about Rex is that he ..... .  
a. remembers cruelties             b. doesn't remember unkindness  
c. was ugly                          d. helps everyone
3. Rex has ..... duties.  
a. lots of                      b. many                      c. no                      d. not
4. The underlined word 'equal' in the passage can be replaced by ..... .  
a. the same                      b. same                      c. alike                      d. different
5. Rex looked up at my mother gratefully; this means he wanted to say ..... .  
a. it isn't fair                      b. thank you  
c. you are ungrateful             d. it's not my fault
6. Rex ..... my sister strongly when she took him away.  
a. resisted                      b. loved                      c. protested                      d. grabbed
7. What do people like most about Rex ?  
a. curly hair                      b. straight hair                      c. fluffy hair                      d. dirty hair
8. The words rights and duties are ..... .  
a. synonyms                      b. of the same meaning  
c. antonyms                      d. alike

**3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

People need to do exercise regularly to keep fit and healthy. In case of being busy all the time doing their work, everyday walking can be the best for them.

٤. يحتاج الناس لممارسة تدريبات رياضية بشكل مستمر ليحافظوا على لياقتهم البدنية وصحتهم في حالة إشغالهم بالعمل طوال الوقت، فالمشي اليومي من الممكن ألا يكون أفضل لهم.

- b. يحتاج الناس لممارسة تدريبات رياضية بشكل منتظم ليحافظوا على لياقتهم البدنية وصحتهم في حالة إنشغالهم بالعمل طوال الوقت، فالمشي اليومي من الممكن أن يكون أفضل لهم.
- c. يحتاج الناس لممارسة تدريبات رياضية منتظمة ليحافظوا على لياقتهم البدنية وصحتهم. في حالة عدم إنشغالهم بالعمل طوال الوقت، فالمشي اليومي من الممكن أن يكون أفضل لهم.
- d. يحتاج الناس لممارسة تدريبات رياضية بشكل منظم للحفاظ على لياقتهم البدنية والصحية. في حالة إنشغالهم بالعمل طوال الوقت، فالمشي اليومي من الممكن أن يكون أفضل لهم.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

شهد كأس العالم في قطر كثيرًا من المفاجآت حتى الآن مثل فوز السعودية على الأرجنتين وتونس على فرنسا، وتأهل المغرب والسنغال لدور الستة عشر.

- a. The World Cup in Qatar this year has witnessed a lot of surprises up till now as the win of Saudi Arabia over Argentina, Tunisia over France and the qualification of Morocco and Senegal to the round of 16.
- b. The World Cup in Qatar this year was witnessed a lot of surprises up till now as the win of Saudi Arabia over Argentina, Tunisia over France and the separation of Morocco and Senegal to the round of 16.
- c. The World Cup in Qatar this year has witnesses a lot of surprises up till now as the win of Saudi Arabia over Argentina, Tunisia over France and the qualification of Morocco and Senegal to the round of 16.
- d. The World Cup in Qatar this year is witnessing a lot of surprises up till now as the loss of Saudi Arabia against Argentina, Tunisia over France and the qualification of Morocco and Senegal to the round of 16.

**4. Answer the following questions :**

1. In what way were Gloucester and King Lear alike ?  
.....
2. Do you think most people disagree with friends and family sometimes ?  
.....
3. What did Edmund, Goneril and Regan have in common ?  
.....

**5. Write an e-mail of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following :**

To your friend Adam to tell him about how building new cities is a good way to solve many problems.

Your name Ali and your email address is ali2000@yahoo.com.

Your friend's email address is adam2323@yahoo.com.

## 2. March test

اختبار مارس

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To ..... means to have enough money to pay for something.  
a. afford                      b. adjust                      c. advance                      d. admire
2. Something is hard or difficult, but it is interesting to do. It is .....  
a. disappointing                      b. relaxing                      c. exhausting                      d. challenging
3. To succeed, you should be confident. The synonym of "confident" is .....  
a. hopeless                      b. well-built                      c. self-assured                      d. careful
4. I don't think the money you gave him was ..... He was angry.  
a. boring                      b. rewarding                      c. terrifying                      d. frightening
5. They tried to ..... revenge on their enemy.  
a. speak                      b. take                      c. wear                      d. spray
6. The bright sunshine is ..... of Aswan's weather in winter.  
a. typical                      b. exotic                      c. original                      d. male
7. She ..... for a moment before she continued singing.  
a. provided                      b. decreased                      c. paused                      d. stressed
8. Ahmed and Tamer are twins. Ahmed is ..... Tamer.  
a. slightly older                      b. far older                      c. much older                      d. as old as
9. A cheese sandwich ..... for me at the moment.  
a. is making                      b. is being made                      c. was made                      d. has made
10. By 2025, my brother ..... from the university.  
a. will have graduated                      b. will be graduated  
c. will have been graduated                      d. will be graduating
11. Mustafa ..... to his work every day when he was working in that office.  
a. used to walking                      b. using to walk  
c. used to walk                      d. using to walking
12. Look! Your son ..... alone on the stage.  
a. is dancing                      b. is danced                      c. was dancing                      d. dances
13. Manal is 174 cm tall, but her daughter is 173 cm tall. Manal's daughter is ..... her.  
a. exactly the same as                      b. slightly taller than  
c. almost as tall as                      d. much taller than

### 2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Once Wealth and Poverty approached a merchant and introduced themselves as **visitors**. The merchant offered his salutations to both



of them and said: "May I know what brings you to my humble shop?" Wealth said: "We want you to judge and tell us who is more beautiful between us two?" The merchant was in a fix. If he were to declare wealth as more beautiful than poverty, it would curse him. If he were to declare poverty as more beautiful than wealth, wealth would forsake him. However, he regained his composure and said: "I have great respect for you both. Would you please act according to my instructions? Then only I can judge properly." The visitors agreed. He said: "Mother wealth, would you please go to the entrance (gates) and walk into the house? Mother, poverty! Would you please walk from here towards the gates? I can have a good look at you both, from near and far." The two visitors did walk as the merchant wished them to. Then the merchant happily declared: "Mother wealth! You appear very beautiful when you enter the house. Mother poverty! You look very beautiful when you leave the house."

- The word "visitors" refers to .....  
 a. wealth and poverty                      b. the wisdom  
 c. the problems                                d. the merchants
- The way to solve a problem is to .....  
 a. stop thinking                                b. hesitate  
 c. think calmly                                 d. rush
- The underlined word "fix" can be replaced by .....  
 a. repair                      b. mend                      c. mess                      d. miss
- Which of the following is the best title for the passage?  
 a. Poverty wins                                b. Wealth wins  
 c. Both wealth and poverty lose            d. A wise reaction
- Poverty was beautiful when she .....  
 a. got ill                                         b. left the house  
 c. entered the house                            d. stood at the gates
- If the merchant declared poverty as more beautiful than wealth, wealth would ..... him.  
 a. abandon                      b. marry                      c. delete                      d. cancel
- What is the personification mentioned in the passage ?  
 a. The merchant gave wealth and poverty the image of visitors.  
 b. The merchant gave wealth and poverty the image of criminals.  
 c. The merchant gave wealth and poverty the image of animals.  
 d. The merchant gave wealth and poverty the image of teachers.
- The merchant was .....  
 a. not clever                      b. cunning                      c. a thief                      d. ugly

**3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

The 27<sup>th</sup> United Nations Climate Change conference was held from 6 to 18 November, 2022 in Sharm El Sheikh, Egypt. It was the first climate summit held in Africa since 2016.

- a. تم إنعقاد مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ من ٦ - ١٨ نوفمبر ٢٠٢٢ في شرم الشيخ بمصر. وكانت أول قمة مناخ تم إنعقادها في أفريقيا منذ ٢٠١٦.
- b. إنعقد مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ من ٦ - ١٨ نوفمبر ٢٠٢٢ في شرم الشيخ بمصر. وكانت أول مناظرة مناخ سيتم إنعقادها في أفريقيا منذ ٢٠١٦.
- c. إن إنعقاد مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ من ٦ - ١٨ نوفمبر ٢٠٢٢ في شرم الشيخ بمصر. وكانت أول قمة مناخ تم إنعقادها خارج أفريقيا منذ ٢٠١٦.
- d. الدعوة لإنعقاد مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ في الفترة من ٦ - ١٨ نوفمبر ٢٠٢٢ في شرم الشيخ بمصر فهو يمثل أول قمة مناخ تم إنعقادها في أفريقيا منذ ٢٠١٦.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

تفتقد معظم الأسر لجو الدفء العائلي حيثما تتجمع الأسرة سوياً، فقلما يجتمع الأفراد جميعاً إلا في يوم العطلة الأسبوعية إذا لم يذهب الوالدان للعمل أيضاً.

- a. Most families lose the warm atmosphere where the family members get together. The family members rarely meet together expect at the weekend unless the parents go to work as well.
- b. More families miss the warm atmosphere where the family organs get together. The family members rarely meet together except at the weekend unless the parents go to work as well.
- c. Most families miss the warm atmosphere where the family members get together. The family members rarely meet together except at the weekend unless the parents go to work as well.
- d. Most families lost the warm atmosphere where the family members get together. The family members usually meet together except at the weekend unless the parents go to work as well.

**4. Answer the following questions :**

1. "When you have nothing, there's nothing left to lose." What do you think Edgar means by this ?

.....

2. "Look at yourself, Goneril! Evil hides inside you." Was Albany right to say this ? Why/Why not ?

.....

3. Do you think that Gloucester still believes his son Edgar has been cruel to him ? Why ?

.....

**5. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :**

**"A friend in need is a friend indeed."** To what extent, do you believe in this proverb مثل ؟

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....



# King Lear

## • King Lear

- The play follows him from the throne عرش into exile. المنفى
- Proud, full of power, and too trusting.
- Crumbles into doubt يتداعى من الشك, madness, and death.





# Characters in the play

شخصيات المسرحية

## • Edmund

- Schemes against **يأمر ضد** his brother Edgar and betrays **يخون** his father.
- Killed by his virtuous brother, Edgar.



## • Edgar

- Loyal but naive **بساط**.
- Banished **تم نفيه** by his father because of his brother's scheme **مؤامرة**.
- Disguises himself as Poor Tom.
- Loyally cares for his father.
- Gets revenge on **يثار من** Edmund.



## • Earl of Gloucester

- Older nobleman; loyal to King Lear.
- Father of Edgar and Edmund.
- Deceived and betrayed by Edmund.



## • Cordelia

- King Lear's good daughter
- Marries the King of France.
- Loyal to her father until the end.



## • Goneril

- A true villain **شريرة**.
- Erodes her father's loyalty and position.
- Married to the Duke of Albany.
- Poisons **تضع السم** her sister and stabs herself **تطعن نفسها**.



## • Regan

- A true villain like her sister.
- Kills a servant who tries to save Gloucester.
- Poisoned by her sister.



# ACT III

# Scenes IV, VI & VII



## VOCABULARY

spy (n)	جاسوس	betray (ed) (v)	يخون
revenge (n)	انتقام / ثأر	prove (d) (v)	يثبت / يبرهن
traitor (n)	خائن	cure (d), (v - n)	يعالج / علاج
carriage (n)	عربة تجرها الخيول	authority (n)	سلطة
madness (n)	جنون	kneel (v) (knelt)	يركع
deceive (d) (v)	يخدع	enemy (n)	عدو
interrupt (ed) (v)	يقاطع	stand for (v) (stood)	يؤيد / يرمز لـ

## Words and their definitions

- **take revenge for** : to do something bad because someone has done something bad to you ينتقم لـ
- **kneel (v) (knelt)** : to be or move to a position into which your body is supported on your knees, with the lower legs bent back يركع
- **betray (ed) (v)** : to give information about somebody or something to an enemy يخون
- **treason (n)** : the crime of doing something that could cause danger to your country such as helping its enemy during a war خيانة
- **authority (n)** : the power to give orders to people سلطة
- **deceive (d) (v)** : to make somebody believe something that is not true يخدع

## Verbal Collocations & Expressions هتلزيمات لفظية وتعابير

take revenge for	ينتقم لـ	get rid of	يتخلص من
wait for	يلتظر	take away	يبعد
have revenge	ياخذ بالثأر	send a message	يرسل رسالة

## ACT III, SCENE III (V, VI, VII) IN POINTS

1. Edmund tells Cornwall that his father the Duke of Gloucester is disloyal خائن and writes letters to the King of France. Cornwall is upset and wants revenge الانتقام.

2. Cornwall says that Edmund will be the next Duke of Gloucester. Edmund promises to show loyalty **إثبات** to Cornwall through proving that his father is guilty **مذنب**.
3. Gloucester tells Kent to take the King quickly to Dover where some people can help them. Edgar says the King's children have done to their father what his father has done to him.
4. Cornwall asks Goneril to tell her husband about Gloucester being a traitor **خائن** and about the French army. Cornwall orders the servants to arrest **يقبض على** Gloucester.
5. Cornwall orders Edmund, the new Duke of Gloucester, to stay with Goneril in order not to see what will happen to his father.
6. Cornwall can't kill Gloucester because he has no authority **سلطة** but he can punish him.
7. Gloucester is arrested and brought in front of Cornwall and Regan. They accuse **يتهم** him of being a traitor.
8. Cornwall fights Gloucester and hits his face. Gloucester is blind now. A servant fights Cornwall and wounds him badly.
9. Regan kills the servant who wounded Cornwall and tells Gloucester that his son Edmund hates him and told them that his father betrayed them.
10. Gloucester regrets trusting Edmund. He knows it is Edgar whom he should trust. Regan orders the servants to throw Gloucester out of the palace. She exits with her badly-wounded husband.



## TEXT OF ACT III Scenes (V, VI & VII)

Act

III

Scene V

*[In Gloucester's Castle, Cornwall enters with Edmund.]*

**CORNWALL:** Listen, Edmund. I'll have my **revenge** before I leave Gloucester's house.

**EDMUND:** I'm sorry, Cornwall, because the truth is so sad. This is the letter that my father Gloucester told me about. It **proves** that he's a spy, and that he's writing to the King of France **1**. Oh, I wish he weren't guilty! It's very difficult for me to discover this terrible truth.

**CORNWALL:** We'll go and see Regan.



### Suggested Questions

- 1** What do you think about Edmund ?



**EDMUND:** If the letter is true, you have work to do to stop him.

**CORNWALL:** If it is true or false, it has made you the next Duke of Gloucester. Find your father and then we can arrest him.

**EDMUND:** *[To himself.]* If I find him helping the King, Cornwall will think he is even more guilty.

*[To Cornwall.]* I'll continue to show you my loyalty, although it hurts me to do this to my father.

**CORNWALL:** I trust you, Edmund, and you'll find me to be a better father than he is.

*[They exit.]*

Act III Scene VI

*[Gloucester enters.]*

**GLOUCESTER:** My friend, where's the King?

**KENT:** He's here, sir; but be quiet, he's sleeping.

**GLOUCESTER:** Good friend, I've heard that there's a plan to get rid of **2** him. There's a carriage waiting for you; help the King into it and drive to Dover, where you'll find people to help you. Go now.

Suggested Questions

- 2** Gloucester and Kent proved to be loyal to Lear. Is it true ?

If you wait half an hour, you may both be killed. Follow me.

**KENT:** *[To Lear.]* You're sleeping now. This rest might help you, although it will be difficult to cure your madness.

*[To the Fool.]* Come, help me to carry the King.

**GLOUCESTER:** Hurry up! We must leave now.

*[They all exit except for Edgar.]*

**EDGAR:** The poor King! His children have done to him what my father has done to me!

*[He exits.]*

Act III Scene VII

*[In Gloucester's Castle. Cornwall, Regan, Goneril, Edmund and Servants enter.]*

**CORNWALL:** Goneril, send a message to your husband Albany and show **3** him this letter. The French army has arrived in England.

Suggested Questions

- 3** Why do you think the French Army arrived in England ?

*[To the Servants.]* Find the traitor, Gloucester.

**REGAN:** Arrest him now!

*[Some of the Servants exit.]*

**CORNWALL:** Leave him to me. Edmund, stay with Goneril. You shouldn't see what we'll do to your father, the traitor. Goodbye, my dear Goneril. Goodbye, Edmund, the new Duke of Gloucester.

*[Oswald enters.]*

Where's the King?

**OSWALD:** The Duke of Gloucester has taken him away, sir. About thirty-five of his soldiers have gone with him. They're going to Dover, where they say they have some powerful friends.

**CORNWALL:** Get horses for Regan. Goodbye, Edmund.

*[Goneril exits with Edmund, and Oswald.]*

Go and find that traitor, Gloucester. Bring him to us like a thief.

*[The other Servants exit.]*

I can't kill Gloucester because I don't have the authority, but I can punish him. And although people won't like this, they can't stop us.

*[Gloucester enters, brought in by two or three men.]*



Who's there? Is that the traitor, Gloucester? 4

**REGAN:** It's him.

**CORNWALL:** Make him kneel in front of me.

**GLOUCESTER:** What are you doing? Good friends, you're in my house. Don't do this.

**CORNWALL:** Make him kneel, I said!

*[The Servants make him kneel.]*

**REGAN:** You cruel man. You've deceived your son Edmund.

**GLOUCESTER:** You, my lady, are the one who's cruel, not me.

**REGAN:** You are a traitor!

**GLOUCESTER:** Cruel lady, what are you saying?

**CORNWALL:** What letters have you recently received from France?

**REGAN:** Give us your answer. We know the truth.

**CORNWALL:** And what have you planned with the traitors who have recently arrived in the kingdom?

#### **Suggested Questions .**

- 4 Do you think Gloucester is really a traitor? Why ? Why not ?

**REGAN:** Who have you sent the mad King to? Tell us everything.

**GLOUCESTER:** Listen, I got a letter that explained what is happening.

It came from someone who is neither a friend nor an **enemy**.

**CORNWALL:** That's clever.

**REGAN:** And untrue.

**CORNWALL:** Where have you sent the King?

**GLOUCESTER:** To Dover.

**REGAN:** Why have you sent him to Dover? I told you not to help **5** him. ...

**CORNWALL:** [*He interrupts Regan.*] Why Dover? Let him answer that first.

**Suggested Questions**

**5** Was Gloucester right to help King Lear and take him to Dover ? Why ?

**GLOUCESTER:** Because I didn't want to see his daughters continue to be so cruel to him.

**CORNWALL:** You will never see that! [*Picks up a sword.*] Come! Fight me!

[*Gloucester tries to fight, but Cornwall hits his face with his sword.*]

**GLOUCESTER:** Oh, help me! My eyes!

**SERVANT 1:** Stop, my lord!  
Stop now.



**CORNWALL:** Stop? Never! You can fight me too.

**SERVANT 1:** Very well, come on.

[*They fight and the servant badly wounds Cornwall.*]

**REGAN:** [*To a soldier.*] Give me your sword. A servant will not fight my husband like this! **I won't stand for it!**

[*She takes a sword and kills the servant.*]

**SERVANT 1:** Oh, I'm going to die!

[*He dies.*]

**GLOUCESTER:** Everything is black now and I can't see! Where's my son Edmund? You must **take revenge** for this terrible thing.

**REGAN:** Don't call for your son Edmund. He hates you. Edmund told us that you betrayed us. He will not help you.

**GLOUCESTER:** Oh, I've been so stupid! Edgar is the one I should trust **6**, not Edmund!

**Suggested Questions**

**6** Do you think Gloucester was right to trust his son Edmund ? Why ?



**REGAN:** Throw him out of the palace, and let him find his way to Dover.

*[Two Servants help the now blind Gloucester from the stage.]*

*[To Cornwall.]* What's the matter, my lord?

**CORNWALL:** I've been hurt. Regan! Look at all this blood! Give me your arm.

*[Regan helps Cornwall off the stage. They exit.]*



## QUESTIONS & THEIR SUGGESTED ANSWERS

### Part 1

### Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers



#### Longman Exercises

أسئلة خاصة بموقع لونغمان وإجاباتها المقترحة

1. "This rest might help you, although it will be difficult to cure your madness". In your opinion, what does Kent mean by these words ?

- «هذه الراحة يمكن أن تساعدك بالرغم من أنه سيكون صعبًا معالجة فقدان عقلك» في اعتقادك ماذا يقصد «كنت» بحديثه للملك ؟

- Kent, in this speech to Lear, is trying to be kind and offers a moment of comfort, but it is difficult to cure the king's madness.

- أن «كنت» بحديثه هذا للملك يحاول أن يكون عطوفًا مع الملك ويقدم له لحظة من الراحة والهدوء ولكن من الصعب علاج الملك من الجنون.

2. If you were in Gloucester's place, would you be appalled at the daughters' treatment towards their father, King Lear ? Why ?

- لو كنت مكان جلوستر، هل كنت ستروع وتفزع من معاملة بنات الملك له ؟ ولماذا ؟

- Yes, I would be appalled. The daughters' actions are shockingly cruel and disrespectful.

- نعم، كنت سأشعر بالفزع من معاملة بنات الملك له كلها قسوة وعدم احترام.

3. Edmund resents being treated differently to his older brother Edgar and secretly plots against both his father and his brother. Do you agree with this opinion ? Why ?

- كان «إدموند» مستاءًا لأنه يعامل معاملة مختلفة عن أخوه الأكبر «إدجار» وقام سزا بالامر ضد كل من أبيه وأخيه هل توافقه على هذا الرأي ؟ ولماذا ؟

- Yes, Edmund's resentment and his plotting are driven by his desire for power.

- نعم «إدموند» كان مستاءًا وتآمر على أخيه وأبيه وهذا نابع من رغبته في السلطة.

4. Do you agree that being blind to reality can cause a person a lot of trouble ? Why ?

- هل توافق على أنه عندما تكون أعمى عن الواقع يمكن ذلك أن يسبب للإنسان الكثير من المشاكل ؟ لماذا ؟

- Yes, I agree. Being blind to reality, can lead to a misunderstanding of the world, leaving individuals vulnerable to deceit and harm.

- نعم، أوافق. فعندما تكون أعمى عن الواقع فهذا يؤدي إلى فهم خاطئ للعالم ويترك الأفراد عرضة للخداع والضرر.

### 5. What do you think King Lear's weakness is ?

- في اعتقادك ما هي نقطة ضعف الملك لير.

- King Lear's main weakness is his pride and his inability to see the truth about his daughters' true characters.

- نقطة ضعف الملك لير الرئيسية هي غروره وعدم قدرته أن يرى حقيقة وشخصية بناته الحقيقية.

### 6. Do you think there is a similarity between the characters of King Lear and Gloucester ? Why ?

- هل تعتقد أنه يوجد تشابه بين شخصية الملك لير وجلوستر ؟ ولماذا ؟

- Yes, there are some striking similarities between King Lear and Gloucester. Both characters are blinded by their own pride and their inability to see the truth about the people they trust.

- نعم، هناك تشابه بارز بين شخصية الملك لير وجلوستر، فهما الاثنان غرورهما أعماه عن حقيقة الناس الذين وثقوا فيهم.

### 7. Do you sympathise with the character of King Lear ? Why ?

- هل تتعاطف مع شخصية الملك لير ؟ لماذا ؟

- Yes, I do. While King Lear makes some poor choices, he is ultimately a victim of his daughters' deceit.

- نعم، اتعاطف معه. مع أن لير قام باختيارات سيئة فهو في النهاية ضحية لخداع بناته.

### 8. What do you think might have happened if Gloucester had discovered the plot against him ?

- في اعتقادك ماذا كان سيحدث لو أن جلوستر اكتشف المؤامرة عليه ؟

- If Gloucester had discovered the plot against him, he might have tried to confront Edmund or seek help from someone he trusted.

- لو أن جلوستر اكتشف المؤامرة عليه، كان من الممكن أن يواجه «إدموند» أو يطلب المساعدة من شخص يثق به.



SB, WB, El-Moasser & Previous Exams

أسئلة الكتاب المدرسي وأسئلة خاصة بكتاب المعاصر والامتحانات السابقة وإجاباتها المقترحة

### 1. "I trust you, Edmund, and you'll find me to be a better father than he is." Who is the speaker? Why do they say this? (WB)

- «أنا أثق بك يا «إدموند»، وستجدني أباً أفضل منه.» من هو المتحدث؟ لماذا يقول هذا؟

- Cornwall says this to Edmund because he thinks his father Gloucester is a traitor. Of course, he is wrong to trust Edmund.

- قال «كورنوال» هذا لـ «إدموند» لأنه يعتقد أن والده «جلوستر» خائن. بالطبع، هو مخطئ في الثقة بـ «إدموند».

2. "The poor King! His children have done to him what my father has done to me!" Who is the speaker? Why do they say this? (WB)

- «الملك المسكين! لقد فعل به أبنائه ما فعل بي أبي!» من هو المتحدث؟ لماذا يقول هذا؟

- Edgar says this to himself when Kent starts to take the King to Dover. He realises that the King's daughters are as cruel to Lear as Gloucester has been to him.

- يقول «إدجار» هذا لنفسه عندما يبدأ «كينت» بأخذ الملك إلى «دوفر». لقد أدرك أن بنات الملك يتعاملن بقسوة مع «لير» كما فعل «جلوستر» معه.

3. Edmund was an evil traitor. Explain giving two points.

(القليوبية - غرب شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٤)

- لقد كان «إدموند» خائناً شريراً. وضح مع ذكر سببين.

- He plotted against his brother, Edgar, which made their father angry with Edgar. He told Cornwall and Regan that his father was a spy to the French King.

- لقد تأمر على أخيه «إدجار» مما أثار غضب والدهم منه، وأخبر «كورنوال» و «ريجان» أن والده كان جاسوساً للملك الفرنسي.

4. Why do you think Edmund had so evil a character? (دمياط - عزبة البرج ٢٠٢٤)

- برأيك، لماذا كان «إدموند» ذو شخصية شريرة إلى هذا الحد؟

- I think he was a selfish person who cared only for himself. He wanted to take everything at the expense of anybody.

- أعتقد أنه كان شخصاً أنانياً لا يهتم إلا بنفسه. أراد أن يأخذ كل شيء على حساب أي شخص.

5. Do you think Gloucester was really a traitor? Why/Why not?

- هل تعتقد أن «جلوستر» كان حقاً خائناً؟ لماذا/ لماذا لا؟

- No, I don't think so. He was loyal to the legal King.

- لا، لا أعتقد ذلك. كان مخلصاً للملك الشرعي.

6. In your opinion, how were Gloucester and King Lear alike?

(قنا - أبو نشت ٢٠٢٤)

- في اعتقادك، كيف كان «جلوستر» والملك «لير» متشابهين؟

- They were both betrayed by their children. King Lear was betrayed by his two daughters: Goneril and Regan. Gloucester was betrayed by his younger son, Edmund.

- كلاهما تعرض للخيانة من قبل أبنائهم. تعرض الملك «لير» للخيانة من ابنتيه: «جونيريل» و «ريجان». تعرض «جلوستر» للخيانة من قبل ابنه الأصغر «إدموند».

7. Do you think Gloucester deserved what happened to him? Why/Why not?

(دمياط - الروضة ٢٠٢٤)

- هل تعتقد أن «جلوستر» يستحق ما حدث له؟ لماذا/ لماذا لا؟

- No, he didn't deserve it. He did what was right and legal. He only tried to help the king.

- لا، لم يكن يستحق ذلك. لقد فعل ما هو صحيح وقانوني. لقد حاول فقط مساعدة الملك.



**8. In your opinion, what can help people to stop disagreeing and be friendly again?** (SB)

- في اعتقادك، ما الذي يمكن أن يساعد الناس على التوقف عن الخلاف والعودة إلى الصداقة مرة أخرى؟

- People must be patient and support what is right and legal.  
- يجب على الناس التحلي بالصبر ودعم ما هو صحيح وشرعي.

**9. What do you think Edmund, Goneril and Regan have in common?**

- في اعتقادك ما هو الشيء المشترك بين «إدموند» و «جونيريل» و «ريجان»؟  
- They were not loyal to their fathers.  
- لم يكونوا مخلصين لأبائهم.

**10. What did Edgar and Cordelia have in common?**

- ما هو الشيء المشترك بين «إدجار» و «كورديليا»؟  
- They both were loyal to their fathers.  
- كلاهما كانا مخلصين لوالديهما.

**11. Do you think most people disagree with friends and family sometimes?** (SB)

- هل تعتقد أن معظم الناس يختلفون مع الأصدقاء والعائلة في بعض الأحيان؟  
- Yes, I think so.  
- نعم أعتقد ذلك.

## Part 2 Questions & answers for Al-Azhar students

◀ أسئلة خاصة بطلاب الأزهر وإجاباتها

**1. What did Edmund accuse his father of?** بما اتهم «إدموند» والده؟

- He accused him of being a spy to the French King.  
- لقد اتهمه بالتجسس لصالح ملك فرنسا.

**2. What reward did Edmund get for plotting against his father?**

- ما المكافأة التي حصل عليها «إدموند» نظير التآمر على والده؟  
- He was promised to be the next Duke of Gloucester.  
- لقد حصل علي وعد بأن يكون دوق «جلوستر» القادم.

**3. Who helped with taking the King to Dover?**

- من ساعد في نقل الملك إلى «دوفر»؟  
- Gloucester, Kent and Edgar with others.  
- «جلوستر» و «كينت» و «إدجار» مع آخرين.

**4. How did Cornwall describe Gloucester?** كيف وصف «كورنوال» «جلوستر»؟

- He described him as a traitor.  
- لقد وصفه بالخائن.

**5. Why couldn't Cornwall kill Gloucester?**

- لماذا لم يتمكن «كورنوال» من قتل «جلوستر»؟  
- Because he didn't have the authority.  
- لأنه لم تكن لديه السلطة.

**6. Who is really cruel, Regan or Gloucester? Why?**

- من هو القاسي حقاً، «ريجان» أم «جلوستر»؟ لماذا؟  
- Regan was cruel. She took half of her father's kingdom and then plotted against him.  
- «ريجان» كانت قاسية. لقد أخذت نصف مملكة أبيها ثم تآمرت عليه.

**7. How did Regan describe her father?**

- She described him as the 'mad king'.

- كيف وصفت «ريجان» والدها؟

- وصفته بالملك المجنون.

**8. How did Gloucester lose his sight?**

- Cornwall hit him with his sword.

- كيف فقد «جلوستر» بصره؟

- لقد ضربه «كورنوال» بسيفه.

**9. Who was Cornwall badly wounded by?**

- A servant.

- من أصاب «كورنوال» بجروح بالغة؟

- خادم.

**10. When did Gloucester know that he should have trusted his son Edgar?**

- When Regan told him that his son Edmund told them that his father betrayed them.

- متى عرف «جلوستر» أنه كان عليه أن يثق بابنه «إدجار»؟

- عندما أخبرته «ريجان» أن ابنه «إدموند» أخبرهم أن والده خانهم.

**11. "I'm sorry, Cornwall, because the truth is so sad." Who is the speaker? Why do they say this?**

(WB)

- «أنا أسف يا «كورنوال»، لأن الحقيقة مُحزنة للغاية.» من هو المتحدث؟ لماذا يقول هذا؟

- Edmund says this to Cornwall because he says he has a letter that proves Gloucester is a spy.

- قال «إدموند» هذا لـ «كورنوال» لأنه قال إن لديه رسالة تثبت أن «جلوستر» جاسوس.

**12. "Edmund told us that you betrayed us. He will not help you."**

**Who is the speaker? Why do they say this?**

(WB)

- «أخبرنا «إدموند» أنك خنتنا. فهو لن يساعدك.» من هو المتحدث؟ لماذا يقول هذا؟

- Regan says this to Gloucester when he asks Edmund to help him.

- قالت «ريجان» هذا لـ «جلوستر» عندما طلب «جلوستر» من «إدموند» مساعدته.

**❖ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The letter that was with Edmund proved that ..... was writing to the king of France.

a. Lear                      b. Gloucester                      c. Kent                      d. Cordelia

2. Gloucester heard about a plan to get rid of .....

a. Kent                      b. Lear                      c. Cornwall                      d. Albany

3. Gloucester wanted Kent to take the King to .....

a. Egypt                      b. Paris                      c. London                      d. Dover

4. .... wanted Gloucester to kneel in front of him.

a. Albany                      b. Cornwall                      c. Regan                      d. Goneril

5. Gloucester tried to fight, but Cornwall hit his ..... with his sword.

a. face                      b. leg                      c. nose                      d. head

**Answers**

1. b

2. b

3. d

4. b

5. a

# General Exercises

❖ Answer the following questions :

- A** 1. Why do you think Gloucester felt stupid ? (قنا - نذع دهادى ٢٠٢٤)
- .....
2. What do you think of Edmund ? Why ? (دعياط - عربة السرح ٢٠٢٤)
- .....
3. Why did Gloucester warn Kent to take the king to Dover ?
- .....
- B** 1. Edmund was a man of no principles. Do you agree with this sentence? Why / Why not? (القليونية - الخصوص ٢٠٢٤)
- .....
2. "It's very difficult for me to discover this terrible truth." Do you think Edmund was telling the truth? Why / Why not?
- .....
3. Do you think Edmund benefited from his lies? How?
- .....
- C** 1. "I'll have my revenge before I leave Gloucester's house." What does Cornwall mean by these words?
- .....
2. Gloucester proved that he was a good friend to the King. Do you agree? Why / Why not?
- .....
3. "If you wait half an hour, you may both be killed. Follow me." Who would be killed? Why?
- .....
- D** 1. "His children have done to him what my father has done to me!" What do you think Edgar mean by these words?
- .....
2. "Find the traitor, Gloucester." Do you think he is really a traitor? Why / Why not?
- .....
3. Why do you think Gloucester and the King went to Dover?
- .....
- E** 1. What do you think of the way Cornwall dealt with Gloucester on meeting him?
- .....
2. How did Gloucester lose his sight?
- .....
3. Although Edmund didn't see what happened to his father, he is responsible for all of it. Do you agree? Why / Why not?
- .....



# ACT IV

## Scenes

(I, II & III)



## VOCABULARY

cliff (n)	جرف / منحدر صخري	beggar (n)	متسول
pretend (ed) (v)	يتظاهر بـ	camp (ed) (v - n)	يعسكر / معسكر
rule (d) (v - n)	يحكم / قاعدة	bleed (bled) (v)	يدمي / ينزف

### Words and their definitions

rule (d) (dv)	: to control, or have an authority over a country, or a group of people, etc.	يحكم
cliff (n)	: a high area of rock with a very steep side, often the edge of the sea or ocean	منحدر صخري
beggar (n)	: a person who lives by asking people for food or money	متسول / شحاذ
bleed (ed) (v)	: to lose blood, especially from a wound or an injury	ينزف دم
pretend (ed) (v)	: to behave in a particular way in order to make other people believe something that is not true	يتظاهر بـ
camp (ed) (v)	: to put up a tent and live in it for a short time	يقيم معسكر
fall apart (fell) (v)	: when someone is finding life very difficult because something bad has happened	ينهار - ينكسر

### Verbal Collocations & Expressions

remind me of .....	يذكرني بـ	fall apart	ينكسر / يعاني من (أزمة عاطفية)
hungry for power	مشتاق / تواق للسلطة	take revenge on	ينتقم من
angry with	غاضب من	cruel to	قاسي مع
find the way	يلتمس الطريق	make ...mad	يصيب بالجنون



## ACT IV, SCENES (I, II, III) IN POINTS

1. Gloucester led by an old man meets Edgar. Gloucester says he doesn't need eyes because when he had eyes, he couldn't see what he needed to see.

2. Gloucester asks the old man to get some clothes for the poor beggar (Edgar) to take him to Dover.
3. Gloucester gives some money to the mad man (Edgar) to take him to a high cliff in Dover.
4. Goneril arrives with Edmund. Oswald tells her that her husband has changed. Goneril sends Edmund to help Cornwall get the army ready because her husband was angry with him. Goneril plans to make use of Edmund.
5. Goneril's husband Albany tells her that she and Regan are tigers, not daughters. They have been cruel to their father. She criticizes him for not preparing to fight the French army.
6. Cornwall is killed by his servants. Albany is sad to know Gloucester has become blind. Goneril is happy about the death of Cornwall and thinks she can rule with the help of Edmund.
7. Albany is surprised to know that Edmund left the house so that Cornwall can punish his father. Albany says he will revenge for what has happened to Gloucester.
8. Kent knows that the King of France has returned suddenly to his country for something important.
9. The Gentleman tells Kent that the letters made Queen Cordelia sad. She was upset of her sisters who left their father out during the storm.
10. Kent tells the gentleman that King Lear was there but doesn't want to see Cordelia because he was cruel to her.



## TEXT OF ACT IV Scenes (I, II & III)

Act IV

Scene I

*[In the countryside. Edgar enters.]*

**EDGAR:** When you have nothing, there's nothing left to lose.

*[Gloucester enters led by an Old Man.]*

But what's happened? Are my father's eyes bleeding?

**GLOUCESTER:** Go away, good friend. You can't help me now.

**OLD MAN:** But I want to help you, sir. You can't see. You can't find your way.

**GLOUCESTER:** I don't need any eyes. When I had eyes, I couldn't see what I most

needed to see **1**. Oh, my

dear son Edgar. I wish I could hold you, then I would say that I needed eyes again!



### Suggested Questions

- 1** Why do you think Gloucester said these words ?

**OLD MAN:** Who's there?

**EDGAR:** *[To himself.]* Oh, now I feel worse than I ever did before.

**OLD MAN:** Look, it's poor, mad Tom. Where are you going, Tom?

**GLOUCESTER:** Is it a beggar in front of us?

**OLD MAN:** Yes, he's a mad man and a beggar.

**GLOUCESTER:** I saw a beggar in last night's storm. He reminded me of my son, but I had no good thoughts about my son then. Now, however, I know the truth.

**EDGAR:** *[To himself.]* My father is so sad, he has fallen apart 2 . I wish I didn't have to pretend to be a beggar

*[To Gloucester, his father.]*

Hello, sir!

**GLOUCESTER:** Is that the mad beggar?

**OLD MAN:** Yes, it is, my lord.

**GLOUCESTER:** If you really want to help me, bring some clothes for this poor beggar. I'll ask him to take me to Dover.

**OLD MAN:** He can't help you, sir. He's mad!

**GLOUCESTER:** Please, help him.

**OLD MAN:** OK, I'll bring him the best clothes that I can find, sir.

*[He exits.]*

**GLOUCESTER:** Come here, my friend.

**EDGAR:** Are your eyes OK? They're bleeding.

**GLOUCESTER:** Do you know the way to Dover?

**EDGAR:** Yes, sir.

**GLOUCESTER:** Here, take this money. All men should help 3 each other.

The rich especially should help the poor. There is a very high cliff in Dover. Take me to the top of it. You don't need to take me anywhere else.

**EDGAR:** Of course. Poor Tom will take you there.

*[They exit.]*

• **Suggested Questions** •

- 2 Why do you think Gloucester had fallen apart ?

• **Suggested Questions** •

- 3 What do you think of Gloucester concerning giving money to poor Tom (Edgar) ?



Act IV Scene II

*[In front of the Duke of Albany's Palace. Goneril enters with Edmund.]*

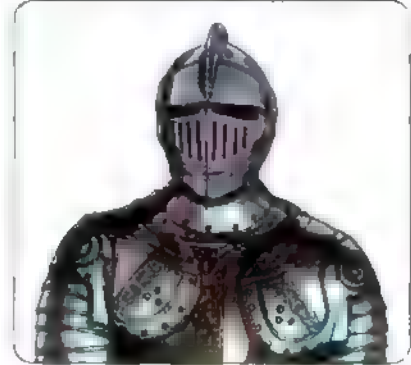
**GONERIL:** Welcome, Edmund.

*[Oswald enters.]*

Where's my husband, Oswald?

I haven't seen him.

**OSWALD:** Madam, he's inside, but he's changed. I told him that the French army had arrived. He smiled. Then I told him you were coming. His answer was, "That is not good."



**GONERIL:** I told him that Gloucester had deceived us and that Edmund had been good to us. Then he told me that I had got everything wrong.

*[To Edmund.]* You shouldn't come in. My husband is angry with you. Go back to Cornwall. Get his army together and help him.

*[Edmund exits.]*

**GONERIL:** *[To herself.]* Edmund, Duke of Gloucester, is hungry for 4 power. Perhaps I should use him to help me.

**Suggested Questions**

- 4** What do you think these words reveal about Goneril's character ?

**OSWALD:** Madam, here comes your husband.

*[The Duke of Albany enters.]*

**ALBANY:** Oh Goneril, I'm starting to feel frightened of you. You are evil!

**GONERIL:** Be quiet! Don't say anything more.

**ALBANY:** What have you done?  
You and Regan are tigers, not daughters 5. You've been cruel to your father, a kind old man. How could Cornwall allow you to do this?  
He has had so much from your father!

**Suggested Questions**

- 5** Do you think Albany is right to say that Regan and Goneril are tigers not daughters ?

**GONERIL:** Soldiers are here from France, but all you do is sit here and cry, "Oh, why is he doing this?" Where is your sword?

**ALBANY:** Look at yourself, Goneril! Evil hides inside you.

*[A messenger enters.]*

**ALBANY:** What is the news?

**MESSENGER:** Oh, my lord, the Duke of Cornwall was killed by his servant after he fought Gloucester, and now Gloucester can't see.

**ALBANY:** Gloucester can't see! Poor Gloucester!

**MESSENGER:** Regan wants a quick answer to this letter.

**GONERIL:** *[To herself.]* In one way, this is good news. Without Cornwall, it's more likely that I can **rule over** all the kingdom. But now Edmund has gone to my sister's. I don't want him to help her soldiers. I'll read the letter and send her an answer.

*[Goneril exits.]*

**ALBANY:** Where was Gloucester's son Edmund when he fought with Cornwall?

**MESSENGER:** He was travelling here with my lady.

**ALBANY:** But he's not here.

**MESSENGER:** No, my lord. I met him travelling back again.

**ALBANY:** Does he know what has happened?

**MESSENGER:** Yes, my lord.

Edmund told us about his father. Edmund left **6** the house so that the Duke of Cornwall could punish Gloucester.

**Suggested Questions**

- 6** What do you think Edmund's situation tells us about his character ?

**ALBANY:** *[To himself.]* Gloucester, I thank you for the love you have shown the King, and I'll take **revenge** for what has happened to you.

*[To the Messenger.]* Come here, friend. Tell me what else you know.

*[They exit together.]*

**Act IV Scene III**

*[The French camp near Dover. Kent enters with a Gentleman.]*

**KENT:** Tell me sir, why has the King of France returned so suddenly to his country?

**GENTLEMAN:** He had something important to do there.

**KENT:** Did the letters make Queen Cordelia very sad?

**GENTLEMAN:** Yes, sir. She read them while I was there, and I saw that she was crying. But she was not angry.



**KENT:** Did she say anything?

**GENTLEMAN:** Yes, once or twice she called out her father's name. 7 She said, "Sisters, sisters! You left your father outside in the storm! In the night! What have you done?" And after that, she left the room because she wanted to be alone.

**KENT:** Have you spoken to her since then?

**GENTLEMAN:** No.

**KENT:** Well, sir, the poor unhappy King is here, but he does not want to see his daughter.

**GENTLEMAN:** Why, sir?

**KENT:** Because he was so unkind to her before. He sent Cordelia to

France 8 and gave everything to her cruel sisters. This has made him mad.

**GENTLEMAN:** The poor man!

**KENT:** Do you have any news of Albany and Cornwall's armies?

**GENTLEMAN:** They are nearby.

**KENT:** Well, sir, I will take you to King Lear.

*[They exit.]*

### Suggested Questions

- 7 Do you think Cordelia will forgive what her father has done ?

### Suggested Questions

- 8 Do you think that King Lear is regretful for what he has done with Cordelia ?

## IV QUESTIONS & THEIR SUGGESTED ANSWERS

### Part 1 Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers

#### Longman Exercises

أسئلة خاصة بموقع لونغمان وإجاباتها المقترحة

1. "I don't need my eyes. When I had eyes, I couldn't see what I most needed to see."

- «أنا لا أحتاج عيوني فعندما كان لي عيون لم أستطع أن أرى ما أحتاج النظر إليه».

- Do you think Gloucester should have been more cautious ? Why ?
- هلى تعتقد أن جلوستر كان يجب أن يكون أكثر حذراً ؟ ولماذا ؟
- Yes, Gloucester should have been more cautious. He should have been more suspicious of his sons, especially Edmund, who is clearly manipulative and cunning.

- نعم، كان يجب عليه أن يكون أكثر حذراً وأكثر شكاً فى أولاده خاصة أدموند الذى كان من الواضح أنه مستغلاً وماكراً.



## 2. How do you think Edgar could have tried to help his father ?

- في اعتقادك، كيف كان يستطيع إدجار أن يساعد والده ؟

- Edgar could have tried to warn his father about Edmund's deceit. He could have tried to prove Edmund's true character to Gloucester.

- إدجار كان من الممكن أن يحذر أباه من خداع ادموند وكان من الممكن أن يثبت شخصية ادموند الحقيقية لجلوستر.

## 3. "What have you done ? You and Regan are tigers, not daughters," said Albany to Goneril.

- «ماذا فعلتم ؟ أنت وريجان نمور ولستما فتيات» قال «ألباني» إلى جويريل.

- What do you think Albany could have done to help the king ?

- في اعتقادك ماذا كان يمكن أن يفعل ألباني لمساعدة الملك ؟

- Albany could have taken more decisive action against Goneril and Regan. He could have exposed their wickedness to Lear.

- «ألباني» كان من الممكن أن يتخذ أفعال حاسمة ضد جويريل وريجان، كان من الممكن أن يكشف شرهما أمام الملك.

## 4. "Look at yourself, Goneril ! Evil hides inside you", said Albany.

- «انظري نفسك يا جويريل «الشر يخفى بداخلك».

- Do you agree that Albany was responsible for Goneril's being so wicked ?

- هل تتفق أن «ألباني» كان مسئولاً عن كون جويريل شريرة ؟ لماذا ؟

- No, Albany is not responsible for Goneril's wickedness. Goneril's cruelty is a product of her own ambition and self-interest.

- لا «ألباني» ليس مسئولاً عن شر جويريل فقسوتها نتاج لطموحها واهتمامها بنفسها فقط.

## 5. "The greed for money is the root of all evil." Do you agree with this opinion ? Why ?

- الطمع من أجل المال هو أصل كل الشرور هل توافق على هذا الرأي ؟ لماذا ؟

- I agree with that because greed leads to evil actions but jealousy, hatred and revenge are also factors to do evil things.

- أوافق على ذلك الطمع يؤدي إلى أعمال شريرة ولكن الغيرة والكراهة والانتقام عوامل أيضاً لفعل أشياء شريرة.



SB, WB, El-Moasser & Previous Exams

أسئلة الكتاب المدرسي وأسئلة خاصة بكتاب المعاصر والامتحانات السابقة وإجاباتها المقترحة

## 1. Who is Poor Tom? Who does the Duke of Gloucester think he is?

(SB)

- من هو «توم المسكين»؟ ماذا كان يعتقد دوق «جلوستر» في «توم» ؟

- Edgar disguises himself as Poor Tom. The Duke of Gloucester thinks he is a mad beggar.

- يتنكر «إدجار» في هيئة «توم المسكين». يعتقد دوق «جلوستر» أنه متسول مجنون.

## 2. Why does Albany feel frightened of Goneril?

(SB)

- لماذا يشعر «ألباني» بالخوف من «جونيريل»؟
- Because he thinks Goneril is evil. لأنه يعتقد أن «جونيريل» شريرة.

## 3. What does Goneril tell Edmund to do? What does she plan to do?

(SB) (أسوان ٢٠٢٤)

- ماذا طلبت «جونيريل» من «إدموند» أن يفعل؟ ما الذي تخطط للقيام به؟
- To go back to Cornwall, get his army together and help him. She is planning to use Edmund to help her, as he is hungry for power.
- أن يعود إلى «كورنوال» ويجمع جيشه ويساعده. إنها تخطط لاستخدام «إدموند» لمساعدتها، لأنه متعطش للسلطة.

## 4. Why does Goneril think it will be easier for her to rule over the whole kingdom now?

(SB) (الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٤) (كفر الشيخ - دسوق ٢٠٢٤)

- لماذا تعتقد «جونيريل» أنه سيكون من الأسهل عليها أن تحكم المملكة بأكملها الآن؟
- Because Cornwall, Regan's husband, is dead.. لأن «كورنوال» زوج ريجان مات.

## 5. "When you have nothing, there's nothing left to lose." What do you think Edgar means by this?

(الدقهلية - طحا ٢٠٢٤)

- «عندما لا يكون لديك شيء، فليس هناك ما تخسره.» برأيك، ماذا يعني «إدجار» بهذا؟
- I think he means that a person who has lost everything is so desperate that he is ready to do anything.
- أعتقد أنه يقصد أن الشخص الذي فقد كل شيء يكون يائس للغاية لدرجة أنه مستعد لفعل أي شيء.

## 6. "I don't need any eyes. When I had eyes, I couldn't see what I most needed to see." Why do you think Gloucester says this?

(WB) (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٤)

- «لست بحاجة إلى أي عيون. عندما كان لدي عيون، لم أتمكن من رؤية ما كنت بحاجة لرؤيته.»
- في اعتقادك لماذا يقول «جلوستر» هذا؟
- Gloucester says this because he realises that he could not see that Edgar was a good son and not Edmund.
- يقول «جلوستر» هذا لأنه أدرك أنه لم يستطيع أن يرى أن «إدجار» كان هو الابن الصالح وليس «إدموند».

## 7. The Duke of Gloucester was the victim of his loyalty and trust in his son. Explain.

- كان دوق «جلوستر» ضحية ولاءه وثقته بابنه. وضح ذلك.

- Gloucester was tricked by his younger son Edmund. Edmund plotted against his elder brother Edgar. Edmund also plotted against Gloucester himself. Gloucester's loyalty to King Lear made Cornwall hit him on the face with his sword, which made him go blind.
- لقد خدعه ابنه الأصغر «إدموند». تأمر «إدموند» ضد أخيه الأكبر «إدجار». كما تأمر «إدموند» ضد «جلوستر» نفسه. ولاء «جلوستر» للملك «ليار» جعل «كورنوال» يضربه على وجهه بسيفه، مما أصابه بالعمى.

8. If you were Edgar, would you reveal your true identity to your father, Gloucester, to comfort him? Why/Why not?

- لو كنت مكان «إدجار»، هل ستكشف عن هويتك الحقيقية لوالدك «جلوستر» لتهدئته؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟

- Perhaps I would if that wouldn't put anyone in danger. Duke Gloucester was sad and desperate and he needed emotional support after he had known the truth.

- ربما سأفعل لو أن ذلك لا يُعَرِّض أى شخص للخطر. كان الدوق «جلوستر» حزيناً ويائساً وكان بحاجة إلى الدعم العاطفى بعد أن عرف الحقيقة.

9. "There is a very high cliff in Dover. Take me to the top of it. You don't need to take me anywhere else." Why does Gloucester say this to Edgar and what is he planning to do?

(W/B)

- «يوجد منحدر مرتفع جداً فى «دوفر». خذنى إلى قمته. لا تحتاج أن تأخذنى إلى أى مكان آخر.» لماذا يقول «جلوستر» هذا لـ «إدجار» وما الذى يخطط للقيام به؟

- Gloucester says this because he wants Edgar to take him to the cliffs, and he is planning to jump from it.

- يقول «جلوستر» هذا لأنه يريد من «إدجار» أن يأخذه إلى المنحدرات، وهو يخطط للقفز منها.

10. Goneril was neither a loving daughter nor a good wife. Explain.

- لم تكن «جونيريل» ابنة فحبة ولا زوجة صالحة. وضح ذلك.

- She was cruel to her old father and plotted against him. Her husband, Albany, was afraid of her.

- كانت قاسية مع والدها العجوز وتآمرت عليه. وكان زوجها «ألبانى» يخاف منها.

11. "You and Regan are tigers, not daughters." Do you think the word 'tigers' really describes the two sisters? Why?

(W/B) (دمياط - الروضة ٢٠٢٤)

- «أنت و «ريجان» نمور وليستما فتيات.» هل تعتقد أن كلمة «النمور» تصف الأختين حقاً؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I think so because they are dangerous and very cruel to their father.

- نعم، أعتقد ذلك لأنهما خطيرتان وقاسيتان جداً مع والدهما.

12. If you were the Duke of Albany, would you fight the French soldiers? Why/Why not?

- لو كنت دوق «ألبانى» هل ستقاتل الجنود الفرنسيين؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟

- No, I wouldn't. They came to support the old King against his two cruel daughters.

- لا، لن أفعل. لقد جاؤوا لدعم الملك العجوز ضد ابنتيه القاسيتين.

13. "Look at yourself, Goneril! Evil hides inside you." Was Albany right to say this? Why/Why not?

- انظري إلى نفسك يا «جونيريل»! الشر يختبئ بداخلك.» هل كان «ألبانى» على حق فى قوله هذا؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟

- Yes, he was. Goneril was all evil. She lied to her father saying she loved him very much. After he had given her half of his kingdom, she plotted against him.

- نعم كان محقاً. كانت «جونيريل» شريرة تماماً. لقد كذبت على والدها قائلة إنها تحبه كثيراً، وبعد أن أعطاه نصف مملكته تآمرت عليه.



14. "What do you think of Albany?"

- ما رأيك في «ألباني»؟

- He wasn't happy with his wife's evil plans. He showed loyalty to the King.

- لم يكن سعيداً بخطط زوجته الشريرة، وأظهر الولاء للملك.

15. "He does not want to see his daughter ... because he was so unkind to her before." Who is Kent talking about? Do you think the King regrets the decisions he made against his daughter? Why? (WB)

- «لا يريد أن يرى ابنته ... لأنه كان قاسياً معها من قبل.» من الذي يتحدث عنه «كينت»؟ هل تعتقد أن الملك نادم على القرارات التي اتخذها ضد ابنته؟ لماذا؟

- He is talking about Lear and Cordelia. I think so because he finally realises that Cordelia is the one who really loves him the most, but he was unkind to her before.

- يتحدث عن «لير» و «كورديليا». اعتقد ذلك لأنه أدرك أخيراً أن «كورديليا» هي من تحبه أكثر حقاً، لكنه كان قاسياً معها من قبل.

16. If you were Edgar, would you feel sad for seeing Gloucester blind ?

(القاهرة - النزهة ٢٠٢٤)

- لو كنت مكان «إدجار» هل كنت ستشعر بالحزن عند رؤية جلوستر كيف البصر ؟

- If I were Edgar, I'd feel sad for my blind father and I'd take revenge on the man who did that.

- لو كنت مكان إدجار، سأكون حزين على رؤية أبي وهو كيف البصر وانتقم ممن كان السبب في ذلك.

Part 2 Questions & answers for Al-Azhar students

◀ أسئلة خاصة بطلاب الأزهر وإجاباتها

1. Why has the King of France returned to his country? (SB)

- لماذا عاد ملك فرنسا إلى بلاده؟

- Because he had something important to do there.

- لأن لديه شيئاً مهماً للقيام به هناك.

2. Where are Cornwall and Albany's armies? (SB)

- أين جيوش «كورنوال» و «ألباني»؟

- Near Dover.

- بالقرب من «دوفر».

3. "My father is so sad; he has fallen apart. I wish I didn't have to pretend to be a beggar." Who says this? Why was he sorry for pretending to be a beggar? What does it tell you about him? (WB)

- «والدي حزين للغاية، لقد انهار. ليتني لم أظاهر بأنني متسول.» من يقول هذا؟ لماذا كان نادفاً لتظاهره بأنه متسول؟ بماذا يخبركم هذا الكلام عنه؟

- Edgar says this. He regrets his disguise because he wants to tell his father the truth. It tells us he doesn't like deceiving his father and that he is not a bad person.

- «إدجار» يقول هذا نادفاً على تذكره لأنه يريد أن يخبر والده بالحقيقة. يخبرنا ذلك أنه لا يحب خداع والده وأنه ليس شخصاً سيئاً.

4. "You shouldn't come in. My husband is angry with you. Go back to Cornwall. Get his army together and help him." Who says this and why?

(WB)

- «لا ينبغي أن تدخل. زوجي غاضب منك. ارجع إلى «كورنوال» واجمعوا جيشه وساعده». من يقول هذا ولماذا؟

- Goneril says this to Edmund. She says that Albany is angry with him so he should use Cornwall's army to help them.

- تقول «جونيريل» هذا لـ «إدموند»، تقول إن «ألباني» غاضب منه لذا يجب عليه استخدام جيش «كورنوال» لمساعدتهم.

5. "You and Regan are tigers, not daughters." Who says this and why?

(WB)

- «أنت و «ريجان» نمور ولستما فتيات». من يقول هذا ولماذا؟

- Albany says this to Goneril when he realises she plans to get power from Lear. Albany is talking about the way Regan and Goneril have treated their father Lear.

- يقول «ألباني» هذا لـ «جونيريل» عندما يدرك أنها تخطط للحصول على السلطة من «ليار». «ألباني» يتحدث عن الطريقة التي تعاملت بها «ريجان» و «جونيريل» مع والدهما «ليار».

❖ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Edgar was dressed as a .....  
a. farmer      b. beggar      c. prince      d. king
- ..... told Goneril that the French army had arrived.  
a. Oswald      b. Ragan      c. Poor Tom      d. Cornwall
- Goneril told ..... not to enter the palace because her husband was angry.  
a. Oswald      b. Edmund      c. Gloucester      d. Albany
- Albany said that Goneril and Regan were ..... not daughters.  
a. tigers      b. whales      c. foxes      d. wolves
- The Duke of ..... was killed by a servant after he fought Gloucester.  
a. Albany      b. Oswald      c. Lear      d. Cornwall

### Answers

1. b	2. a	3. b	4. a	5. d
------	------	------	------	------

# General Exercises

## ★ Answer the following questions :

- A** 1. Why does Albany feel frightened of Goneril ? (القليوبية - غرب شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٤)
- .....
2. If you were in King Lear's place, would you refuse to see your daughter, Cordelia again ? Why ?
- .....
3. Do you think that the word "tigers" really describes Goneril and Regan ? Why ?
- .....
- B** 1. "When you have nothing, there's nothing left to lose." What does the speaker mean?
- .....
2. "I wish I didn't have to pretend to be a beggar." Why do you think the speaker said that?
- .....
3. "All men should help each other." What does this quotation tell us about the speaker?
- .....
- C** 1. Do you think Albany is pleased with Goneril's behaviour? Why / Why not?
- .....
2. In your point of view, why would Albany be angry with Edmund?
- .....
3. "Edmund, Duke of Gloucester, is hungry for power." What does Gloucester mean?
- .....
- D** 1. Do you think being hungry for power is something good or bad? Why?
- .....
2. "I'm starting to feel frightened of you. You are evil!" What can we infer نستنتج from this quotation?
- .....
3. "You and Regan are tigers, not daughters." What do you think of this description?
- .....
- E** 1. Although the messenger الرسول told Albany that Cornwall was killed, he was interested in Gloucester who couldn't see. What does this show?
- .....
2. What do you think of the way Goneril received the death of her sister's husband? (الفريفة - طنطا ٢٠٢٣)
- .....
3. The King didn't want to see Cordelia. Why do you think so?
- .....



# ACT IV

## Scenes (IV, V & VI)



### VOCABULARY

steep (adj)	شديد الانحدار	edge (n)	حافة
flat (adj)	مسطو / مسطح	reward (ed) (v)	يكافئ
duty (n)	واجب	valuable (adj)	قيم / ثمين
scared (adj)	مرعوب	war (n)	حرب
jewels (n)	مجوهرات	strange (adj)	غريب
alive (adj)	على قيد الحياة	dress (ed) (v)	يرتدى
purse (n)	كيس نقود		

### Words and their definitions

- **reward (ed) (v)** : to give something to somebody because they have done something good, worked hard, etc. يكافئ
- **flat (adj)** : having a level surface, not curved or sloping. مسطح
- **edge (n)** : the outside limit of an object, a surface or an area; the furthest part from the centre. حافة
- **duty (n)** : something that you feel you have to do because it is your moral or legal responsibility. واجب
- **purse (n)** : a small bag made of leather, plastic, etc. for carrying coins, paper money, cards, etc. كيس نقود
- **jewel (n)** : a shiny stone that is used in necklaces or bracelets. جوهرة / حجر كريم

### Verbal Collocations & Expressions عبارات لفظية وتعبيرات

cruel to	قاسى مع	take power	يتولى السلطة
close to	قريب من	rule over	يسيطر على
feel sorry for	يشعر بالأسى والحزن على	my blood runs cold	انتابتنى حالة من الرعب

### ACT IV, SCENES (IV, V, VI) IN POINTS

1. Cordelia orders an officer to find her father and wishes for a cure for him. The British army is coming. Cordelia says she only fights for love not for power السلطة.

2. Goneril sends a letter to Edmund. Regan wants to read it. Oswald refuses. She tells Oswald that she is worried that without a husband her sister Goneril would like to rule over the kingdom and that's why she needs the help of a clever man like Edmund.
3. Regan offers a reward for anyone who would kill Gloucester. Oswald thinks he will kill him.
4. Edgar tries to convince **يقنع** Gloucester that he is climbing up the hill. Edgar speaks as himself. Edgar tells Gloucester that it is very high up there. Gloucester gives him a purse **حانطة** with a jewel inside. They say goodbye to each other.
5. Gloucester says goodbye to the world hoping Edgar was alive. He falls forward onto the ground.
6. Edgar then speaks to the blind man as if the blind man has fallen from a cliff but he is still alive.
7. Edgar asks Gloucester about the mad man who was on the cliff and if the mad man wanted to kill him.
8. The King enters wearing strange things. Edgar asks who is this man ?
9. "I am the King." Lear replies. The King says, "Here is your money" He gives Edgar some flowers.
10. The King says that Goneril and Regan pretended to love him but he knew the truth during the storm. Gloucester recognises the king's voice.

## TEXT OF ACT IV, Scenes (IV, V & VI)

### Act IV

### Scene IV

*[In the French camp. Cordelia, a Doctor and Soldiers enter.]*

**CORDELIA** : I've heard that my father is now mad. Look for him in every field and bring him to me.

*[An Officer exits.]*

Can anyone **cure** him? I wish I could make him feel better again.

**DOCTOR** : There is a cure, madam. He needs lots of rest.

**CORDELIA** : Find him quickly! I don't want him to hurt himself first.

*[A Messenger enters.]*

**MESSENGER** : I have some news, madam. The British army is coming here.

**CORDELIA** : Our French army is ready for war. Oh dear father, I haven't returned to England 1

### Suggested Questions

- 1 Cordelia isn't a power seeker, do you agree ? Why ?

to take power for myself. I only fight for love, and as a duty to my father.  
[They exit.]

**Act IV** **Scene V**

[In Gloucester's Castle. Regan enters with Oswald. Oswald has a letter.]

**REGAN** : Oswald, what do you think is in my sister's letter to Edmund?

**OSWALD** : I don't know, madam.

**REGAN** : [To herself.] It was foolish to let Gloucester live, although he's blind. Wherever he goes, people feel sorry for him and angry with us.

**OSWALD** : I must give this letter to Edmund.

**REGAN** : Our army is going tomorrow. Stay with us.

**OSWALD** : I can't stay, madam. My lady Goneril has told me to return to her.

**REGAN** : Why would Goneril write to Edmund? Let me open the letter.

**OSWALD** : Madam, you can't ...

**REGAN** : Listen! My husband is dead

and I'm worried that Goneril

**2** wants to rule over all of the kingdom. Without a husband, I need the help of

a clever man like Edmund. When you see him, give him this.

[She gives him a letter.]

If you see the blind traitor, remember this : There will be a reward for the man who kills him.

**OSWALD** : If I meet old Gloucester, madam,

I'll show you which lady **3**

I follow.

[They exit.]

**Suggested Questions**

- 2** Why do you think Regan is afraid of Goneril ?

**Suggested Questions**

- 3** What do you think of Oswald ?

**Act IV** **Scene VI**

[In the countryside near Dover, Gloucester enters with Edgar. Edgar is dressed as a beggar but speaks as himself, not as Poor Tom.]

**GLOUCESTER** : When will I get to the top of this hill?

**EDGAR** : You're climbing up the hill now.



**GLOUCESTER :** But, I'm sure the ground is **flat** here.

**EDGAR :** No, it's very **steep**. Listen, can you hear the sea?

**GLOUCESTER :** No, I can't.

But I think your voice has changed **4**. You don't speak like a poor beggar now.

**Suggested Questions**

- 4** If you were Edgar, would you reveal your true identity to your father to comfort him ? Why ? Why not ?

**EDGAR :** You're wrong. Nothing has changed.

**GLOUCESTER :** I think that you speak like an important person.

**EDGAR :** Come on, sir; here's the place. Be careful. It's very high here.

The fishermen that walk along the beach look like mice from up here; I can't look down any more, because **my blood runs cold**, I'm scared that I might fall.

**GLOUCESTER :** Is it very high? Then put me where you are standing now.

**EDGAR :** Give me your hand. You are now very close to the **edge** of the cliff.

*[They are on flat ground.]*

**GLOUCESTER :** Let go of my hand. Here's a purse for you, my friend.

Inside the purse is a **valuable jewel**. Leave me here; say goodbye to me and let me hear you walk away.

**EDGAR :** Goodbye, sir.

*[To himself.]* I hope this will help to cure him of his madness.

**GLOUCESTER :** I say goodbye to this world, and I only hope that Edgar is alive. So, goodbye, my friend.

*[He falls forward onto the ground.]*

**EDGAR :** Goodbye, sir.

*[To himself.]* If he had been where he thought he was, he would be dead now **5**.

*[To Gloucester in a different voice.]* Hello, sir, are you alive or dead? Can you hear me, sir?

*[To himself.]* He may be dead. No, he's waking up. Who are you, sir?

**Suggested Questions**

- 5** Why do you think Gloucester wanted to commit suicide ?



**GLOUCESTER :** Go away and let me die.

**EDGAR :** You aren't bleeding and you can talk. But you've fallen from the top of a high cliff. It's amazing that you are alive. Say something.

**GLOUCESTER :** But have I fallen or not?

**EDGAR :** Yes, you fell from the top of this white cliff. Look how high it is.  
Look up.

**GLOUCESTER :** Sadly, I can't. I'm blind.

**EDGAR :** Give me your arm. Stand up. Can you feel your legs?

**GLOUCESTER :** I can.

**EDGAR :** This is very strange. Who was that man that left you on the top of the cliff?

**GLOUCESTER :** He was a poor beggar.

**EDGAR :** As I stood here below, I thought I saw a mad man. Perhaps he wanted to kill you. You're lucky to be alive. You've been saved.

**GLOUCESTER :** I remember now. I thought the beggar was a good man. He took me to that cliff top because I wanted him to.



**EDGAR :** Don't feel guilty or sad now.

*[King Lear enters. He is mad and he is wearing strange things. He is wearing wild flowers in his hair.]*

But who is this man? Only a mad person would dress like that 6 .

**Suggested Questions**

6 Why do you think Lear went mad ?

**KING LEAR :** I am the King.

**EDGAR :** Oh, what a terrible sight!

**KING LEAR :** Life is more terrible than art is. Here's your money.

*[He gives Edgar some flowers.]*

**GLOUCESTER :** Do I know that voice?

**KING LEAR :** Ha! Is this Goneril or Regan? They pretended to be kind to me and told me how wise I was. But when the rain and wind came and the lightning wouldn't stop, I learnt the truth. My daughters are not women who I can trust! They told me I was everything to them.  
It was a lie.

**GLOUCESTER :** I know that voice. It is the King!

## QUESTIONS & THEIR SUGGESTED ANSWERS

### Part 1 Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers



#### Longman Exercises

#### أسئلة خاصة بموقع لونغمان وإجاباتها المقترحة

1. "There is a cure, madam. He needs lots of rest," said the doctor.

- «يوجد علاج سيدتي، هو يحتاج الكثير من الراحة».

- Do you think that rest could cure the king's madness? Why?

- هل تعتقد أن الراحة يمكن أن تعالج الملك من الجنون؟ لماذا؟

- No, rest alone cannot cure King Lear's madness. His madness is caused by the betrayal of his daughters, the loss of his power.

- لا، ليست الراحة وحدها تشفي الملك من الجنون حيث أن مرضه سببه خيانة بناته وضياع سلطته.

2. "Oh, dear father, I haven't returned to England to take power for myself. I only fight for love and as a duty to my father," said Cordelia.

- «والدي العزيز لم أعد إلى إنجلترا حتى استولى على السلطة، أنا أحارب فقط من أجل الحب وواجب نحو والدي».

- If you were in Cordelia's place, would you behave the same way? Why?

- لو كنت مكان كورديليا، هل كنت ستتصرف بنفس الطريقة؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would behave the same way as Cordelia. Her love for her father and her sense of duty are strong enough to make her act with integrity.

- نعم كنت سأتصرف بنفس طريقة كورديليا فحبها لوالدها وحس الواجب يجعلها قوية بدرجة كافية لتتصرف بلزاهة.

3. "Without a husband, I need the help of a clever man like Edmund," said Regan.

- «بدون زوج احتاج مساعدة رجل ماهر مثل إدموند» قالت ريجان.

- Do you think that Edmund was a good choice? Why?

- هل تعتقد أن إدموند كان اختيارًا جيدًا؟ ولماذا؟

- No, Edmund is not a good choice for Regan. While he might be "clever," he is also manipulative, ambitious, and ruthless. He is motivated by his own self-interests.

- لا إدموند ليس اختيار جيد، فبرغم أنه ماهر، فهو أيضًا مستغل وطموح وعديم الرحمة وتحركه مصالحه الشخصية.

4. "But when the rain and wind came and the lightning wouldn't stop, I learnt the truth", said King Lear.

- «ولكن عندما جاء المطر والريح والبرق لم يتوقف، لقد علمت الحقيقة» قال الملك لير.

- Do you agree that 'rain and wind' were used symbolically here? Why?

- هل توافق أن المطر والريح هنا استخدمت رمزيًا؟ ولماذا؟



- Yes, the storm may symbolize some kind of divine justice, as if nature itself is angry about the event in the play.

- العاصفة ربما ترمز إلى نوع من العدالة الإلهية، كما لو أن الطبيعة نفسها غاضبة من الأحداث في القصة.



#### SB, WB, El-Moasser & Previous Exams

أسئلة الكتاب المدرسي وأسئلة خاصة بكتاب المعاصر والامتحانات السابقة وإجاباتها المقترحة

### 1. Do you think that Gloucester still believes his son Edgar has been cruel to him? Why? (SB)

- هل ما زال «جلوستر» يعتقد أن ابنه «إدجار» كان قاسياً معه؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. Because he says, "I saw a beggar in last night's storm. He reminded me of my son, but I had no good thoughts about my son then. Now, however, I know the truth."

- لا أعتقد ذلك، فهو يقول: «لقد رأيت متسولاً في عاصفة الليلة الماضية. لقد ذكرني بابني، لكن لم تكن لدى أفكار جيدة عنه في ذلك الوقت. أما الآن فقد عرفت الحقيقة.»

### 2. Of the three daughters of King Lear, only Cordelia loved him. How do you know? Give two clues. (الأسبوط - المنح ٢٠٢٤)

- من بين بنات الملك «لير» الثلاث، لم تحبه سوى «كورديليا». كيف علمت بذلك؟

- Before leaving, she asked her sisters to look after their father. She came back with the French army to help him.

- قبل الرحيل طلبت من اختها رعاية والدهم. عادت مع الجيش الفرنسي لتساعده.

### 3. If you were Cordelia, would you go back to England to defend your father? Why/Why not? (القليوبية - قها ٢٠٢٤)

- لو كنت «كورديليا»، هل ستعود إلى إنجلترا للدفاع عن والدك؟ لماذا/ لماذا لا؟

- Of course, I would. After all, we must look after our parents when they get older or need support.

- بالطبع سأفعل. برغم كل شيء، يجب علينا أن نعتنى بوالدينا عندما يكبران أو يحتاجان الدعم.

### 4. If you were Edgar, would you take Gloucester to a high cliff? Why/Why not?

- لو كنت «إدجار»، هل كنت ستأخذ «جلوستر» إلى منحدر مرتفع؟ لماذا/ لماذا لا؟

- No, I wouldn't. I wouldn't let my father commit suicide.

- لا، لن أفعل. لن أدع والدي ينتحر.

### 5. Why do you think Gloucester wanted to commit suicide?

- برأيك، لماذا أراد «جلوستر» الانتحار؟

- I think because he was shocked by what his son Edmund had done to him. Perhaps he couldn't accept the fact that he became blind.

- أعتقد لأنه صدم مما فعله ابنه «إدموند» به. ربما لم يستطع قبول حقيقة أنه أصبح كفيفاً.

### 6. Why do you think Lear went mad? (الشرقية - ابو حماد ٢٠٢٤)

- برأيك، لماذا أصيب «لير» بالجنون؟

- Perhaps he was shocked by what Goneril and Regan had done to him. Perhaps old age played a role here.

- ربما صدم مما فعلته «جونيريل» و «ريجان» به. وربما لعبت الشيخوخة دوراً هنا.

7. "They pretended to be kind to me and told me how wise I was. But when the rain and wind came and the lightning wouldn't stop, I learnt the truth."

(WB)

- «لقد تظاهروا باللطف معي وأخبروني كم أنا حكيم. ولكن عندما هطل المطر وهبت الرياح ولم يتوقف البرق، عرفت الحقيقة.»

- a. What does Lear mean by "rain and wind" ?

(WB)

- ماذا يعنى «لير» بـ «المطر والرياح» ؟

- He means danger. يقصد الخطر.

- b. Do you think Lear is right? Why? هل تعتقد أن «لير» على حق؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I think so. Goneril and Regan betrayed his trust and plotted against him. نعم أعتقد ذلك. لقد خانت كل من «جونيريل» و «ريجان» ثقته وتآمروا عليه.

- c. What truth is Lear talking about ? عن أى حقيقة يتحدث «لير» ؟

- He can't trust Regan and Goneril. لا يستطيع أن يثق فى «ريجان» و «جونيريل».

## Part 2 Questions & answers for Al-Azhar students

◀ أسئلة خاصة بطلاب الأزهر وإجاباتها

1. "Wherever he goes, people feel sorry for him and angry with us." Who is Regan talking about?

(WB)

- أينما ذهب، يشعر الناس بالأسف عليه والغضب منا. من الذى يتحدث عنه «ريجان» ؟

- Gloucester. جلوستر.

2. "I wish I could make him feel better again." Who is the speaker? Why do they say this?

(WB)

- «أتمنى أن أجعله يشعر بالتحسن مرة أخرى.» من هو المتحدث؟ لماذا يقول/تقول هذا؟

- Cordelia says this because she now knows her father is mad and wants him to get well again.

- تقول «كورديليا» هذا لأنها تعلم الآن أن والدها مجنون وتريده أن يتعافى مرة أخرى.

3. "I can't look down anymore, because my blood runs cold, I'm scared that I might fall." Who is the speaker? Why do they say this?

(WB)

- «لا أستطيع أن أنظر إلى الأسفل لأنني تصيبيني قشعريرة، وأخاف أن أسقط.» من هو المتحدث؟ لماذا يقول/تقول هذا؟

- Edgar says this because he wants his father to think he is at the top of a cliff. يقول «إدجار» هذا لأنه يريد أن يعتقد والده أنه على قمة المنحدر الصخري.

4. "There will be a reward for the man who kills him." Who is the speaker? Why do they say this?

(WB)

- «هناك مكافأة للرجل الذى يقتله.» من هو المتحدث؟ لماذا يقول/تقول هذا؟

- Regan says this because she wants someone to find and kill

Gloucester. تقول «ريجان» هذا لأنها تريد أن يجد شخص ما «جلوستر» ويقتله.

5. "But who is this man? Only a mad person would dress like that."

Who is the speaker? Why do they say this? (WB)

- «ولكن من هذا الرجل؟ المجنون فقط من يرتدى مثل هذه الملابس.» من هو المتحدث؟ لماذا

يقول/تقول هذا؟

- Edgar says this when he sees King Lear wearing wild flowers in his hair.  
- يقول «إدجار» هذا عندما يرى الملك «لير» يضع الزهور البرية على شعره.

6. "I haven't returned to England to take power for myself." Who is the speaker? Why do they say this? (WB)

- «لم أعود إلى إنجلترا لاستولى على السلطة لنفسى.» من هو المتحدث؟ لماذا يقول/تقول هذا؟

- Cordelia says this because she wants people to know she has returned to fight for her father not for herself.

- تقول «كورديليا» هذا لأنها تريد أن يعرف الناس أنها عادت للقتال من أجل والدها وليس من أجل نفسها.

7. "Wherever he goes, people feel sorry for him and angry with us."

Why do people feel sorry for Gloucester? (WB)

- «أينما ذهب يحزن عليه الناس وبغضون علينا.» لماذا يشعر الناس بالأسف عليه؟

- Because he is blind and they are responsible for it..لأنه أعمى وهم مسئولون عن ذلك.

8. "Wherever he goes, people feel sorry for him and angry with us."

Why are people angry with Regan?

- «حينما ذهب يشعر الناس بالأسف عليه والغضب منا.» لماذا الناس عاضبون من «ريجان»؟

- Because they think she was cruel to Gloucester.

- لأنهم يعتقدون أنها كانت قاسية مع «جلوستر».

❖ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The doctor told Cordelia that her father needed lots of .....

a. cure                      b. medicine                      c. rest                      d. happiness

2. "It was foolish to let Gloucester live, although he's blind". .... said to herself.

a. Goneril                      b. Regan                      c. Cordelia                      d. Lady Macbeth

3. .... led Gloucester in the countryside near Dover.

a. Regan                      b. Oswald                      c. Edgar                      d. Edmund

4. Cordelia says she only fights for love not for .....

a. blindness                      b. happiness                      c. power                      d. belief

5. Edgar tried to convince ..... that he was climbing the hill.

a. Gloucester                      b. Regan                      c. Cornwall                      d. Albany

### Answers

1. c

2. b

3. c

4. c

5. a



# General Exercises

## Answer the following questions :

**A** 1. Do you think that the king was right not to desire to see Cordelia ?

(قنا - الوقف ٢٠٢٤)

2. Goneril was neither a loving daughter nor a good wife. Explain.

(دمياط - الروضة ٢٠٢٤)

3. Why do you think Gloucester wanted Edgar to take him to the high hill in Dover ?

(القليوبية - كفر شكر ٢٠٢٤)

**B** 1. "Can anyone cure him? I wish I could make him feel better again." What do you think of Cordelia's behaviour towards her father?

2. "I don't want him to hurt himself first." What does this quotation show us?

3. Do you think Cordelia came back to take revenge on her sisters? Why / Why not?

**C** 1. "I only fight for love, and as a duty to my father." Do you think the speaker is telling the truth? Why / Why not?

2. Why do you think Regan said that Gloucester should have been killed?

3. The two sisters wanted to have Edmund's support. What do you think of them?

**D** 1. Do you think Edmund is the suitable person to be asked for help? Why / Why not?

2. In your point of view, is it important to offer a reward for the person who can kill Gloucester? Why / Why not?

3. "If I meet old Gloucester, madam, I'll show you which lady I follow." What can we infer from these words?

**E** 1. In your opinion, do you think there are similarities between Cordelia and Edgar?

2. "I only hope that Edgar is alive." What can we infer from this sentence?

3. Why do you think Edgar lied to his father and told him that they climbed the high cliff?

# ACT IV

## Scene VI, continued & Scene VII



### VOCABULARY

creep / crept (up) (v)	يتسلل	recognize (d) (v)	يتعرف على
prisoner (n)	سجين	right (n / adj)	حق / صحيح
battle (n)	معركة	attendant (n)	خادم
stage (n)	خشبة المسرح	tempt to (ed) (v)	يفتن أن / يجذب ل
judge (d) (v / n)	يحكم / قاضي	tent (n)	خيمة
patient (adj)	صبور	take out (took) (v)	يخرج
sense (n)	حاسة / معنى	nonsense	بلا معنى

### Words and their definitions

attendant (n)	: a person whose job is to serve or help people in a public place	خادم
creep (crept) (v)	: to come close to someone, secretly	يتسلل
sense (n)	: something that people can understand	حاسة
battle (n)	: a fight between two armies	معركة
drum (n)	: a musical instrument you play by hitting	طبل
stage (n)	: a raised area, usually in a theatre, etc. where actors, dancers, etc. perform	خشبة المسرح
tent (n)	: a shelter made of a large sheet that is supported by poles and ropes fixed to the ground	خيمة

### Verbal Collocations & Expressions

stay in this disguise	بظل متكرًا (في ملابس التكر)	keep an animal inside	يبقى الحيوان بالداخل (حفاظًا عليه)
-----------------------	-----------------------------	-----------------------	------------------------------------

## ACT IV, SCENE VI, CONTINUED & SCENE VII IN POINTS

1. The King speaks to Gloucester. He speaks sense and nonsense according to Edgar.
2. The King gives a letter to the blind man Gloucester asking him to read it saying you have no eyes, but you can understand how things work in the world.

3. The King suggests Gloucester put glass eyes and pretend to see things that others do not, like a bad judge.
4. The King remembers Gloucester. The King behaves strangely pretending to be an actor on a stage who creeps up on his daughter's husbands and kills them.
5. Some men appear trying to take the King to Cordelia, but he runs away.
6. Oswald tries to kill Gloucester, but Edgar kills him. Oswald asks them to give the letter he carries to Edmund.
7. The letter is from Goneril asking Edmund to kill her good husband Duke of Albany. Edgar intends to tell Albany about their plan to kill him.
8. Cordelia asks Kent to put on some better clothes, but he refuses saying he must stay in disguise *مُتَلَكِّر*.
9. The doctor offers to wake the King up because he has slept enough. Two servants bring the king wearing better clothes.
10. Cordelia is affected when she sees her kind father asking how can her sisters keep their father out during the storm. She wouldn't leave an animal outside on a night like that. The King is waking up.

## TEXT OF ACT IV, SCENE VI, CONTINUED & SCENE VII

### Act IV Scene VI, continued

*[In the countryside near Dover. Edgar is with Gloucester and King Lear.]*

**KING LEAR :** Did you say that you know my voice, oh man without eyes! Yes, I am the King! But, look at you, what have you done?



**GLOUCESTER :** Your majesty, let me kiss your hand!

**KING LEAR :** I must clean it first.

**GLOUCESTER :** Do you not know me, sir?

**KING LEAR :** I don't know your eyes. Read this letter for me, please.

**GLOUCESTER :** But, I can't see it.

**EDGAR :** *[To himself.]* If I read about this in a story, I wouldn't believe it was true. It is so sad.

**KING LEAR :** Read it!

**GLOUCESTER :** But, look at my eyes!



**KING LEAR :** Oh, I understand. You want some money first. You have no eyes in your head and no money in your purse. But, you understand how things work in this world.

**GLOUCESTER :** I feel my way.

**KING LEAR :** But, you can see with your ears. We now know that a judge **1** will punish a poor man's crime before a rich man's crime.

**Suggested Questions**

**1** Why do you think Lear said this ?

**GLOUCESTER :** Yes, sir.

**KING LEAR :** Rich men are not punished for the same crimes as a poor man is punished for. Why don't you get some glass eyes and pretend to see things that others do not, like a bad judge ?

**EDGAR :** The King is talking both **sense** and **nonsense**!

*[Gloucester cries.]*

**KING LEAR :** Wait. I know you : your name is Gloucester. You must be patient.

**GLOUCESTER :** Oh, what a sad day this is!

**KING LEAR :** *[He stands on a rock.]* This rock is like a **stage** in a theatre. I'll pretend to **creep up on** my daughters' husbands and kill them!  
*[A Gentleman enters with Attendants.]*

**GENTLEMAN :** Ah, there he is! Quick, get him!

*[To King Lear.]*

Sorry, sir, your dear daughter ...

**KING LEAR :** What? Am I a **prisoner** now? Be good to me and I'll reward you. But I need a doctor. My head is not right.

**GENTLEMAN :** You shall have anything you want, your majesty. You are the King and we'll do what you say.

**KING LEAR :** I may still live, then. But you'll need to run to get the reward.

*[He exits running. The Attendants run after him. The Gentleman exits.]*

**GLOUCESTER :** Oh, someone kill me before I **am tempted to** kill myself!

**EDGAR :** Give me your hand, sir. I'll take you to a place where you'll be safe.

**GLOUCESTER :** Thank you.

*[Oswald enters.]*

**OSWALD :** Look, here's the prize! This man without eyes will make me rich!

*[He takes out his sword.]* Get ready to die, you old traitor!

**GLOUCESTER** : I want to die. I hope you're strong enough to do it.  
*[Edgar stands between them.]*

**OSWALD** : Who are you? Why are you helping a traitor? Let go of his arm.

**EDGAR** : I will not let go.

• **Suggested Questions** •

2 What do you think of Oswald ?

**OSWALD** : Let go of this man or you'll die too! 2

**EDGAR** : Don't come near the old man.

**OSWALD** : Then take out your sword!  
*[They fight. Oswald falls.]*

**OSWALD** : Oh, I'm dying! Before you take my purse, give the letters that I'm carrying to Edmund, the Duke of Gloucester. You'll find him with the British army. Oh, goodbye world!  
*[He dies.]*

**GLOUCESTER** : Is he dead?

**EDGAR** : Yes. Sit down, sir, and rest.  
 Let's look in his pockets; these letters may be useful. Let's read them.

*[He finds a letter and reads it.]*

'Remember, Edmund. Do not let Albany win the battle. If you help me, I will give you more power and riches.

Yours  
 Goneril.'

That evil woman! She wants Edmund to kill her good husband. I will 3 show this letter to the Duke of Albany.

It's lucky that I can tell him of their plan to kill him.

*[The sound of a drum.]*

**EDGAR** : *[To Gloucester, his father.]* Come, give me your hand. I'll take you to a friend's house.

*[They exit together.]*



• **Suggested Questions** •

3 Why do you think Goneril wants to kill her good husband ?

## Act IV Scene VII

*[A tent in the French camp. Cordelia enters with Kent, a Doctor and a Gentleman.]*

**CORDELIA** : Please put on some better clothes, Kent.

**KENT** : I'm sorry, madam, but I must stay in this disguise. You must pretend that you don't know me until I tell you.

**CORDELIA** : I understand, my lord.  
[To the Doctor.] How's the King?

**DOCTOR** : Madam, he's still sleeping.

**CORDELIA** : My father has become like a child. Please, doctor, try to cure my father, whose children have made him mad.

**DOCTOR** : If you like, we can wake up the King. He's slept for a long time.

**CORDELIA** : You know what's best for him.

*[Cordelia and the doctor are standing together in a tent in the French camp. Two servants carry King Lear in on a chair. He's wearing a clean shirt and trousers. He is sleeping.]*

**DOCTOR** : Please, play some music.

**CORDELIA** : Oh, my dear father, let my kisses help to make you feel better. My sisters have done you so much damage!

**KENT** : Kind and dear princess!

**CORDELIA** : How could they send your kind face out into a storm? I would even keep an animal inside on a night like that, but you, poor father, had to stay with beggars in old straw. I can't believe you are still alive after all that.



*[To the Doctor.]* He's waking up. How are you, father?  
Do you recognise me?

## QUESTIONS & THEIR SUGGESTED ANSWERS

### Part 1 Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers

#### Longman Exercises

أسئلة خاصة بموقع لونجمان وإجاباتها المقترحة

1. Why do you think Edgar says that King Lear is talking both "sense and nonsense" ?

لماذا في اعتقادك إدغار يقول أن الملك لير يتحدث بعقلانية وغير عقلانية في نفس الوقت ؟

- Because Lear's mind is distracted. His madness has affected his thinking, causing him to express both sense and nonsense.

لأن عقل لير مشوش، حوّه أثر على تفكيره وجعله يتكلم بعقلانية وغير عقلانية في نفس الوقت

2. "Rich men are not punished for the same crimes as a poor man is punished for" said King Lear. Do you agree with this opinion ? Why ?

الاعضاء لا يعاقبون على نفس الجرائم التي يعاقب عليها الفقراء قال الملك لير هل يوافقك على هذا الرأي ولماذا ؟

- King Lear's statement reflects a harsh truth about the inequality and injustice that existed in the world.

نعم أوافق لأن الملك لير يعكس الحقيقة المرة عن عدم المساواة والظلم الموجود في العالم.



### 3. If you were King Lear, would you blame your daughters' husbands for the cruelty of Regan and Goneril? Why?

- لو كنت مكان الملك لير، هل كنت ستلوم أرواح باتك على قسوة باتك؟ ولماذا؟
- Although their husbands, Cornwall and Albany, are not innocent in the play, it's important to remember that Goneril and Regan are completely responsible for their own actions. They were cruel to their father.
- بالرغم من أن أزواجهم كورنوال وألباني ليسوا بريئين في المسرحية، لكن من المهم أن نتذكر أن جونيبريل وريجان مسئولتان عن أفعالهما كلياً، لقد كانوا في منتهى القسوة مع أبيهم.



#### SB, WB, El-Moasser & Previous Exams

أسئلة الكتاب المدرسي وأسئلة خاصة بكتاب المعاصر والامتحانات السابقة وإجاباتها المقترحة

### 1. "If I read about this in a story, I wouldn't believe it was true. It is so sad." Why do you think Edgar says this?

- «لو قرأت عن هذا في قصة فلن أصدق أنه صحيح، فهو أمر مُحرّن» برأيك، لماذا يقول «إدجار» هذا؟
- Because he sees the King asks Gloucester to read a letter for him. However, the King has gone mad and Gloucester has gone blind.
- لأنه يرى الملك يطلب من «جلوستر» أن يقرأ له رسالة، ومع ذلك، فقد أصيب الملك بالجلون وأصيب «جلوستر» بالعمى.

### 2. "But you can see with your ears. We now know that a judge will punish a poor man's crime before a rich man's crime." What do you think King Lear meant by these words?

- «ولكنك تستطيع أن ترى بأذنيك. نحن نعلم الآن أن القاضي سيعاقب على جريمة الرجل الفقير قبل جريمة الرجل الغني.» في رأيك، ماذا كان يقصد الملك «لير» بهذه الكلمات؟
- He means there was an atmosphere of injustice. .
- يعني كان هناك جو من الظلم.

### 3. Why do you think Edgar says that King Lear is talking both 'sense and nonsense'?

- (SB) (قنا - نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٤)
- برأيك، لماذا يقول «إدجار» أن الملك «لير» يتحدث «المنطق واللامنطق»؟
- Because some of the King's words are rational and logical while other words are irrational and illogical.

- لأن بعض كلام الملك عقلاني ومنطقي والبعض الآخر غير عقلاني وغير منطقي.

### 4. King Lear says 'This rock is like a stage in a theatre.' What do you think he means when he says this? Do you agree? (WB)

- يقول الملك «لير» «هذه الصحرة تشبه حشنة المسرح.» ماذا تعتقد أنه يقصد عندما يقول هذا؟ هل توافق؟

- I think he was talking nonsense. He went mad.
- أعتقد أنه كان يقول كلام فارغ. لقد جن جنونه.

### 5. "Look, here's the prize! This man without eyes will make me rich!" What do you think Oswald means by this?

- «انظر، ها هي الجائزة! هذا الرجل الأعمى سوف يجعلني ثرياً!» في رأيك، ماذا يعني «أوروالد» بهذا؟
- He meant that he found Gloucester. He was promised to get a reward if he killed Gloucester.
- كان يقصد أنه وجد «جلوستر». لقد وُعد بالحصول على مكافأة إذا قتل «جلوستر».

6. "I want to die. I hope you're strong enough to do it." Do you think Gloucester was threatening Oswald by these words? Explain your answer.

- «أريد أن أموت. أتمنى أن تكون قوياً بما يكفي للقيام بذلك.» هل تعتقد أن «جلوستر» هدد «أوزوالد» بهذه الكلمات؟ وضح إجابتك.

- No, he wasn't. He meant it. He was really desperate and he wanted to die.  
- لا، لم يكن يهدد. لقد كان يقصد هذا. لقد كان حقاً يائساً وأراد أن يموت.

7. How do you feel about the death of Oswald? Why do you feel like this?

(SB) (القاهرة - المرحلة ٢٤ - ٢٠)

- ما هو شعورك تجاه وفاة «أوزوالد»؟ لماذا تشعر بهذا؟

- He deserved it. He was a bad person who was ready to do anything for money.  
- كان يستحق ذلك. لقد كان شخصاً سيئاً وكان مستعداً لفعل أي شيء مقابل المال.

8. What kind of wife was Goneril? How do you know? (القاهرة - السائل ٢٤ - ٢٠)

- أي نوع من الزوجات كانت «جونيريل»؟ كيف تعرف ذلك؟

- She was a bad wife. She wanted Edmund to kill her husband.  
- كانت زوجة سيئة. أرادت من «إدموند» أن يقتل زوجها.

9. "Please put on some better clothes, Kent." Was it necessary for Kent to be in bad clothes? Why/Why not?

- «من فضلك ارتدي ملابس أفضل يا «كينت».» هل كان من الضروري أن يرتدي «كينت» ملابس سيئة؟ لماذا/لماذا لا؟

- Yes, it was. He was in disguise.  
- نعم لقد كان متكرراً.

10. "Please, doctor, try to cure my father, whose children have made him mad." To what extent is that true? Explain.

- «من فضلك أيها الطبيب حاول أن تعالج والدي الذي أصابه استيه بالجنون» إلى أي مدى هذا صحيح؟ وضح ذلك.

- This is completely true. Goneril and Regan, Lear's daughters, took his kingdom and plotted against him. Only Cordelia supported him.  
- هذا صحيح تماماً. «جونيريل» و «ريجان»، ابنتا «ليار»، استوليتا على مملكته وتآمرتا ضده. فقط «كورديليا» دعمته.

11. What do you think of Kent's continuous efforts to help the king?

(القاهرة - المعصرة ٢٤ - ٢٠)

- ما رأيك في الجهود المستمرة لـ «كنت» لمساعدة الملك؟

- I think he does all this out of loyalty and love for the king and Cordelia.

- اعتقد أنه يفعل كل ذلك وفاقاً وحباً في الملك وكورديليا.

## Part 2 Questions & answers for Al-Azhar students

◀ أسئلة خاصة بطلاب الأزهر وإجاباتها

1. What does Regan tell Oswald to do if he sees Gloucester? (SB)

- ماذا طلبت «ريجان» من «أوزوالد» أن يفعل إذا رأى «جلوستر»؟

- To kill him.  
- أن يقتله.

2. How does Lear think Gloucester can see without his eyes? (SB)

- كيف يعتقد «لير» أن «جلوستر» يستطيع الرؤية بدون عينيه؟
- يعتقد أنه يمكنه أن يرى بأذنيه.
- He thinks he can see with his ears.

3. Who tries to help Gloucester? (SB)

- من يحاول مساعدة «جلوستر»؟
- «إدجار».
- Edgar.

4. What did Cordelia think about her sisters' behaviour towards their father? (SB)

- ما رأى «كورديليا» فى سلوك أختيها تجاه والدهما؟
- ظنت أنهما عاملتا كحيوان.
- She thought that they had treated him like an animal.

5. What does King Lear want Gloucester to read for him? (SB)

- ماذا طلب الملك «لير» من «جلوستر» أن يقرأ له؟
- خطاب.
- A letter.

6. Why does King Lear want a doctor? (SB)

- لماذا يريد الملك «لير» طبيباً؟
- لأنه يقول إنه مشوش العقل.
- Because he says his head is not right.

7. Who is Oswald carrying letters for? (SB)

- إلى من حمل «أوزوالد» الخطابات؟
- إلى «إدموند» دوق «جلوستر».
- Edmund, the Duke of Gloucester.

8. Who are the letters from? (SB)

- ممن كانت هذه الخطابات؟
- إنهم من «جونيريل».
- They are from Goneril.

9. What does Cordelia ask Kent to do? (SB)

- ماذا تطلب «كورديليا» من «كينت» أن يفعل؟
- تطلب منه أن يرتدى ملابس أفضل.
- She asks him to put on some better clothes.

⊗ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- ..... wanted to kill Gloucester but Edgar prevented him.  
a. Oswald      b. Regan      c. Goneril      d. Albany
- Goneril wanted Edmund not to let ..... win the battle.  
a. Oswald      b. Cordelia      c. Albany      d. Cornwall
- In her letter, Goneril tells Edmund that she will give him more power and .....  
a. riches      b. weapons      c. pockets      d. traitors
- ..... decided to tell the Duke of Albany about the plan to kill him.  
a. Oswald      b. The doctor      c. Cordelia      d. Edgar
- ..... told Cordelia that he must stay in disguise.  
a. Oswald      b. Gloucester      c. Edgar      d. Kent

→ **Answers** .

1. a	2. c	3. a	4. d	5. d
------	------	------	------	------



# General Exercises

## ⊛ Answer the following questions :

**A** 1. Do you think that people who can't see are blind to reality ? Why ?

.....  
2. Do you think that there is a similarity between King Lear's and Gloucester's characters ? Why ?

.....  
3. Which do you prefer in your life : money or power ? Why ?

**B** 1. "Your majesty, let me kiss your hand!" What can this tell us about the speaker?  
(الاسكندرية - شرق ٢٠٢٤)

.....  
2. Edgar couldn't believe what happened around him. Illustrate.

.....  
3. Do you feel sorry for the King or Gloucester? Why?

**C** 1. In your point of view, is the King a victim to his daughters only? Why?

.....  
2. "I'll pretend to creep up on my daughters' husbands and kill them!" Do you think Albany and Cornwall deserve what the King said? Why?

.....  
3. "Ah, there he is! Quick, get him!" Who does the speaker want to get? Why?

**D** 1. Edgar saved His father's life more than once. Illustrate.

.....  
2. "Oh, someone kills me before I am tempted to kill myself!" What does this sentence show?  
(اسوان ٢٠٢٣)

.....  
3. "Look, here's the prize!" What does the speaker mean by "the prize"?

**E** 1. "This man without eyes will make me rich!" How do you think that man would make the speaker rich?

.....  
2. Do you think Cordelia and Edgar could compensate their fathers for what has happened to them? Why / Why not?

.....  
3. If you were Cordelia, would you come to help the King in England or would you ask him to live with you in France instead? Why?

# ACTS IV & V

## Scene VII, continued & Scenes I, II & III



### VOCABULARY

cage (n)	قفص	suffer (ed) (v)	يعال
invade (d) (v)	يغزو	trumpet (n)	البوق
officer (n)	ضابط	equal (adj / n)	مساو - متساو / نظير
trust (ed) (v / n)	يثق - ثقة	starve (d) (v)	يجوع - يموت جوعاً
honestly (adv)	بأمانة		

### Words and their definitions

- ▶ **invade (d) (v)** : to take or send an army into another country in order to get control of it  
يغزو
- ▶ **starve (d) (v)** : to suffer or to die because there is not enough food  
يجوع / يموت جوعاً
- ▶ **trust (ed) (v / n)** : to be confident that someone or something is honest, fair and reliable  
يثق / ثقة
- ▶ **cage (n)** : a container made of wire or metal bars and used for keeping birds and animals in  
قفص

### Verbal Collocations & Expressions

take control of	يسيطر على	win a battle	يكسب معركة
go on	يستمر	laugh at	يسخر من
put on	يرتدي (ملابس)	a bitter pill to swallow	وضع مؤلم لا تملك تغييره
win more power	يكتسب مزيد من السلطة	take power from	ينزع السلطة من
blow a trumpet	ينفخ البوق	go into a battle	يذهب للمعركة / يشترك في المعركة
lose a battle	يخسر معركة	feel sorry for	يشعر بالأسى على

## ACTS IV & V, SCENE VII, CONTINUED & SCENES (I, II & III) IN POINTS

1. King Lear is awake, he recognises Cordelia and Kent but he can't remember everything.

2. He asks Cordelia to give him some poison to drink. He says she has a good reason to be cruel to him but her sisters don't. He asks Cordelia to forgive him تسامحه.
3. Regan asks Edmund if he is helping her sister Goneril to take her lands. Edmund says "No,"
4. Albany enters with Goneril. They plan to fight the French army. Goneril and Regan each wants Edmund to work for her.
5. Edgar gives Goneril's letter to Edmund to Albany. Albany reads the letter.
6. Edmund thinks whom to help. He plans to help Goneril then kill her husband and start to take control of the the kingdom.
7. Edgar tells Gloucester the bad news that King Lear loses the battle and is a prisoner now with Cordelia.
8. The King and Cordelia appear as prisoners. Cordelia is worried about her father. The King prefers to go to prison with Cordelia and sings like birds in a cage.
9. The King is so happy because Cordelia is with him. Edmund orders a captain to take them to prison and hands him a message ordering him to do as it says.
10. Albany asks Edmund to bring the King and Cordelia in front of him to decide about them. Edmund refuses. Regan supports Edmund against Albany and Goneril saying if Edmund helps her, he will be the Lord and the ruler over Albany and Goneril.



## TEXT OF ACTS IV & V SCENE VII, CONTINUED & SCENES (I, II & III)

### Act IV Scene VII, continued

*[A tent in the French camp. Cordelia talks with Kent, a Doctor and a Gentleman.]*

**KING LEAR :** What are you doing?  
You shouldn't help me to live.  
You may be happy, but I feel like  
I'm on a wheel of fire 1 .

#### Suggested Questions

- 1 Why do you think Lear said these words ?

**CORDELIA :** Sir, do you know who I am?

**KING LEAR :** Where am I? Is it day or night?

**CORDELIA :** Look at me, please. No, you don't have to kneel before me.



**KING LEAR :** Lady. I'm a very foolish old man, more than eighty years old, and I think I'm a little bit mad. I think I should know you, and also this man ...

*[He points to Kent.]*

... but I'm not sure. I can't remember putting on these clothes **2** and I don't know where I stayed last night. Don't laugh at me, but is it possible that you're my daughter, Cordelia?

**Suggested Questions**

- 2** Why do you think Lear doesn't believe that this is his daughter Cordelia ?



**CORDELIA :** It's true! Yes, I am! I am!

**KING LEAR :** Are you crying? Yes, you are. Please, don't cry. If you have some poison for me, I'll drink it. Your sisters have been cruel to me. You have a good reason to be cruel to me, but they do not.

**CORDELIA :** I'll never be cruel to you, Father.

**KING LEAR :** Am I in France?

**KENT :** No, your majesty. You're in your own kingdom.

**KING LEAR :** This can't be true.

**DOCTOR :** I think it's better to leave now. He needs to sleep.

**KING LEAR :** *[To Cordelia.]* Please, can you forgive me? I'm old and foolish. It's better to forget me now.

**Act**

**V**

**Scene I**

*[In the British camp near Dover. Edmund enters with Regan.]*

**REGAN :** Now, Edmund. Tell me honestly, are you working for my sister, Goneril?

**EDMUND :** I am not, madam.

**REGAN :** So, you're not helping her to take my lands from me?

**EDMUND :** No, you mustn't think these things **3**.

**REGAN :** I don't trust my sister. Edmund, please don't work with her.

**EDMUND :** Don't worry. She and her husband the Duke of Albany ...

*[The Duke of Albany enters with Goneril and some soldiers.]*

**Suggested Questions**

- 3** Do you think Edmund tells the truth to Regan ? Why ?



**GONERIL :** *[To herself.]* I must not let Edmund work for my sister.

**ALBANY :** Regan, have you heard the news? The King is with his daughter, Cordelia, and others who are helping him. We must be ready to fight now because the French army have **invaded**. But the French are not here to help Lear.  
I think we have been too cruel to the King **4**.

**. Suggested Questions .**

**4** What do you think of Albany's words ?

**REGAN :** Why are you telling me this now?

**GONERIL :** We must join together against the enemy.

**ALBANY :** Let's plan what to do with the **officers**. Then we can go into battle.

**EDMUND :** I can help you. I'll join you in your tent soon.

**REGAN :** Are you coming with us, Goneril?

**GONERIL :** No.

**REGAN :** Please, come with us.

**. Suggested Questions .**

**GONERIL :** *[To herself.]* Oh, I know why you want me to go. You don't **5** want me to stay here with Edmund.

*[To Regan.]* I'll come soon.

*[As they exit, Edgar enters. He is still disguised as Poor Tom. ]*

**5** What do you think the common thing between Edmund, Goneril and Regan is ?

**EDGAR :** *[To Albany.]* I'm a poor man, but please listen to me. Before you fight the battle with the French, read this letter. If you win the battle, blow your **trumpet** so I know what has happened. I can prove what is written there. Good luck!

*[Edgar exits. Albany reads the letter and then exits. Then Edmund enters. ]*

**EDMUND :** I've told both the sisters that I'll help them to win more power **6**. Now they do not trust each other. So, who should I help the most?

**. Suggested Questions .**

**6** Do you think Edmund is a deceitful person ? Why ? Why not ?

Regan? Goneril? Both of them? Or perhaps neither of them. I can't take power if both sisters are living. Let me think ... Goneril still has a husband. I'll use his help to win the battle. But I know that her husband feels sorry for King Lear and Cordelia, so when the battle is over, he must die. Then King Lear and Cordelia will be my prisoners! Now it is time for me to start to **take control** of the kingdom!

*[He exits.]*

Act V Scene II

*[In a field between the British and the French. There are sounds of a battle. Edgar and Gloucester enter.]*

**EDGAR :** King Lear has lost the battle, and he's now a prisoner with his daughter Cordelia. **This is a bitter** pill to swallow. Quick, **we must** 7 **leave.**

**GLOUCESTER :** I can't go on. Leave me. I can die here.

**EDGAR :** No. Remember that we can't choose the time of our death, just as we can't choose the time of our birth.

**GLOUCESTER :** You're right.

**EDGAR :** Let's go.

*[They exit.]*

• Suggested Questions •

7 Why do you think Edgar said these words ?

Act V Scene III

*[In the British camp, near Dover. Edmund enters with King Lear and Cordelia, some soldiers and a Captain. Lear and Cordelia are prisoners.]*

**EDMUND :** Guard them carefully until we know what Goneril and Regan want to do with them.

**CORDELIA :** I'm not worried about myself. I only feel sad for the King because he has **suffered** so much. Father, do you want to see my sisters?

**KING LEAR :** No, I do not! I'd prefer to go to prison. There we can be 8 together. We'll sing like birds in a cage!

**EDMUND :** Take them away from me.

**KING LEAR :** I'm so happy that you're with me, Cordelia. We won't be apart again. Dry your eyes, daughter. Our enemies will **starve** before they make us cry! Let us go.

*[King Lear and Cordelia exit with the guards.]*

**EDMUND :** Come here, Captain. Follow the prisoners to the prison. Read this message and do as it says. If you do this, I'll reward you.

*[Edmund gives the Captain a note.]*



• Suggested Questions •

8 Why do you think King Lear doesn't want to see Goneril and Regan ?



**CAPTAIN :** I'll do what the message says, my Lord.

*[The Captain and the soldiers exit. Albany enters with Goneril, Regan and some soldiers.]*

**ALBANY :** Edmund, you were very brave in battle today and we did well to win. Do you have the prisoners? Bring them to me so I can decide what is best for the future of our kingdom.

**EDMUND :** Albany, I have sent the old King to a prison with a guard. We can't let people see him. He's old, and his age will make the soldiers who see him feel sorry for him. They might want to support him. I've sent Queen Cordelia to prison with him. You can see them tomorrow.

**ALBANY :** Listen, Edmund. You're a good soldier, but you aren't my equal. You shouldn't make these decisions.

**REGAN :** I see kind Edmund as an equal. He led our soldiers well today in battle. I think he can call himself equal to you.

**GONERIL :** Wait, sister. I understand what you're planning. You want Edmund to help you to take power from me and my husband. But this won't happen, because first, Edmund will help me to take power from you!

**REGAN :** *[To Edmund.]* Edmund, help me to take power from my evil sister. If you say yes, you won't be the equal of Albany and Goneril, but you'll be their lord and ruler!

## QUESTIONS & THEIR SUGGESTED ANSWERS

### Part 1 Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers



#### Longman Exercises

أسئلة خاصة بموقع لونغمان وإجاباتها المقترحة

1. Why do you think the king kneels before Cordellia ?

- في اعتقادك لماذا ركع الملك لير أمام كورديليا ؟

- King Lear kneels before Cordelia as a sign of his deep regret of his mistakes.  
- ركع الملك لير أمام كورديليا كدليل على الندم العميق على أخطائه.

2. "You have a good reason to be cruel to me, but they do not," said King Lear. If you were Cordelia, would you really be cruel to your father because of that reason ? Why ?

- «لديك سبب جيد لتكوني قاسية معي» قال الملك لير، لو أنك مكان كورديليا هل كنت ستكون قاسية مع والدك لهذا السبب ؟ ولماذا ؟

- If I were Cordelia, I wouldn't be cruel to my father, but I would remain true to my values. I would hope that ultimately, he would understand my actions and appreciate my honesty.

- لو كنت مكان كورديليا لن أكون قاسية مع الملك «والدي» ولكن سأظل ثابت على قيمتي وسأتمنى في النهاية أن يفهم ما أفعله ويقدر صدقي.

### 3. Which character do you like most in King Lear ? Why ?

- أي شخصية تحبها أكثر من الملك لير ؟ ولماذا ؟

- I think Cordelia is the most likable character because her character represents honesty, truth and genuine love.

- اعتقد كورديليا هي أكثر الشخصيات المحبوبة في المسرحية لأنها تمثل الأمانة والصدق والحب الحقيقي.

### 4. "The greed for power is more dangerous than the greed for money". Do you agree with this opinion ? Why ?

- «الطمع من أجل السلطة أكثر خطراً من الطمع من أجل المال» هل توافق على ذلك الرأي ؟ لماذا ؟

- I agree with that opinion as the desire for power can be more destructive. The desire for power can lead to betrayal, loss of ethics and corruption.

- اوافق على هذا الرأي حيث أن الرغبة في السلطة يمكن أن تكون أكثر تدميراً وتؤدي إلى الخيانة وضياع الأخلاق والفساد.



#### SB, WB, El-Moasser & Previous Exams

أسئلة الكتاب المدرسي وأسئلة خاصة بكتاب المعاصر والامتحانات السابقة وإجاباتها المقترحة

### 1. "Lady, I'm a very foolish old man." Do you agree with what Lear says? Give your reason(s).

- «سديتي، أنا رجل عجوز احمق للعابه». هل تتفق مع ما يقوله «لير» ؟ أذكر اسبابك.

- Yes, I agree. Lear was tricked by false love words from Goneril and Regan. He couldn't understand true love in Cordelia's behaviour.

Now, he is the victim of his foolishness.

- نعم أتفق. لقد انخدع «لير» بكلمات الحب الكاذبة من «جونيريل» و «ريجان». لم يستطع فهم الحب الحقيقي في سلوك «كورديليا»، وهو الآن ضحية لحماقته.

### 2. Why do you think that Lear kneels before Cordelia?

(WB) (دمياط - الروضة ٢٠٢٤)

- برأيك، لماذا يركع «لير» أمام «كورديليا» ؟

- He wants her to forgive him because he knows he was wrong to send her away.

- يريد أن تسامحه لأنه يعلم أنه أخطأ في إبعادها.

### 3. "Your sisters have been cruel to me. You have a good reason to be cruel to me, but they do not." Why does Lear say this to Cordelia?

(WB)

- «لقد فسدت أحبتك على أنت لديك سبب ووجه لتكوبي قاسية على لكنهما ليس لديهما ذلك»

لماذا يقول «لير» هذا لـ «كورديليا» ؟

- He sent Cordelia away, so he knew she could be angry with him. He cannot understand why his other daughters have been cruel to him.

- لقد قام بإبعاد «كورديليا» لذلك هو يعلم أنها قد تكون غاضبة منه، غير أنه لا يستطيع أن يفهم لماذا تعاملت ابنتيه الأخريتين معه بقسوة.

**4. Why do you think Regan doesn't want Goneril to talk to Edmund? (WB)**

- في رأيك، لماذا لا تريد «ريجان» أن نتحدث «جونيبريل» مع «إدموند»؟
- She is worried that Edmund will help her sister and not her.
- إنها قلقة من أن «إدموند» سيساعد أختها وليس هي.

**5. "The French are not here to help Lear. I think we have been too cruel to the King." What does this tell us about Albany? (WB)**

- «الفرنسيون ليسوا هنا لمساعدة «لير». أعتقد أننا قمنا جداً على الملك.» لماذا يخبرنا هذا عن «ألباني»؟
- We learn that he is a good man and wants to help Lear. He is starting to see that his wife is not a good person.
- يدل هذا على أنه رجل طيب ويريد مساعدة «لير». لقد بدأ يدرك أن زوجته ليست شخصاً جيداً.

**6. Do you think Albany trusts Edmund? Why? (SB) (السؤال - إدمو ٢٠٢٤)**

- هل تعتقد أن «ألباني» يثق بـ «إدموند»؟ لماذا؟
- No, I don't think so. Edmund is a selfish person who is hungry for power at the expense of anything or anybody.
- لا أعتقد ذلك. «إدموند» شخص أناني متعطش للسلطة على حساب أي شيء أو أي شخص.

**7. "I've told both sisters that I'll help them to win more power. Now, they do not trust each other." What does this tell us about Edmund? (WB)**

- «لقد أخبرت الإخوين أنني سأساعدهما في الحصول على المزيد من السلطة. والآن لا يثقون ببعضهم البعض.» لماذا يخبرنا هذا عن «إدموند»؟
- It tells us that he will do anything to try to take control. He is not an honest man to be trusted.

- يدل هذا على أنه سيفعل أي شيء للوصول للسلطة. إنه ليس رجلاً أميناً يمكن الوثوق به.

**8. What do you think this refers to when Edgar says "This is a bitter pill to swallow"? (WB) (الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٤)**

- في اعتقادك، إلى ماذا يشير «إدجار» عندما يقول «هذا مرص مرير يجب ابتلاعه»؟
- The fact that they have lost the battle and Lear and Cordelia are now prisoners.
- حقيقة أنهم خسروا المعركة وأصبح «لير» و «كورديليا» سجينين.

**9. Why do you think Edmund says he sent Lear to prison? (WB) (الدقهلية - أبا ٢٠٢٤)**

- في اعتقادك، لماذا يقول «إدموند» أنه أرسل «لير» إلى السجن؟
- Because he thinks if the soldiers see him, they will feel sorry for him because he's old.
- لأنه يعتقد أن الجنود إذا رأوه سيشعرون بالأسف عليه لأنه كبير في السن.

**10. "I see kind Edmund as an equal. He led our soldiers well today in battle. I think he can call himself equal to you." What does this tell us about Regan? (WB)**

- «أرى «إدموند» الطيب على قدم المساواة معنا. لقد قاد جنودنا بشكل جيد اليوم في المعركة. أعتقد أنه يمكن أن يصع نفسه على قدم المساواة معك.» لماذا يخبرنا هذا عن «ريجان»؟
- It tells us that she is ready to use Edmund to try to take power from Goneril and Albany.

- يدل هذا على أنها مستعدة لاستخدام «إدموند» لمحاولة الاستيلاء على السلطة من «جونيبريل» و «ألباني».



## Part 2 Questions & answers for Al-Azhar students

أسئلة خاصة بطلاب الأزهر وإجاباتها

### 1. Why is Goneril unhappy about Edmund working for Regan? (SB)

- لماذا لم تكن «جونيريل» سعيدة بعمل «إدموند» مع «ريجان»؟
- She believes Edmund will work with her sister to take power from her.
- تعتقد أن «إدموند» سيعمل مع أختها ليأخذ السلطة منها.

### 2. How does King Lear feel when he meets Cordelia? (SB)

- ماذا كان شعور الملك «لير» عندما يلتقى «كورديليا»؟
- He feels foolish, but he is happy to be with Cordelia. He asks her to forgive him.
- لقد شعر بالحماسة، لكنه كان سعيد بوجوده مع «كورديليا» وطلب منها أن تسامحه.

### 3. "Now, it is time for me to start to take control of the kingdom!"

What does Edmund mean by this? (SB)

- «الآن حان الوقت لي أن أبدأ في السيطرة على المملكة» ماذا يقصد «إدموند» بهذا؟
- He means that he wants to manage the situation.
- يعنى أنه يريد السيطرة على الوضع.

### 4. "This is a bitter pill to swallow." What does Edgar mean by this? (SB)

- «هذا وضع مرير» ماذا يعنى «إدجار» بهذا؟
- He means that the situation is difficult, but he has to accept it.
- يقصد أن الوضع صعب ولكن عليه أن يتقبله.

### 5. What do Regan and Goneril both want Edmund to do? (WB)

- ماذا تريد كل من «ريجان» و «جونيريل» من «إدموند» أن يفعل؟
- They both want him to help them to take power.
- كلتاهما تريد أن يساعدها في الإستيلاء على السلطة.

### ❖ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- King Lear asks Cordelia to ..... him.  
a. forgive      b. protect      c. prevent      d. kill
- ..... denied helping Goneril to take Regan's lands.  
a. Oswald      b. Edgar      c. Edmund      d. Albany
- Cordelia and King Lear were taken as .....  
a. engineers      b. prisoners      c. teachers      d. farmers
- Albany told Edmund that he was very ..... in battle.  
a. coward      b. ugly      c. brave      d. harsh
- ..... told Edmund to take power from her evil sister.  
a. Regan      b. Cordelia      c. Lady Macbeth      d. Goneril

### Answers

1. a

2. c

3. b

4. c

5. a

# General Exercises

## ✪ Answer the following questions :

**A** 1. "You shouldn't help me to live." What can you infer from this sentence?

.....

2. "You may be happy, but I feel like I'm on a wheel of fire." What does the King mean?

.....

3. The King thought that he made a big mistake towards Cordelia and tried to treat the situation. Do you agree with what he had done?

.....

**B** 1. Cordelia is a sensitive girl and she was affected by her father's bad condition. Discuss.

.....

2. Edmund was a big liar and a cheat. To what extent إلى أي مدى do you agree? Give an example.

.....

3. "I don't trust my sister. Edmund, please don't work with her." What does this quotation show?

.....

**C** 1. In your point of view, who would Edmund help, Regan or Goneril? Why?

.....

2. The two sisters thought that Edmund would support them. What can we infer about their characters?

.....

3. What do you think of Edmund's plan after winning the war against the French army?

.....

**D** 1. "This is a bitter pill to swallow." What do you think the speaker wants to say?

.....

2. "There we can be together. We'll sing like birds in a cage!" How do you think the King's feeling towards Cordelia is different from before? Why?

.....

3. "Edmund is a villain" Explain giving two points.

.....



## VOCABULARY

treason (n)	خيانة	tear up (tore) (v)	يقطع لأجزاء صغيرة
liar (n)	كاذب		- يمزق
trick (ed) (v / n)	يخدع - خدعة	laws (n)	قوانين
resign (ed) (v)	يستقيل	stretcher (n)	نقالة

### Words and their definitions

▶ laws (n)	: rules that everyone must follow in your country	قوانين
▶ stretcher (n)	: something you can use to carry an ill person	نقالة
▶ liar (n)	: someone who doesn't tell the truth	كاذب
▶ resign (ed) (v)	: to stop working in a job you do	يستقيل
▶ tear up (tore) (v)	: to destroy paper and pull it into small pieces	يقطع لأجزاء صغيرة
▶ trick (ed) (v)	: to fool someone into doing something	يخدع
▶ treason (n)	: a crime against your country	خيانة

### Verbal Collocations & Expressions

My heart is heavy	قلبي حزين	the wheel has come full circle	عدنا لنقطة البداية (كما كنا)
punish someone for something	يعاقب شخص على شيء	arrest someone for something	يقبض على شخص بسبب شيء
be guilty of doing something	يقر بذنب القيام بشيء	stop someone from doing something	يمنع شخص من عمل شيء
trick someone into something	يخدع شخص شيء	prove something to someone	يلتبت شيء لشخص

## ACT V, SCENE III, CONTINUED IN POINTS

1. Regan asks Edmund to fight Albany. Albany says he arrests Edmund for treason **الخيانة العظمى** and asks his wife if she was planning to take her sister's lands.



2. Regan feels ill. Goneril had put poison السم to her. Albany asks Edmund to fight unless anyone else wants to fight him first.
3. Regan feels worse. Edgar enters to fight Edmund telling him he was a traitor to his father and brother.
4. Albany threatens to read Goneril's letter to Edmund. Edmund admits his mistakes. Edgar tells him he is his brother and says let us forgive each other.
5. Edgar tells Albany where he was hiding and how he helped his father without telling him who he was.
6. Gloucester dies smiling when he knows it's his son Edgar who was helping him. Goneril kills both herself with a knife and her sister with poison.
7. Edmund tries to do one good thing before his death by trying to change his orders to kill the King and Cordelia.
8. It is too late, King Lear enters with Cordelia dead in his arms.
9. Albany tells them his plans :
  1. He'll do everything to help the King.
  2. He will resign.
  3. Edgar and Kent return to their homes
  4. Friends are rewarded and enemies are punished.
10. King Lear dies. Edgar becomes King.

## III TEXT OF ACT V SCENE III, CONTINUED

### Act V Scene III, continued

*[In the British camp, near Dover.]*

**GONERIL :** My sister Regan, do you really want Edmund to help you to take my lands?

**ALBANY :** You can't do this, Edmund.

**EDMUND :** You can't tell me what to do, Albany.

**ALBANY :** Yes I can!

**REGAN :** *[To Edmund.]* Prove that you want to help me, Edmund, by fighting Albany!

**ALBANY :** Listen to me. Edmund, I arrest you for treason.

*[He points to Goneril.]* And you, my wife. Were you planning to take Regan's land from her? With Edmund's help? It's not your land to take. It was given equally to you and Regan by your father!



**GONERIL** : But we could have more power, Husband!

**REGAN** : I feel ill. My stomach hurts!

**GONERIL** : *[To herself.]* Good.

If you aren't ill, I will never trust poison again **1**.

**Suggested Questions**

- 1** Why did Goneril poison her sister Regan ?

**ALBANY** : You have a sword,

Edmund. I'm ready to fight you, unless anyone else wants to fight you first!

**EDMUND** : I'm happy to fight anyone who calls me a traitor or a liar.

Come then, who wants to fight me?

**REGAN** : Help me. I feel worse.

**ALBANY** : Regan isn't well. Take her to my tent.

*[Regan is helped offstage.]*

Now, if any man here will fight Edmund the traitor, come now, or I'll fight him myself.

*[Edgar enters.]*

Who are you?

**EDGAR** : I have lost my name and title to a traitor; but I'm a brave soldier.

Where's Edmund, who calls himself the Duke of Gloucester?

**EDMUND** : I'm here.

**EDGAR** : Then take out your

sword. You're a traitor to your brother and **2** your father. I'm ready to fight

you to prove you are a liar to everyone you work for.

**Suggested Questions**

- 2** Why do you think Edgar will fight his brother, Edmund ?

*[They fight. Edmund falls.]*

**ALBANY** : Edmund is hurt, can you save him? I want to find out what he knows!

**GONERIL** : They tricked you into fighting, Edmund.

**ALBANY** : Be quiet, madam, or I will make you be quiet by reading this letter that you wrote to Edmund.

*[He gives Goneril the letter she wrote to Edmund.]*

*[To Goneril.]* No, don't try to tear up the letter! You know what you wrote.

**GONERIL** : Husband, it's true

that I wanted Edmund to help me take **3** Regan's land. The laws of the

kingdom are mine, not yours. Who can punish me for it?

**Suggested Questions**

- 3** Goneril proved to be an evil woman. Explain.

**ALBANY :** You're an evil woman!

*[Goneril exits.]*

**EDMUND :** Albany, I'm guilty of wanting to help both Goneril and Regan, and more, much more. This is the end for me now. *[To Edgar.]* But who are you? If you're a good man, I forgive you.

**EDGAR :** Let us forgive each other. My name's Edgar and I'm your brother. Our father has lost his eyes because of you!

**EDMUND :** I was wrong. I thought that I could be the best man in the kingdom, but now I'm the worst. **The wheel has come full circle 4 .**

**- Suggested Questions -**

**4** What did Edmund mean by saying "The wheel has come full circle" ?

**ALBANY :** *[To Edgar.]* I thought that you were an important man. I promise you, I never hated you, or your father!

**EDGAR :** I know that, Albany.

**ALBANY :** Where have you been hiding? How did you know what happened to your father?

**EDGAR :** I've been helping him, my Lord. I disguised myself as a beggar, then I met my father, who's now blind. I became his guide, and stopped him from killing himself. I never told him who I was. That was a big mistake. Just an hour ago, I told him everything, but his heart was too weak. He died smiling.

*[An officer enters with a knife covered in blood.]*

**OFFICER :** Help! Oh, help me!

**EDGAR :** What is it? Why is there blood on that knife?

**OFFICER :** It came from the heart of ... Oh, she's dead!

**ALBANY :** Who's dead? Tell us.

**OFFICER :** Goneril, your wife, sir! And her sister Regan. Goneril has killed herself, and she poisoned Regan before she died.

*[Kent enters.]*

**EDGAR :** Here is Kent.

**KENT :** I have come to see the King. Is he here?

**ALBANY :** Tell us, Edmund, where is the King? And where is Cordelia?

*[The bodies of Goneril and Regan are carried in on stretchers by soldiers.]*

**KENT :** Oh, no! What's happened?

**ALBANY :** Cover their faces.

**EDMUND :** I must do one good thing before I die. Quickly, go to the castle; I wrote a message asking for the deaths of King Lear and Cordelia.



**EDGAR :** Who did you write this message to? We must stop it!

**EDMUND :** *[To the Officer.]* Take my sword. Give it the Captain and he'll know that I have changed the order.

**ALBANY :** Run! Quickly!

*[The Officer exits.]*

**EDMUND :** The message tells the Captain to kill Cordelia in the prison. We wanted people to think that she killed herself.

**ALBANY :** Please, let her be safe! Take him away.

*[Edmund is carried off. King Lear enters with Cordelia dead in his arms. Edgar and the Captain follow.]*

**KING LEAR :** Oh, this is terrible. She is gone forever!

**KENT :** Oh, your majesty!

**KING LEAR :** You're all murderers and traitors! We should have saved her; now she's gone forever! Her voice was always soft and gentle.

*[He sees Kent.]* Aren't you Kent?

**KENT :** Yes, I am. And I've followed you since your madness began.

**KING LEAR :** You're welcome here.

**KENT :** My heart is heavy. Your eldest daughters have died, too.

*[The Captain enters.]*

**CAPTAIN :** Edmund is dead, my lord.

**ALBANY :** He isn't important now. My friends, these are my plans. We'll do everything to help King Lear feel better. I will resign and give my power back to the old King. Edgar and Kent, return to your homes and I'll make sure that my friends are rewarded and my enemies punished.

**KING LEAR :** *[To Cordelia.]* Why should a rat have life, and you have no life at all? I'll never see you again.

*[King Lear dies.]*

**KENT :** Oh, my heart will break!

**EDGAR :** He's gone.

**KENT :** He was very ill. I'm surprised that he lived for so long.

**ALBANY :** Carry him out carefully.

*[To Kent and Edgar.]* My friends, without the King, you two will rule **s** this kingdom.

**EDGAR :** We must remember this sad day.

*[He puts on the crown.]*

### Suggested Questions

- 5 What do you think of the character of Albany ?

The oldest man has suffered the most; we young people will never see as much as Lear, nor live as long as this good King.

[They exit.]

THE END

## QUESTIONS & THEIR SUGGESTED ANSWERS

### Part 1 Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers

#### Longman Exercises

أسئلة خاصة بموقع لونغمان وإجاباتها المقترحة

#### 1. What might have happened if Edgar hadn't disguised himself as a beggar ?

- ماذا كان يمكن أن يحدث لو أن إدغار لم يتنكر المنسول في رى منسول؟
- If Edgar hadn't disguised himself, he wouldn't have been able to protect his father. Gloucester would have likely been killed by Oswald.
- لو لم يكن إدغار متنكراً، لم يكن يستطيع أن يحمي والده وكان يمكن أن يقتل عن طريق «أوزولد».

#### 2. Should Edgar have fought against Edmund ? Why ?

- هل كان يجب على إدغار القتال ضد أدموند ؟ لماذا ؟
- Yes, he should because Edmund had to pay for his mistakes.
- نعم لأن إدموند كان يجب أن يدفع ثمن أخطائه.

#### 3. What might have happened if Edmund hadn't died ?

- ماذا كان من الممكن أن يحدث إذا لم يمت أدموند ؟
- He might have continued to fight for power and control of the kingdom.
- كان من الممكن أن يستمر في صراعة للسلطة والسيطرة على المملكة.

#### 4. In your opinion, do you think Edgar was mistaken not to tell his father who he was earlier ? Why ?

- في رأيك هل تعتقد أن إدغار كان مخطئاً في عدم إخبار والده بشخصيته الحقيقية من قبل ؟ لماذا ؟
- I think he wasn't mistaken because he knew that revealing his identity could put his father in danger.
- اعتقد أنه لم يكن مخطئاً لأنه كان يعرف أن كشف شخصيته كان من الممكن أن يضع والده في دائرة الخطر.

#### SB, WB, El-Moasser & Previous Exams

أسئلة الكتاب المدرسي وأسئلة خاصة بكتاب المعاصر والامتحانات السابقة وإجاباتها المقترحة

#### 1. Why do you think Edmund said, "The wheel has come full circle"?

(SB) (دمياط - الروضة ٢٠٢٤)

- في اعتقادك، لماذا قال «إدموند»: «لقد دارت العجلة دورة كاملة»؟
- Because he believes he started with no power, then had power and then lost it.
- لأنه يعتقد أنه بدأ بلا سلطة، ثم امتلك السلطة ثم فقدها.

**2. Why do you think Kent said, "My heart is heavy"?**

(SB)

- في اعتقادك، لماذا قال «كينت»: «قلبي منقبض»؟

- Because he was very sad.

- لأنه حزين جدًا.

**3. Did you expect Regan and Goneril to die? Why?**

(SB)

- هل توقعت موت «ريجان» و «جونيريل»؟ لماذا؟

- Yes. They were evil traitors and they had to be punished for the bad things they had done.

- نعم، لقد كانتا خونة أشرار وكان لابد من معاقبتهم على الأشياء السيئة التي فعلوها.

**4. How did you feel at the end of the play? Why?**

(SB) (أسوان - مصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)

- ما هو شعورك في نهاية المسرحية؟ لماذا؟

- I felt sorry for the good people who were killed, especially Cordelia. I don't think it was a fair end to such a loving daughter.

- شعرت بالأسف على الأشخاص الطيبين الذين قتلوا، وخاصة «كورديليا». لا أعتقد أنها كانت نهاية عادلة لمثل هذه الابنة المحبة.

**5. Who was your favourite character in the play? Give reasons.**

(SB) (القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٤)

- من هي شخصيتك المفضلة في المسرحية؟ أعط أسباباً.

- Cordelia. She was a loving daughter who sacrificed her life to save her father.

- «كورديليا». لقد كانت ابنة محبة ضحت بحياتها لإنقاذ والدها.

**6. Who is your least favourite character in the play? Explain why.**

(WB) (الفاخرة - النبين ٢٠٢٤)

- من هي شخصيتك الأقل تفضيلاً في المسرحية؟ اشرح السبب.

- Edmund is my least favourite character. His hunger for power turned him into a traitor who plotted against his brother and his father and whoever was in his way.

- «إدموند» هو شخصيتي الأقل تفضيلاً. لقد حوله نعطشه للسلطة إلى خائن يتامر على أخيه وأبيه وكل من في طريقه.

**7. Did you expect such a tragic end to the play? Why / Why not?**

(WB)

- هل توقعت مثل هذه النهاية الدرامية للمسرحية؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟

- Yes. Greed, hunger for power, treason and cruelty must lead to such a tragical end.

- نعم، الجشع والتعطش للسلطة والخيانة والقسوة يجب أن يؤدي كل هذا إلى مثل هذه النهاية المأساوية.

**8. What message do you think this final part of the play gives us?**

(WB)

- ما هي الرسالة التي تعتقد أن الجزء الأخير من المسرحية يقدمها لنا؟

- Everybody will pay for the evils they do sooner or later.

- الجميع سيدفعون ثمن الشرور التي يفعلونها عاجلاً أم آجلاً.

**9. What is the moral lesson of King Lear in your opinion?**

(SB) (المنوفية - قويسنا ٢٠٢٤)

- ما هو الدرس الأخلاقي في رواية الملك «لير» برأيك؟

- A person's actions speak louder than their words alone.

- أفعال الإنسان أبلغ من أقواله وحدها.



## Part 2 Questions & answers for Al-Azhar students

◀ أسئلة خاصة بطلاب الأزهر وإجاباتها

1. What does Albany say he will do to Edmund? (SB)

- ماذا يقول «ألباني» أنه سيفعل بـ «إدموند»؟

- He says he will arrest him. - يقول أنه سوف يعتقله.

2. Why does Regan feel ill? (SB)

- لماذا تشعر «ريجان» بالمرض؟

- Because Goneril gave her some poison. - لأن «جونيريل» دسّت لها بعض السم.

3. Whose blood is on the knife that the officer is carrying? (SB)

- دم من الذي كان على السكين الذي يحمله الضابط؟

- Goneril's blood. - دم «جونيريل».

4. How will the Captain know that Edmund has changed his mind? (SB)

- كيف سيعرف الكابتن أن «إدموند» قد غير رأيه؟

- When the Captain receives Edmund's sword, he'll know that Edmund has changed his mind.

- عندما يتسلم الكابتن سيف «إدموند»، سيعلم أن «إدموند» قد غير رأيه.

5. Why does Lear say everyone is a traitor and a murderer? (SB)

- لماذا يقول «لير» أن الجميع خائنون وقتلون؟

- Because Cordelia is dead and he thinks people should have saved her.

- لأن «كورديليا» ماتت ويعتقد أنه كان يجب على الناس إنقاذها.

6. What does Albany promise to do for his friends? (SB)

- ماذا وعد «ألباني» بأن يفعل لأصدقائه؟

- He promises to reward them. - لقد وعد بمكافأتهم.

7. Who rules the kingdom when Lear dies? (SB)

- من حكم المملكة عندما مات «لير»؟

- Kent and Edgar rule. - حكم «كيلت» و «إدجار».

❖ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Regan felt ill because Goneril ..... her.

a. poisoned      b. protected      c. fed      d. fought

2. Regan asked Edmund to fight .....

a. Edgar      b. Albany      c. Lear      d. Cordelia

3. Edgar told Edmund that he was a ..... to his father and brother.

a. traitor      b. farmer      c. mechanic      d. partner

4. Albany will resign and give ..... the power to control the kingdom.

a. Kent      b. Edgar      c. Edmund      d. a & b

5. At the end of the play, friends are ..... and enemies are punished.

a. protected      b. rewarded      c. selected      d. ruled

### Answers

1. a

2. b

3. a

4. b

5. b

# General Exercises

## ★ Answer the following questions :

- A** 1. "I'm happy to fight anyone who calls me a traitor or a liar." What can we infer from this quotation?

.....

2. Albany has an unexpected surprise to his wife and Edmund. Illustrate.

.....

3. Goneril tried to get rid of her sister by many ways. Discuss.

.....

- B** 1. If you were Edgar, would you fight Edmund? Why / Why not?

.....

2. "I'm ready to fight you to prove you are a liar to everyone you work for." What do you think of Edgar's point of view of his brother?

.....

3. Do you think Edmund regretted what he had done? Why / Why not?

.....

- C** 1. In your opinion, does Edmund deserve what happened to him? Why / Why not?

.....

2. "I'm the worst. The wheel has come full circle." Who is the speaker and what does he mean by these words?

.....

3. All good and bad people make mistakes, but the difference is whether we mean them or not. Give two examples to prove this.

.....

- D** 1. What morals can we learn from this play?

.....

2. Dissatisfaction عدم الرضا is a main theme in this play. Do you agree? How?

.....

3. In your opinion, what are the best and the worst thing in this play?

.....

# General Exercises

## on the Play King

### 1 El-Massar Exercise

#### A Answer the following questions:

1. If I read about this in a story, I wouldn't believe it was true. It is so sad." Why do you think Edgar says this?

.....

2. Do you think Gloucester was really a traitor? Why/Why not?

.....

3. What is the moral lesson in King Lear in your opinion?

.....

#### B Answer the following questions:

1. "I see kind Edmund as an equal. He led our soldiers well today in battle. I think he can call himself equal to you." What does this tell us about Regan?

.....

2. He does not want to see his daughter ... because he was so unkind to her before." Who is Kent talking about? Do you think he regrets the decisions he made against his daughter? Why?

.....

3. "Look, here's the prize! This man without eyes will make me rich!" What did Oswald mean by this?

.....

#### C Answer the following questions:

1. "The French are not here to help Lear. I think we have been too cruel to the King." What does this tell us about Albany?

.....

2. "Wherever he goes, people feel sorry for him and angry with us." Why do people feel sorry for him?

.....

3. "I trust you, Edmund, and you'll find me to be a better father than he is." Who is the speaker? Why do they say this?

.....



**D Answer the following questions :**

1. Edmund was an evil traitor. Explain giving two points.  
.....
2. "When you have nothing, there's nothing left to lose." What do you think Edgar means by this?  
.....
3. "You and Regan are tigers, not daughters." Do you think the word 'tigers' really describes the two sisters? Why?  
.....

**E Answer the following questions :**

1. Do you think that Gloucester still believes his son Edgar has been cruel to him? Why?  
.....
2. King Lear says 'This rock is like a stage in theatre.' What do you think he means when he says this? Do you agree?  
.....
3. Why do you think that Lear kneels before Cordelia?  
.....

**F Answer the following questions :**

1. Why does Regan not want Goneril to talk to Edmund?  
.....
2. "If I read about this in a story, I wouldn't believe it was true. It is so sad." Why do you think Edgar says this?  
.....
3. Did you expect Regan and Goneril to die? Why?  
.....

**2 Collected Questions from previous Exams**

**A Answer the following questions:**

(السوييس - اداره ديوت التعليميه ٢٠٢٤)

1. "I'm sorry, Cornwall, because the truth is so sad." Who is the speaker? Why do they say this?  
.....
2. "I don't need any eyes. When I had eyes, I couldn't see what I most needed to see." Why does Gloucester say this?  
.....

3. What does This refer to when Edgar says “This is a bitter pill to swallow”?

.....

**B Answer the following questions:**

(بورشعء - اءارة شمال الءلءلءه ٢٠٢٤)

1. Do you think most people disagree with friends and family sometimes?  
.....
2. If you were Cordelia, would you go back to England to defend your father? Why/Why not?  
.....
3. Why does Regan not want Goneril to talk to Edmund?  
.....

**C Answer the following questions:**

(الءرءة - اءارة عرب طلءا ٢٠٢٤)

1. In what way were Gloucester and King Lear alike?  
.....
2. “But you can see with your ears. We now know that a judge will punish a poor man’s crime before a rich man’s crime.” What do you think King Lear meant by these words?  
.....
3. Who is your least favourite character in the play? Explain why.  
.....

**D Answer the following questions:**

(ءمءاء - اءارة ءمءاء الءلءلءة ٢٠٢٤)

1. How do you feel about the death of Oswald? Why do you feel like this?  
.....
2. What do you think of Albany?  
.....
3. What message do you think this final part of the play gives us?  
.....

**E Answer the following questions:**

(ءمءر الءلءء - اءارة بلا الءلءلءة ٢٠٢٤)

1. “When you have nothing, there’s nothing left to lose.” What do you think Edgar means by this?  
.....

2. Why do you think Edgar says that King Lear is talking both 'sense and nonsense'?
- .....

3. "Lady. I'm a very foolish old man." Do you agree with what Lear says? Give your reason(s).
- .....

**F Answer the following questions:**

(البصرة - إدارة بندر كمر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)

1. "Please, doctor, try to cure my father, whose children have made him mad." To what extent is that true? Explain.
- .....

2. "My father is so sad; he has fallen apart. I wish I didn't have to pretend to be a beggar." Who says this? Why was he sorry for pretending to be a beggar? What does it tell you about him?
- .....

3. Why did Edmund say, "The wheel has come full circle"?
- .....

**D Answer the following questions:**

(المنيا - العنوة ٢٠٢٣)

1. "There is a very high cliff in Dover. Take me to the top of it. You don't need to take me anywhere else." Why does Gloucester say this to Edgar and what is he planning to do?
- .....

2. "I haven't returned to England to take power for myself." Who is the speaker? Why do they say this?
- .....

3. What kind of wife was Goneril? How do you know?
- .....

**E Answer the following questions:**

(الماهرة - الوابلي ٢٠٢٣)

1. "Please put on some better clothes, Kent." Was it necessary for Kent to be in bad clothes? Why/Why not?
- .....

2. How did you feel at the end of the play? Why?
- .....

3. What did Edmund, Goneril and Regan have in common?
- .....



## For Al-Azhar Students

خاص لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

### 1. Answer the following questions :

1. What does the letter that Edmund show Cornwall prove?

.....

2. Who is told to take King Lear to Dover in a carriage?

.....

3. What does Cornwall decide to do to Gloucester?

.....

### • Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Duke of Albany ..... with Edmund so Goneril asked him to leave.

a. was happy

b. was angry

c. wanted to fight

d. liked to speak

2. Edmund pretended to fight Edgar .....

a. to protect his father

b. to protect his wife

c. to make Edgar look bad

d. to take gum

3. .... had to leave her family in England.

a. Cordelia

b. Lear's wife

c. Goneril

d. Regan

### 2. Answer the following questions :

1. Which part of Gloucester's body does Cornwall hit with his sword and injure?

.....

2. What does Edgar wish he didn't have to pretend to be?

.....

3. Where does Edgar promise to take Gloucester?

.....

### • Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Edgar says "When you have nothing, there's nothing ....."

a. to gain

b. to give

c. that can help

d. to lose

2. King Lear wanted to give the largest part of his land to .....

a. the King of France

b. the daughter who loved him most

c. Edgar

d. Kent

3. Regan wanted Edmund to ..... Albany.

a. fight

b. help

c. motivate

d. obey



# NEW Hello QUESTION BANK

By A Group Of Supervisors



**AL TALADA BOOKSTORE**  
For printing, publication & distribution  
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt  
Tel 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91  
e-mail. info@elmoasserbooks.com  
www.elmoasserbooks.com

©15014

**2<sup>nd</sup>**  
**Sec.**

SECOND TERM  
عام - أزهر

— All rights reserved —

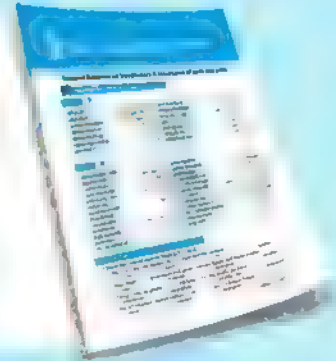
# A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج والتمكّن منه في اسبوع واحد فقط

DAYS

## 1 & 2

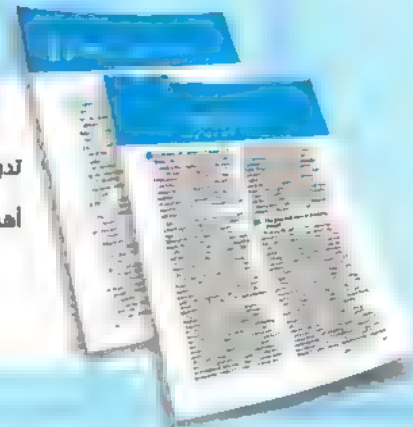
1. General Revision on Vocabulary (each two units) followed by Exercise for practice.  
مراجعة علي المفردات اللغوية (كل وحدتين علي حدة) متبوعة بتمرين للتدريب.
2. General Revision on Structures (each two units) followed by Exercise for practice.  
مراجعة علي القواعد اللغوية (كل وحدتين علي حدة) متبوعة بتمرين للتدريب.
3. General Revision on the play King Lear.  
مراجعة عامة علي (King Lear).



DAY

## 3

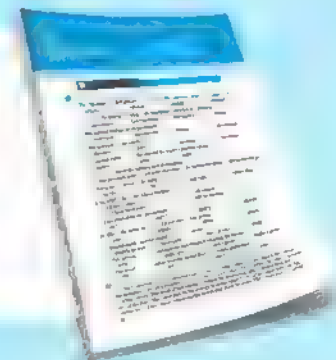
1. General Exercises collected from SB & WB  
تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات
2. Writing Skill  
أهم المقالات ورسائل البريد الإلكتروني التي وردت في المنهج



DAYS

## 4, 5, 6 & 7

1. 20 Model Exams from different governorates.  
عشرون اختبارًا من اختبارات المحافظات المختلفة.
2. Al Azhar & Inclusive students Exams.  
اختبارات طلاب الأزهر الشريف والدمج.





## General Revision on Vocabulary &amp; Structures of each two units

## 1 General Revision On Vocabulary Units 7 &amp; 8

## Unit 7

all in all	في المجمل - بصفة عامة	host family(n)	عائلة مضييفة
dear diary	ذكرى عزيزة - ذكرى لا تنسى	independent(adj)	مستقل - معتمد على نفسه
determination(n)	إصرار / تصميم / عزيمة - تحديد	pick(ed) ... up	يُقبل / يوصل - يلتقط
determine(d)(v)	يُصمم - يحدد	(phr. v)	
determined(adj)	مُصمم - عازم	pick-up (n)	شاحنة صغيرة
encouragement(n)	تشجيع	struggle (n)	كفاح - نضال
get used to	يعتاد على	struggle(d) (v)	يُخاف - يُناضل - يثار

## Unit 8

alternative(n - adj)	بديل - مختلف	passenger(n)	مسافر - راكب
argument(n)	نِزاع / حجة - جدال - خلاف	public transport	المواصلات العامة
connect(ed) (v)	يربط - يوصل	public(adj)	عام - شعبي
convenient(adj)	ملائم - مناسب	respond(ed) (v)	يرد - يستجيب
earlier(adj - adv)	قبل (ذلك) - فيما مضى	satisfactory(adj)	مُرضي - كافٍ
earlier(adj)	أبكر من - أسبق	significant(adj)	هام - مؤثر - ذو مغزى - ملحوظ
environmentally	صديق للبيئة	system(n)	نظام - شبكة
friendly(adj)		transport (n)	(وسائل) النقل / المواصلات
expansion(n)	توسُّع - تمدد	transport(ed) (v)	ينقل - ينزِع عضو
facilities(n)	تسهيلات - امتيازات - مرافق - مواب	the Underground(n)	مترو الأنفاق
high-tech(adj)	دو تقنية عالية	underground	جوفي - تحت الأرض
network(n)	شبكة	(adj-adv)	
on / in behalf of	بالتأييد عن - لمصلحة		

## General Exercises On Vocabulary (Units 7 &amp; 8)

\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The secretary told me that the manager had left an hour .....  
a. cheaper                      b. earlier                      c. safer                      d. further
- Huge ships ..... passengers and goods between Egypt and Saudi Arabia.  
a. connect                      b. respond                      c. transport                      d. involve
- Using forms of public ..... will help solve the traffic problem.  
a. translation                      b. transplant                      c. health care                      d. transport
- The 6<sup>th</sup> October-Aswan railway will ..... Cairo to Upper Egypt.  
a. connect                      b. respond                      c. transport                      d. involve

5. Mr Ayman has not ..... to my request yet.  
 a. connected      b. responded      c. transported      d. involved
6. The ..... of cities mustn't be at the expense of حساب علي farmland.  
 a. issue      b. transport      c. expansion      d. passenger
7. "I came across one of my old friends the other day." The phrasal verb 'came across' in this sentence can be replaced by .....  
 a. communicated      b. encountered      c. invited      d. missed
8. "Successful people struggle to reach their goals." The antonym of 'struggle' in this sentence is .....  
 a. compete      b. strive      c. give up      d. spare no effort
9. Meeting you for the first time is a/an ..... I will never forget.  
 a. all in all      b. until tomorrow      c. get used to      d. dear diary
10. I was a stranger in London; I stayed with a ..... family during my four-year study there.  
 a. distracted      b. stressed      c. host      d. hostess

## 2 General Revision

### 1 Stative Verbs

الأفعال التقريرية

#### Types of Verbs أنواع الأفعال

##### 1 Stative Verbs الأفعال التقريرية

هي أفعال تصف حالة ولا تُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

be – love – hate – dislike – seem ... etc.

ex. - He **is being** happy. (X)

- He **is** happy. (✓)

##### 2 Dynamic (Action) Verbs أفعال الحركة

هي أفعال تصف حدث أو حركة ويمكن أن تُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

play – visit – build – help – write ... etc.

ex. - She **is writing** an essay. (✓)

- She **writes** an essay. (✓)

##### 3 Verbs that are both Dynamic and Stative الأفعال التقريرية والحركية

هي أفعال تصف حدث أو حركة بمعنى معين وتُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة، وتصف حالة بمعنى آخر ولا تُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

be – have – see – smell – taste

ex. - She **is having** lunch now. (✓) (يتناول)

- She **has** lunch at three o'clock. (✓) (يتناول)

- She **is having** a tablet. (X) (يمتلك)

- She **has** a tablet. (✓) (يمتلك)

## Notes on Stative verbs ملاحظات هامة على الأفعال الثابتة

١ لا تُستخدم الأفعال الثابتة بالمعاني المذكورة في الجداول السابقة في الأزمنة المستمرة، ويتم استخدام أقرب زمن بسيط حسب معنى الجملة:

- Mr Nasser **is having** a BMW. (مضارع مستمر) (X)
- Mr Nasser **has** a BMW. (مضارع بسيط) (✓)
- I **have been knowing** him for 6 years. (مضارع تام مستمر) (X)
- I **have known** him for 6 years. (مضارع تام بسيط) (✓)
- The tank **was containing** 45 litres of petrol. (ماضي مستمر) (X)
- The tank **contained** 45 litres of petrol. (ماضي بسيط) (✓)
- She **had been owning** a large villa. (ماضي تام مستمر) (X)
- She **had owned** a large villa. (ماضي تام بسيط) (✓)

٢ يمكن استخدام الأفعال الثابتة بمعاني غير المعاني المذكورة في الجدول السابق في الأزمنة المستمرة:

- I **am having** (=eating) lunch now. (المعنى يتناول وليس يمتلك)
- She **is having** (=enjoying) a great time. (المعنى تقضي وليس تمتلك)

## The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

Form	The Present Continuous
<b>Affirmation</b> الإيجابيات	<b>Subject + am / is / are + (inf. + ing) ...</b> - I'm <b>watching</b> a film on TV at home.
<b>Negation</b> النفى	<b>Subj. + am not / is not (isn't) / are not (aren't) + (inf. + ing) ...</b> - I <b>am not watching</b> a film on TV at the office.
<b>Yes / No Q.</b> السؤال بـ (هل)	<b>Am / Is / Are + subj. + (inf. + ing) ... ?</b> - Are you <b>watching</b> a film on TV at home ?
<b>'Wh_' Q.</b> السؤال بأداة استفهام	<b>Q.W. + am / is / are + subj. + (inf. + ing) ... ?</b> - Where are you <b>watching</b> a film?
<b>Passive</b> المبنى للمجهول	<b>Object + am / is / are + being + p.p. ...</b> - A film <b>is being watched</b> on TV at home (by me).
<b>Time Expressions</b> التمهيرات الزمنية	- now الآن - at the (this) moment في هذه اللحظة - still - at present ... حالياً - currently في الوقت الحاضر ... في المستقبل - next - in the future ... غدا tomorrow



## Usage

١ - يُستخدم المضارع المستمر في الحالات التالية:

١ وصف أو السؤال عن أحداث أو مواقف تحدث الآن (لحظة الكلام):

ex. - Omar **is taking** a shower, so he can't answer the phone.

- Are you **watching** this programme?

- What are you **doing**?

٢ وصف مواقف أو أحداث في الحاضر تختلف عما كان سائداً أو مالوفاً في الماضي:

ex. - Young people **aren't reading** newspapers these days.

- Currently, most businesses **are communicating** via emails.

٣ التعبير عن مواقف مستمرة تحدث حول المضارع وليس بالضرورة الآن وقد تستغرق مدي زمني طويل، ويمكن أن تُستخدم تعبيرات زمنية مثل:

... هذا العقد - today - tonight - these days - this month - this year - this decade

ex. - Ali **is taking** the final exams these days.

- I'm **reading** 'King Lear' today. - Are you still working in London?

٤ التعبير عن الضيق أو عدم الرضا عن أحداث يقوم بها الناس بشكل متكرر، وغالباً يتم استخدام ظروف التكرار (always constantly -) كنتالي:

... am / is / are + always / constantly / never... + (inf. + ing)

ex. - You **are always coming** to school late, Moataz.

- Samar **is constantly talking** about herself.

- They're **always complaining**.

٥ وصف الصور (على اعتبار أن الحدث في الصورة مستمر):

ex. - In the picture, everybody **is having** fun.

٦ التعبير عن الترتيبات المستقبلية (أي التعبير عن أحداث تم الترتيب لحدوثها في وقت معين في المستقبل، وفي هذه الحالة لابد من وجود تعبير زمني دال على المستقبل):

ex. - My sister **is getting married** next month.

## The Future Perfect Tense - زمن المستقبل التام

Form	Active	Passive
Affirmation الإيجابيات	Subj. + will + have + p.p. .... - He <b>will have decorated</b> the house by next August.	Obj. + will + have + been + p.p. .... - The house <b>will have been decorated</b> by next August.
Negation النفى	Subj. + won't + have + p.p. .... - He <b>won't have decorated</b> the house by six o'clock.	Obj. + won't + have been + p.p. .... - The house <b>won't have been decorated</b> by six o'clock.

Yes / No Q. (السؤال بـ (هل))	Will + subj. + have + p.p. .... ? - Will he have decorated the house by next August?	Will + obj. + have been + p.p. .... ? - Will the house have been decorated by next August?
'Wh' Q. (السؤال بإداة استفهام)	Q.W. + will + subj. + have + p.p. .... ? - When will he have decorated the house?	Q.W. + will + obj. + have been + p.p. .... ? - When will the house have been decorated?

### Uses الاستخدامات

١ التعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد تم قبل أو بحلول وقت معين في المستقبل . وعادة ما يُستخدم معه تعبيرات زمنية مستقبلية تبدأ بحرف الجر (by / before / this time / by the time) :

- My son Ahmed will have started school by next October.
- Before midnight tomorrow, Rokaya will have studied unit 16.
- This time next year, our company will have achieved great success.

٢ يمكن استخدام التعبيرات الزمنية الدالة على المستقبل بدون (by / before) بشرط استخدام :

for + period of time مدة زمنية

- In 2029, Mona will have lived in her house for ten years.
- Next Monday, I will have stayed in Aswan for a week.

٣ ويستخدم المستقبل التام أيضا للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهى أو تم قبل وقوع حدث آخر في المستقبل . وهنا يتوقف استخدام المستقبل البسيط أو المستقبل التام على المعنى :

مستقبل + مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام + After/As soon as/ Once / When / The moment

- When you leave the office, I will have sent the emails. (سيكون الإرسال قد تم قبل مغادرتك للمكتب)
- When you leave the office, I will send the emails. (بعد مغادرتك للمكتب، سأقوم بالإرسال)

مستقبل (تام غالبًا) + مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام + Before / By the time

- By the time I go home, I'll have visited two friends.

### General Exercises On Structures (Units 7 & 8)

\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- My daughter ..... her exams until next weekend.
  - will be finishing
  - won't be finished
  - will have finished
  - won't have finished
- I expect we ..... all the work by five o'clock this evening.
  - will have been done
  - will have done
  - will be done
  - will be doing
- Magdi ..... finished work by eight o'clock tonight.
  - will have
  - will have been
  - will be
  - has
- The clear sky makes me think that it ..... another sunny day.
  - will be
  - is being
  - is going to be
  - will have been

5. .... to the radio or can I turn it off?  
 a. Are you listening    b. You are listened    c. Are you listened    d. You are listening
6. Our deep freezer ..... at the moment.  
 a. is repairing    b. is being repaired    c. was repairing    d. was being repaired
7. Scientists ..... a cure علاج for most diseases by 2050.  
 a. won't discover    b. will have discovered  
 c. have discovered    d. will have been discovered
8. I think several species of plants and animals ... .. disappeared by 2150.  
 a. will be    b. will have been    c. will have    d. have
9. Mr Ashraf ..... checking our exam answers by Monday.  
 a. going to finish    b. will be finished  
 c. will have finished    d. will have been finished
10. We ..... in Cairo for five years next month.  
 a. will have been    b. will be    c. are going to be    d. are being

## 1 General Revision on Vocabulary

### Unit 9

arise(from) - arose - arisen(v)	يطلع عن - يلبث من	inhabitants(n)	سكان
come from (phr. v)	يطلع عن - يلبث من	lead to(phr. v)	يؤدي إلى - يطلع عنه
biodiversity(n)	التنوع البيولوجي	result in(phr. v)	يؤدي إلى - يطلع عنه
challenging(adj)	يتطوي على تحدي	native inhabitants(n)	السكان المحليين
consequently(conj.)	بالتالي - لذلك	native(adj)	محلي
as a result	بالتالي - لذلك	preserve(d) (v)	يصون - يحمي
conservation(n)	حماية البيئة - حفظ	scholarship(n)	منحة دراسية
conservationist(n)	محافظ على البيئة	so that(conj.)	لكي
expedition(n)	بعثة استكشافية	species(n)	نوع - الأنواع
However(conj.)	ومع ذلك - ورغم ذلك	voluntary(adj)	تطوعي
inhabit(ed)(v)	يسكن - يقطن	volunteer(ed)(v), (n)	يتطوع - متطوع
		volunteering(n)	العمل التطوعي - التطوع

### Unit 10

battle(d) (v - n)	مُحَارِب - معركة	headline(n)	عنوان رئيسي
broadcast - broadcast-	يذيع - إذاعة	interview(ed) (v)	مُحَاوِر - تَجَرِي مَقَابِلَة
broadcast(v - n)		investigator(n)	مُحَقِّق
channel(n)	قناة	journalist(n)	صحفي
correspond(ed) (n - v)	تُرَابِل	judge(d) (n - v)	قاضٍ - يَحْكُم / يَفْهَم
correspondent(n)	فُرَابِل	news channel	قناة إخبارية
creep(up)- crept(v)	يتسلل	newsreader(n)	قارئ الأخبار
deliberately(adv)	عن عمد / بشكل مقصود	nonsense(n)	لُغْو - هُزَاء (كلام فارغ)
fact checker(n)	متقصي حقائق	photographer(n)	مصور فوتوغرافي





## 2 General Revision

### Comparative Expressions

### عبارات المقارنة

**No difference** لا يوجد اختلاف

**Exactly the same as** يشبه ... تماما

وتستخدم هذه العبارة عند التعبير عن التطابق (عدم وجود اختلاف) بين طرفين:

ex. - This car is **exactly the same as** my car.

- Your bag is **exactly the same as** Aya's bag.

في حالة وجود مفعول فإنه يوضع بين (the same ... as) كالتالي:

ex. - Omar is **exactly the same age as** Ali.

- My father does **exactly the same job as** your father.

**A small difference** اختلاف بسيط

**almost as + صفة + as** يشبه ... إلى حد كبير  
**slightly + صفة مقارنة + than ...** قليلا عن / من

تستخدم (almost as ... as) أو (slightly ... than) في حالة وجود اختلاف بسيط بين طرفين:

ex. - Mariam is **almost as tall as** her father.

- My car is **almost as expensive as** your car.

- Our flat is **slightly larger than** your flat.

- This match is **slightly more exciting than** the last match.

**A big difference** اختلاف كبير

**far + صفة مقارنة + than ...** كثيرا من / عن

تستخدم (far ... than) في حالة وجود اختلاف كبير بين طرفين:

ex. - Mariam is **far taller than** her mother.

- Playing football is **far more exciting than** watching it.

### Past Habits

### عادات الماضي

#### A Used to + Inf

تستخدم (used to + inf.) بمعنى «اعتاد أن» للتعبير عن عادة كانت موجودة في الماضي ولم تعد موجودة الآن:

المصدر .... + Inf. + اعتاد أن + used to + الفاعل Subj.

- I **used to** eat a lot of sweets when I was a child. (إثبات)

- I **didn't use to** eat a lot of sweets when I was a child. (نفي)

- Did you **use to** eat a lot of sweets when you were a child? (سؤال)

- A lot of sweets **used to** be eaten when I was a child. (مبنى مجهول)

## Important Notes



١ تعبر (used to + inf.) عن عادة كانت موجودة في الماضي و هذه العادة توقفت ولم تعد تحدث في الحاضر:

- My uncle **used to be** a heavy smoker. (Now, he doesn't smoke.)

٢ تعبر (used to + inf.) أيضاً عن أشياء كانت مختلفة في الماضي عن الحاضر:

- Tawfik **used to** work in tourism. Now, he has a taxi.

٣ العادة تستمر ويتكرر حدوثها فترة طويلة ، لذلك لا يجوز استخدام تعبيرات زمنية تحصر العادة في مدي زمني قصير مثل: yesterday / last Friday / last week / this morning .... etc.

- He **used to** go to the cinema last week. (X)
- He went to the cinema **last week**. (✓)

٤ للتعبير عن أن شيء ما كان عادياً أو مألوفاً نستخدم:

Subject + was / were + used to + noun / (inf.+ing) ....

- Amira **was used to** easy life. Now, she is a wife, a mother and a teacher.
- We **were used to** working on farms.

لنلاحظ أن (be used to) يمكن أن تأتي بمعنى «يستخدم لكي» بجملة مبنية للمجهول وبليها المصدر:

- Wood **is used to** make furniture. (Not: used to making)
- Milk **is used to** make cheese and butter.

٥ للتعبير عن العودة على عمل شيء في الماضي نستخدم:

Subject + got / became / grew + used to + noun / (inf.+ing) ....

- Rokaya **got used to** (living in) her new flat.

٦ لنلاحظ الصيغة التالية:

- There **used to be** .... / There **didn't use to be** ....
- There **used to be** a cinema in our street. Now it is a big restaurant.
- There **didn't use to be** an airport in Aswan in 1900.

## B &gt; Would + inf.

لنلاحظ أوجه التشابه والاختلاف في استخدام كل من (used to + inf.) و (would + inf.):

١ نستخدم كل من (used to + inf.) أو (would + inf.) للتعبير عن العادات المتكررة في الماضي:

- When I was a little girl, I **used to** cry easily when someone shouted at me.
- = When I was a little girl, I **would** cry easily when someone shouted at me.



٢ تُستخدَم (used to + inf.) وليس (would + inf.) لوصف حالة في الماضي – أي لا يمكن استخدام (would + inf.) إذا كان الفعل الأساسي أحد الأفعال التقريرية ، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال :

- be / have = possess = own / love / like / dislike / enjoy / hate / want / wish / weigh / hear / cost / deserve يستحق / understand / feel ...

- I **used to have** a small bike when I was a child. (✓)
- I **would have** a small bike when I was a child. (X)
- When my father was 25, he **used to be** strong. (✓)
- When my father was 25, he **would be** strong. (X)

٣ تشير (used to + inf.) بشكل واضح إلى عادات الماضي، لكن (would + inf.) لا تشير بالضرورة إلى الماضي، لذلك من الأفضل أن يسبقها ظرف زمان أو تعبير يدل على الماضي :

- Sama **used to get up** early.
- When she **was a student**, Sama **would get up** early.

٤ يمكن أن تُستخدم ظروف التكرار مثل (always, usually, sometimes ...) قبل أو بعد (used):

- When I was younger, I **always used to help** my mother with the housework.
- When I was younger, I **used always to help** my mother with the housework.

٥ تُستخدم ظروف التكرار مثل (always, usually, sometimes ...) بعد (would):

- When I was younger, I **would always help** my mother with the housework.

## الماضي التام البسيط : المعلوم والمجهول Past Perfect Simple : Active & Passive

<b>Affirmation &amp; Negation</b> الإثبات والنفي	<b>Subj. + the actor + had / hadn't + p.p. ...</b> - He <b>had done</b> the shopping before returning home. - Mum <b>hadn't prepared</b> lunch by midday.
<b>Yes / No Q.</b> السؤال بـ (هل)	<b>Had + subj. + p.p. ... ?</b> - <b>Had he done</b> the shopping before returning home ?
<b>Wh-, Q.</b> السؤال بأداة استفهام	<b>Q.W. + had + subj. + p.p. .. ?</b> - What <b>had he done</b> before returning home ?
<b>Passive</b> المبنى للمجهول	<b>Obj. + the passive + had + been + p.p. .. ?</b> - I <b>had done</b> the shopping before I went home. (معلوم) - The shopping <b>had been done</b> (by me) before I went home. (مجهول) - After she <b>had cooked</b> lunch, she took a rest. (معلوم) - After lunch <b>had been cooked</b> (by her), she took a rest. (مجهول)

## Uses الاستخدامات

١ يُستخدم الماضي التام البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم قبل وقت مُعين في الماضي، ويدل على ذلك تعبيرات مثل :

تعبير زمني دل على وقت مُعين في الماضي + **by / before / this time**

- By midnight, I **had written** two articles.
- Ahmed **had arrived** home before lunchtime yesterday.

٢ يُستخدم الماضي التام البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم قبل وقوع حدث آخر في الماضي

- First, I sent 20 invitations. Then, I left the office.
- = I **had sent** 20 invitations before I **left** the office.

٣ يُستخدم الماضي التام البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم وكان له أثر على حدث آخر في الماضي (الأثر ناتج عن اكتمال الحدث الأول)

- He **had eaten** too much food, so he **didn't eat** any dessert.
- = He **didn't eat** any desert because he **had eaten** too much food.

## Time Clauses العبارات الزمنية

١ لاحظ استخدام الروابط الزمنية مع أزمنة الماضي :

Time connector الرابطة الزمنية	Time clause العبرة الزمنية	Main clause الجملة الرئيسية
By the time / في الوقت الذي / When / Before / عندما	ماضي بسيط + (حدث ثان)	ماضي تام بسيط + (حدث أول)
After / بمجرد / As soon as / بمجرد أن / the moment / بمجرد أن / Once / عندما when / في اللحظة التي	ماضي تام بسيط + (حدث أول)	ماضي بسيط + (حدث ثان)
- It was only when / فقط عندما - It wasn't until / بعد	ماضي تام + (حدث أول)	+that ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) +

- ex. - Before I **arrived** home, it **had rained** for two hours.
- After she **had worked** in the company for 15 years, she **became** the manager.
  - It **was only when** I **had taken** a rest that I **began** to write the report.

٢ لاحظ استخدام (until - till) :

ماضي تام past perfect + حتى / لغاية / until / till + ماضي بسيط (منفي غالباً) Past Simple

- ex. - I **didn't watch** TV until / till I **had done** the housework.

٣ يستخدم (inf. + ing) بعد كل من (after / before) في حال عدم وجود فاعل :

- ex. - After **having lunch**, I went back to my office.
- Before **going** back to my office, I **had had** lunch.

- Having + p.p. .... , past simple ماضي بسيط (معلوم)

ex. - Having slept for eight hours, I started to feel energetic.

- Having + been + p.p. ... + past simple. (مجهول)

ex. - Having been punished, he didn't come late again.

5 لاحظ استخدام الماضي التام مع الظروف التالية بمعنى (لم يكـد ..... حتى) :

- Subj. + had + no sooner + p.p. .... + than + past simple ماضي بسيط

- Subj. + had + hardly / scarcely / barely + p.p. .... + when / before + past simple ماضي بسيط

ex. - I had no sooner finished the report than I gave it to the secretary.

- I had scarcely finished the report when / before I gave it to the secretary.

- No sooner + had + subj. + p.p. .... + than + past simple ماضي بسيط

- Hardly / Scarcely / Barely + had + subj. + p.p. .... + when / before + past simple ماضي بسيط

ex. - No sooner had I finished the report than I gave it to the secretary.

- Hardly had I finished the report when / before I gave it to the secretary.

### General Exercises On Structures (Units 9 & 10)

\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- When he was five years old, my brother ..... watch all the children's TV programmes.  
a. used to                      b. used                      c. uses                      d. use
- Sometimes, my father ..... bring me presents without saying why.  
a. used                      b. used to                      c. would                      d. b & c
- When I was young, I used to ..... swimming every weekend.  
a. had gone                      b. gone                      c. go                      d. went
- In the past, I used to .....  
a. smoked                      b. smokes                      c. smoking                      d. smoke
- When mum was young, she ..... do the housework alone.  
a. would                      b. used to                      c. a & b                      d. were used to
- When she went back to school, she found she ..... the wrong composition the day before.  
a. wrote                      b. had written                      c. has written                      d. had been written
- As soon as I came home, my brother ..... my car.  
a. was borrowing                      b. has borrowed                      c. had borrowed                      d. borrowed
- After they ..... the match, the players celebrated with the fans.  
a. would win                      b. win                      c. winning                      d. had won
- By the time I arrived at school, the bell .....  
a. didn't ring                      b. had been rung                      c. had already rung                      d. b & c
- They couldn't go swimming because their swimsuits ..... at home.  
a. forget                      b. have forgotten                      c. had forgotten                      d. had been forgotten



# 1 General Revision On Vocabulary Units 11 & 12

## Unit 11

action(n)	الحركة - القتال - القيام بشئ	music (n)	موسيقى
action films(n)	أفلام الحركة (الصراع)	musical(adj)	موسيقى (متعلق بالموسيقى)
animation(n)	الرسوم المتحركة - تحريك - الحيوية	musical(n)	فيلم غنائي أو استعراضي
cage(n)	قفص	musician(n)	عازف
comedy(n)	فيلم كوميدى - كوميدى / الفكاهة	powerful(adj)	قوي - مؤثر
constantly(adv)	باستمرار - بانتظام - دائماً	romance(n)	الرومانسية - قصة رومانسية
constant(adj)	مستمر - منظم	romantic(adj)	رومانسى - حالم - خيالي
constancy(n)	اللوات - الولاء / الإخلاص	sci-fi = science fiction(n)	الخيال العلمي
harness(ed) (v)	يستخدم - يُسخر	starve(d) (v)	يعاني من الجوع - يموت جوعاً
hilarious(adj)	فضحك جداً - هزل	surprising(adj)	مدهش
historical (adj)	تاريخي	surprisingly(adv)	بشكل مذهل / مدهش
historical films(n)	أفلام تاريخية	talent(n)	موهبة
horror(n)	رعب	talented(adj)	موهوب
horror films(n)	أفلام الرعب	trust(ed) (v)	يثق بـ
hostile(adj)	عدواني		
invade(d) (v)	يغزو		

## Unit 12

accessories(n)	ملحقات إضافية	range(n)	مجال - سلسلة
achievable(adj)	ممكّن إنجازه	recipe(n)	وصفة طهي
come across(phr. v)	يصادف	relevant(adj)	ملائم
crawl(ed) (v)	يرحف - يحرّو	relevant to(adj)	خاص بـ / متصل بـ / متعلق بـ
entrepreneur(n)	رالد أعمال - صاحب مشروع	resign(ed) (v)	يستقيل
honeybee(n)	نحلة العسل	set a goal	يحدد هدفاً
law(n)	القانون	specific(adj)	تفصيلي / دقيق - محدد
liar(n)	شخص كذاب	stretcher(n)	محفة - نقالة
measurable(adj)	قابل للقياس - ملحوظ	tear(up) - tore - torn(v)	يمزق
objective(n)	هدف	time-bound(adj)	موفوت - له خطة زمنية
outfit(n)	طقم (ملابس)	treason(n)	الخيانة العظمى
profit(ed) (n - v)	فائدة - يستفيد	trick(ed) (v-n)	يخدع - خدعة

## General Exercises On Vocabulary (Unit 11 & 12)

\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A liar is a/an ..... person.

a. trustful

b. mistrustful

c. particular

d. specific

2. We say that someone ..... when he/she gives up his job.

a. tears up

b. tricks

c. designs

d. resigns

3. The ..... of the final match made all the fans angry.  
a. law                      b. trick                      c. treason                      d. loss
4. I bought a green ..... for my little sister.  
a. stretcher                      b. honeybee                      c. corn cob                      d. sleepsuit
5. "I am a bit tired today." The adverb 'a bit' here is the synonym of .....  
a. a lot                      b. far                      c. a & b                      d. a little
6. "He has romantic ideas about a perfect society." The adjective 'romantic' in this context is the antonym of .....  
a. amorous                      b. idealistic                      c. intimate                      d. realistic
7. The ..... of this song isn't as good as the original one.  
a. science fiction                      b. acting                      c. mission                      d. remake
8. All my father's office ..... are invited to my sister's wedding.  
a. cartoons                      b. mates                      c. talents                      d. cages
9. Keeping birds in ..... is something cruel. Birds have the right to their freedom.  
a. cartoons                      b. mates                      c. talents                      d. cages
10. You should be honest, especially with people who ..... you.  
a. trust                      b. invade                      c. survive                      d. lack

## 2 General Revision On Structures Unit 1 & 2

### Tag Question

السؤال المذيّل

#### Basics (النقاط الأساسية)

١ السؤال المذيّل هو سؤال قصير يوضع في نهاية الجملة الخبرية، ومعناه دائما :  
- «اليس كذلك؟» أو «هل أنا على صواب؟»

جملة خبرية	+	فعل مساعد / ناقص	+	ضمير فاعل
ex. - Fish is my favourite food, - The boys didn't go to bed,		isn't did		it ? they ?

٢ الجملة الملبّنة يتبعها سؤال مُذَيّل منفي :

- ex. - Omar **will arrive** at 12 o'clock, **won't he** ?  
- Sama **can speak** two languages, **can't she** ?

٣ الجملة المنفية يتبعها سؤال مُذَيّل مثبت :

- ex. - Omar **won't arrive** at 11 o'clock, **will he** ?  
- Sama **can't speak** three languages, **can she** ?

٤ في السؤال المُذَيّل نستخدم دائما ضمير فاعل (وليس الفاعل) :

- ex. - Ahmed isn't careful, is **Ahmed** ? (X)  
- Ahmed isn't careful, is **he** ? (✓)

5 يبقى ضمير الفاعل (I – we) كما هما في السؤال المُذيل ولا يتحولان إلي (you) :

- ex. - I took the medicine, didn't I? (x) - I took the medicine, didn't I? (✓)  
- We are late, aren't you? (x) - We are late, aren't we? (✓)

6 في السؤال المُذيل يكون النفي بالصيغة المختصرة للفعل المساعد أو الناقص :

- ex. - He works in a secondary school, does not he? (x)  
- He works in a secondary school, doesn't he? (✓)



## Adverbs

## الظرف - الحال

<b>1. Manner</b> ظروف الكيفية	- تستخدم ظروف الكيفية لوصف كيفية حدوث الفعل. غالباً يوضع ظرف الكيفية في نهاية الجملة أو بعد الفعل أو قبل الصفة : - I dressed quickly. - She is beautifully dressed.
<b>2. Place</b> ظروف المكان	- غالباً يأتي ظرف المكان في نهاية الجملة وقد يأتي في بدايتها : here – there – inside – outside – upstairs – downstairs ... - Can you sit over there. - Outside, there was a small pond.
<b>3. Time</b> ظروف الزمان	- غالباً يأتي ظرف الزمان في نهاية الجملة وقد يأتي في بدايتها للتركيز على معنى الظرف : now – then – yesterday – tomorrow – today ... - I'm going to the cinema tomorrow. - Today, we're seeing our cousins.
<b>4. Frequency</b> ظروف التكرار	- غالباً يأتي ظرف التكرار قبل الفعل أو بعد تصريفات (be) والأفعال المساعدة : always – often – usually – sometimes – rarely – scarcely – seldom – occasionally – never ... - They often have homework. - My dad usually goes to the cinema on Saturday. - She never eats meat. - He is rarely later for school.

## A

## كيفية تكوّن الظروف الحال - How information

1 ظرف الكيفية : وهو يصف كيفية حدوث الفعل و يجيب عن السؤال بـ (How) :

- A: How does Aya speak? B: She speaks clearly.  
- A: How do you drive a car? B: I drive carefully.

- يأتي ظرف الكيفية بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول :

- She walks slowly. - The teacher called our names loudly.

- يتكون ظرف الكيفية غالباً بإضافة (y / ly / ily) إلى الصفة :

(l) بصفة عامة يتم تكوين ظرف الكيفية بإضافة (ly) إلى الصفة

- slow - slowly • quick - quickly • safe - safely • strong - strongly



- (ب) وتُضاف (ly) حتي وان كانت الصفة منتهية بحرف (l)
- careful - carefully
  - beautiful - beautifully
  - useful - usefully
  - cheerful - cheerfully
- (ج) الصفة المنتهية بـ (le) يتم حذف حرف (e) وإضافة (y)
- possible - possibly
  - probable - probably
  - terrible - terribly
  - sensible - sensibly
- (د) الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن تتحول إلي (ily)
- easy - easily
  - happy - happily
  - lazy - lazily
  - crazy - crazily
- (هـ) غالباً الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) تتحول إلي ظرف باستخدام : (in a ..... way manner)
- friendly - in a friendly way
  - cowardly - in a cowardly manner
- (9) هناك ظروف غير منتظمة مثل:
- good - well
  - fast - fast
  - hard - hard
  - late - late
  - early - early
- 2 ظرف الدرجة : وهو يأتي قبل الصفة و يحدد درجة الصفة :
- Abdullah is very tall.
  - It's extremely cold.
  - She is a bit fat.

## B Using adverbs of degree with adjectives

No.	Type النوع	Notes ملاحظات
1	Ordinary adjectives الصفات العادية	<p>1. الصفات العادية هي صفات ذات معنى عادي مثل :</p> <p>- hot, tired, cold, angry, old, dirty .....</p> <p>2. تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات العادية:</p> <p>حقاً really - جداً very - إلي حد ما rather/quite - قليلاً a bit/little</p> <p>للغاية extremely</p> <p>- The water is very hot.</p> <p>- I'm extremely tired.</p> <p>3. يمكن أن تُستخدم الصفات العادية في المقارنة والتفضيل:</p> <p>- Ahmed is older than Sama.</p> <p>- Omar is the tallest student at school.</p>
2	Extreme adjectives الصفات القوية	<p>1. هي صفات ذات معنى قوي مثل :</p> <p>عتيق/قديم جداً ancient - ساخط furious - ضخم gigantic</p> <p>مُضحك جداً hilarious - رائع brilliant</p> <p>2. تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات القوية:</p> <p>تماماً completely - كئيباً utterly/entirely - بشكل مُطلق absolutely</p> <p>حقاً really - بشدة awfully - كلياً / تماماً totally</p> <p>- This engine is absolutely excellent.</p> <p>- The temple is utterly ancient.</p> <p>3. في الغالب لا تُستخدم الصفات القوية في المقارنة والتفضيل:</p> <p>- Alexandria is more ancient than Cairo. (X)</p> <p>- This is the most boiling water. (X)</p>

3

## Absolute adjectives

الصفات المطلقة

١. هي صفات ذات معني مُطلق ، بمعنى أنها موجودة أو غير موجودة مثل :

مستحيل impossible - نهائي final - أساسي main - ميت dead

٢. لا تُستخدم أي ظروف درجة قبل الصفات المطلقة:

- He is ~~extremely~~ dead. (X) - That is ~~very~~ impossible. (X)

٣. لا يمكن أن تُستخدم الصفات المطلقة في المقارنة والتفضيل :

- My grandfather is ~~deader than~~ my grandmother. (X)- My grandfather is the ~~deadest~~ in the family. (X)

## Relative Clauses

عبارات الوصل

who / which / whom / that

١. تشير (who / that) إلى فاعل عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فعل وفي هذه الحالة لا يمكن حذفهم:

- I met my pen friend who / that lives in London.

- Teachers are people who / that work at schools.

٢. تشير (who / whom / that) إلى مفعول عاقل في حالة المبني للمعلوم ويأتي بعدهم فاعل ويمكن حذفهم:

- The man who / whom / that you met with me yesterday is my uncle.

= The man you met with me yesterday is my uncle.

٣. تشير (which / that) إلى فاعل غير عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فعل وفي هذه الحالة لا يمكن حذفهم:

- The dog which / that chased me belongs to my neighbours.

٤. تشير (which / that) إلى مفعول غير عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فاعل ويمكن حذفهما:

- The car which / that I bought has a problem with the engine.

- The car I bought has a problem with the engine.

٥. لا تُستخدم that كضمير وصل في الجمل الاعتراضية - أي في بداية عبارة موصولة بين ( ... ) :

- Ismail Yassen, who is still a famous actor, died in the 1970s. (Not: that is...)

- Aswan, which is in the south of Egypt, is very hot. (Not: that is....)

٦. بالنسبة لحروف الجر مع (who / whom / that / which) :

أ. لا تأتي حروف الجر قبل كل من (who / that) بل تأتي بعدهما في نهاية عبارة الوصل:

- This is my friend who I play tennis with. (Not: with who....)

- This is the motorbike that I go to school on. (Not: on that....)

ب. يمكن أن تأتي حروف الجر قبل أو بعد كل من (whom / which) :

- This is my friend whom I play tennis with.

= This is my friend with whom I play tennis.

- This is the motorbike which I go to school on.

= - This is the motorbike on which I go to school.

## where المكان الذي

١ تعود (where) على المكان ولا يأتي بعدها فعل:

- This is the room where I sleep.
- She went to Cairo University where she studied Arabic literature.

٢ لاحظ أن:

- where = (حرف جر مناسب للمكان + which) / (which + ... (حرف جر مناسب للمكان
- This is the room in which I sleep.
- This is the room which I sleep in.

٣ يمكن أن تستخدم (which) مع المكان بدون حروف جر عندما يكون المكان مفعول لجمله الوصل

- لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين:

- This is the house where we live. (المنزل مكان نعيش فيه)
- This is the house which we built. (المنزل مفعول. فهو الشيء الذي تم بنائه)

٤ لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على المكان قبل أو بعد (where) :

- I went to the room in which I sleep. (Not: the room in where ....)
- I went to the room which I sleep in. (Not: the room where .... in)

## when الزمان

١ تشير إلى الوقت أو الزمن ولا يأتي بعدها فعل:

- 2012 is the year when Rodayna was born.
- Friday is the day when we don't go to school.
- Two o'clock is the time when I return home from school.

(حرف جر مناسب للتعبير الزمني + which) / (which + ... (حرف جر مناسب للتعبير الزمني

- 2012 is the year in which Rodayna was born.
- = - 2012 is the year which Rodayna was born in.
- Friday is the day on which we don't go to school.
- = - Friday is the day which we don't go to school on.
- Two o'clock is the time at which I get up.
- = - Two o'clock is the time which I get up at.

٢ يمكن أن تستخدم (which, that) مع الوقت عندما يكون الوقت مفعول لجمله الوصل

- لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين:

- August is the month when we go to Alexandria.
- = We go to Alexandria in August.
- August is the month which we spend in Alexandria.
- = We spend August in Alexandria.

٣ لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على التعبير الزمني قبل أو بعد (when) :

- Friday is the day on which my son was born. (Not: the day on when ....)
- Friday is the day when my son was born on. (Not: the day when .... on)



## whose = (Nouns + 's) / my - his - her - its - our - your - their

تدل على الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم (أي لا يأتي بعدها فعل):

- I saw an old man whose son was kidnapped.
- She lives in a house whose roof is high.

- انتبه عند استخدام (whose) لبعض الكلمات التي تُستخدم كفعل واسم ملال :

- يستورد / واردات imports - يدفع / راتب pay - يزور / زيارة visit - يقيم / إقامة stay
- يكره / الأشياء غير المحببة dislikes - يحب / الأشياء المحببة likes - يُصدر / صادرات exports
- cause ... etc. تصميم design - يسبب / سبب cause
- He is an architect whose designs are fantastic.
- China is a country whose exports are more than its imports.

للحظ ان

- who / which / that + have / has = whose + noun اسم = with + (صفة) + noun اسم
- The boy who has blue eyes is Spanish.
- = The boy whose eyes are blue is Spanish.
- = The boy with blue eyes is Spanish.

## General Exercise

\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... , he refused to join the national team.
 

a. Surprising	b. Surprisingly	c. Surprise	d. Surprises
---------------	-----------------	-------------	--------------
2. You have enough time, ..... you ?
 

a. do	b. don't	c. have not	d. have
-------	----------	-------------	---------
3. She works ..... to achieve her goals.
 

a. hardly	b. more hard	c. hard	d. more hardly
-----------	--------------	---------	----------------
4. After the long walk, I felt ..... tired.
 

a. very	b. absolutely	c. completely	d. totally
---------	---------------	---------------	------------
5. She's always late for work, ..... she ?
 

a. is	b. isn't	c. doesn't	d. hasn't
-------	----------	------------	-----------
6. She's enough free time, ..... she ?
 

a. hasn't	b. isn't	c. doesn't	d. b & c
-----------	----------	------------	----------
7. A lion eats meat, ..... it ?
 

a. do	b. does	c. don't	d. doesn't
-------	---------	----------	------------
8. A lion doesn't eat grass, ..... it ?
 

a. do	b. does	c. don't	d. doesn't
-------	---------	----------	------------
9. Leen is a clever doctor, ..... ?
 

a. is Leen	b. isn't Leen	c. is she	d. isn't she
------------	---------------	-----------	--------------
10. Taha hasn't got any sisters, ..... ?
 

a. has Taha	b. hasn't Taha	c. has he	d. hasn't he
-------------	----------------	-----------	--------------

## 1

## Incident 1

- 1 What type/sort/kind of play is King Lear?  
- It is a tragic play.  
١ ما نوع مسرحية «الملك لير»؟  
- إنها مسرحية مأساوية.
- 2 What are the most important themes of King Lear?  
- Power and parent-child relationship.  
٢ ما هي أهم موضوعات مسرحية «الملك لير»؟  
- السلطة بالإضافة إلى العلاقة بين الوالدين والأبناء.
- 3 What is the setting of King Lear?  
- Ancient Britain in the pre-Christian age.  
٣ ما المكان والزمان لمسرحية «الملك لير»؟  
- بريطانيا القديمة في عصر ما قبل الميلاد.
- 4 How was Gloucester's life destroyed?  
- His son Edmund plotted against him.  
٤ كيف دُفرت حياة «غلوستر»؟  
- لقد تآمر عليه ابنه «إدموند».
- 5 What kind of friends and country men did King Lear have?  
- Except for Gloucester, Kent and Albany, they were all evil people.  
٥ ما هو نوع الأصدقاء ورجال الدولة المحيطين بالملك «لير»؟  
- باستثناء «غلوستر» و«كينت» و«ألباني»، كانوا جميعاً أشراراً.
- 6 If you were King Lear, would you divide your Kingdom? Why?  
- No, I wouldn't. The Kingdom should have remained united.  
٦ لو كنت الملك لير، هل ستقسم مملكتك؟ لماذا؟  
- لا، لن أفعل. كان ينبغي للمملكة أن تظل موحدة.
- 7 King Lear brought up his daughters well. Say if you agree or not and why?  
- No, I don't agree. Except for Cordelia, his daughters were evil.  
٧ لقد أحسن الملك «لير» تربية بناته. قل إذا كنت تتفق أم لا ولماذا؟  
- لا، أنا لا أتفق. باستثناء «كورديليا»، كانت بناته شريرات.
- 8 What should Albany have done?  
- He should have defended the King from the beginning.  
٨ ماذا كان ينبغي على «ألباني» أن يفعل؟  
- كان عليه أن يدافع عن الملك منذ البداية.
- 9 To what extent was Gloucester loyal to the King?  
- He was so loyal that he paid with his life.  
٩ إلى أي مدى كان «غلوستر» مخلصاً للملك؟  
- لقد كان مخلصاً جداً لدرجة أنه دفع حياته ثمناً لذلك.
- 10 Cordelia shouldn't have risked her life to defend her father who was cruel to her.  
Comment.  
١٠ لم يكن على «كورديليا» أن تخاطر بحياتها للدفاع عن والدها الذي كان قاسياً معها. اكتب تعليقاً على هذا.  
- That was not the right thing to do. Sons and daughters should help their parents.  
- لم يكن هذا هو الشيء الصحيح الذي ينبغي عمله. يجب على البنات والبنات مساعدة والديهم.

## 2

## Character

- 11 What first impressions do the audience/readers have of King Lear as a person and as a king?  
 ما هي الانطباعات الأولى التي تتكون لدى الجمهور/القرءاء عن الملك «لير» كشخص وكملك؟  
 - He was kind and loving but he was not wise. - كان طيباً ومحباً لكنه لم يكن حكيماً.
- 12 What can we infer about King Lear's character from his actions in the play?  
 ماذا يمكن أن نستنتج عن شخصية الملك «لير» من تصرفاته في المسرحية؟  
 - He lacked wisdom and judged people by what they said. - كان يفتقر إلى الحكمة ويحكم على الناس بما يقولون.
- 13 Who do you think are the best characters in King Lear? Why?  
 من برأيك أفضل الشخصيات في مسرحية الملك «لير»؟ لماذا؟  
 - I think Cordelia and Edgar were the best characters because they were loyal. - اعتقد أن «كورديليا» و «إدغار» كانا أفضل الشخصيات لأنهما كانا مخلصين.
- 14 Who do you think are the worst characters in King Lear? Why?  
 من برأيك أسوأ الشخصيات في مسرحية «الملك لير»؟ لماذا؟  
 - I think Regan, Goneril and Edmund were the worst characters because they were selfish and evil. - اعتقد أن «ريجان» و «جونيريل» و «إدموند» كانوا أسوأ الشخصيات لأنهم كانوا أنانيين وأشرار.
- 15 Do you think King Lear was an efficient King? Why?  
 هل تعتقد أن الملك «لير» كان ملكاً كفواً؟ لماذا؟  
 - No. He was not wise. - لا، لم يكن حكيماً.
- 16 Do you think King Lear was responsible for his tragic end? Why?  
 هل تعتقد أن الملك «لير» هو المسؤول عن نهايته المأساوية؟ لماذا؟  
 - Yes. He wasn't wise enough to know who really loved him. - نعم. لم يكن حكيماً بما فيه الكفاية ليعرف من يحبه حقاً.
- 17 Do you think Cordelia deserved her sad end? Why?  
 هل تعتقد أن «كورديليا» تستحق نهايتها الحزينة؟ لماذا؟  
 - No. She was loyal to her father. She was killed while trying to help him. - لا، لقد كانت وفية لوالدها. لقد قتلت أثناء محاولتها مساعدته.
- 18 What kind of daughters were Goneril and Regan?  
 أي نوع من البنات كانت كل من «جونيريل» و «ريجان»؟  
 - They were evil daughters. They tricked their father and destroyed his life. - لقد كانتا ابنتين شريرتين. لقد خدعتا والدهما ودمرتا حياته.
- 19 What kind of sons was Edgar?  
 أي نوع من الأبناء كان «إدغار»؟  
 - He was loyal to his father. - كان مخلصاً لوالده.
- 20 What kind of sons was Edmund?  
 أي نوع من الأبناء كان «إدموند»؟  
 - He was an evil son who plotted against his father. - كان ابناً شريعراً تآمر على أبيه.

## 3

## Moral

- 21 What is the moral of King Lear? What lesson do we learn from King Lear?  
 ما هو المغزى من مسرحية «الملك لير»؟ ما الدرس الذي تعلمناه من مسرحية «الملك لير»؟  
 - A person's deeds speak louder than their speech. - أعمال الإنسان أبغ من كلامه.



## Practice Exercises 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I am going to ..... my brother up from the airport when he arrives.  
a. pick                      b. stand                      c. leave                      d. sit
2. I love this sports club because all my favourite sports ..... are here.  
a. difficulties              b. obstacles                  c. facilities                  d. drawbacks
3. When you travel abroad, you might ..... before you get used to the new style of life.  
a. hide                      b. hike                          c. struggle                  d. trouble
4. I'm sorry I can't go to your party. I ..... to the dentist this afternoon.  
a. am going                  b. go                              c. went                          d. going
5. A technician ..... the air conditioner before we move into the new house.  
a. has checked              b. will have checked      c. had checked              d. was checking
6. By this time next week, I ..... all my exams.  
a. am finishing              b. finished                      c. have finished              d. will have finished
7. The police were on the ..... of the car accident in minutes.  
a. vision                      b. sight                          c. scene                          d. view
8. Ali ..... to loud music; it's so annoying.  
a. is always listening      b. always listened          c. will have listened      d. is never listening
9. The Cairo Metro network is now a lot bigger, and the ..... work is in progress.  
a. intention                  b. expansion                  c. suggestion                  d. destruction
10. This man is a ..... ; he betrayed his friends.  
a. reliable                      b. loyal                          c. traitor                          d. believer
11. Which test ..... by next week ?  
a. will you have had      b. had you had                  c. will you have              d. you are going to have
12. In the play I watched yesterday, the hero was ..... for power; he tried to replace the king.  
a. angry                      b. hostile                          c. hungry                          d. lazy
13. By the end of next century, scientists ..... a vaccine for cancer. Who knows ?  
a. will have discovered      b. might have discovered  
c. will discover                  d. might discover
14. High-tech systems were used to build this 21<sup>st</sup> century public ..... system. This helps people to travel easier than before.  
a. opinion                      b. amusement                  c. transport                  d. transplant
15. I think the workers ..... that project before the end of next month; the task is really difficult.  
a. won't finish                  b. haven't finished          c. will have finished          d. won't have finished

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We need to do our best to ..... the variety of species on our planet.  
a. preserve      b. cure      c. heal      d. remain
2. I am not as lucky as my cousin who got a ..... to study in the United States.  
a. money      b. present      c. scholarship      d. cash
3. I have an artistic eye and would like to be a ..... when I'm older.  
a. newsreader      b. volunteer      c. nurse      d. photographer
4. A lot of benefits can ..... from voluntary work for people of any age.  
a. raise      b. arise      c. rise      d. arouse
5. I wish I ..... more for this test; I can't answer a lot of questions.  
a. study      b. had studied      c. have studied      d. would study
6. I think pollution in large cities is ..... worse than it used to be.  
a. exactly      b. almost      c. far      d. as
7. There's only a small difference. This phone is ..... bigger than that one.  
a. slightly      b. far      c. as      d. more
8. Ashraf was surprised to discover that he ..... to a higher position in the company.  
a. has been promoted      b. was promoting  
c. had been promoted      d. had promoted
9. When I went to the mechanic's, I was pleased to find that my car ..... well.  
a. had been repaired      b. had repaired  
c. was repairing      d. has been repaired
10. My uncle is a/an ..... . He collects and tells the news for newspapers, radio or TV.  
a. newsreader      b. photographer      c. interviewer      d. reporter
11. I finally finished reading the novel you ..... me.  
a. were lending      b. have lent      c. had been lent      d. had lent
12. It is important to know the ..... of each piece of news and to make sure it is true.  
a. end      b. source      c. result      d. reason
13. Travelling by plane is ..... than travelling by train.  
a. the most comfortable      b. comfortable  
c. much more comfortable      d. much comfortable
14. It is a/an ..... task to participate in keeping the environment clean.  
a. charging      b. simple      c. challenging      d. obvious
15. There are a lot of ..... of wild animals in African forests.  
a. spares      b. species      c. spices      d. sparks
16. My father ..... to go to work by car, but now he does.  
a. didn't use      b. used      c. isn't used      d. uses

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I am keen on high-tech gadgets and the future. I love watching ..... films.  
a. action                      b. horror                      c. science fiction                      d. historical
2. Don't worry, your goal is ..... ; you can realize your ambition.  
a. removable                      b. curable                      c. achievable                      d. unbelievable
3. There are some good comedies on at the moment. The last one we watched was .....  
a. hilariously                      b. cheerful                      c. cheerfully                      d. hilarious
4. Being rich and famous by the age of 18 is not a very ..... goal for everyone.  
a. motivated                      b. time-bound                      c. set                      d. achievable
5. Look over there ! That is the girl ..... mother is a company manager.  
a. who                      b. whose                      c. where                      d. when
6. My sister can hardly swim, ..... ?  
a. can't she                      b. doesn't she                      c. can she                      d. does she
7. The market by the sea is the place ..... you can buy really fresh fish.  
a. where                      b. when                      c. which                      d. that
8. That horror film was ..... scary; I will never let you choose a film to watch again!  
a. not                      b. such                      c. more                      d. quite
9. Before travelling to Italy, Salma ..... on a quick visit to Spain.  
a. had been                      b. is                      c. has been                      d. will be
10. My brother is a/an ..... in a local newspaper. He likes his work very much.  
a. interviewer                      b. buyer                      c. journalist                      d. reader
11. Young people need encouragement in order to succeed in life. "Encouragement" is a synonym for .....  
a. settlement                      b. reinforcement                      c. replacement                      d. amusement
12. I didn't know what ..... to Amani, so I didn't contact her.  
a. had happened                      b. had been happened                      c. has happened                      d. has been happened
13. My uncle had new visions of ruling ..... the company when he was promoted.  
a. in                      b. out                      c. for                      d. over
14. He no longer smokes as he .....  
a. used                      b. used to                      c. uses                      d. is used to
15. .... is the variety of plant and animal life in the world or a particular habitat.  
a. Biology                      b. Biodiversity                      c. Diversity                      d. Biochemistry
16. I ..... my report by this time next week.  
a. will finish                      b. had finished                      c. have finished                      d. will have finished



## 2 Writing Skill

اهم المقالات ورسائل البريد الإلكتروني التي وردت في المسح

### A review of a novel you have read

**Title:** A Review of "To Kill a Mockingbird"

*To Kill a Mockingbird*, written by Harper Lee, is a thought-provoking novel set in the 1930s during the Great Depression. The story follows Scout Finch, a young girl, who narrates the events that unfold in her small Alabama town. The novel explores themes of racial injustice, morality, and the loss of innocence, making it an immensely powerful and important literary work.

One of the impressive aspects of "To Kill a Mockingbird" is how it tackles sensitive topics such as racism and inequality. Through the noble character of Atticus Finch, Scout's father, the author sheds light on the harsh reality of racial discrimination and the courage needed to combat it. The novel illuminates the injustice faced by African Americans, as Atticus defends a falsely accused black man in a rape trial. It raises questions about the fairness and integrity of the legal system, leading readers to reflect on their own society. Lee's portrayal of Scout as an innocent observer adds to the poignancy of the novel, as she witnesses first-hand the cruelty and prejudice prevailing in her community.

Furthermore, "To Kill a Mockingbird" brilliantly captures the loss of innocence experienced by its young protagonists. Scout and her brother Jem encounter various instances of bigotry and hatred, challenging their naïve perspective of the world. As the story progresses, they yearn for justice and fairness, only to be confronted with the harsh reality that these ideals are often elusive. This exploration of the loss of innocence serves as a powerful metaphor for the loss of childhood innocence that everyone faces. This leads to prompting readers to reflect on their own journeys from innocence to experience.

In conclusion, "To Kill a Mockingbird" is an influential novel that delves into important societal issues with remarkable depth. Harper Lee's skilful storytelling and nuanced characters may resonate with readers of all ages, as it raises questions about the human capacity for empathy, justice, and integrity. Through its exploration of racial inequality and of racial inequality and the loss of innocence, the novel leaves a lasting impact and serves as a poignant reminder of the need for social change.

### 2 The pros and cons of working abroad

Working abroad can offer numerous advantages as well as some drawbacks. One major advantage of working overseas is the opportunity to experience different cultures and broaden one's horizons. By working in a foreign country, individuals can gain a deeper understanding of different traditions, customs, and languages, which can enhance their personal growth and foster an appreciation for diversity. Additionally, working abroad can provide unique professional opportunities, such as gaining international work experience or accessing industries that are thriving in specific regions. Moreover, working overseas can boost an individual's resume and make them stand out in a competitive job market.

However, there are also some disadvantages that come with working abroad. Firstly, being away from family and friends can lead to feelings of isolation and homesickness. Establishing new social connections and adapting to a different environment can be challenging, especially for someone who is not accustomed to being far from home. Additionally, language barriers and cultural differences can create communication difficulties, which may

affect the ability to collaborate effectively with colleagues or clients. Finally, there may be legal and bureaucratic challenges when it comes to obtaining work visas or dealing with unfamiliar labour laws, which can add complexities to the experience of working abroad.

In conclusion, working abroad can be both exciting and challenging. While it allows individuals to broaden their horizons, gain valuable experience, and enhance their resumes, it also comes with the risk of feeling isolated, struggling with cultural differences, and facing legal obstacles. Ultimately, the decision to work abroad should be carefully considered, weighing the pros and cons, and taking into account one's personal goals and circumstances.

### Studying abroad

Studying abroad is an exciting opportunity for high school students to explore new cultures, gain independence, and broaden their horizons. By attending school in a foreign country, students can immerse themselves in different language and experience a unique way of life. This helps to enhance their understanding of global perspectives and fosters a sense of appreciation for diversity. Moreover, studying abroad allows students to develop important skills such as adaptability, problem-solving, and inter-cultural communication, which are highly valued in our increasingly interconnected world.

In addition to the educational benefits, studying abroad also offers personal growth and self-discovery. Leaving the comforts of home and living in a foreign environment encourages high school students to step outside of their comfort zones and embrace new challenges. It enables them to become more self-reliant, as they learn to navigate unknown territories and make independent decisions. Furthermore, studying abroad provides a platform for students to make lifelong friendships with people from different backgrounds. This not only broadens their social networks but also fosters a deeper understanding and

appreciation for different cultures, ultimately shaping them into more well-rounded individuals. Overall, studying abroad offers a myriad of opportunities for high school students to expand their knowledge, gain valuable life skills, and develop a global perspective.

### Cairo metro network and its advantages

The Cairo metro network is an extensive transportation system that serves the bustling city of Cairo, Egypt. It is a rapid transit system that consists of three lines, covering a total length of over 87 kilometers. One of the main advantages of the Cairo metro is its ability to alleviate traffic congestion. Cairo is known for its heavy traffic, making it difficult and time-consuming for people to get around. The metro provides a faster and more efficient mode of transportation, reducing the number of private vehicles on the roads and ultimately reducing traffic congestion. This not only saves time for commuters but also helps in reducing pollution and improving air quality.

Another advantage of the Cairo metro network is its affordability. As a high school student, financial constraints can often limit our ability to explore and enjoy the city. However, the metro offers an affordable means of transportation, with ticket prices being much lower compared to other modes of transport. This makes it accessible for students, allowing them to travel around the city, visit historical sites, and attend various cultural events. Moreover, the metro network is also designed to be user-friendly, with clear signage and announcements in both Arabic and English, making it easy for high school students navigate and feel comfortable using the system. Overall, the Cairo metro network is an integral part of the city's infrastructure, providing an efficient, affordable, and accessible transportation option for high school students and residents alike.



## 5 Your goals for the future

**From** : kamal@gmail.com

**To** : kareem@gmail.com

**Subject** : My goals for the future

My goals for the future revolve around my personal and professional aspirations. On a personal level, I aim to maintain a healthy lifestyle by exercising regularly and eating well. I hope to prioritize my mental health by practicing mindfulness and self-care techniques. Additionally, I want to cultivate strong relationships with my family and friends, as they form the foundation of my support system. In terms of my career, I aspire to pursue a higher education degree in a field that aligns with my passions and interests. Through this, I hope to obtain the knowledge and skills necessary to make a positive impact in my chosen profession. Furthermore, I wish to continuously learn and grow throughout my career, seeking opportunities for professional development and mentorship.

In order to achieve these goals, I recognize the importance of hard work, dedication, and resilience. I plan to set short-term and long-term objectives to stay on track and measure my progress. Moreover, I understand that setbacks and challenges may arise along the way, but I am committed to overcoming them through perseverance and adaptability. To prepare myself for the future, I am actively seeking opportunities to gain experience and build a strong foundation in my areas of interest. By setting clear goals and remaining focused, I am confident that I can achieve success in both my personal and professional endeavours.

## 6 What makes a successful person

**From** : hady@gmail.com

**To** : ahmed@gmail.com

**Subject** : What makes a successful person

A successful person is someone who possesses a unique blend of qualities that enable them to achieve their goals and lead a fulfilling life. One crucial aspect of success is intelligence. A smart individual understands complex concepts quickly and can apply their knowledge effectively to solve problems. Intelligence allows a person to think critically, process information efficiently, and make informed decisions. Moreover, it helps them adapt to new situations and find innovative ways to overcome challenges. However, intelligence alone is not enough to guarantee success. Emotional intelligence, or the ability to identify and manage one's emotions and understand others', is equally important. This quality enables individuals to build strong relationships, collaborate effectively with others and navigate difficult situations with empathy and resilience.

Comprehension is another key trait of successful individuals. A person's comprehension skills determine their ability to understand and grasp information from various sources, such as books, lectures, or conversations. It involves not only understanding literal meaning of words but also interpreting and analyzing them in a broader context. A student with good comprehension skills can read a challenging text, extract essential information, and draw connections between different ideas. Additionally, comprehension helps individuals think critically and make logical arguments. When one comprehends a topic thoroughly, they can articulate their thoughts clearly and persuasively, which greatly contributes to their success in academic and professional settings.



## 1 Cairo Governorate

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The "Martian" is a brilliant film ..... from the bestselling book of the same name.  
a. adopted                      b. addicted                      c. adapted                      d. admitted
2. .... is the quality of trying to do something even when it is difficult.  
a. Communication              b. Determination              c. Participation              d. Action
3. Our cultural heritage needs permanent .....  
a. conservation                  b. conversation                  c. damage                      d. devastation
4. The synonym of "necropolis" is .....  
a. chemistry                      b. pastry                          c. cemetery                      d. symmetry
5. Scientists could ..... the sun and the wind to produce energy.  
a. harness                          b. grass                              c. make                              d. get
6. I sometimes watch ..... films to gain experience and culture.  
a. documents                      b. fundamental                  c. documentary                  d. dictionary
7. The most widely-used ..... is google.  
a. engine                              b. research                          c. searching                      d. search engine
8. By 2028, a lot of our school teachers .....  
a. will have retired                      b. will retired  
c. will have been retired                  d. will be retiring
9. I am allowed to take photos here, ..... ?  
a. am I                                  b. can't I                              c. shall I                              d. aren't I
10. This is the house in ..... I lived when I was young.  
a. who                                      b. which                              c. where                              d. whose
11. Mariam thinks that her friend is ..... than her.  
a. slightly prettier                  b. more pretty                      c. more prettier                      d. pretty
12. The servant ..... a rest until he had finished cleaning the house.  
a. gave                                      b. didn't give                      c. wasn't given                      d. hadn't given
13. The novel ..... author won the Nobel Prize, is widely published.  
a. that                                      b. whose                              c. which                              d. who

## 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The honeybee is a very unusual kind of insect. Unlike other insects, which live alone, the honeybee lives as a member of a community. These bees live together in what is known as a bee colony. The head of the colony is called the queen bee. She is larger than the rest of the bees. Her main task in the colony is to lay eggs. Most of the other bees are the worker bees. These bees collect nectar and pollen from flowers. The nectar that is carried

by the worker bees is deposited on the hive and then converted into honey. The worker bees also help **look after** the young bees. As soon as the eggs are hatched, the worker bees feed the young bees with pollen and nectar.

The third type of bee found in the colony is the drone or male bee. The main task of such a bee is to mate with a new queen. The queen bee has a lifespan of about three years. During this period, she would have laid more than half a million eggs. When the queen bee is dying, a new queen would be groomed. This new queen would eventually take over the 'duties' of the old queen when the **latter** dies. Bees are small but they play a big role in the ecosystem. They play an important role as a pollinator for crops. It is vital for food security of human beings. Hence we must control our activities and help protect honeybees.

- What is the best title for the passage?
  - How honey is formed.
  - Honeybees' life.
  - Bees and other insects.
  - Bees and our ecosystem.
- The thing that distinguishes the honeybee from other insects is that .....
  - it can't live apart from its community
  - its sting is stronger and deadly
  - it can't live among trees and flowers
  - it can live alone
- The life of honeybees can teach us .....
  - co-operation
  - how to live among trees
  - selfishness
  - laziness
- The main mission of the queen bee in the colony is to .....
  - look after the young bees
  - collect nectar and pollen
  - kill the worker bees
  - lay eggs
- When the queen bee dies, .....
  - the rest stay without a queen
  - the other bees will be sad and cry
  - another one takes over
  - there isn't anymore nectar
- The word "**latter**" is the antonym of the word ".....".
  - last
  - second
  - former
  - next
- The synonym of the word "**look after**" is .....
  - care about
  - turn off
  - take over
  - give off
- Bees help the crops to .....
  - disappear
  - grow
  - decrease
  - reproduce

### 3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Technology plays a vital role in modern lives and profoundly affects the course of human civilization. Technological advancement has made our lives easier and faster.

- تلعب التكنولوجيا دوراً صغيراً في الحياة الحديثة تؤثر بعمق على مسار الحضارة الإنسانية. لقد جعلت الحياة الحديثة التقدم التكنولوجي في حياتنا أسهل وأسرع.
- تلعب التكنولوجيا دوراً كبيراً في الحياة الحديثة وتؤثر بعمق على مسار الحضارة الإنسانية. لقد جعل التقدم التكنولوجي حياتنا أسهل وأسرع.
- تلعب التكنولوجيا دوراً كبيراً في الحياة الحديثة وتؤثر بعمق على مسار الثقافة الإنسانية. لقد جعل التقدم التكنولوجي الحياة المدنية أسهل وأسرع.
- تلعب الحياة الحديثة دوراً كبيراً في التكنولوجيا وتؤثر بعمق على مسار العلوم الإنسانية. لقد جعل التقدم التكنولوجي الحياة المدنية أسهل وأسرع.

### B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

تحاول الحكومة جاهدة إصلاح وتطوير المناطق العشوائية بهدف توفير حياة كريمة للناس.

- a The government tries hard to reform and develop slums with the aim of providing a decent life for people.
- b The government tries hardly to inform and develop slums with the aim of providing a decent life for people.
- c The government tries hard to perform and develop slums with the aim of providing a recent life for people.
- d The government hardly tries to reform and develop slums with the aim of providing a decent life for people.

### 4 Answer the following questions:

1. What do you think Regan, Goneril and Edmund have in common?  
.....
2. If you were in Edgar's place, would you make the same decision to feign **بتظاهر** madness? Why or why not?  
.....
3. Do you think Edgar's decision to reveal his identity to his father was the right choice? Why or why not?  
.....

### 5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic : "How to solve the problem of pollution"

.....

.....

.....

## 2 Giza Governorate

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. In wars, people ..... severely to find food and shelter.  
a strong                      b. struggle                      c. strange                      d. stressed
2. My son hopes to get a/an ..... in order to study in the United States.  
a. scholarship                      b authorities                      c. expansion                      d. facilities
3. Old people always say that television is their most useful ..... of news.  
a. result                      b. reason                      c. source                      d. practice
4. There has been a big ..... in the number of young people using social media recently.  
a. intention                      b. invention                      c. extension                      d. expansion
5. Last night, I woke from the most awful nightmare. The word "awful" has the same meaning as the word ".....".  
a. terrible                      b good                      c. lovely                      d. excellent
6. The soldiers ..... on their hands and knees.  
a. crawled                      b. ran                      c. walked                      d. jumped



7. Our cultural heritage needs permanent .....  
 a. damage                      b. conversation                      c. conservation                      d. destruction
8. Your daughter can hardly cross the road alone, .....?  
 a. can't she                      b. can she                      c. does she                      d. doesn't she
9. I went out with my friends after ..... my homework.  
 a. do                      b. done                      c. doing                      d. had done
10. We need to buy food ..... is environmentally friendly.  
 a. where                      b. who                      c. whose                      d. which
11. My father no longer reads newspapers as he .....  
 a. uses                      b. is used to                      c. used                      d. used to
12. The teacher talked so ..... that all of us could hear him.  
 a. loud                      b. loudly                      c. louder                      d. loudest
13. Which essay ..... by next Monday?  
 a. will you have been written                      b. will you have written  
 c. you will have written                      d. you will be writing

**2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

In Egypt, the tourism industry has come to hold a position of great importance lately. It is felt that it could help increase the national income and provide the youth with more work opportunities. In some European countries, tourism has brought in millions of dollars yearly, although they lack the natural and historical attractions we have in Egypt.

We could, for instance, **set up** tourist villages for children on the Red Sea. We could teach fishing, swimming, diving, and sailing there. Another good idea would be a village near the Pyramids or in the New Valley for horse-riding. And what about villages for people with health problems like rheumatism? The warm dry climate of Aswan and Helwan would certainly help them get better, this is called curative tourism.

Our tourist today wants efficient and friendly service. He would probably prefer to try out samples of our local food than to eat the international meals which are served in some places. This would be more interesting than having the same things he always eats in his own country.

It must also be remembered that most tourists nowadays are seldom rich. Many of them are students or hardworking employees. So what is needed is not expensive hotels but clean comfortable places to sleep and eat in at reasonable prices. This, too, would encourage Egyptians to travel more and more around their lovely country. This is called home tourism.

1. The main idea of this passage is ".....".  
 a. Curative tourism                      b. Ways of developing tourism industry  
 c. Home tourism                      d. Villages
2. Home tourism means .....  
 a. people travelling around their own country  
 b. serving international meals in our restaurants  
 c. establishing expensive hotels  
 d. establishing new tourist villages at cheap prices

3. To attract more tourists, we should .....
  - a. try samples of local food
  - b. serve international meals in our restaurants
  - c. establish expensive hotels
  - d. provide efficient and friendly service
4. In what way does the climate of Aswan and Helwan help tourism ?
  - a. It makes them unhealthy.
  - b. It makes them earn money.
  - c. It makes them feel better.
  - d. It makes them feel worse.
5. The writer thinks that we could encourage Egyptians to see more of their country by .....
  - a. lowering hotel prices
  - b. making hotels more comfortable
  - c. building many new hotels
  - d. building tourist villages
6. The writer says that most of our tourists today are ..... people.
  - a. rich
  - b. disabled
  - c. poor
  - d. business
7. The underlined verb "set up" means .....
  - a. establish
  - b. connect
  - c. solve
  - d. protect
8. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to .....
  - a. tourists
  - b. millions of dollars
  - c. European countries
  - d. work opportunities

**3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

لا تشارك معلوماتك الشخصية على مواقع الانترنت غير الموثوقة، فقد يستخدمها المجرمون في ابتزازك وتهديدك

- You should share personal information on the unreliable website. The criminals must use it to threaten and blackmail you.
- You should never share personal information on the reliable website. The criminals might use it to threaten and blackmail you.
- You should never share personnel information on the mistaken website. The criminals might use it to threaten and blackmail you.
- You should never share personal information on the unreliable website. The criminals might use it to threaten and blackmail you.

**B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

The increase in population has led to many other problems such as shortage of food and lack of jobs.

- a. إن الزيادة في السكان قد أدت إلى المزيد من المشكلات الأخرى مثل نقص الطعام والعجز في الوظائف.  
b. إن الزيادة في التلوث سوف تؤدي إلى المزيد من المشكلات الأخرى مثل نقص الطعام والعجز في الوظائف.  
c. إن الزيادة في السكان سوف تؤدي إلى المزيد من المشكلات الأخرى مثل نقص الطعام والعجز في الوظائف.  
d. إن الزيادة في التلوث قد أدت إلى المزيد من المشكلات الأخرى مثل نقص الطعام والعجز في الوظائف.

**4 Answer the following questions:**

1. Do you think that Goneril and Regan deserved to meet their end? Why? Why not?

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110 111 112 113 114 115 116 117 118 119 120 121 122 123 124 125 126 127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 137 138 139 140 141 142 143 144 145 146 147 148 149 150 151 152 153 154 155 156 157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 167 168 169 170 171 172 173 174 175 176 177 178 179 180 181 182 183 184 185 186 187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 206 207 208 209 210 211 212 213 214 215 216 217 218 219 220 221 222 223 224 225 226 227 228 229 230 231 232 233 234 235 236 237 238 239 240 241 242 243 244 245 246 247 248 249 250 251 252 253 254 255 256 257 258 259 260 261 262 263 264 265 266 267 268 269 270 271 272 273 274 275 276 277 278 279 280 281 282 283 284 285 286 287 288 289 290 291 292 293 294 295 296 297 298 299 300 301 302 303 304 305 306 307 308 309 310 311 312 313 314 315 316 317 318 319 320 321 322 323 324 325 326 327 328 329 330 331 332 333 334 335 336 337 338 339 340 341 342 343 344 345 346 347 348 349 350 351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371 372 373 374 375 376 377 378 379 380 381 382 383 384 385 386 387 388 389 390 391 392 393 394 395 396 397 398 399 400 401 402 403 404 405 406 407 408 409 410 411 412 413 414 415 416 417 418 419 420 421 422 423 424 425 426 427 428 429 430 431 432 433 434 435 436 437 438 439 440 441 442 443 444 445 446 447 448 449 450 451 452 453 454 455 456 457 458 459 460 461 462 463 464 465 466 467 468 469 470 471 472 473 474 475 476 477 478 479 480 481 482 483 484 485 486 487 488 489 490 491 492 493 494 495 496 497 498 499 500 501 502 503 504 505 506 507 508 509 510 511 512 513 514 515 516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534 535 536 537 538 539 540 541 542 543 544 545 546 547 548 549 550 551 552 553 554 555 556 557 558 559 560 561 562 563 564 565 566 567 568 569 570 571 572 573 574 575 576 577 578 579 580 581 582 583 584 585 586 587 588 589 590 591 592 593 594 595 596 597 598 599 600 601 602 603 604 605 606 607 608 609 610 611 612 613 614 615 616 617 618 619 620 621 622 623 624 625 626 627 628 629 630 631 632 633 634 635 636 637 638 639 640 641 642 643 644 645 646 647 648 649 650 651 652 653 654 655 656 657 658 659 660 661 662 663 664 665 666 667 668 669 670 671 672 673 674 675 676 677 678 679 680 681 682 683 684 685 686 687 688 689 690 691 692 693 694 695 696 697 698 699 700 701 702 703 704 705 706 707 708 709 710 711 712 713 714 715 716 717 718 719 720 721 722 723 724 725 726 727 728 729 730 731 732 733 734 735 736 737 738 739 740 741 742 743 744 745 746 747 748 749 750 751 752 753 754 755 756 757 758 759 760 761 762 763 764 765 766 767 768 769 770 771 772 773 774 775 776 777 778 779 780 781 782 783 784 785 786 787 788 789 790 791 792 793 794 795 796 797 798 799 800 801 802 803 804 805 806 807 808 809 810 811 812 813 814 815 816 817 818 819 820 821 822 823 824 825 826 827 828 829 830 831 832 833 834 835 836 837 838 839 840 841 842 843 844 845 846 847 848 849 850 851 852 853 854 855 856 857 858 859 860 861 862 863 864 865 866 867 868 869 870 871 872 873 874 875 876 877 878 879 880 881 882 883 884 885 886 887 888 889 890 891 892 893 894 895 896 897 898 899 900 901 902 903 904 905 906 907 908 909 910 911 912 913 914 915 916 917 918 919 920 921 922 923 924 925 926 927 928 929 930 931 932 933 934 935 936 937 938 939 940 941 942 943 944 945 946 947 948 949 950 951 952 953 954 955 956 957 958 959 960 961 962 963 964 965 966 967 968 969 970 971 972 973 974 975 976 977 978 979 980 981 982 983 984 985 986 987 988 989 990 991 992 993 994 995 996 997 998 999 1000 1001 1002 1003 1004 1005 1006 1007 1008 1009 1010 1011 1012 1013 1014 1015 1016 1017 1018 1019 1020 1021 1022 1023 1024 1025 1026 1027 1028 1029 1030 1031 1032 1033 1034 1035 1036 1037 1038 1039 104

2. What do you think Gloucester and Kent have in common?

3. What message do you think this play gives us?

**5** Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :

## “The advantages of learning foreign languages”

■ 第 1 卷 第 1 期 2015 年 1 月 1 日 第 1 页 共 1 页

[illegible]

### 3 Alexandria Governorate

#### 1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My cousin got a ..... to study in the United States.  
a. money                      b. present                      c. scholarship                      d. cash
2. Don't worry, your goal is .....; you can realize your ambition.  
a. removable                      b. curable                      c. achievable                      d. unbelievable
3. There are a lot of ..... of wild animals in African forests.  
a. spares                      b. species                      c. spices                      d. sparks
4. My grandmother often puts fruit in jars with lots of sugar to ..... them.  
a. reserve                      b. preserve                      c. deserve                      d. serve
5. Young children are not very ..... and need a lot of help and support.  
a. independent                      b. deceived                      c. ruined                      d. defendant
6. Clever students ..... their time to get high marks.  
a. waste                      b. dismiss                      c. organize                      d. avoid
7. It is advisable for us to call people at a/an ..... time.  
a. late                      b. inappropriate                      c. convenient                      d. bad
8. My father ..... to go to work by car, but now he does.  
a. didn't use                      b. used                      c. isn't used                      d. uses
9. The village, ..... my grandparents were born in, is near the Nile.  
a. what                      b. who                      c. which                      d. when
10. This action film is incredibly exciting, .....?  
a. hasn't it                      b. wasn't it                      c. doesn't it                      d. isn't it
11. Adel ..... shopping with his father on Saturdays.  
a. goes                      b. is going                      c. is being gone                      d. has gone
12. This digital camera ..... to my friend Mona.  
a. belongs                      b. is belonging                      c. belong                      d. have belonged
13. This book is wonderful, it is ..... than the last book he wrote.  
a. slightly worse                      b. far better                      c. not better                      d. as better

#### 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Basel Rashid who was a famous detective, working for businessmen to protect them and solve mysteries related to their work, had finished working on a crime in Aswan and was about to go home on the Spanish Train. When Basel got on the train, he noticed that it was unusually full for that time of the year.

Soon after the train had left Aswan, a wealthy businessman, Mr. Mourad, asked Basel to protect him because he believed his life was in danger. Although Mourad offered Basel a lot of money to do this, the detective did not believe the man's story and refused to help him.

During the night, the train had to stop because of heavy rain. The next morning, Mourad was found dead. Had someone got on the train and killed him?

Now, Basel believed Mourad's story, and he started work to solve the crime. He soon



discovered that Mourad was not a businessman, but a criminal who was hated by many people.

After examining the train and Mourad's body, Basel realized that the man had almost certainly been murdered by one of the 13 people from the same part of the train. One by one, Basel discovered that these 13 people all had a good reason to hate Mourad. Together they had carefully planned what they were going to do and had all taken part in the murder. This was why the Spanish Train was so full on that journey.

1. Mourad thought he was in danger so .....
  - a. he was suffering from heart problems.
  - b. he asked Basel for help.
  - c. the detective warned him not to take that train.
  - d. he cancelled his journey.
2. The central idea of the story is .....
  - a. Criminals protect each other
  - b. Crime would be committed with the help of the police
  - c. The Spanish Train mysterious crime
  - d. Criminals are always arrested
3. Basel didn't want to help Mr. Mourad .....
  - a. to take part in his murder
  - b. as he was his murderer
  - c. to kill the other criminals
  - d. as he didn't believe him
4. Basel was in Aswan .....
  - a. because he worked as a policeman there
  - b. to investigate Mourad's murder
  - c. to arrest people who killed Mourad
  - d. to solve the mystery of a crime there
5. The 13 people on the train killed Mr. Mourad because .....
  - a. they hated him
  - b. they wanted to steal his money
  - c. he was a successful businessman
  - d. the train was full
6. The sentence that can summarize the fourth paragraph is .....
  - a. protecting the other passengers from the murderers
  - b. identifying who Mr. Mourad really was
  - c. finding out Mourad was wrong when he asked for help
  - d. arresting the murderers
7. Although Basel refused to help Mr. Mourad, he .....
  - a. could solve the mystery of his murder
  - b. killed the other criminals
  - c. didn't believe his story
  - d. was right not to help him
8. According to the passage, one must ..... the others when they ask.
  - a. help
  - b. ignore
  - c. encourage
  - d. defeat

### 3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

One should not learn a foreign language merely to achieve an immediate aim. We should carry on learning it as it is a valuable experience that enriches our lives.

- a. لا ينبغي للمرء أن يتعلم لغة أجنبية لمجرد تحقيق هدف فوري. يجب أن يستمر في تعلمها لأنها تجربة غير ذات قيمة تثرى حياتنا.
- b. لا ينبغي للمرء أن يتعلم لغة أجنبية لعدم تحقيق هدف فوري. يجب أن يستمر في تعلمها لأنها تجربة قيمة تثرى حياتنا.
- c. لا ينبغي للمرء أن يتعلم لغة أجنبية لمجرد تحقيق هدف بعيد. يجب أن يستمر في تعلمها لأنها تجربة قيمة تثرى حياتنا.
- d. لا ينبغي للمرء أن يتعلم لغة أجنبية لمجرد تحقيق هدف فوري. يجب أن يستمر في تعلمها لأنها تجربة قيمة تثرى حياتنا.

## B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

من المعروف أن وسائل المواصلات التقليدية لها تأثير سيء على البيئة، لذا يجب علينا أن نستخدم وسائل مواصلات أخرى صديقة للبيئة تعمل بالكهرباء أو الطاقة الشمسية.

- It is known that traditional means of transportation have a bad impact on the environment, so we must use other environmentally friendly means of transportation that operate on electricity or solar energy.
- It is known that modern means of translation have a bad impact on the environment, so we must use other environmentally friendly means of transplantation that cooperate on electricity or solar energy.
- It is known that traditional means of transportation have a bad impact on the environment, so we must use other environmental friendly means of transportation that cooperate on electricity or solar energy.
- It is known that traditional means of transportation have a bad impact on the environment, so we must use other environmentally friend mean of transportation that cooperate on electricity or solar energy.

## 4 Answer the following questions:

1. Lear described himself as a foolish old man. Do you agree? Why / Why not?

2. Edmund was greedy. Explain.

3. What do you think the moral lesson of King Lear is?

## 5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :

“Travelling abroad has its advantages and disadvantages”

## 4 Qalyoubia Governorate

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I did a lot of things willingly. That is because I had other . . . . .  
a. conservation      b. decide      c. rest      d. choices
2. Cordelia ..... that she loved her father King Lear as she tried to help him.  
a. improved      b. ruled      c. proved      d. betrayed
3. My teacher is keen on giving us a lot of ..... to motivate us to succeed.  
a. disappointment      b. replacement      c. encouragement      d. discouragement
4. Most of the Egyptian food ..... really good!  
a. tasting      b. is tasting      c. taste      d. tastes
5. Earthquakes are the worst natural ..... that hit cities and towns.  
a. disasters      b. achievements      c. acceptances      d. trends
6. My car ..... until I had taken it to the mechanic.  
a. repaired      b. wasn't repaired      c. didn't repair      d. doesn't repair

7. We need to take action to help ..... our environment healthy.  
a. damage                      b. pollute                      c. preserve                      d. comply
8. Our scientists have made great ..... in all fields, especially medicine.  
a. losses                      b. achievements                      c. communications                      d. prices
9. There are plans for the ..... of the ring road to improve traffic around Cairo.  
a. invention                      b. intention                      c. expression                      d. expansion
10. My brother ..... from the university by the end of next July.  
a. is going to graduate                      b. will graduate  
c. has graduated                      d. will have graduated
11. We aim to help students to live and study .....  
a. independently                      b. independent                      c. independence                      d. depend
12. It took me years to ..... in Cairo after moving from my village.  
a. used to live                      b. be used to live                      c. get used to living                      d. would live  
c. have worked                      d. had been working
13. Some parents are strict with their kids, ..... ?  
a. don't they                      b. aren't they                      c. do they                      d. can they

**2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

At school, you have probably had the support of your teachers, your family and your friends. When you leave secondary school, you will start to have responsibility for your own life. This means being in control of your time and also your choice of career. However, it is important never to forget the values and morals that your family and your school have taught you.

Show respect to older people, but also to your work colleagues, both male and female. Remember to be tolerant of people who are different from you. Be loyal to all your friends.

When you are at work, make sure that you help and support your work colleagues. It is good to be ambitious, but do not envy people who are promoted before you. Be patient and always work hard and you will be rewarded one day.

When you are not at work, spend some time helping your local community. This is an excellent way to meet new people, and to help improve the lives of others. Try to help the poor whenever you can. Most people find that voluntary and charitable work is so rewarding that they are happy to do it.

Your school has taught you how to pass your exams, but it has also taught you important values and morals that will help whatever career you choose.

1. The main idea of the passage is that .....  
a. How to be successful after leaving school.    b. How to succeed at your school.  
c. Tolerant people lose a lot in their life.        d. You will be rewarded one day.
2. In your future careers, your ..... will support you.  
a. neighbours and friends                      b. morals and values  
c. school and colleagues                      d. males and females
3. Voluntary work is rewarding although it is .....  
a. unseen                      b. cheap                      c. valueless                      d. unpaid



4. Being ..... helps you to get on well with other people.  
 a. violent                      b. shy                      c. tolerant                      d. ashamed
5. According to the passage, you should be tolerant of people who are .....  
 a. different to you                      b. similar to your colleagues  
 c. different to your colleagues                      d. similar to you
6. Young people are likely to become responsible .....  
 a. before their "18" birthday                      b. after their "18" birthday  
 c. before prep school                      d. after primary school
7. The word "....." in the passage means the people who live in the same area.  
 a. responsibility                      b. morals                      c. community                      d. colleagues
8. Which of the following can summarise the second paragraph?  
 a. The rules you have to follow at school to succeed.  
 b. The instructions which you have to obey at your community.  
 c. How to deal with your colleagues at work.  
 d. Some tips to help you stay healthy all the time.

**3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

To get a good job you have to have some basic skills. Large companies usually seek to hire talented people who can use modern technology.

- a. للحصول على وظيفة جيدة عليك التمتع ببعض المهارات الإضافية. عادة ما تسعى الشركات الكبيرة إلى تعيين الكفاءات التي تجيد استخدام وسائل التكنولوجيا الحديثة
- b. للحصول على وظيفة جيدة عليك التمتع ببعض المهارات الأساسية. عادة ما تسعى الشركات الكبيرة إلى تعيين الكفاءات التي تجيد استخدام وسائل التكنولوجيا الحديثة.
- c. للحصول على وظيفة جديدة عليك التمتع ببعض المهارات الأساسية عادة ما تسعى الشركات الكبيرة إلى تعيين الكفاءات التي تجيد استخدام وسائل التكنولوجيا الحديثة.
- d. للحصول على وظيفة جيدة عليك التمتع ببعض المهارات الأساسية عادة ما تسعى الشركات الناشئة إلى تعيين الكفاءات التي تجيد استخدام وسائل التكنولوجيا الحديثة

**B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

كان النظام الغذائي المصري القديم مليئا بالأسماك واللحوم. كان الفلاحون والفقراء يتناولون اللحوم فقط في المناسبات الخاصة. معظم الأطباق المصرية كانت لذيذة للغاية ورخيصة الثمن ومغذية.

- a. The modern Egyptian diet was filled with fish and meat. The peasants and the poor ate meat only on special occasions. Most of the Egyptian dishes were very tasty, cheap and nutritious.
- b. The ancient Egyptian diet was failed with fish and meat. The peasants and the poor ate meat only on special occasions. Most of the Egyptian dishes were very tasty, cheap and nutritious.
- c. The ancient Egyptian diet was filled with fish and meat. The peasants and the poor ate meat only on special occasions. Most of the Egyptian dishes were very tasty, cheap and nutritious.
- d. The ancient Egyptian diet was filled with fish and meat. The peasants and the poor ate meat only on special festivals. Most of the Egyptian dishes were very tasty, cheap and nutritious.

**4 Answer the following questions:**

1. How do you think Gloucester and King Lear were alike?
2. Do you think Goneril was a good wife? Why?
3. What lesson does the play "King Lear" teach us in your opinion?

**5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :**

"How the mobile has changed our lives"

.....

.....

**5 Sharkia Governorate**

إدارة أبو كبير التعليمية - توحه اللغة الانجليزية

**1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Every student should concentrate ..... their study to reach their goal.  
a. in                      b. on                      c. of                      d. about
2. Lack of rain will lead to ..... in our area.  
a. drought              b. draught              c. downpour              d. torrents
3. My cousin is very ..... She can dance, sing and speak four languages.  
a. historical              b. hostile              c. powerful              d. talented
4. Young children are not very ..... and need a lot of help and support.  
a. independent              b. well-known              c. deceived              d. ruined
5. Keep in ..... that electric cars are good for the environment.  
a. brain                      b. mind                      c. head                      d. face
6. Don't ..... a lot with your brothers and sisters about trivial things.  
a. accept                      b. agree                      c. argue                      d. angry
7. In two years' time, I'll ..... the book.  
a. finish                      b. will finish                      c. finished                      d. have finished
8. Stories of Helen Keller and Taha Hussein should ..... all students.  
a. conspire                      b. hinder                      c. inspire                      d. complex
9. Eating too much leads ..... on much weight.  
a. to putting                      b. to put                      c. of putting                      d. puts
10. It took me quite some time to ..... living alone.  
a. use to                      b. get used to                      c. didn't use to                      d. used to
11. .... 5 o'clock yesterday, he had finished revising all his lessons.  
a. At                      b. By                      c. With                      d. In
12. The student who had come first won a ..... to the American University.  
a. reward                      b. starfish                      c. scholarship                      d. prize
13. Having ....., the thief went to prison.  
a. arrested                      b. been arrested                      c. being arrested                      d. arresting

## 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

You don't need to look back thirty years to realize the **tremendous** developments in science and technology and how these advances are changing the lifestyle of millions of people all over the world. Although the TV and video were there in those days, no one had heard then of those wonderful remote control units that turn the equipment on and off helping us to choose our entertainment with the least physical effort.

There are many other effects of technology that made our life more comfortable. You no longer worry about washing the dishes; your dishwashing machine can take care of that. If you want a hot meal, you just put your favourite food into the microwave oven and it is ready in minutes. If you need to send an urgent message, just write it down and send it through your fax machine. Passenger planes fly non-stop to different parts of the world and their pilots can find time to relax as the computers do most of the hard work for them. These all leave people more time to enjoy themselves and they also explains the remarkable current progress in the leisure industry.

Leisure today is big business. Just read the advertisements in your newspaper. You just won't believe the variety; you will find something to fit all incomes and tastes. As robots take over the work of people in industry, as communications across the world became faster. And while technology continues to create ways of **persuading** us to work less and enjoy ourselves more, so the leisure industry will play a far more important role in our lives.

- The passage is mainly about the ..... of modern technology.  
a. merits                      b. cons                      c. demerits                      d. disadvantages
- Modern technology has made our life .....  
a. difficult                      b. comfortable                      c. vague                      d. complicated
- "Tremendous" in the first line is an antonym of .....  
a. massive                      b. very big                      c. tiny                      d. unimportant
- As robots take over the work of people in industry. This ..... job opportunities.  
a. reduces                      b. increases                      c. supports                      d. encourages
- A/An ..... is a machine which cooks our food quickly.  
a. fridge                      b. dishwasher                      c. microwave oven                      d. air conditioner
- "Persuade" in the passage means .....  
a. convince                      b. discourage                      c. supply                      d. give
- According to the passage, communications became .....  
a. faster                      b. slower                      c. ancient                      d. harder
- Leisure today is ..... before.  
a. more expensive than                      b. less expensive than  
c. as expensive as                      d. much more varied in costs than



**3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Many famous Egyptians are admired for their intelligence, creativity, and their ability to do great and charity work.

- a. يحظى القليل من مشاهير المصريين بالإعجاب لذكائهم وإبداعهم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال عظيمة وخيرية.
- b. يحظى العديد من مشاهير المصريين بالإعجاب لعطائهم وإبداعهم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال عظيمة وخيرية.
- c. يحظى العديد من مشاهير المصريين بالإعجاب لذكائهم وإبداعهم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال عظيمة وخيرية.
- d. يحظى العديد من مشاهير المصريين بالإعجاب لذكائهم وإبداعهم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال خطيرة وخيرية.

**B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

يجب أن نلتزم بالأخلاق الحميدة ونحترم آباءنا ومعلمينا، لأن العلم وحده لا يصنع انساناً ناجحاً بالحياة.

- a. We must adhere to good morals and respect our parents and teachers because science alone does not make a person successful in life.
- b. We mustn't adhere to good morals and respect our parents and teachers because science alone does not make a person successful in life.
- c. We must adhere to great morals and respect our parents and teachers because science alone does not make a person successful in life.
- d. We must adhere to good morals and disrespect our parents and teachers because science alone does not make a person successful in life.

**4 Answer the following questions:**

1. Cornwall was like his wife. Do you agree and why?
2. Why do you think King Lear didn't want to see his daughter Cordelia?
3. Do you agree that Gloucester was a traitor and why?

**5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :**

**"Co-operation plays an important role in our life"**

.....

.....

## 6 Menoufia Governorate

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. We ..... to spend the feast with our grandparents on the farm until they died.  
a. are used                      b. were used                      c. used                      d. use
2. Samy is a/an ..... boy; he is always confident and able to do things by himself.  
a. confused                      b. independent                      c. stressed                      d. dependent
3. By the end of this year, I hope all my projects will .....  
a. have completed                      b. complete  
c. have been completed                      d. be completing
4. The variety of plants and animals in a particular place is known as ..  
a. biodiversity                      b. expedition                      c. scholarship                      d. conservation
5. The charger is not here now. Oh! Ali ..... his mobile phone.  
a. charges                      b. charge                      c. is charging                      d. is charged

6. This is my father's motorbike ..... I go to school.  
a. where                      b. which                      c. whom                      d. on which
7. Prices are expected to ..... by less than 1% this year.  
a. tease                      b. decrease                      c. cease                      d. please
8. African elephants are ..... than Asian elephants.  
a. slightly larger                      b. slightly large                      c. large slightly                      d. larger slightly
9. Some videos were ..... on local television.  
a. went                      b. held                      c. broadcast                      d. got
10. The new hotel has lots of modern ..... including a gym and swimming pool.  
a. species                      b. facilities                      c. objects                      d. innovators
11. My grandmother often puts fruit in jars with lots of sugar to ..... them.  
a. reserve                      b. prevent                      c. preserve                      d. serve
12. His behaviour with his neighbours was hostile. The antonym of "hostile" is .....  
a. aggressive                      b. cruel                      c. funny                      d. friendly
13. Let's go for a walk, .....?  
a. shall we                      b. will you                      c. won't we                      d. don't you

**2** Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

People like to be well-dressed, but rarely ask themselves what the clothes they are wearing are made from. Thousands of animals are killed every day so that rich people can enjoy wearing the most fashionable and trendiest clothes. Some animals, such as mice, pigs, and rabbits, are used for scientific research. Other animals are experimented upon by scientists working for companies involved in the manufacture of shampoo that we use. We even kill whales, whose oil is used to make expensive soaps or make-up. Other animals, like the Arctic fox, are killed for their fur. Elephants are killed for their ivory, which is made into jewellery. Crocodiles are killed for their skin. Often these animals are treated with great cruelty. Some of **them** are in danger of becoming extinct. Individual people and organizations are working to protect these animals. The first step in "**this direction**" was taken when the Royal Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Animals (RSPCA) was established all over the world. The RSPCA calls on governments to set up nature reserves to protect such animals. It is illegal to kill any animal on these reserves and at the same time, strict action has been taken against **illegal** hunting wherever it occurs in the world. The RSPCA also asks people to stop buying and wearing products from endangered animals. If we continue killing these animals, we will surely destroy our wildlife environment and the balance of nature as well.

1. Some animals such as ..... are used for scientific research.  
a. pigs and elephants    b. rabbits and whales    c. rabbits and mice    d. mice and foxes
2. What do you think the synonym of the word "**illegal**" is .....  
a. legal                      b. unlawful                      c. allowed                      d. authorized
3. People kill elephants to have their .....  
a. jewellery                      b. ivory                      c. skin                      d. shoes

4. What does the underlined pronoun **them** in the passage refer to?  
 a. companies      b. animals      c. mice      d. Arctic fox
5. Some animals become ..... because of killing them.  
 a. exist      b. extinct      c. exhaust      d. excess
6. What do the underlined phrase "**this direction**" refer to?  
 a. Killing animals      b. Protecting animals      c. Selling animals      d. Feeding animals
7. According to the passage, in what way are animals often treated?  
 a. Kindly      b. Ordinary      c. Specially      d. Cruelly
8. What do you think a suitable title for the passage is?  
 a. Fine clothes      b. Animals' skin      c. Experiment      d. Animals in danger

**3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Everyone has the right to have their own opinions, ideas and beliefs. There is no problem to be different from others, but we must respect each other.

- a. لكل فرد الحق في أن يمتلك آرائه وأفكاره ومعتقداته الخاصة به. لا يوجد مشكلة في أن نكون مختلفين عن الآخرين ولكن يجب أن نحترم بعضنا البعض.
- b. لكل فرد الاختيار أن يمتلك آرائه وأفكاره ومعتقداته الخاصة به. لا توجد مشكلة في أن نكون شديدي الاختلاف عن الآخرين ولكن يجب أن نحترم بعضنا البعض.
- c. لكل فرد الحق في أن يمتلك آرائه وأفكاره ومعتقداته الخاصة به. لا خلاف في كوننا مختلفين عن الآخرين ولكن يجب أن نحترم بعضنا البعض.
- d. لكل فرد الحق في أن يمتلك آرائه وأفكاره ومعتقداته الخاصة به. لا توجد مشكلة في أن نكون مختلفين عن الآخرين ولكن يجب أن يواجه بعضنا البعض.

**B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

تعالى العديد من الشعوب في أفريقيا من المجاعات التي تقتل الآلاف منهم وخاصة الأطفال. لذا فإن مسؤولية الدول المتقدمة أن تساهم في حل تلك المشكلة الخطيرة

- a. Many peoples suffer from starvations that kill thousands of them, especially children. So, it is the responsibility of the advanced countries to share in solving this serious problem.
- b. Many peoples in Africa suffer from starvations that kill thousands of them, especially children. So, it is the responsibility of the advanced countries to share in solving this serious problem.
- c. Many people in Africa suffer from starvations that kill thousands of them, especially children. So, it is the responsibility of the advanced countries to share in solving this serious problem.
- d. Many peoples suffer from starvations that kill thousands of them, especially children. So, it is the authority of the advanced countries to share in solving this serious problem.

**4 Answer the following questions:**

1. Do you think Gloucester was a traitor? Why?
2. If you were the Duke of Albany, would you fight the French soldiers? Why?
3. How do you feel about the death of Oswald? Why?



5 Write an essay (about 100-150 words) on ONE of the following topics:

"The duties of the youth towards their country"

## 7 Gharbia Governorate

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- A few years from now, I hope that wars ..... become a thing of the past.  
a. will be                      b. will have been                      c. will have                      d. won't be
- The word "convenient" gives the same meaning as the word ".....".  
a. suitable                      b. comfortable                      c. avoidable                      d. affordable
- My little brother can hardly swim, ..... ?  
a. can't he                      b. can he                      c. does he                      d. is he
- Yossef ..... to loud music; it is so annoying.  
a. listen                      b. will have listened  
c. was always listening                      d. is always listening
- Shakespeare was a great English writer ..... plays were performed all over the world.  
a. whose                      b. who                      c. when                      d. which
- Doing enough physical exercise ..... to getting fit.  
a. cycles                      b. debates                      c. creates                      d. leads
- If we want to keep natural balance in forests, we need to protect ..... in forests.  
a. biodiversity                      b. conservation                      c. preservation                      d. challenges
- Your hair is ..... as mine; we could be identical twins.  
far more similar                      exactly the same                      slightly different                      fairly
- The police were on the ..... of the car accident in minutes.  
a. vision                      b. sight                      c. scene                      d. view
- The manager has taken some time out of his busy ..... to talk to us.  
a. schedule                      b. speech                      c. issue                      d. research
- Which one of the following is **grammatically incorrect**?  
a. Hardly had Osama applied for the job when he took it.  
b. No sooner Osama had applied for the job than he took it.  
c. No sooner had Osama applied for the job than he took it.  
d. No sooner did Osama apply for the job than he took it.
- The antonym of deliberately is .....  
a. accidentally                      b. probably                      c. definitely                      d. on purpose
- She seemed slightly ..... as if something was worrying her.  
a. distracted                      b. attentive                      c. aware                      d. awake

If you pay a visit to a herbalist shop in Cairo, you will find yourself encircled with different colours and smells. There are jars full of tree barks, roots, powders, oils, and spices. The customer enters the shop and explains his symptoms to the herbalist, who will take notes, study medical reports and check his reference books before writing out a prescription.

1. Natural remedies are attracting attention because they ..... .  
a. are used in Egypt                      b. have side effects  
c. are exported                                d. can treat a lot of diseases
2. Garlic is an example of ..... .  
a. natural remedies     b. artificial herbs     c. chemical medicines   d. modern drugs
3. .... is a physical condition that shows you may have a particular disease.  
a. Prescription          b. Property              c. Symptom              d. Remedy
4. A herbalist writes out a prescription ..... checking his reference books.  
a. during                  b. after                    c. while                    d. before
5. The pronoun "his" in the last paragraph refers to the ..... .  
a. herbalist                b. shop                    c. customer                d. prescription
6. Herbal medicine is ..... than chemical medicine.  
a. safer                      b. less safe                c. not safe                 d. as safe
7. If you visit a herbalist's shop, you will be ..... by various colours and smells.  
a. fined                    b. crushed                c. frustrated               d. surrounded
8. Aspirin is based on the ..... of the willow tree.  
a. stem                      b. bark                    c. root                      d. seed

**3** A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

a. من الضروري وضع قوانين صارمة للحد من جرائم الإنترنت وانتهاك الحرية الشخصية عبر الشبكات الاجتماعية.

b. من الضروري وضع قوانين صارمة للحد من جرائم الإنترنت وتدمير الحرية الشخصية عبر الشبكات الاجتماعية.

c. من الضروري وضع قوانين سليمة للحد من جرائم الإنترنت وانتهاك الحرية الشخصية عبر الشبكات الاجتماعية.

d. من الضروري وضع قوانين صارمة للحد من جرائم الإنترنت وانتهاك الحرية الشخصية عبر الشبكات الاجتماعية.

## B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

تتمتع بلادنا بموارد طبيعية غنية إذا احسن استغلالها سيؤدي ذلك إلى الرخاء والتقدم الملحوظ.

- Our country has rich natural resources, if they are proper utilized, this will lead to prosperity and remarkable progress.
- Our country enjoy rich natural resources, if they are properly used, this would lead to prosperity and remarkable progress.
- Our country has rich natural resources, if they are properly utilized, this will lead to prosperity and remarkable progress.
- Our country has rich natural sources, if they are properly utilized, this will lead to prosperity and remarkable progress.

## 4 Answer the following questions:

- Do you think Gloucester deserved what happened to him? Why/Why not?
- Which character do you sympathize with in the play? Why?
- Goneril was neither a loving daughter nor a good wife. Explain.

## 5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :

"Online learning"

## 8 Dakahlia Governorate

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Living and studying in England won't be easy, but with a little bit of ..... I can do it.  
a. achievements      b. determination      c. independent      d. encourage
- That car ..... to my mother now.  
a. belong      b. belongs      c. is belonging      d. belonged
- This ..... of the Cairo Metro adds seven kilometers and six new stations to our underground network.  
a. expansion      b. facilities      c. expedition      d. high-tech
- I ..... the book before I return it to the library.  
a. had read      b. had been read      c. will read      d. will have read
- You'll help us to monitor changes in a variety of plant ..... in different areas.  
a. species      b. survival      c. scholarship      d. preserve
- This documentary film is considered a ..... to the age.  
a. creation      b. permission      c. sculpture      d. witness
- We have an amazing ..... of the Nile from our balcony.  
a. scene      b. scenery      c. view      d. portrait
- The videos were uploaded to the news website and some were ..... on local television.  
a. interviewed      b. programmed      c. broadcast      d. search engine



9. The police and fire services ..... earlier in the evening.  
 a. called                      b. had called                      c. was called                      d. had been called
10. In this clever ..... film, a spaceship arrives at a giant planet far from earth.  
 a. action                      b. animation                      c. science fiction                      d. comedy
11. It's easy to imagine what it would be like, ..... ?  
 a. is it                      b. isn't it                      c. would it                      d. wouldn't it
12. Andy, ..... photo is on every bottle of Red and Green, is still young.  
 a. whose                      b. who                      c. whom                      d. that
13. No sooner had I called the police ..... they arrived.  
 a. than                      b. then                      c. while                      d. when

**2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Teachers have the very important responsibility of shaping the lives of young, impressionable **سريع التأثر** children. With this responsibility comes great pride and joy. A good teacher can be defined as someone who always pushes students to do their best while at the same time trying to make learning interesting as well as creative.

Most great teachers have a few things in common. Teachers who are thought of as "great" are usually passionate about teaching. They seem to love teaching and share this love with the students in their class. These teachers know their subjects well and teach outside of their textbooks.

Teachers, especially at the elementary level, must be very creative with their teaching styles. Not every child learns the same way, nor are they interested in the same things. It is difficult to keep the attention of 30-40 children under the age of ten. Classroom setup and design are good ways to get and keep the attention of students. Workstations are a good way to encourage different types of learning. By giving children a chance to choose which activities they want to participate in, children are taking control of their own education.

Good teachers often make their subject material seem **relevant** to a student's life. The teachers that students admire the most are fair to everyone.

The great teacher makes his or her class exciting. This teacher would also give some breaks in the routine and do something different, like labs or something fun for the students. They are open to learning from other teachers and also from their students. A great teacher knows how to control their class without screaming and doesn't let the disciplining get out of hand. They know their students as individuals and treat them with respect and in return they are treated the same. Teachers who teach the disabled or other diverse student populations must have additional qualities.

1. Why are great teachers always remembered?  
 a. Because they live near students.  
 b. Because they take their students to labs.  
 c. Because they are usually passionate about teaching.  
 d. Because they play with their students.
2. How can we call the teachers who know their subjects well and teach outside of their textbooks?  
 a. Creative                      b. Greedy                      c. Handsome                      d. Courageous

3. What can help students take control of their own education?
  - a. Labs
  - b. Schoolyards
  - c. Breaks
  - d. Workstations
4. What should the subject material be?
  - a. Easy to help students pass.
  - b. Relevant to a student's life.
  - c. Difficult to make a clever student.
  - d. Imported from another country.
5. What helps teachers to get and keep the attention of students?
  - a. Classroom setup and design.
  - b. Their academic study.
  - c. The strict headmaster.
  - d. The easy subjects.
6. .... are two merits that can define a good teacher.
  - a. Having good relationships and personality
  - b. Caring about both students and the learning process
  - c. Speaking English and Arabic
  - d. Wisdom and old age
7. Going to labs .....
  - a. strengthens the students' bodies
  - b. makes the students bored
  - c. makes the class exciting
  - d. proves that the teacher is knowledgeable
8. The antonym of the word "relevant" is ....
  - a. appropriate
  - b. significant
  - c. important
  - d. unrelated

### 3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

The government has taken serious steps to take care of people with disabilities, integrate them into society, and facilitate all means to make them a tool of progress.

- a. لقد اتخذت الحكومة خطوات خطيرة للعناية بذوي الهمم ودمجهم في المجتمع وتيسير كل السبل لجعلهم أداة من أدوات التقدم.
- b. لقد اتخذت الحكومة خطوات جادة للعناية بذوي الهمم ودمجهم في المجتمع وتيسير كل السبل لجعلهم أداة من أدوات التقدم.
- c. لقد اتخذت الحكومة أقسام جادة للعناية بذوي الإعاقات ودمجهم في المجتمع وتيسير كل المعاني لجعلهم أداة من أدوات التقدم.
- d. لقد اتخذت الحكومة خطوات حرجة للعناية بذوي الإعاقات واتحادهم في المجتمع وتيسير كل السبل لجعلهم أداة من أدوات التقدم.

### B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

إن للمشروعات القومية الكبرى فوائد كثيرة فهي توفر الكثير من فرص العمل للشباب كما أنها تعمل على زيادة الاقتصاد القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة.

- a. Major national projects have so many benefits, as they provide so many job opportunities for youth, and they also increase the national economy and raise the standard of living.
- b. Major international projects have so many benefits, as they provide so many job opportunities for young people, and they also work to increase the national economy and raise the standard of living.
- c. Major local projects have many benefits, as they provide many job chances for young people, and they also increase the national economy and raise the standard of living.
- d. Great national objects have so many advantages, as they provide too many job chances for young people, and they also increase the national economy and raise the standard of living.

### 4 Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think that Lear kneels before Cordelia?
2. Who was your favourite character in the play? Give reasons.
3. What lessons does the play teach us?

- 5** Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :  
 “Your goals in life”
- .....
- .....

### Beheira Governorate

- 1** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Working in this overcrowded place made me ..... .  
 a. distracted                      b. determined                      c. relaxed                      d. astonished
2. He can't do his daily exercises outdoors because it ..... heavily.  
 a. is raining                      b. rains                      c. will rain                      d. raining
3. When you set your goals , they should be ..... .  
 a. measures                      b. measles                      c. mislead                      d. measurable
4. Children have a ..... to have a good education and healthy food.  
 a. right                      b. duty                      c. race                      d. destiny
5. The bookstore did not have the book ..... .  
 a. wanting                      b. that wanted                      c. which wanted                      d. I wanted
6. Most players are ..... They are paid well.  
 a. respectful                      b. minor                      c. amateur                      d. professional
7. I'd rather sleep early, ..... I ?  
 a. would                      b. wouldn't                      c. hadn't                      d. won't
8. By the time he reached the bus stop, the bus ..... .  
 a. will leave                      b. leaves                      c. had left                      d. lived
9. Mr Zaki was shocked when he joined our company as he ..... to do much work every day.  
 a. wasn't used                      b. didn't use                      c. used                      d. was used
10. Travelling by plane is ..... than travelling by car.  
 a. much comfortable                      b. comfortable  
 c. much more comfortable                      d. most comfortable
11. Swimmers can't swim against strong ..... .  
 a. currents                      b. currants                      c. draughts                      d. droughts
12. He kept a ..... in which he wrote down what happened to him each day.  
 a. dairy                      b. diary                      c. dial                      d. deal
13. .... mean things that you do or use instead of something else.  
 a. Issues                      b. Topics                      c. Individuals                      d. Alternatives

- 2** Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Have you ever wondered what it would be like to live in space? It's more complicated than you might think. The most important thing to remember about living in space is that there is no gravity. That means that astronauts can't do a lot of the things that we take for granted. For example, astronauts can't pour themselves a cup of juice the way you can.



Why? Because gravity makes the juice pour from the bottle into your cup. Astronauts can't lie on beds and sleep the way you do because gravity is what holds you to your bed. Eating in space is like eating on Earth in some ways. Food like rice and mashed potatoes sticks to spoons and forks, so it doesn't float away. Other foods come in cans or packages. But in order to eat, astronauts strap themselves into chairs or use footholds to stay in one place. Meal trays can be strapped to an astronaut's legs or attached to a wall.

What about sleeping? There is no gravity in space, so astronauts do not have to sleep on beds or the floor. They can sleep anywhere they want, and they can sleep in any position they want. They simply strap their sleeping bags to a wall, a seat, or a bunk bed. That way, they don't float around and bump into things while they are asleep. They also have fun. Astronauts are very busy people. They have jobs to do, and they work hard. But they also need to relax sometimes. Astronauts get to talk to their families on a video call once a week. They also get to stay in touch by email. Astronauts can bring checkers, chess, and other games with them.

- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to .....
  - sleeping bags
  - astronauts
  - families
  - friends
- Which of these questions is NOT answered in this text?
  - How do astronauts eat in space?
  - How do astronauts do their work?
  - How are foods kept in space?
  - How can astronauts stay in touch with their families?
- Which question does the passage answer?
  - How can I go in space?
  - What is life in space really like?
  - Why do you travel to space?
  - Do astronauts like playing games?
- The author likely feels that astronauts are .....
  - interesting
  - unkind
  - depressed
  - hardworking
- Which do astronauts not need in space?
  - Place to sleep
  - Umbrella
  - Using emails
  - Food
- Why do you think chairs and tables are attached to the floors and walls in space stations?
  - So that they will not float around
  - So they will stay clean
  - Not to walk
  - Not to be stolen
- How is life in space different from life on Earth?
  - There is no gravity on space.
  - Astronauts do not like to be in space.
  - Astronauts love their lives.
  - They don't eat preserved food.
- Which statement about living in space is **most accurate**?
  - Living in space would be like living on Earth.
  - Living in space would be different as there is no gravity.
  - Living in space would be like living in water.
  - Living in space is easy as they breathe a lot of gases.

**3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Tropical forests are considered the lungs of the planet because of their absorption of large amounts of carbon dioxide and the release of oxygen.

- a. تعتبر الغابات الاستوائية رئتي الكوكب لامتصاصها كميات كبيرة من ثاني أكسيد الكربون و إطلاق الأكسجين.  
 b. تعتبر الغابات الاستوائية رئتي الكوكب بسبب إطلاقها كمية كبيرة من ثاني أكسيد الكربون و امتصاصها الأكسجين.  
 c. تعتبر الغابات الاستوائية رئتي الكوكب رغم امتصاصها كميات كبيرة من ثاني أكسيد الكربون و إطلاق الأكسجين.  
 d. تعتبر الغابات الاستوائية رئتي الكوكب بسبب إنتاجها كميات كبيرة من ثاني أكسيد الكربون و إطلاق الأكسجين.

**B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

يجب أن نعلم الأجيال الجديدة قيمة العمل و الانتماء و الولاء و الإخلاص و التفكير الإبداعي لكي يكونوا قادرين على بناء بلادهم

- a. We have to teach new generations the value of work , loyalty, belonging , sincerity and creative thinking to be able to build their country.  
 b. We have to teach younger generations the value of work , loyalty, belonging , sincerity and creative thinking to be able to build their country.  
 c. We have to learn new generations the value of work , loyalty, belonging , sincerity and creator thinking to be able to build their country.  
 d. We will have to teach new generations the value of work , loyalty, belonging , sincerity and creative thinking to be able to build their country.

**4 Answer the following questions:**

1. Edmund was greedy. Why ? Why not?
2. Lear described himself as a foolish old man . Do you agree ? Why ?
3. What is the moral lesson of King Lear ?

**5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :**

"The job you would like to do when you are old"

.....  
 .....

**10 Kaf El Sheikh Governorate**

محافظة كفر الشيخ - نوحه اللغة الانجليزية

**1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. A lot will depend on how the government ..... their desires.  
 a. constructs                      b. satisfies                      c. expands                      d. responds
2. Paris was the ..... city for the next Olympic Games 2024.  
 a. guest                              b. host                              c. post                              d. lost
3. Don't phone me at 1.00 a.m. because I ..... then.  
 a. sleep                              b. will have slept                      c. will be sleeping                      d. have slept
4. Mr Mohamed's salary is ..... as mine.  
 a. much                              b. slightly the same                      c. exactly the same                      d. much more
5. We're very proud of the five students from this school who were awarded .....  
 a. championships                      b. scholarships                      c. friendships                      d. hardships
6. Dear students, you mustn't study near the TV as it will ..... you.  
 a. concentrate                      b. distract                      c. focus                      d. district

7. My father ..... have a big car when he was young.  
 a. used to                      b. would                      c. gets used to                      d. is used to
8. A ..... is a building or a statue built to remind people of an important event or person.  
 a. moment                      b. monument                      c. mountain                      d. fountain
9. Pass me the salt, ..... ?  
 a. do you                      b. aren't I                      c. won't you                      d. don't you
10. My grandpa is making a steady ..... in his recovery of the heart operation.  
 a. progress                      b. failure                      c. effects                      d. decrease
11. Having ....., the criminal was sent to prison.  
 a. arrest                      b. arrested                      c. been arrested                      d. arresting
12. Sarah ..... her dirty clothes on the floor! Who does she think I am? Her maid?  
 a. leave                      b. is left                      c. is always leaving                      d. was left
13. The final match of the Champions League will be ..... live from Turkey next May.  
 a. broadcast                      b. consumed                      c. admitted                      d. selected

**2** Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A Japanese professor has produced evidence to show that computer games can have a bad effect on children. Many parents and grandparents have been saying this for years, but they were largely ignored, being regarded as technophobes. Parental worries about computer games are often related to their effect on their children's health and on their own social skills. They feel that they should be outdoors; getting exercise and enjoying the fresh air while playing with their friends. Since many of them usually play by themselves, they live rather isolated lives, with little opportunity to interact with other people. As a result, they may be very poor at communication. Parents are also worried in case the violence of many of the games will cause their children to become more aggressive and violent themselves. This anxiety also applies to television, which often shows scenes of extreme cruelty.

On the other hand, many scientists and psychologists find that computer games could actually have many benefits - the main one is making kids smart. Computer games may actually teach kids high-level thinking skills that they will need in the future. When your child plays computer games, it gives his brain a real workout. In many computer games, the skills required to win involve abstract and high-level thinking. These skills are not even taught at school.

1. "Poor at communication" means .....  
 a. unable to use their mobile phones  
 b. clever at making fewer phone calls  
 c. having difficulty in socializing with friends  
 d. having the ability to speak in public
2. Violence, cruelty, and aggressiveness can be caused by .....  
 a. computer games                      b. parental worries  
 c. technophobes                      d. TV scenes and computer games
3. After reading this passage, we conclude that computer games .....  
 a. are a double-edged weapon                      b. have a lot of advantages  
 c. have a lot of disadvantages                      d. do much harm to people and animals



4. The underlined word "**Since**" here means ..... .  
 a. from the time when    b. because    c. although    d. but
5. Parents worry about computer games because ..... .  
 a. they have an effect on their children's health  
 b. they have an effect on their children's social skills  
 c. they have an effect on their children's behaviour  
 d. All mentioned before
6. Enjoying the fresh air and playing are kinds of ..... .  
 a. social media    b. outdoor activities    c. indoor activities    d. hobbies
7. Those who are in favour of computer games think that they ..... .  
 a. make kids smart    b. are cheap for them to buy  
 c. make them happy    d. are better than outdoor activities
8. The best title for the passage is ".....".  
 a. The cons of computer games    b. The pros of computer games  
 c. The pros and cons of computer games    d. Different computer games

**3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Approximately fifty thousand people died in Turkey and Syria after the deadly earthquakes hit both countries last February. They are said to have directly affected millions of people.

- a. تقريباً خمسة عشر ألف شخص ماتوا في تركيا وسوريا بعد الزلزال المميت الذي ضرب كلا البلدين في فبراير الماضي. و يقول أن ملايين الأشخاص لم يتأثروا بشكل مباشر.
- b. تقريباً خمسون ألف شخص ماتوا في تركيا وسوريا بعد الزلزال المميتة التي ضربت كلا البلدين في فبراير الماضي. و يُقال أن ملايين الأشخاص تأثروا بشكل مباشر.
- c. تقريباً خمسون ألف شخص ماتوا في تركيا وسوريا بعد الزلزال القتل الذي ضربت كلا البلدين في فبراير الماضي. و يقول أن ملايين الأشخاص تأثروا بشكل غير مباشر.
- d. تقريباً خمسة عشر ألف شخص ماتوا في تركيا وسوريا بعد الزلزال المميت الذي ضرب كلا البلدين في فبراير الماضي. و يُقال أن ملايين الأفراد لم يتأثروا بشكل مباشر.

**B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

وفقاً لعدة دراسات تبين أن الاستخدام المفرط لوسائل التواصل الاجتماعي قد يؤدي إلى القلق والاكتئاب.

- a. According to severity studies, using social media tightly may lead to anxious and depressed.
- b. According to severe studies, using social media excessively may result from anxiety and oppression.
- c. According to severe studies, using sociable media tightly may lead to anxious and depressed.
- d. According to several studies, using social media excessively may result in anxiety and depression.

**4 Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do you think Edmund wanted to get rid of his father and Edgar?
2. Why do you think Gloucester wanted to kill himself?
3. Lear knelt in front of Cordelia. Why?

- 5** Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :  
 "Good education is essential for the development of our nation"
- .....
- .....

### 11 Damietta Governorate

- 1** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- ..... young men can solve the problems they face in their daily lives themselves.  
 a. Independent      b. Dependent      c. Unreliable      d. Inefficient
- Negative ..... can be a symptom of depression.  
 a. voluntary      b. confidence      c. thoughts      d. concentration
- Oh, no. You are constantly ..... I get bored with that.  
 a. talk      b. talking      c. talks      d. talked
- I have to go for a short walk after dinner, ..... I ?  
 a. have      b. haven't      c. don't      d. do
- The restaurant is very near my house so, it's a ..... place to meet.  
 a. debatable      b. convenient      c. continuous      d. replaced
- Citizens must pay taxes to ..... the services and programs of the government.  
 a. report      b. import      c. export      d. support
- To me, English is ..... than physics.  
 a. easy      b. much easy      c. far easier      d. almost easier
- There ..... enough facilities for local people, but now there are a lot of them.  
 a. didn't use to be      b. used to be  
 c. would be      d. didn't use to have
- I've always thought you have the right voice to be a/an .....  
 a. photographer      b. programmer      c. editor      d. newsreader
- The prisoner .... free until he had returned the stolen things.  
 a. didn't set      b. doesn't set      c. hasn't set      d. wasn't set
- Many benefits ..... from volunteering.  
 a. arise      b. arouse      c. raise      d. rise
- The antonym of "permanent" is .....  
 a. skillful      b. perfect      c. temporary      d. everlasting
- As soon as we ..... exams, we will have fun with our families.  
 a. finish      b. had finished      c. finished      d. will finish

- 2** Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Although more and more people are exercising regularly, experts note that eating right is also a key to good health. Nutritionists recommend the «food pyramid» as a simple guide to the proper foods. At the base of the food pyramid are grains and fiber. You should eat six to eleven servings of bread cereal rice and pasta every day. Next up the pyramid are vegetables and fruit. Five to nine daily servings from this group are recommended.

The next pyramid level is the dairy group. Two or three servings a day of milk, yogurt or cheese help maintain good nutrition. Moving up the pyramid, the next level is the meat, poultry, fish, beans, eggs, and nuts group, of which everyone should eat only two to three servings a day. At the very top of the pyramid are fats, oils and sweets. These foods should be eaten only infrequently.

One easy way to plan menus that follow the food pyramid is to shop only in the outer aisles of the grocery store. In most supermarkets, fresh fruit and vegetables, dairy, fresh meat, and frozen foods are in the outer aisles of the store. Grains, like pasta, rice, bread, and cereal, are located on the next aisles, the first inner rows.

Finally, the farthest inside of the store is where you'll find chips and snacks, cookies, pastries, and soda pop. If you stay in the outer aisles of the grocery store, you won't be tempted to buy foods you shouldn't eat, and you will find a wide variety of healthy foods.

- A good title for this passage would be ..... .
  - How to avoid infection
  - How to shop efficiently
  - How to shop for unhealthy food
  - How to cook healthy food
- According to the passage, the best way to shop in the grocery store is to ..... .
  - make a list and stick to it
  - stay in the outside aisles
  - stay in the inside aisles
  - check advertisements for bargains
- According to the passage, on the inside aisles of the grocery store, you would most likely find which of the following?
  - eggs
  - bananas
  - bread
  - food chips
- According to the food pyramid, people should ..... .
  - eat more grains than meat
  - never eat fats and sweets
  - eat mostly vegetarian meals
  - rarely eat bread and other starches
- According to the passage, to maintain good health, people should ..... .
  - buy their food in expensive food stores
  - worry more about nutrition than exercise
  - exercise and eat right
  - eat from the top of the food pyramid
- The closest synonym to the underlined word "infrequently" is ..... .
  - permanently
  - regularly
  - continuously
  - rarely
- The closest antonym to the underlined word "inner" is ..... .
  - internal
  - outside
  - interior
  - hidden
- According to the passage, which of the following is **NOT** true?
  - Fats and oils can harm your health.
  - Exercising is important for good health.
  - Vegetables and fruit should be eaten frequently.
  - Cookies and snacks are necessary for good health.



### 3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Industrialisation has transformed people's lives in just over two hundred years thanks to the power of science and technology. Now high-tech machines produce high-quality products in large amounts for international markets.

- a. أحدث التصنيع تحولاً في حياة الناس خلال ما يزيد قليلاً عن مائتي عام بفضل قوة العلم والتكنولوجيا، و حالياً تنتج الآلات منتجات عالية الجودة بكميات كبيرة للأسواق الدولية.
- b. لقد أحدث التصنيع تحولاً في حياة الناس خلال ما يريد قليلاً عن مائتي عام، وذلك بفضل قوة العلم والتكنولوجيا، و حالياً تنتج الآلات عالية التقنية منتجات عالية الجودة بكميات كبيرة للأسواق الدولية.
- c. لقد أحدث التصنيع تحولاً في حياة الناس خلال ما يريد كثيراً عن مائتي عام، وذلك بفضل قوة العلم والتكنولوجيا، و حالياً تنتج الآلات عالية التقنية منتجات عالية الجودة بكميات كبيرة للأسواق الدولية.
- d. لقد أحدث التصنيع تحولاً فائئاس يعيشون خلال ما يريد قليلاً عن مائتي عام، وذلك بفضل قوة العلم والتكنولوجيا، و حالياً تنتج الآلات عالية التقنية منتجات عالية الجودة بكميات كبيرة للأسواق الدولية.

### B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

ب. مفر من ترشيد استهلاك المياه والطاقة وأن يعاد النظر في أساليب الري التقليدية، فمع زيادة عدد السكان يقل نصيب الفرد من المياه كما يزداد استهلاك الطاقة

- a. It is inevitable to rationalize water and energy assumption and to reconsider traditional irrigation methods. As the population increases, the one's share of water increases and energy consumption decreases.
- b. It is optional to rationalize water and energy consumption and to reconsider traditional irrigation methods. As the population increases, the one's share of water decreases and energy consumption increases.
- c. It is inevitable to rationalize water and energy consumption and to reconsider traditional irrigation methods. As the population increases, the one's share of water increases and energy consumption increases.
- d. It is must to rationalize water and energy consumption and reconsider traditional irrigation methods. As the population increases, the individuals share of water decreases and energy consumption increases.

### 4 Answer the following questions:

1. Edmund reflects the worst example of a son. Illustrate.
2. Cordelia set an example for us to follow. How?
3. Sooner or later, evil must be punished. How was that applied to the play?

### 5 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :

How can we help our country? Your name is Reem and your email address is: reem555@gmail.com. Your friend is Lina and her email address is: lina333@gmail.com

.....

.....

## 12 Port Said Governorate

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This ..... of bird now exists only in Africa.  
a. special                      b. species                      c. spice                      d. spices
2. '.....' is to come close to someone secretly.  
a. Range                      b. Relevant                      c. Crawl                      d. Creep up
3. Our children need some ..... to be better.  
a. invitation                      b. encouragement                      c. starvation                      d. exploration
4. They ..... the new Desert City by 2030.  
a. will finish                      b. will be finished                      c. finished                      d. will have finished
5. If someone is cruel to you, you might want to take ..... on him or her.  
a. revenge                      b. rule                      c. kingdom                      d. storm
6. In my opinion, working on a farm is far ..... tiring than working in an office.  
a. much                      b. more                      c. most                      d. little
7. The walk across the desert was very ....., but we enjoyed it.  
a. challenging                      b. boring                      c. disappointing                      d. frustrating
8. The friends with ..... I study my lessons, are helpful.  
a. who                      b. that                      c. whose                      d. whom
9. A clever ..... is trying to discover who caused the accident.  
a. correspondent                      b. journalist                      c. investigator                      d. architect
10. The tourists were tired this morning because they ..... to the top of a high mountain yesterday afternoon.  
a. had taken                      b. took                      c. were being taken                      d. had been taken
11. Ola is a clever doctor, ..... ?  
a. is Ola                      b. isn't Ola                      c. is she                      d. isn't she
12. .... are things you do or use instead of something else.  
a. Arguments                      b. Issues                      c. Alternatives                      d. Environments
13. We ..... a lot of trees near the sea, but now they are gone.  
a. had had                      b. are used to have  
c. used to have                      d. were used to have

### 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

People volunteer for a number of different reasons, one of the most important reasons is because they find something they are passionate about and want to do something good for others. People who volunteer in their community have a personal attachment to the area and want to make it a better place for themselves and for others. Many people choose to volunteer because of the personal benefits that volunteering has on their character. Indeed, a volunteer often says that the experience has made him or her a better person. In most cases, volunteers also became more concerned and aware of the better person. In most cases volunteers also became more concerned and aware of the problems facing the world and many feel that they were ignorant or **narrow**-minded before.

Voluntary work is a great way to gain experience. You can gain experience in education, social work, health care, marketing, and web designing. Volunteering is a great

way to put a little of your time and gain some valuable skills. Voluntary work can often lead to a well-paid job. Volunteers can try out a field to see if it suits them. Volunteering jobs often turn into a career to many people who try voluntary work.

1. The main idea of the passage is ..... .  
a. personal life      b. world problems      c. voluntary work      d. paid jobs
2. The underlined pronoun "it" in the passage refers to ..... .  
a. community      b. volunteer  
c. experience      d. personal attachment
3. You can gain ..... from voluntary work.  
a. time      b. money      c. problems      d. experience
4. Volunteering makes you a/an ..... person.  
a. better      b. bad      c. bored      d. ugly
5. Another word for the underlined word "narrow" is ..... .  
a. wide      b. broad      c. limited      d. spacious
6. Volunteers hope to have a/an ..... job through voluntary work.  
a. free      b. paid      c. unpaid      d. costless
7. People volunteer because they find something they are ..... .  
a. interested in      b. not caring about      c. not concerning about      d. bored of
8. Many people feel that they were ..... before voluntary work.  
a. polite      b. educated      c. unknowledgeable      d. knowledgeable

### 3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Facing global problems is the responsibility of governments as well as individuals.

Therefore, we should play a positive role in facing these challenges to lead a better life.

- a. مواجهة المشاكل العالمية هي مسؤولية الحكومات والأفراد، لذلك يجب أن نلعب دوراً محورياً في مواجهة هذه الأزمات للحياة أفضل.
- b. مواجهة المشاكل العالمية هي مسؤولية المجتمعات والأفراد، لذلك يجب أن نلعب دوراً إيجابياً في مواجهة هذه التحديات للحياة أطول.
- c. إن مواجهة المشاكل المحلية هي لمسؤولية الحكومات والأفراد، لذلك يجب أن نلعب دوراً إيجابياً في مواجهة هذه الأزمات لعيش حياة أفضل.
- d. إن مواجهة المشاكل العالمية هي مسؤولية الحكومات والأفراد، لذلك يجب أن نلعب دوراً إيجابياً في مواجهة هذه التحديات للحياة أفضل.

### B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

من أبرز مساوئ التكنولوجيا الحديثة هو أننا لم نعد نرور بعضنا البعض. يخفي معظم الناس بالتواصل مع أقاربهم ومعارفهم عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي فقط.

- a. One of the most prominent advantages of modern technology is that we usually visit each other. Most people are satisfied with communicating with their relatives and acquaintances through social media only.
- b. One of the most prominent disadvantages of modern technology is that we no longer visit each other. Most people are satisfied with communicating with their relatives and acquaintances through social media only.
- c. One of the most prominent disadvantages of modern technology is that we no longer visit each other. Most people are satisfied with communicating with their relatives and acquaintances through social media as well.
- d. One of the most recent disadvantages of modern technology is that we no longer visit each other. Most people are satisfied with communicating with their relatives and acquaintances through social media only.



**4 Answer the following questions:**

1. If you were Edmund, would you try to prove that your father is a spy?
2. Was Cordelia right to feel sad for what happened to the King? Why? Why not?
3. Who is your favourite character in the play? Give reasons.

**5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :**  
**"Your goals for the future"****13 Suez Governorate****1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The Martian is a brilliant film ..... from the bestselling book of the same name.  
 a. adopted                      b. given                      c. adapted                      d. withdrawn
2. No sooner ..... the noise than we rushed to the spot.  
 a. we did hear                      b. we had heard                      c. had we heard                      d. did we heard
3. I have already confirmed the reservation; I ..... to Rome tomorrow.  
 a. am flying                      b. had flown                      c. was flying                      d. will fly
4. Oil will dry up in the future, so all the world countries look for suitable .....  
 a. alternatives                      b. petrol                      c. alteration                      d. allocation
5. This digital camera ..... to my friend Mai.  
 a. is belonging                      b. belongs                      c. belong                      d. have belonged
6. Saturday, ..... we always play football, is always a busy day for me.  
 a. that                      b. on which                      c. where                      d. what
7. .... young men can solve the problems they face in their daily lives.  
 a. Dependent                      b. Inefficient                      c. Independent                      d. Unreliable
8. I think we ..... this task before the end of next week; we'll need more time.  
 a. will have finished                      b. have finished  
 c. are finishing                      d. won't have finished
9. The poor child said that he ..... terrible conditions after his father's death.  
 a. involved                      b. fetched                      c. faced                      d. enjoyed
10. You can overcome all your difficulties and reach your goals with .....  
 a. appearance                      b. determination                      c. avoidance                      d. facilitation
11. Mr Ahmed doesn't allow uncontrolled ..... among students in his class.  
 a. alternatives                      b. arguments                      c. systems                      d. networks
12. The writer ..... folk stories from all over the world for his new book.  
 a. scattered                      b. spread                      c. told                      d. collected
13. The Pharaohs "Golden Parade" is ..... exciting than any other parade. People all over the world enjoyed watching it.  
 a. less                      b. exactly as                      c. lot                      d. far more

## 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Anyone who has ever wondered why today's prices are so much higher than those of 100, 50, and even 25 years ago have actually considered the effects of inflation, or the decrease in value relative to overall quantity and production. To explain this definition, let's consider why today's prices are higher than those of the past. As the world population has grown, central banks, or the institutions tasked with managing countries' economies, have responded to this growth by minting, or officially creating and releasing, more money. Their reasoning for this course of action is that not having enough money in circulation could lead to panics, or economic downturns that are usually accompanied by **anxiety** over currency.

So, to reduce the chances of a panic and assure that today's citizens have access to physical money, central banks release more dollar bills and coins regularly, based upon a pre-planned schedule. As additional currency has come into circulation, its value has decreased; this is the process of inflation. What this means for consumers is that the money that they earn is worth less over time, and essentially, even though their wages might increase in amount, they will have a lesser purchasing power, or a measure of how many goods and/or services it can be exchanged for. Lastly, deflation is the process of a currency becoming more valuable due to a tight production schedule. If there was less currency around today, each dollar would be worth more—just as was the case many years ago, when some products could be purchased for pennies!

1. What effect does inflation have on currency?
  - a. It increases its value
  - b. It decreases its value
  - c. It doesn't affect its value
  - d. Economists are still trying to figure this out
2. Central banks are .....
  - a. the institutions tasked with managing countries' economies, and they mint new money
  - b. local establishments that make loans to residents
  - c. digital money distributors that protect credit card companies
  - d. None of the above
3. By minting we mean ..... more money.
  - a. officially cheating and unreleasing
  - b. formally creating and releasing
  - c. informally creating and releasing
  - d. unofficially creating and releasing
4. What is deflation, and how is it compared to inflation ?
  - a. They are basically the same.
  - b. Inflation is always good, while deflation is always bad.
  - c. Deflation is the increased value of something, while inflation is a reduced value of something.
  - d. There is no difference.
5. What is purchasing power?
  - a. The strength of one's credit score
  - b. A measure of someone's wealth
  - c. A typical measure of how many goods/services currency can be exchanged for
  - d. a & b

6. Which explanation can readers get from this text ?  
 a. How people get older                      b. How prices increase  
 c. The importance of having credit cards      d. The value of money
7. In which context would the author MOST LIKELY write this text ?  
 a. Philosophy                      b. Medicine                      c. Business                      d. Arts
8. It can be inferred from the passage that the word "anxiety" means .....  
 a. power                      b. strength                      c. worry                      d. comfort

**3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Education is the basis of progress and development for peoples and countries of the world, whether developed or developing. This is because it helps us prepare generations of citizens who are capable of making a difference.

- a. التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتنمية للناس وعالم الدول سواء المتقدمة أو النامية وذلك لأنه يساعدنا في تجهيز أجيال من المواطنين القادرين على إحداث التغيير.
- b. التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتنمية للشعوب ودول العالم سواء التي تقدمت أو تسعى للتقدم وذلك لأنه يساعدنا في إعداد أجيال من المواطنين القادرين على إحداث الفرق.
- c. التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتنمية للشعوب ودول العالم سواء المتقدمة أو النامية، وذلك لأنه يساعدنا في إعداد أجيال من المواطنين القادرين على إحداث التغيير.
- d. لتعليم هو الأساس في التقدم والتنمية للشعوب ودول العالم سواء المتقدمة أو النامية كذلك لأنه يساعدنا في إعداد مولدات للمواطنين القادرين على إحداث التغيير.

**B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

علينا أن نشجع شبابنا على الذهاب للتخييم، ذلك يمكنهم من الاستفادة من أوقات فراغهم بطريقة مفيدة ويعلمهم التعاون و الانضباط والاحترام.

- a. We have to encourage our youth to go to the camp. It enables them to use their spare time in a useful way. It teaches them cooperation, discipline, and respectful.
- b. We must encourage our youth to go camping. It disables them to make use of their spare time in a useful way. It teaches them cooperation, discipline, and respect.
- c. We have to encourage our young to go camping. It enables them to make use of their spare time in a useful way. It teaches them cooperation, disciplined, and respect.
- d. We have to encourage our youth to go camping. It enables them to make use of their spare time in a useful way. It teaches them cooperation, discipline, and respect.

**4 Answer the following questions:**

1. In your opinion, who was the most favourite character in the play? Why?
2. Do you think Cordelia returned to England to take revenge on her sisters?
3. Why do you think Oswald thought that Gloucester would make him rich?

**5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :**

"Your future goals and ambitions"

.....

.....



## 14 Ismailia Governorate

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The new hotel has lots of modern ..... , including a gym and swimming pool.  
a. facilities                      b. inventors                      c. discoverers                      d. innovators
2. Young children are not very ..... and need a lot of help and support.  
a. independent                      b. dependent                      c. deceived                      d. ruined
3. Being rich and famous by the age of 18 is not a very ..... goal for everyone.  
a. motivated                      b. time-bound                      c. set                      d. achievable
4. We need to do our best to ..... the variety of species on our planet.  
a. preserve                      b. cure                      c. heal                      d. remain
5. A lot of benefits can ..... from voluntary work for people of any age.  
a. raise                      b. arise                      c. rise                      d. arouse
6. Scientists could ..... the power of the sun to produce electricity.  
a. disappear                      b. demonstrate                      c. harness                      d. survive
7. The journalist refused to reveal his ..... saying it was a top secret.  
a. sauce                      b. resort                      c. source                      d. servant
8. You've worked as a mechanic for many years now, ..... ?  
a. didn't you                      b. weren't you                      c. haven't you                      d. have you
9. The footballer, ..... face is often on TV, scored three goals today.  
a. who                      b. that                      c. whom                      d. whose
10. Before Ahmed went to the UK in the winter, he ..... snow.  
a. doesn't                      b. would see                      c. had never seen                      d. has not seen
11. A technician ..... the air conditioner before we move into the new house.  
a. has checked                      b. will have checked                      c. had checked                      d. was checking
12. I wish I ..... more for this test; I can't answer a lot of questions.  
a. study                      b. had studied                      c. have studied                      d. studied
13. My little sister ..... when I do my homework and it makes me angry!  
a. is always singing                      b. always sang                      c. always sing                      d. used to sing

### 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Ecotourism is a type of tourism that focuses on nature and the environment. It is a responsible and sustainable way of travelling, which aims to conserve the natural environment, protect wildlife, and support local communities.

Ecotourism offers travellers an opportunity to experience the beauty of nature while learning about the environment and **conservation** efforts. This type of tourism also supports the local economy by providing jobs and income for local people.

Ecotourism is different from traditional tourism because it promotes responsible travel practices. It encourages travellers to minimise their impact on the environment and to support sustainable tourism practices. This includes using eco-friendly products, reducing waste, and respecting local cultures and traditions.

Ecotourism also supports conservation efforts by providing funding for environmental initiatives and wildlife protection. This helps to preserve natural habitats and protect endangered species.

In conclusion, ecotourism is a sustainable and responsible way of travelling that aims to conserve the natural environment, protect wildlife, and support local communities. It offers travellers a unique and educational experience while promoting responsible travel practices and conservation efforts.

1. In ecotourism, travellers .....
  - a. minimise their impact on the environment
  - b. maximise their impact on the environment
  - c. ignore local cultures and traditions
  - d. buy expensive souvenirs
2. What does ecotourism support in terms of conservation efforts?
  - a. Industrialization and urbanization
  - b. Overconsumption of natural resources
  - c. Waste production
  - d. Environmental initiatives and wildlife protection
3. Which of the following is NOT a characteristic of ecotourism?
  - a. Responsible travel practices
  - b. Luxury accommodations
  - c. Support for local communities
  - d. Conservation efforts
4. What is the opposite of “**conservation**”?
 

a. Preservation	b. Saving	c. Wasting	d. Protection
-----------------	-----------	------------	---------------
5. What does the underlined pronoun “It” refer to?
 

a. Ecotourism	b. The local economy
c. The environment	d. Traditional tourism
6. Ecotourism is defined as .....
  - a. tourism that focuses on the environment
  - b. tourism that focuses on historical sites
  - c. tourism that focuses on shopping
  - d. tourism that focuses on luxury accommodations
7. Among the purposes of ecotourism is to .....
  - a. support international travel
  - b. promote responsible travel practices
  - c. maximise profits for tourism companies
  - d. promote luxury travel experiences
8. Ecotourism supports the local economy by .....
  - a. reducing the number of tourists visiting the area
  - b. providing jobs and income for local people
  - c. promoting international trade
  - d. building luxury resorts and hotels

### 3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Global interest in environmental affairs has increased recently. The media has helped focus light on environmental problems such as pollution, desertification, and others.

a. لقد قل الاهتمام العالمي بشئون البيئة في الفترة الأخيرة. فقد ساعدت وسائل الإعلام على تركيز الضوء على المشكلات البيئية مثل التلوث والتصحر وغيرها

b. لقد ازداد الاهتمام العالمي بشئون البيئة في الفترة الأخيرة. فقد ساعدت وسائل الإعلام على تركيز الضوء على المشكلات البيئية مثل التلوث والتصحر وغيرها.

c. لقد ازداد الاهتمام العالمي بشئون البيئة في الفترة الأخيرة. فقد ساعدت وسائل الإعلام على تركيز الضوء على المشكلات البيئية مثل التلوث والتصحر وغيرها

d. لقد ازداد الاهتمام العالمي بشئون البيئة في الفترة الأخيرة. فقد ساعدت وسائل الإعلام على تشتيت الضوء على المشكلات البيئية مثل التلوث والتصحر وغيرها

### B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

من المهم الاستماع إلى الآخرين باهتمام حتى لو لم تتفق مع الآراء المطروحة. فلك حق الاعتراض بأسلوب مناسب ولكن في النهاية عليك احترام آراء الآخرين.

a. It is important to listen to others carelessly, even if you do not agree with the opinions expressed. You have the right to object in an appropriate manner, but in the end, you must respect the opinions of others.

b. It is unimportant to listen to others carefully, even if you agree with the opinions expressed. You have the right to object in an appropriate manner, but in the end, you must respect the opinions of others.

c. It is important to listen to others carefully, even if you agree with the opinions expressed. You have the right to object in an appropriate manner, but in the end, you must respect the opinions of others.

d. It is important to listen to others carefully, even if you do not agree with the opinions expressed. You have the right to object in an appropriate manner, but in the end, you must respect the opinions of others.

### 4 Answer the following questions:

1. Why, do you think, both Regan and Goneril asked for Edmund's support?
2. Edmund is a greedy person who would do anything to reach his ambitions. Do you agree? Why?
3. Gloucester seemed to love the King very much. Do you agree? Why?

### 5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :

"The advantages and disadvantages of using the media to share an important message."

## 19 Beni Suef Governorate

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I asked my friend to ..... me up from the airport.

- a. back                      b. get                      c. have                      d. pick

2. Using ..... transport reduces pollution.

- a. public                      b. special                      c. republic                      d. noisy



3. Our environment must be ..... to protect the endangered species.  
a. polluted                      b. preserved                      c. challenged                      d. damaged
4. To ..... is to send out a programme on TV or radio.  
a. broadcast                      b. interview                      c. transport                      d. dream
5. Dickens was a very ..... writer. He wrote great novels.  
a. weak                      b. helpful                      c. talented                      d. confused
6. Everything is arranged. I ..... to London next week.  
a. travel                      b. going to travel                      c. am being travelled                      d. am travelling
7. By 2026, the construction of the New Capital ..... completed.  
a. will                      b. will have been                      c. won't                      d. is going to
8. He is much ..... his classmates.  
a. tall                      b. the tallest                      c. taller than                      d. taller
9. My parents always gave me a lot of support and .....  
a. determination                      b. encouragement                      c. independent                      d. struggle
10. The Cairo Metro network is now a lot bigger, and the ..... work is in progress.  
a. animation                      b. intention                      c. expansion                      d. destruction
11. .... seeing the fierce dog, I was very frightened.  
a. During                      b. On                      c. As soon as                      d. Having
12. Lions don't eat grass, ..... ?  
a. aren't they                      b. does it                      c. don't they                      d. do they
13. It was raining ..... I took two hours to come home.  
a. heavy                      b. heavily                      c. as heavy                      d. heavy that

## 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

My name is Sara. Last week, I had a very bad day. It was really a nightmare! I had a job interview, but I forgot to set the alarm clock. I overslept and couldn't have a shower or breakfast. I went to the garage putting on my shoes and setting my hair at the same time. The car wouldn't start, and I was only able to make it work at the third time I tried. The traffic was awful and I arrived at the parking garage five minutes before the interview. Luckily I found a spot, but a guy in a red Mercedes tried to take it. I cut him off and managed to put my car there and - of course - he didn't like it, he complained not in a nice way and I had to tell him what I think of people like him. I was quarrelling with that foolish person when I slammed my finger in the car door, and I was so nervous that I didn't notice the keys were still in the car and locked it. I didn't have time to deal with it at that moment, so I rushed to arrive for the interview on time and guess who the interviewer was: the guy I met at the parking garage! I wish I hadn't gotten up today.

1. Why did the writer oversleep?  
a. She forgot about the interview.                      b. She didn't have an alarm clock.  
c. She didn't want to go to the interview.                      d. She didn't set the alarm clock.
2. The underlined word "slammed" probably means .....  
a. hit                      b. ran                      c. fell                      d. liked

3. We understand from the passage that Sara talked to the man in the garage .....  
 a. politely                      b. nicely                      c. persuasively                      d. nervously
4. The opposite of the underlined word "awful" is .....  
 a. terrible                      b. bad                      c. wonderful                      d. kind
5. How would you feel after a day like that?  
 a. Relaxed                      b. Convenient                      c. Miserable                      d. Happy
6. Sara's car ..... at that day.  
 a. started immediately                      b. started at the third trial  
 c. didn't start                      d. started at the first trial
7. What could be the best title for this passage?  
 a. A Suitable Parking                      b. A Bad Interviewer                      c. A Terrible Car                      d. A Bad Day
8. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to .....  
 a. the car                      b. the interview                      c. the keys                      d. the garage

**3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

The government tries to solve the problem of unemployment by providing the youth with job opportunities. This can be done by carrying out a lot of national projects.

- a. تسعى الحكومة لحل مشكلة البطالة وذلك بتوفير فرص عمل للشباب. وهذا يمكن تحقيقه بتنفيذ الكثير من المشروعات القومية
- b. تسعى الحكومة للقضاء على مشكلة البطالة وذلك بتوفير فرص عمل للكبار. وهذا لا يمكن تحقيقه بتنفيذ الكثير من المشروعات القومية
- c. تسعى الحكومة للقضاء على مشكلة البطالة وذلك بتوفير قروض للشباب. وهذا يمكن تحقيقه بتنفيذ الكثير من المشروعات القومية
- d. تسعى الحكومة للقضاء على مشكلة التوظيف وذلك بتوفير فرص عمل لشباب، وهذا يمكن تحقيقه بتنفيذ بعض من المشروعات القومية.

**B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

لقد وهب الله مصر كثيرا من المصادر الطبيعية فهي تتمتع بموقع فريد ومناخ معتدل طوال ايام، والكثير من الشواطئ الجميلة والأراضي الخصبة. لذلك يزورها السائحون من كل أنحاء العالم.

- a. Allah has granted Egypt a lot of natural resources; it has a unique location, a moderate climate throughout the year and a lot of beautiful beaches and fertile lands. Therefore, tourists from all over the world visit it.
- b. Allah has granted Egypt a lot of national resources; it has a normal creation, a moderate climate throughout the year and it a lot of beautiful beaches and fertile lands. Therefore, tourists from all over the world visit it.
- c. Allah has granted Egypt a lot of international resources; it has a unique location, a moderate climate throughout the year and it a lot of beautiful beaches and fertile lands. Therefore, tours from all over the world like it.
- d. Allah has granted Egypt a lot of natural resources; it has a good location, a cruel crime throughout the year and it a lot of beautiful beaches and fertile lands. Therefore, tourists from all over the world visit it.

**4 Answer the following questions:**

1. Which character did you like most in the play «King Lear»? Why?
2. Do you think Lear went mad?
3. In your opinion, what do Edgar and Cordelia have in common?

- 5** Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :  
"Your goals in life"
- .....
- .....

### 16 Fayoum Governorate

علمية - ثقافة اللغة الإنجليزية

**1** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Don't worry if you have ..... with the course in the beginning. After a few weeks, you'll get used to the lessons.  
a. trouble                      b. struggle                      c. damage                      d. hurt
- The teacher said that my answer to the exam question was not ..... I wrote about the wrong book!  
a. easy                      b. measurable                      c. relevant                      d. achievable
- If you want to find out some information on the internet, use a good ..... engine.  
a. search                      b. channel                      c. electric                      d. machine
- Some work on the Cairo Metro network is now complete, and there will be further ..... work in the future.  
a. expansion                      b. facility                      c. experience                      d. expression
- I think they ..... all of their homework before school starts tomorrow.  
a. won't be finished                      b. won't have finished  
c. will have been finished                      d. haven't finished
- We need to take action to help ..... our environment healthy.  
a. deserve                      b. reverse                      c. reserve                      d. preserve
- There ..... enough facilities for local people, but now there are a lot of them.  
a. didn't use to be                      b. used to be                      c. would be                      d. didn't use to have
- The show of the new band was ..... live across Europe.  
a. arranged                      b. accepted                      c. broadcast                      d. investigated
- Which of the following is **structurally correct**?  
a. I haven't handed in my answer sheet until I'd gone over all the questions again.  
b. I didn't hand in my answer sheet until I'd gone over all of the questions again.  
c. I won't hand in my answer sheet until I went over all the questions again.  
d. I didn't hand in my answer sheet until I've gone all the questions again.
- In this ..... film, two young bears get lost on a mountain. What a nice cartoon!  
a. action                      b. historical                      c. musical                      d. animation
- He can hardly come late, ..... ?  
a. can't he                      b. can he                      c. won't he                      d. could he
- London, ..... is on the River Thames, is the capital of the United Kingdom.  
a. what                      b. where                      c. that                      d. which
- Ali is ..... Rami. They are the same height.  
a. slightly shorter than                      b. almost as tall as                      c. much taller than                      d. exactly as tall as



## 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Most of us would like to live a long and healthy life. Increasingly, doctors are telling us that, in order to do so, we must eat a healthy diet. Too often we ignore the advice. In most countries of the developed world, there is no shortage of food, but their inhabitants could be suffering from a form of malnutrition. This is something that we are accustomed to associate with poor countries which regularly suffer from famine, caused by primitive agricultural methods and over-population.

The problem in the developed countries is that people are eating food which is far from being nutritious and which is lacking in many of the vitamins essential to health. Because of the busy way of life, people rely too much on convenience foods, not taking the time to prepare a nourishing meal for themselves.

Even when people decide to eat in a restaurant, many of them decide that they have very little time and that their food must be served instantly. For this reason, there are, in many countries, so many restaurants that specialize in serving fast food. Unfortunately, much of this food is also junk food, and even more unfortunately many children have become addicted to this, refusing to eat healthier alternatives.

Ideally, people should eat more cereal products in order to reduce the risk of certain cancers. Antioxidants are thought to have some effect in preventing cancer and these are found in significant quantities in fruit and vegetables.

1. Why do people in developed countries suffer from malnutrition?
  - a. Because of bad agriculture.
  - b. Because they have an inactive lifestyle.
  - c. Because of insufficient food.
  - d. Because of unhealthy eating habits.
2. Why do people in poor countries suffer from malnutrition?
  - a. Because of food shortage.
  - b. Because of poor eating habits.
  - c. Because of good agriculture.
  - d. Because of poor soil conditions.
3. What is the benefit of cereal products?
  - a. They fight cancer.
  - b. They have protein.
  - c. They strengthen muscles.
  - d. They make us fast.
4. What do doctors advise people to do to live healthily?
  - a. To run more.
  - b. To exercise regularly.
  - c. To eat a healthy diet.
  - d. To have regular check-ups.
5. What does the underlined word "that" refer to?
  - a. famine
  - b. food
  - c. food shortage
  - d. malnutrition
6. What does the underlined word "nutritious" mean?
  - a. healthy
  - b. notorious
  - c. junk
  - d. inconvenient
7. .... products are kinds of food that are recommended for good health.
  - a. Critical
  - b. Cereal
  - c. Crucial
  - d. Casual
8. What causes lack of food in poor countries?
  - a. Developed agricultural methods
  - b. Primitive over-population
  - c. The increased number of people
  - d. Primitive technological means

### 3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Artificial intelligence (AI) is the ability of a system or a program to think and learn from the experience. It has found its applications in almost all fields of our life.

- ا. الذكاء الاصطناعي هو قدرة نظام أو برنامج على التفكير والتعلم من التجربة ولقد وجدت تطبيقاته في كل مجالات حياتنا تقريباً.  
 ب. الذكاء الاصطناعي هو موهبة نظام أو برنامج على التأمل والتعلم من التجربة ولقد وجدت تطبيقاته في كل مجالات حياتنا تقريباً.  
 ج. الذكاء الاصطناعي هو قدرة نظام أو برنامج على التفكير والتعلم من التجربة ولقد وجدت إبداعاته في كل مجالات حياتنا تقريباً.  
 د. الذكاء الاصطناعي هو قدرة نظام أو برنامج على التفكير والتعلم من التجربة ولقد وجدت إبداعاته في كل مجالات حياتنا بالكامل.

### B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

تشير ظاهرة تشغيل الأطفال إلى استغلالهم في أشكال مختلفة من العمل بما يحرمهم من طفولتهم ويمنعهم من الذهاب إلى المدرسة ويؤثر عليهم جسدياً واجتماعياً ومعنوياً.

- a. Child labour refers to the exploitation of children in different forms of crime that deprives them of their childhood, prevents them from going to school and affects them psychologically, physically, socially and morally.  
 b. Child labour aims at the exploitation of children in different forms of work that frightens them of their childhood, prevents them from going to school and affects them physically, socially and morally.  
 c. The phenomenon of child labour refers to the exploitation of children in different forms of work that deprives them of their childhood, prevents them from going to gardens and affects them physically, socially, and economically.  
 d. The phenomenon of child labour refers to exploiting children in various forms of work that deprives them of their childhood, prevents them from going to school and affects them physically, socially, and morally.

### 4 Answer the following questions:

1. What do you think of Cornwall's punishment of Gloucester?
2. Who was your favourite character in the play? Give reason.
3. In your opinion, what is the moral of King Lear?

### 5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :

“What's the relation between good education and having a good job?”

## Minia Governorate

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Which of the following is **grammatically correct** ?
  - a. How many people will have been died before a cure for Covid-19 is found?
  - b. How many people will be dying before a cure for Covid-19 is found?
  - c. How many people will have been dead before a cure for Covid-19 is found?
  - d. How many people had died before Covid-19 is found?
2. The hospital needs more staff as every 15 patients are ..... by one nurse.
  - a. attended
  - b. pretended
  - c. described
  - d. prescribed

3. The final match of the Champions League is played at a neutral .....  
 a. venue                      b. position                      c. landscape                      d. placement
4. This soup ..... good. I really like it.  
 a. has been tasting                      b. tastes                      c. is tasting                      d. was tasting
5. Olive is a healthy alternative to butter. The synonym of the word "alternative" is .....  
 a. option                      b. necessity                      c. division                      d. decision
6. The documents aren't ..... to the public as they are secret.  
 a. accessible                      b. avoidable                      c. stressful                      d. unreliable
7. Pollution is a global ..... that is discussed everywhere.  
 a. issue                      b. tissue                      c. ratio                      d. rate
8. Children may eat pills by ....., so we should keep medicines away of their reach.  
 a. error                      b. mistake                      c. accident                      d. change
9. They never go on holiday, ..... ?  
 a. don't they                      b. never do they                      c. are they                      d. do they
10. The workers escaped just as the factory was in ..... and saved their lives.  
 a. races                      b. flames                      c. fires                      d. waves
11. As soon as I arrived at the station, the train came. This means that .....  
 a. The train came first, then I reached the station.  
 b. The train came at the same time of my arrival.  
 c. The train came and left before my arrival.  
 d. The train came after my arrival.
12. The road ..... the two villages is very narrow.  
 a. join                      b. joining                      c. which is joining                      d. who is joining
13. My father no longer smokes as he .....  
 a. used to be                      b. used to have                      c. is used to                      d. used to

**2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

A clever person used to mean a person who would exert efforts to achieve a legitimate aim. Hence, a clever pupil is a bright one who makes the best of his educational chances. A clever lawyer is one who handles the law so as to prove that his client is right. A clever doctor gives the right diagnosis for his patients and prescribes the right medicine for them. This is perfectly in a simple society, which will allow a good number of people to do their best to succeed in their pursuits or better their life conditions. But in a society that has grown in complexity so that only the fittest can survive, the term has taken a new meaning. If two persons have one chance, the cleverer of them is the one who can push the other out of the way to secure the chance for himself. A clever lawyer in the sense of the word is the one who manages to prove the innocence of a wrong doer. A doctor who **entices** more patients to go to him and consequently makes more money out of them would be a clever doctor. A company whose products are not much in demand, employs a clever marketing manager to increase its sales. Even in government offices, there are clever social climbers that **get all gains with the least efforts**.

Yet, there are still honest people in society who have a reputation for doing what they are convinced is right.



1. A suitable title for the passage is .....
  - a. A chance for oneself
  - b. Honest and dishonest people
  - c. A simple society
  - d. A nice narrative story
2. An honest doctor .....
  - a. prescribes the wrong medicine
  - b. entices more patients to go to him
  - c. gives the right diagnosis
  - d. makes as much money as he can from his patients
3. According to the passage, honest people are those who .....
  - a. do wrong things
  - b. get all gains with the least efforts
  - c. have good reputation for doing right things
  - d. prove the innocence of guilty people
4. The underlined word "**entices**" in the second paragraph can be replaced with .....
  - a. helps
  - b. gives
  - c. persuades
  - d. neglects
5. It can be inferred from the passage that the writer .....
  - a. agrees to the use of the term clever with all actions
  - b. objects to the use of the term clever to justify wrong actions
  - c. admires clever people who twist facts
  - d. encourages people to be clever and do whatever they like
6. The writer used the expression "**get all gains with least efforts**" to reflect that those so called clever people .....
  - a. work hard
  - b. get what they deserve
  - c. get more than they deserve
  - d. are good examples to follow
7. The underlined adjective "**his**" in the third line refers to .....
  - a. the doctor
  - b. the lawyer
  - c. the patient
  - d. the pupil
8. Companies employ marketing manager when their products ..... well.
  - a. sold
  - b. aren't sold
  - c. increase
  - d. rises

### 3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Mass media have a great influence on the minds of people everywhere. That's why advertisers use them to promote their sales and gain more profits.

- a. وسائل الإعلام لها تأثير كبير على عقول الناس في كل بلد. لهذا السبب يستخدمها المعلنون للترويج لمبيعاتهم و كسب المزيد من الأرباح.
- b. وسائل الإعلام لها تأثير كبير على عقول الناس في كل مكان. لهذا السبب يستخدمها المعلنون للترويج لمبيعاتهم و كسب المزيد من الأرباح.
- c. وسائل الإعلام لها تأثير كبير على عقول الناس في كل مكان. لهذا السبب يستخدمها المعلنون للترويج لمبيعاتهم و كسب القليل من الأرباح.
- d. وسائل الإعلام لها تأثير كبير على عقول الناس في كل مكان. لهذا السبب يستخدمها المعلنون للترويج لمبيعاتهم و كسب المزيد من المبيعات.

**B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

أثبتت التجربة العميقة أن العلم سلاح ذو حدين، فهو نعمة إذا استخدم في الخير، و نعمة إذا استخدم في الشر و الدمار.

- Practical experience was proven that science is a double-edged weapon, as it is a blessing if it is used for good and a curse if it is used for evil and destruction.
- Practical experience has proven that science is a double-edged weapon, as it is a blessing if it is used for good, and a curse if it is used for evil and destruction.
- Practical experience has proven that science is a double-edged weapon, as it is a blessing if it is used for good and a curse if it is used for evil and construction.
- Practical experiences has proven that knowledge is a double-edged weapon, as it is a blessing whether it is used for good , and a curse if it is used for evil and destruction .

**4 Answer the following questions:**

- In your opinion, was Edmund successful in his plot against his father? Why?
- "All men should help each other. The rich especially should help the poor". What does this sentence show about Gloucester?
- If you have to choose a character, who would you choose to be your favourite one? Why?

**5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :**

"A role model you have admired and you are longing to be like him"

.....

.....

**10 Assiut Governorate****1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- I ..... about going to the sports club.  
a. thought                      b. am thought                      c. think                      d. am thinking
- How much ..... on your project in two months' time?  
a. will you be done                      b. will you do  
c. will you have done                      d. will you have been done
- He is British. He is a ..... speaker of English.  
a. native                      b. foreigner                      c. second                      d. multi-
- The trip to Canada was ..... expensive than the trip to India.  
a. slightly more                      b. as slightly                      c. almost as                      d. the same as
- When Radwa arrived at the cinema, the film .....  
a. has already started    b. have never started    c. had already started    d. did never start
- Let's travel by car, ..... ?  
a. don't you                      b. don't we                      c. shall we                      d. will you
- I was ..... from the airport in a taxi sent by my father.  
a. determined                      b. used to                      c. picked up                      d. come across
- We watched a ..... film last night. We were ..... during watching it.  
a. frightened-frightening                      b. frightening-frightened  
c. terrified-terrifying                      d. scared-scary

9. The troublemaker refused to ..... that breaking the window was his fault.  
a. deny                      b. defy                      c. detect                      d. admit
10. Khalid excelled at maths and won a ..... to Pharaohs University last year.  
a. championship              b. scholarship              c. friendship              d. hardship
11. Salah showed a ..... for football at a very young age.  
a. version                      b. talent                      c. documentary              d. scenery
12. Only one passenger ..... the car accident.  
a. harnessed                      b. demonstrated              c. adapted                      d. survived
13. All of us turn to the internet and ..... media for news.  
a. society                      b. social                      c. sociable                      d. salty

**2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

A tremendous difference is made to a community by its volunteers. This difference shapes the community for the better. When a group of people volunteer to achieve a certain goal such as curing a disease, helping a local family that has fallen in a time of calamity, planting more trees in streets or painting street walls of a local area. This makes a good community whose life is improved by helping others and giving a hand to get a job done more effectively. Furthermore, the volunteer's experience, who participates, improves. The more people working, the less work for each person and the less time for the project.

The person, who donates their time to achieve a job for their community or for their local people, gains experience and personal skills such as communication skills, ability to lead a group of people, ability to work under pressure and ability to work with different people, thus companies search for a person who is qualified and armed with such skills. This means that employers realise that volunteers who devote their time for activities to help others free of charge will definitely devote more time for work and for a better salary. Employers are also sure that those are the most honest, conscientious and hardworking ones.

The benefits of volunteers and the reasons for its importance mean not only bringing hope, joy, pleasure and happiness to the needy, but also personal growth for the volunteer.

1. The main idea of the passage is : .....  
a. Volunteers make a tremendous difference to the community  
b. The skills volunteers gain through volunteering  
c. The benefits and the importance of volunteering  
d. Improving the life of a community
2. One of the advantages of volunteering is .....  
a. the volunteer falls in a time of calamity  
b. the employer is qualified and armed with different skills  
c. the participant volunteer's experience improves  
d. the volunteer achieves the project in less time
3. Big companies tend to employ qualified persons who .....  
a. give a hand to get a job done more effectively  
b. achieve a certain goal such as curing a disease  
c. plant more trees in streets or paint street walls  
d. devote more time for work and for a better salary



4. The writer focused on ..... in the second paragraph of his article.
- the skills acquired through volunteering
  - the salary offered to skilled volunteers
  - the experience improved through volunteering
  - the difference made that changes community
5. The underlined pronoun "those" refers to ..... .
- local people
  - volunteers
  - employers
  - the needy
6. Employers .....
- participate in volunteering and improve persons' experience.
  - bring happiness and pleasure to the needy.
  - gain experience and skills for their companies.
  - choose skilled and qualified employees for their companies.
7. According to the passage, volunteering benefits .....
- local people
  - volunteers
  - the needy
  - all mentioned
8. The volunteer is a person who .....
- searches for a better salary
  - loves serving people around them
  - cures a disease for sick people
  - falls in a time of calamity

**3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Although inventions and discoveries have made life easier for us, they have done damage to the environment as well as living beings.

- على الرغم من أن الاختراعات و الاكتشافات جعلت الحياة أسهل لنا فإنها أحدثت ضرر للبيئة وأيضاً الكائنات الحية.
- على الرغم من أن الاختراعات و الاكتشافات تجعل الحياة سهلة لنا فإنها تحدث أذى للبيئة وأيضاً الكائنات الحية.
- على الرغم من أن المخترعون و المكتشفون جعلوا الحياة أسهل لنا فإنهم أحدثوا ضرر للبيئة وأيضاً الكائنات الحية.
- على الرغم من أن الاختراعات و الاكتشافات قد تجعل الحياة سهلة لنا فإنها تحدث ضرر للبيئة وأيضاً الكائنات الحية.

**B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

إن علاقات مصر القوية مع جميع دول العالم تعزز دورها في حل المشاكل و نشر السلم.

- Egypt's strong tie with all countries of the world enhances its role in solving problems and promoting peace.
- Egypt's strong ties with all countries of the world enhance its role in solving problems and promoting peace.
- Egypt's strong ties with all countries of the world enhance its rule in solving problems and promoting peace.
- Egypt's strong ties with all countries of the world enhance its role in solving problems and disporting peace.

**4 Answer the following questions:**

- Do you think Goneril was a good wife? Why?
- Why do you think Regan wanted to kill Gloucester?
- Lear described himself as a foolish old man. Do you agree? Why?

**5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :**

"The advantages and the disadvantages of using public transport"

.....

.....

**1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Doctors say that viruses can reach the lung through a number of different .....  
 a. routes                      b. ranges                      c. issues                      d. stretches
2. Although medical scientists could know the causes of cancer, they don't yet know any ..... way to prevent it.  
 a. psychological              b. visible                      c. voluntary                      d. practical
3. Which sentence is NOT correct ?  
 a. She would play tennis in her free time in the past.  
 b. She would call me after the class to chat.  
 c. She wouldn't help me when I was in trouble.  
 d. She would tell me stories before I slept.
4. Dad ..... me in everything he does to take the responsibility of the family during his absence.  
 a. rewards                      b. involves                      c. volunteers                      d. faces
5. My brother wishes he ..... the job offered to him last year. Now, he is broke.  
 a. had taken                      b. took                      c. would take                      d. takes
6. A: How is your ill aunt today? B: She is very well. What part of speech is "well" here?  
 a. an adjective                      b. a pronoun                      c. an adverb                      d. a conjunction
7. A dam is a man-made construction ..... built on a water source.  
 a. which                                      b. where  
 c. no relative pronoun                      d. whose
8. My naughty little nephew makes my wife's blood run ..... He always shows up all of a sudden and does tricks to scare her.  
 a. away                      b. high                      c. freezing                      d. cold
9. This child is the cutest of all his friends, ..... ?  
 a. aren't they                      b. doesn't he                      c. isn't he                      d. isn't it
10. Mai speaks Italian so ..... She always comes last at that subject.  
 a. bad                      b. wrong                      c. terrible                      d. terribly
11. Real Madrid's loss to Barcelona in the Spanish League was a bitter pill to .....  
 a. spill                      b. control                      c. drink                      d. swallow
12. Honourably Qatar ..... the last championship of the World Cup last year.  
 a. distracted                      b. stressed                      c. hosted                      d. posted
13. Charities in Egypt ..... needy families especially in poor villages in Upper Egypt.  
 a. support                      b. import                      c. export                      d. report

## 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Richard Turer, who is aged thirteen, is a clever African boy. Though he doesn't like lions, this bright boy has devised an innovative solution that's helping the survival of these **magnificent** beasts by keeping them away from humans. Turer first became responsible for herding and safeguarding his family's cattle when he was nine. But often, his valuable livestock would be raided by the lions roaming the park's sweet grasses, leaving him to count the losses. So, he decided it was time to put an end to this and prevent it happening again. His **light bulb moment** came with one small observation he made. One day, when he was walking around, he discovered that the lions were scared of the moving lights. He thought he found the answer. He put his young mind to work and a few weeks later, he had come up with an innovative, simple and low-cost system to scare the predators away. He fitted a series of flashing bulbs onto poles around the livestock enclosure. The lights were wired to a box with switches and to an old car battery powered by a solar panel. They were designed to flicker on and off intermittently, thus tricking the lions into believing that someone was moving around carrying a flashlight. And it worked. What's more impressive is that Turer devised and installed the whole system by himself, without receiving any training in electronics or engineering.

- The most suitable title for the passage could be ".....".  
 a. The lion King and the clever boy      b. High Technology distracts lions  
 c. The invention of the flashing light bulb      d. Necessity is the mother of invention
- ..... are these animals that consume only meat of other animals.  
 a. Carnivores      b. Omnivores      c. Cannibals      d. Herbivores
- What is "a light bulb moment"?  
 a. A moment of thinking      b. A moment of reflection  
 c. A moment of inspiration      d. A moment of silence
- The bright boy devised his innovative system to distract lions when he was .....  
 a. a teen      b. a toddler      c. an infant      d. a kid
- Which of the following statements best describes Richard's character?  
 a. Turer has an insight into things around him.  
 b. Turer has an inferior view of things around him.  
 c. Turer has a shallow look of things around him.  
 d. Turer has a condescending idea of things around him.
- According to the passage, which of the following is TRUE?  
 a. The low-cost system scared all dangerous animals away.  
 b. Turer was responsible for herding and safeguarding his family's cattle for nine years.  
 c. Turer tricked the lions by using flashing light bulbs powered by a solar panel.  
 d. Solar panel charged the car battery to switch on and off the flashing lights.
- Turer devised and installed his whole system .....  
 a. on his own      b. of his own      c. by alone      d. of himself
- The underlined word "**magnificent**" is similar in meaning to .....  
 a. severe      b. dangerous      c. splendid      d. ugly



**3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

If the role of the teacher is to teach, the role of a student must be to learn. However, learning is not an exercise in reading and reciting facts, but in gaining a deeper insight of events and situations.

- ا. إذا كان دور المعلم هو التدريس، فيجب أن يكون دور الطالب أن يتعلم ومع ذلك، التعلم ليس مجرد تمرين في قراءة وترديد الحقائق، ولكن في اكتساب رؤية أعمق للأحداث والمواقف.
- ب. إذا كان دور المعلم هو التدريس، فيجب أن يكون دور الطالب أن يعلم ومع ذلك، التعلم ليس مجرد تمرين في قراءة وترديد الحقائق، ولكن في اكتساب رؤية أعمق للأحداث والمواقف.
- ج. إذا كان دور المعلم هو التدريس، فيجب أن يكون دور الطالب أن يعلم ومع ذلك، التعلم ليس مجرد تمرين في قراءة وترديد الحقائق، ولكن في اكتساب رؤية أعمق للأحداث والمواقف.
- د. إذا كان دور المتعلم هو التدريس، فيجب أن يكون دور الطالب أن يتعلم. ومع ذلك، التعلم ليس مجرد تمرين في قراءة وترديد الحقائق، ولكن في اكتساب رؤية أعمق للأحداث والمواقف.

**B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

ثقة الفرد في نفسه وقدراته، ومواهبه، وإمكانياته، وإيمانه الداخلي بقواه الذهنية والنفسية واليدوية يجلبان له السعادة.

- a. The individual's trust in himself, his abilities, talents, potentials, and his inter belief in his mental, psychological and physical strengths bring him happiness.
- b. The individual's trust in himself, his abilities, talents, properties, and his inter belief in his mental, psychological and physical strengthens bring him happiness.
- c. The individual's confidence in himself, his abilities, talents, potentials, and his inter belief in his mental, psychological and physical strengthens bring him happiness.
- d. The individual's confidence in himself, his abilities, talents, potentials, and his inner belief in his mental, psychological and physical strengths bring him happiness.

**4 Answer the following questions:**

- What is the most loving event to your heart in "King Lear"?
- We should be kind to our parents even if they were cruel to us. To what extent do you agree to this statement?
- "Oh, Goneril, I'm starting to feel frightened of you. You are evil." Why did the speaker say this? What does this show about his character?

**5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :**

"Life in the past and now"

**20 Luxor Governorate****1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- When you join university, you may ..... before you get used to your new life.  
a. preserve                      b. organise                      c. struggle                      d. consider
- Fortunately, all the passengers and ..... survived the crash.  
a. staff                      b. crew                      c. stuff                      d. crew

3. Our footballers who play abroad are not ..... . They are professionals.  
a. officials                      b. amateurs                      c. professions                      d. hostile
4. The ..... of Cairo Metro network will make it easier for commuters to reach their workplace more comfortably.  
a. intention                      b. expansion                      c. suggestion                      d. destruction
5. I want to buy a car but the cheapest one is out of my price ..... .  
a. strange                      b. cage                      c. range                      d. stage
6. Concentrate on your goal. Don't be distracted by unimportant details. The antonym of "distracted" is ..... .  
a. confused                      b. puzzled                      c. captive                      d. attentive
7. "Hostile" is to "unkind" as " ..... " to "amusing".  
a. hilarious                      b. cruel                      c. gloomy                      d. serious
8. I can't visit you tomorrow evening as I ..... for the chemistry test.  
a. will revise                      b. will have revised                      c. will be revising                      d. will be revised
9. No sooner ..... learn driving, than he bought a car.  
a. did he                      b. had he                      c. he had                      d. does he
10. For me , home is the place ..... I feel relaxed in.  
a. who                      b. which                      c. when                      d. where
11. After he ..... from his current job, he will run his own business.  
a. have retired                      b. had retired                      c. retiring                      d. retires
12. I saw my friend Akram last week. I ..... him since 2018.  
a. won't                      b. didn't see                      c. hadn't seen                      d. haven't seen
13. No one read the latest news, ..... ?  
a. does he                      b. do they                      c. don't they                      d. did they

## 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Human beings need food, water and air which are all necessary for survival. People cannot live without food to eat and oxygen to breathe. When it is cold, they need heat, clothes and places to live. The environment provides these needs. People use the land and oceans for food. The atmosphere, which is the air around the earth, contains oxygen. Energy for heat comes from petroleum, trees or the sun.

Hundreds of years ago, the environment supplied food, and housing for everyone. Population was low, and there was little industry. There was enough good land, fresh water, and clean air. However, in the eighteenth century, the industrial revolution began in England. The Western world changed from an agricultural world to an industrial one. Many people moved from farms to cities in order to work. Industry grew very quickly. Since 1850, both the population and industry have increased very rapidly. People need more land, more water, and more resources daily. Industry is changing the environment quickly. Some of these changes are harmful because they disturb the balance of nature. One such example is pollution.

There are several kinds of pollution: air, water, land, noise and light. Industry causes air pollution. Factories **release** many chemicals and gases into the air. Gases from cars also cause air pollution, especially in cities. Chemicals in the air cause smog in many large cities as Tokyo and Los Angeles. It is sometimes dangerous - for people to breathe the air in these cities.

1. What does the atmosphere surround ?
  - a. The planets
  - b. The earth
  - c. The air
  - d. The earth and the planets
2. Population and industry have increased since ..... .
  - a. the beginning of the 19<sup>th</sup> century
  - b. the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century
  - c. the middle of the 20<sup>th</sup> century
  - d. the middle of the 19<sup>th</sup> century
3. What do human beings need to survive ?
  - a. Water and oxygen
  - b. Food and oxygen
  - c. Food, water and oxygen
  - d. Food and water
4. If the balance of nature is disturbed, life on the planet will be ..... .
  - a. luxurious
  - b. comfortable
  - c. convenient
  - d. inconvenient
5. What does the word "release" in the passage mean?
  - a. To set free
  - b. To give out
  - c. To free
  - d. To be made known
6. How has industry changed the environment?
  - a. It has increased population
  - b. It has increased pollution
  - c. It has enhanced agriculture
  - d. It has improved human behaviour
7. Why was everyone supplied with food, heat and housing many years ago ?
  - a. The population was low
  - b. The pollution was little
  - c. The industry was developed
  - d. The agriculture was developed
8. What happened when the west changed into an industrial world ?
  - a. People immigrated to villages
  - b. People left work in cities
  - c. People immigrated to cities
  - d. People wanted to become farmers

### 3 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Cleanliness plays a significant role in maintaining a healthy lifestyle. Your balanced diet and regular exercise will be completely useless if you live in an unhealthy environment.

- a. تلعب النظافة دورا مهما في الحفاظ على نمط حياة صحي، سيكون نظامك الغذائي المتوازن وممارسة التمارين الرياضية بانتظام عديم الفائدة تماما إذا كنت تعيش في بيئة غير صحية.
- b. تلعب النظافة دورا مهما في الحفاظ على سلوك حياة صحي، سيكون جهازك الغذائي المحدد وممارسة التمارين الرياضية بانتظام عديم الفائدة قليلا إذا كنت تعيش في بيئة غير صحية.
- c. تلعب النظافة دورا مهما في الحفاظ على سلوك حياة صحي، سيكون جهازك الغذائي المتوازن وممارسة التمارين الرياضية بانتظام عديم الفائدة تماما إذا كنت تعيش في بيئة غير صحية.
- d. تلعب النظافة دورا مهما في الحفاظ على نمط حياة صحي، سيكون نظامك الغذائي المتوازن وممارسة التمارين الرياضية بانتظام عديم الفائدة قليلا إذا كنت تعيش في بيئة غير صحية.



**B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

- رضاء أي دولة يعتمد بشكل أساسي على عقول العباقرة منها وعلى أيدي عمالها حتى تتحقق الإجازات العظيمة

- The prosperity of any country depends main on the minds of its smarts and on the hands of its workers in order to make great achievements.
- The prosperity of any country depends mainly on the minds of its geniuses and on the hands of its workers in order to make great achievements.
- The prosperity of any country depends main on the minds of its smarts and on the hands of its workers in order to do great achievements.
- The prosperity of any country depends mainly on the minds of its geniuses and on the hands of its workers in order to do great achievements.

**4 Answer the following questions:**

- Why do you think King Lear went mad ?
- Why do you think that King Lear kneels before Cordelia ?
- Have you learnt anything from “ King Lear “? What is it ?

**5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :**

“The role of youth in building modern Egypt”

.....

.....

**احرص على اقتناء**  
كتب

**EL-MOASSER**

في اللغة الانجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن تستحق



## For Al Azhar & Inclusive students Exams.

اختبارات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف والدمج.

### 1 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

#### 1 Supply the missing parts of the following dialogue :

Ali : Hi Ahmed, (1) ..... ?

Ahmed : Hi Ali, I'm going to the sports centre.

Ali : Why are you going there?

Ahmed : (2) ..... Would you like to come with me?

Ali : (3) ..... , but what time will the match start?

Ahmed : (4) .....

#### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Omar is a/an ..... child. He does things on his own.

a. lazy                      b. independent                      c. mad                      d. stupid

2. They ..... building the new school by next year.

a. is going to finish      b. had finished                      c. will be finished                      d. will have finished

3. Ramy used to play football a lot, but now he .....

a. doesn't                      b. isn't                      c. didn't                      d. don't

4. There are a lot of ..... of wild animals in African forests.

a. spares                      b. sparks                      c. species                      d. spices

5. My brother can hardly swim, ..... ?

a. can he?                      b. can't he?                      c. does he?                      d. is he?

6. Don't worry. Your goal is ....., but you have to work hard.

a. impossible                      b. curable                      c. achievable                      d. unbelievable

#### 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Our schools are aware of the importance of games. They are essential for several reasons. First of all, games provide healthy exercise out in the open fresh air. This is important after sitting for hours inside the classrooms. Secondly, games teach students to co-operate. This is called team spirit. Moreover, games teach students to accept losses as one cannot win all the time. Exercise and games help students to relax and forget their problems during school work. For all these reasons, it is a crime to replace the time of games at school with other lessons. This may make students hate the whole learning process.

#### A. Answer the following questions :

1. What do games teach students?

.....

2. Can anyone win all the time?

.....

3. Do you think games are important?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer :**

4. The best title for the passage is ".....".  
 a. Exercise is not important                      b. Exercise and fitness  
 c. The importance of games                      d. Teachers and teaching
5. "....." can give the same meaning of "important".  
 a. Essential                      b. Unimportant                      c. Loss                      d. Social

**5 A. Answer the following questions :**

1. Who is told to take King Lear to Dover in a carriage?  
 .....

2. What does Lear ask Cordelia to do?  
 .....

**B. Choose the correct answer :**

3. .... kills herself.  
 a. Cordelia                      b. Goneril                      c. Regan                      d. Edgar
4. .... decides to resign and help Lear.  
 a. Albany                      b. Goneril                      c. Edgar                      d. Gloucester
5. .... dies of poison.  
 a. Goneril                      b. Cordelia                      c. Kent                      d. Regan

**5 Write a paragraph of 80 words about :**

"The importance of reading"

.....

.....

.....

**6 Translation :****A. Translate into Arabic :**

Some people have depended on online shopping recently.

.....

.....

.....

**B. Translate into English :**

مصر لديها كل العناصر التي تجعلها دولة سياحية رائعة.

.....

.....

.....

**2 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif****1 Supply the missing parts of the following dialogue :**

**Injy :** (1) ....., Lena ? Science fiction?

**Lena :** Not really stories about space are boring. I like historical ones.

(2) ..... ?



Injy : My favourite stories are horror stories (3) ..... ?

Lena : I disagree. I hate feeling scared, you like romantic stories as well, don't you?

Injy : (4) ....., but now I don't.

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- I'm sorry I can't come to your party; I ..... to the dentist that afternoon.  
a. am seeing                      b. went                      c. see                      d. am going
- The police were on the ..... of the car accident in minutes.  
a. scene                      b. vision                      c. place                      d. sight
- I think pollution in large cities is ..... worse than it used to be.  
a. exactly                      b. far                      c. as                      d. almost
- A lot of benefits can ..... from voluntary work for many people.  
a. raise                      b. rise                      c. arise                      d. arouse
- Don't worry, your goal is ....., you can realize your ambition.  
a. removable                      b. curable                      c. unbelievable                      d. achievable
- My sister can hardly swim, ..... ?  
a. can't she                      b. doesn't she                      c. can she                      d. couldn't she

**3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Dreams are free and we all dream of achieving a goal in life, don't we? Have you ever written down your goals and set a time by when you plan to achieve your goal? If we want to take control of our lives, we need to plan ahead carefully. Completing your list of things to do is very enjoyable, isn't it? Using the smart acronym is a great way to bring yourself a bit closer to your dreams. However, the acronym, which has been used in business for many years, has been updated to make it more flexible. Experts have added the need to evaluate and readjust your objectives as they change over time which means your dreams will now be even smarter.

**A. Answer the following questions :**

- What do we all dream of?  
.....
- What should we do if we want to take control of our lives?  
.....
- Why has the acronym used in business for many years updated?  
.....

**B. Choose the correct answer :**

- The underlined word "a bit" means .....  
a. a few                      b. a lot                      c. a little                      d. much
- The prefix "re" in readjust means .....  
a. again                      b. once                      c. twice                      d. a little

**4 A. Answer the following questions :**

- What did Edgar and Cordelia have in common?  
.....

2. What did Edmund accuse his father of?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

4. Edgar says "When you have nothing, there's nothing to" .....  
 a. give                      b. run                      c. lose                      d. jump
5. Edmund was an evil .....  
 a. traitor                      b. operator                      c. dictator                      d. actor
6. Regan and Goneril wanted Edmund to help them ..... power.  
 a. eat                      b. play                      c. take                      d. lose

**5 Write a paragraph of 80 words about :**

"The pros and cons of using social media"

**6 Translation :**

**A. Translate into Arabic :**

Reading daily newspapers has become an old fashioned habit.

**B. Translate into English :**

من المهم الاستماع إلى الآخرين باهتمام حتى لو لم تتفق مع الآراء المطروحة.

### 3 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

**1 Supply the missing parts of the following dialogue :**

- Fatma :** Where are you going now?  
**Magda :** To school and (1) ..... ?  
**Fatma :** I am leaving for my school, too.  
**Magda :** (2) ..... ?  
**Fatma :** Today, I am going to have six periods.  
**Magda :** (3) ..... ?  
**Fatma :** I leave school at 2.00 p.m.  
**Magda :** Can you go to the club with me in the evening?  
**Fatma :** (4) .....

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. He ..... the Nobel Prize till he had written 10 novels.  
 a. awarded                      b. didn't award                      c. wasn't awarded                      d. would award
2. We should help our students to become ..... learners.  
 a. depending                      b. dependent                      c. independing                      d. independent

3. Before the end of this term, you ..... your project.  
a. will be finished    b. will have finished    c. were finished    d. finished
4. "In order to" is the formal synonym of .....  
a. but    b. so that    c. however    d. as well as
5. The Cairo Metro network is now a lot bigger, and the ..... work is in progress.  
a. animation    b. intention    c. expansion    d. destruction
6. The piano is her favourite ..... instrument.  
a. musical    b. hostile    c. horror    d. marvellous

### 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

There is a saying about new ideas "Necessity is the mother of invention". This means that if we need to do something, someone will invent a way to do it. In Asia in 8000 BCE, the wheel was invented because people wanted to transport heavy goods more easily. Over 9000 years later, steam engines were invented to power machines which were able to produce things more quickly than people could. The jet engine made it possible to travel easily by air.

#### A. Answer the following questions :

1. What could people do after the wheel was invented that they could not do before?  
.....
2. What was different about machines with steam engines?  
.....
3. What are the inventions mentioned in the passage?  
.....

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "power" in the passage is a / an .....  
a. noun    b. adverb    c. adjective    d. verb
5. The synonym of the word "Necessity" in the passage can be .....  
a. requirement    b. wealth    c. band    d. wealthiness

### 4 A. Answer the following questions :

1. What does Regan tell Oswald to do if he sees Gloucester?  
.....
2. How does King Lear feel when he meets Cordelia?  
.....

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. "I wish I could make him feel better again." The speaker is .....  
a. the doctor    b. Albany    c. Regan    d. Cordelia
4. Poor Tom was .....  
a. Edgar    b. Albany    c. Kent    d. Edmund
5. Regan described her father as the ..... king.  
a. mad    b. happy    c. clever    d. sad



**5 Write a paragraph of 80 words about :**

“Your goals in life”

.....

.....

.....

**6 Translation :**

**A. Translate into Arabic :**

Today, a journalist is interviewing business leaders in Cairo.

.....

.....

.....

**B. Translate into English :**

الاحتباس الحراري مشكلة تستطيع جميعا المساعدة في حلها.

.....

.....

.....

**4 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif**

**1 Supply the missing parts of the following dialogue :**

Huda and Injy are talking about the best way to travel.

Huda : (1) ..... ?

Injy : I think the answer is clear. Flying.

Huda : (2) ..... Flying causes a lot of pollution.

Injy : Modern planes don't cause much pollution.

Huda : (3) ..... ?

Injy : Yes, I have.

Huda : (4) ..... ?

Injy : I think travelling by plane is very comfortable and fast.

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- I am going to ..... my brother up from the airport when he arrives.  
a. pick                      b. stand                      c. leave                      d. sit
- By this time next week, I ..... all my exams.  
a. am finishing              b. finish                      c. have finished              d. will have finished
- This digital camera ..... to my friend, Hatem.  
a. belong                      b. belongs                      c. is belonging              d. have belonged
- We need to do our best to ..... the variety of species on our planet.  
a. cure                      b. heal                      c. preserve                      d. remain
- My father ..... to go to work by car, but now he does.  
a. used                      b. isn't used                      c. uses                      d. didn't use
- ..... is the variety of plant and animal life in the world.  
a. Biodiversity              b. Biology                      c. Biochemistry              d. Diversity

**3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

In 1969 newspapers headlines told us that walking on the moon was possible. Since then, scientists have continued their research to create high-tech machines to advance space exploration. Because of this, news reporters are now telling us that we may have the chance to visit the moon one day. Only 24 humans have ever visited the moon, but by 2027 a Japanese businessman called Yusaku will have become number 25. The only problem is that the rocket he will travel in has not been built yet. Yusaku will be travelling in a high-tech rocket, known as the Big Falcon Rocket, which will have seven engines and will be able to carry 100 passengers. The cost of the flight might be a problem to anyone who is not able to pay over £52 million for the flight!

**A. Answer the following questions :**

1. What did the newspapers headlines tell us in 1969?

2. Why have scientists continued their research?

3. How much did Yusaku pay for the flight?

**B. Choose the correct answer :**

4. .... passengers will travel in the Big Falcon Rocket.

a. 100

b. 10

c. 1000

d. 10000

5. Travelling to the moon was ..... before 1969.

a. possible

b. easy

c. impossible

d. available

**4 A. Answer the following questions :**

1. How should Islam be called for?

2. How should preachers deal with preaching?

**B. Choose the correct answer :**

3. Islam pulls down ..... and Aberrance.

a. believe

b. disbelief

c. belief

d. disbelieve

4. The new pure ..... win a path to paradise.

a. hurts

b. hearts

c. carts

d. heads

5. .... springs of two facts.

a. Violence

b. Tolerance

c. Intolerance

d. Tolerate

**5 Write a paragraph of 60 words about :**

"Reading"

**6 Translation :****A. Translate into Arabic :**

Everyone of us has goals that we strive to achieve.

## B. Translate into English :

من المهم أن يضع المراهقون أهدافاً واضحة لحياتهم.

### 5 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

#### 1 Supply the missing parts of the following dialogue :

Maha is asking Dina about the story she has just read.

Maha : What have you read recently, Dina?

Dina : (1) ..... called Oliver Twist.

Maha : (2) ..... ?

Dina : Yes, he is the main character in the story.

Maha : (3) ..... ?

Dina : It tells about a poor boy who was in trouble.

Maha : How did you feel about this story?

Dina : (4) .....

Maha : Could you lend me this story?

Dina : Okay. Here you are.

#### 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I am going to ..... my brother up from the airport when he arrives.

- a. pick                      b. stand                      c. leave                      d. sit

2. Hany always ..... a revision plan two months before the exams.

- a. gives                      b. does                      c. takes                      d. makes

3. It is important to know the ..... of each piece of news, and to make sure it is true.

- a. end                      b. source                      c. result                      d. reason

4. I wish I ..... more for this test ; I can't answer these questions.

- a. study                      b. had studied                      c. have studied                      d. studied

5. My father ..... to go to work by car, but now he does.

- a. didn't use                      b. used                      c. isn't used                      d. uses

6. Look over there ! That is the girl ..... mother is a company manager.

- a. who                      b. whose                      c. where                      d. when

#### 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The Taj Mahal is on the list of the Seven Wonders of the Modern World. Historians, tourists, and students of architecture and design admire it for two reasons. One is for its beauty. The other is the love story that led to its creation.

The Taj Mahal stands on the banks of the Yamuna River in Agra, India. Its construction began in 1631 and was finished in 1653. It is an Islamic tomb built of white marble, which was imported from all over India and neighboring lands. Its creation required the use of more than 1,000 elephants to transport the marble.

More than 22,000 builders laboured for twenty-one years to erect it. They used twenty-eight different kinds of precious and semi-precious stones to decorate the temple



This "Crown Palace" is a monument to love. Shah Jahan was the fifth Mughal emperor of India. When he was a fourteen-year-old prince, he fell in love with a fifteen-year-old Persian princess. Five years later, she became his third wife. This was in 1612. He called her "Mumtaz Mahal," which means "Jewel of the Palace". They had a happy marriage. However, she died giving birth to their fourteenth child. Heartbroken, her husband ordered the building of the Taj Mahal. This tomb is a tribute to her. It still stands as an enduring symbol of their love.

**A. Answer the following questions :**

1. How old was the princess when they were married?

2. Where is Taj Mahal located?

3. What does "Mumtaz Mahal" mean?

**B. Choose the correct answer :**

4. The Taj Mahal represents ..... culture.

a. American      b. Islamic      c. Jewish      d. Chinese

5. Shah Jahan was the ..... Mughal emperor of India.

a. first      b. third      c. fifth      d. fourth

**4 A. Answer the following questions :**

1. Who does a believer believe in?

2. What enters the hearts of Islam seekers?

**B. Choose the correct answer :**

3. The new pure hearts win a path to .....

a. world      b. hell      c. space      d. paradise

4. Islam confirms the doctrine of .....

a. Dhalal      b. Fanaticism      c. Monotheism      d. disbelief

5. A Muslim doesn't make any ..... between any apostle and another.

a. belief      b. disbelief      c. distinct      d. distinction

**5 Write a paragraph of 60 words about :**

"What makes a successful person"

**6 Translation :**

**A. Translate into Arabic :**

We live in the age of communications which has made the world an open one.

**B. Translate into English :**

يجب أن نستخدم أفضل الطرق لتربية أطفالنا الصغار.

**1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Don't leave school, I will pick you .....  
a. on                      b. up                      c. at                      d. for
2. While she was sleeping, she heard the ..... ringing.  
a. boy                      b. bell                      c. man                      d. car
3. My teacher is ..... for his kindness.  
a. famous                      b. fame                      c. tame                      d. came
4. She got ..... while she was walking in the desert.  
a. miss                      b. lost                      c. boast                      d. host
5. He ..... football all day yesterday.  
a. play                      b. playing                      c. was playing                      d. plays
6. When we were young, we used to watch ..... on television.  
a. cartoon                      b. bathroom                      c. mushroom                      d. classroom
7. He is a teacher, ..... he?  
a. doesn't                      b. isn't                      c. wasn't                      d. aren't
8. He ..... a new car.  
a. is                      b. has                      c. can                      d. have
9. We are ..... a party tonight.  
a. have                      b. having                      c. hating                      d. had
10. My brother is ..... than me.  
a. short                      b. shorter                      c. shortest                      d. as short as
11. Ali ..... walk to school when he was young.  
a. uses to                      b. used to                      c. use to                      d. used
12. They are of ..... height.  
a. same                      b. the same                      c. some                      d. something
13. Don't worry, I will help you ..... your homework.  
a. to                      b. with                      c. in                      d. for
14. .... is used in hospitals.  
a. GPR                      b. CPR                      c. GPS                      d. TIPE
15. He ..... smokes.  
a. any longer                      b. no longer                      c. any more                      d. used

**2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Everyone's personality is as different and unique as everyone's fingerprints. We can usually see people's personality in the clothes they wear, or how they look after their things, or how they behave with other people. When we say that we know someone well, what we really mean is that we can make accurate guesses about what that person will do or think. We know the different features of their personality. These features are called "personality traits".

Psychologists think that we have "central personality traits". These affect how we behave, and how we react to people and situations. Examples of central personality traits are friendliness, neatness, competitiveness, shyness, and optimism. Some psychologists think that we inherit these central traits from our family and that they usually stay with us all our life. Psychologists say that we also have "secondary traits", connected with the things we prefer, such as our favourite food, music, films, or colours. These can change as we get older, but very often many of them stay the same all our lives.

1. Our ..... traits remain with us forever.  
a. central                      b. secondary                      c. preparatory                      d. elementary
2. Psychologists are people who study .....  
a. religions                      b. minds                      c. bones                      d. fossils
3. What affects how we behave and how we act?  
a. Our families                      b. Our central traits  
c. Our neighbours                      d. Our secondary traits
4. Many psychologists think that we get our central traits from .....  
a. school                      b. books                      c. our family                      d. our friends
5. According to the passage, if we know people well, we get to know .....  
a. their families                      b. ourselves  
c. their neighbours                      d. their personality traits
6. Our central personal traits are .....  
a. temporary                      b. permanent                      c. secondary                      d. preparatory
7. Everyone's personality is .....  
a. similar                      b. common                      c. different                      d. the same

**3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. King Lear became ..... after being sent away.  
a. wise                      b. mad                      c. clever                      d. rich
2. Edgar was ..... as he saved his father.  
a. cruel                      b. kind                      c. traitor                      d. bad

**4 A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Every year Egypt celebrates the International Child's Day in November.

- a. تحتفل مصر كل عام باليوم العالمي للطفل في نوفمبر.
- b. احتفلت مصر كل عام باليوم العالمي للطفل في نوفمبر.
- c. تحتفل مصر كل عام باليوم العالمي للطفولة في نوفمبر.
- d. لا تحتفل مصر كل عام باليوم العالمي للطفولة في نوفمبر.

**B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

يهدد التلوث حياة الإنسان والحيوانات والنباتات في كل مكان.

- a. Pollution threaten the life of man, animal, and plant every where.
- b. Pollution threatens the life of man, animal, and plant every where.
- c. Pollution threatens the live of man, animal, and plant every where.
- d. Population threatens the life of man, animal, and plant every where.

**5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c, or d:**

- a. I went with my family. Last week I went to Cairo. I saw the Cairo Tower. We went back by car.
- b. Last week I went to Cairo. I went with my family. I saw the Cairo Tower. We went back by car.
- c. We went back by car. I went with my family. Last week I went to Cairo. I saw The Cairo Tower.
- d. I saw The Cairo Tower. I went with my family. Last week I went to Cairo. -We went back by car.



# Follow your progress in vocabulary

تابع مستواك في إتقان المفردات اللغوية

## Unit 7

### Model A

#### Lessons 1 & 2

.....	بصادف - يجد بالصدفة	independent	.....
.....	إصرار / تصميم / عزيمة - تحديد	accommodation	.....
.....	التشجيع	pick-up	.....
.....	يعتاد علي	certificate	.....
.....	عائلة مضيفة	struggle	.....

#### Lessons 3 & 4

.....	لهجة	presentation	.....
.....	مقتطف - مدخل	summarise	.....
.....	ينظم	unfortunately	.....
.....	جواز سفر	voice messages	.....

### Model B

#### Lessons 1 & 2

.....	إقامة - مسكن	harbour	.....
.....	احتفال	creature	.....
.....	تحدي - يتحدى	gardener	.....
.....	وائق - متفائل	maid	.....

#### Lessons 3 & 4

.....	في المفجل - بصفة عامة	imagine	.....
.....	يؤمن - يصدق	miss	.....
.....	ذكرى عزيزة - ذكرى لا تنسى	taste	.....
.....	يشعر - يلمس - يتحسس	think - thought	.....
.....	يلسي	wish	.....

## Unit 8

### Model A

#### Lessons 1 & 2

.....	يربط - يوصل	passenger	.....
.....	توسّع - تمّدد	public transport	.....
.....	تسهيلات - امتيازات - مرافق - مواهب	public	.....
.....	يفقد الأمل في - يتوقف عن	system	.....
.....	ينخفض - يقل - يهبط	the Underground	.....
.....	تقنية عالية	transport	.....
.....	شبكة	underground	.....

## Lessons 3 &amp; 4

.....	بدیل - مختلف	environmentally	.....
.....	بُرهان / حُجّة	friendly	.....
.....	يفكر في	issue	.....
.....	فُلائم - مناسب	later	.....
.....	حالي / جاري - التيار	on / in behalf of	.....
.....	أبكر من - قبل	respond	.....
.....	قبل (ذلك) - من قبل	satisfactory	.....
		significant	.....

## Model B

## Lessons 1 &amp; 2

.....	يقاطع	affordable	.....
.....	العاصمة الإدارية	monorail	.....
.....	نظام تشغيل	disagreement	.....
.....	إنشاء - تركيب	persuade	.....

## Lessons 3 &amp; 4

.....	خاتمة	appropriate	.....
.....	مزدحم - مكتظ	popularity	.....
.....	محافظة	disability	.....
.....	رخيص	grateful	.....

## Unit

9

## Model A

## Lessons 1 &amp; 2

.....	التنوع البيولوجي	native	.....
.....	تنطوي على تُخَدّي	preserve	.....
.....	حماية البيئة - حفظ	rewarding	.....
.....	تماماً - بالضبط	scholarship	.....
.....	بعثة استكشافية	slightly	.....
.....	أحد سُكّان - قاطن	species	.....
.....	السكان المحليين	survival	.....

## Lessons 3 &amp; 4

.....	يُنْتَج عن - ينشأ من	come from	.....
.....	لذلك	as a result	.....
.....	ومع ذلك - وبرغم ذلك	but	.....
.....	لكي	so that	.....
.....	يؤدي إلى	result in	.....
.....	ليس فقط ... لكن أيضاً	... as well as ...	.....



## Model B

## Lessons 1 &amp; 2

إعلان	exotic	
حاجز - سد	livestock	
مجلس - قنصلية	monitor	
معرض للخطر - مُهدد	economy	

## Lessons 3 &amp; 4

فائدة - يستفيد	psychological	
في النهاية	purpose	
فرصة	reward	
يُلهِم	valuable	

## Unit 10

## Model A

## Lessons 1 &amp; 2

يذيع - إذاعة	journalist	
قناة	matter	
مراسل	news channel	
عمداً/عن قصد	newsreader	
رجالة رقمي	photographer	
رئيس التحرير	programme	

## Lessons 3 &amp; 4

متحدث	remarkable	
متحمس - مبال ل	sculpture	
قطعة أثرية	spacewalk	
يدفن	exploration	

## Model B

## Lessons 1 &amp; 2

مُتَقَضِّي حقائق	question	
مراسل أجنبي	reporter	
عنوان رئيسي - مانشيت	scene	
يُحاوِر - يُجْزِي مقابلة	search engine	
مُحَقِّق	source	